

THE EXPERT'S VOICE® IN OPEN SOURCE

# Kubernetes Microservices with Docker

---

Deepak Vohra  
Foreword by Massimo Nardone

Apress®

# Kubernetes Microservices with Docker



Deepak Vohra

Apress®

## ***Kubernetes Microservices with Docker***

Deepak Vohra  
White Rock, British Columbia  
Canada

ISBN-13 (pbk): 978-1-4842-1906-5  
DOI 10.1007/978-1-4842-1907-2

ISBN-13 (electronic): 978-1-4842-1907-2

Library of Congress Control Number: 2016937418

Copyright © 2016 by Deepak Vohra

This work is subject to copyright. All rights are reserved by the Publisher, whether the whole or part of the material is concerned, specifically the rights of translation, reprinting, reuse of illustrations, recitation, broadcasting, reproduction on microfilms or in any other physical way, and transmission or information storage and retrieval, electronic adaptation, computer software, or by similar or dissimilar methodology now known or hereafter developed. Exempted from this legal reservation are brief excerpts in connection with reviews or scholarly analysis or material supplied specifically for the purpose of being entered and executed on a computer system, for exclusive use by the purchaser of the work. Duplication of this publication or parts thereof is permitted only under the provisions of the Copyright Law of the Publisher's location, in its current version, and permission for use must always be obtained from Springer. Permissions for use may be obtained through RightsLink at the Copyright Clearance Center. Violations are liable to prosecution under the respective Copyright Law.

Trademarked names, logos, and images may appear in this book. Rather than use a trademark symbol with every occurrence of a trademarked name, logo, or image we use the names, logos, and images only in an editorial fashion and to the benefit of the trademark owner, with no intention of infringement of the trademark.

The use in this publication of trade names, trademarks, service marks, and similar terms, even if they are not identified as such, is not to be taken as an expression of opinion as to whether or not they are subject to proprietary rights.

While the advice and information in this book are believed to be true and accurate at the date of publication, neither the authors nor the editors nor the publisher can accept any legal responsibility for any errors or omissions that may be made. The publisher makes no warranty, express or implied, with respect to the material contained herein.

Managing Director: Welmoed Spahr

Lead Editor: Michelle Lowman

Technical Reviewer: Massimo Nardone

Editorial Board: Steve Anglin, Pramila Balan, Louise Corrigan, Jonathan Gennick, Robert Hutchinson,

Celstine Suresh John, Michelle Lowman, James Markham, Susan McDermott, Matthew Moodie,

Jeffrey Pepper, Douglas Pundick, Ben Renow-Clarke, Gwenan Spearing

Coordinating Editor: Mark Powers

Composer: SPI Global

Indexer: SPI Global

Artist: SPI Global

Distributed to the book trade worldwide by Springer Science+Business Media New York, 233 Spring Street, 6th Floor, New York, NY 10013. Phone 1-800-SPRINGER, fax (201) 348-4505, e-mail [orders-ny@springer-sbm.com](mailto:orders-ny@springer-sbm.com), or visit [www.springeronline.com](http://www.springeronline.com). Apress Media, LLC is a California LLC and the sole member (owner) is Springer Science + Business Media Finance Inc (SSBM Finance Inc). SSBM Finance Inc is a Delaware corporation.

For information on translations, please e-mail [rights@apress.com](mailto:rights@apress.com), or visit [www.apress.com](http://www.apress.com).

Apress and friends of ED books may be purchased in bulk for academic, corporate, or promotional use. eBook versions and licenses are also available for most titles. For more information, reference our Special Bulk Sales-eBook Licensing web page at [www.apress.com/bulk-sales](http://www.apress.com/bulk-sales).

Any source code or other supplementary material referenced by the author in this text is available to readers at [www.apress.com/9781484219065](http://www.apress.com/9781484219065). For additional information about how to locate and download your book's source code, go to [www.apress.com/source-code/](http://www.apress.com/source-code/). Readers can also access source code at SpringerLink in the Supplementary Material section for each chapter.

Printed on acid-free paper

# Contents at a Glance

<b>About the Author .....</b>	<b>xvii</b>
<b>About the Technical Reviewer .....</b>	<b>xix</b>
<b>Foreword .....</b>	<b>xxi</b>
<b>■ Part I: Getting Started.....</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>■ Chapter 1: Installing Kubernetes Using Docker.....</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>■ Chapter 2: Hello Kubernetes.....</b>	<b>39</b>
<b>■ Chapter 3: Using Custom Commands and Environment Variables .....</b>	<b>77</b>
<b>■ Part II: Relational Databases .....</b>	<b>95</b>
<b>■ Chapter 4: Using MySQL Database .....</b>	<b>97</b>
<b>■ Chapter 5: Using PostgreSQL Database .....</b>	<b>115</b>
<b>■ Chapter 6: Using Oracle Database .....</b>	<b>141</b>
<b>■ Part III: NoSQL Database.....</b>	<b>165</b>
<b>■ Chapter 7: Using MongoDB Database .....</b>	<b>167</b>
<b>■ Chapter 8: Using Apache Cassandra Database.....</b>	<b>201</b>
<b>■ Chapter 9: Using Couchbase.....</b>	<b>231</b>
<b>■ Part IV: Apache Hadoop Ecosystem.....</b>	<b>275</b>
<b>■ Chapter 10: Using Apache Hadoop Ecosystem.....</b>	<b>277</b>
<b>■ Chapter 11: Using Apache Solr.....</b>	<b>313</b>
<b>■ Chapter 12: Using Apache Kafka .....</b>	<b>347</b>

■ CONTENTS AT A GLANCE

<b>■Part V: Multi Containers and Nodes.....</b>	<b>373</b>
<b>■Chapter 13: Creating a Multi-Container Pod.....</b>	<b>375</b>
<b>■Chapter 14: Installing Kubernetes on a Multi-Node Cluster .....</b>	<b>399</b>
<b>Index.....</b>	<b>429</b>

# Contents

<b>About the Author .....</b>	<b>xvii</b>
<b>About the Technical Reviewer .....</b>	<b>xix</b>
<b>Foreword .....</b>	<b>xxi</b>
<b>■ Part I: Getting Started.....</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>■ Chapter 1: Installing Kubernetes Using Docker.....</b>	<b>3</b>
Setting the Environment.....	4
Installing Docker .....	5
Installing Kubernetes .....	15
Starting etcd.....	23
Starting Kubernetes Master .....	25
Starting Service Proxy.....	28
Listing the Kubernetes Docker Containers .....	29
Installing kubectl.....	32
Listing Services.....	35
Listing Nodes.....	36
Testing the Kubernetes Installation.....	36
Summary.....	38
<b>■ Chapter 2: Hello Kubernetes.....</b>	<b>39</b>
Overview .....	39
What Is a Node?.....	39
What Is a Cluster?.....	40
What Is a Pod? .....	40

■ CONTENTS

What Is a Service? .....	40
What Is a Replication Controller? .....	40
What Is a Label? .....	41
What Is a Selector? .....	41
What Is a Name? .....	41
What Is a Namespace? .....	41
What Is a Volume? .....	41
Why Kubernetes? .....	41
Setting the Environment.....	42
Creating an Application Imperatively.....	43
Creating a Service .....	44
Describing a Pod.....	46
Invoking the Hello-World Application.....	47
Scaling the Application.....	48
Deleting a Replication Controller .....	52
Deleting a Service .....	53
Creating an Application Declaratively.....	53
Creating a Pod Definition.....	54
Creating a Service Definition.....	58
Creating a Replication Controller Definition.....	61
Invoking the Hello-World Application.....	64
Scaling the Application .....	68
Using JSON for the Resource Definitions .....	70
Summary .....	76
<b>■ Chapter 3: Using Custom Commands and Environment Variables .....</b>	<b>77</b>
Setting the Environment.....	77
The ENTRYPPOINT and CMD Instructions .....	78
The Command and Args Fields in a Pod Definition.....	79
Environment Variables.....	80

Using the Default ENTRYPPOINT and CMD from a Docker Image.....	81
Overriding Both the ENTRYPPOINT and CMD.....	84
Specifying both the Executable and the Parameters in the Command Mapping .....	87
Specifying Both the Executable and the Parameters in the Args Mapping .....	90
Summary.....	93
<b>Part II: Relational Databases .....</b>	<b>95</b>
<b>Chapter 4: Using MySQL Database .....</b>	<b>97</b>
Setting the Environment.....	97
Creating a Service .....	99
Creating a Replication Controller.....	100
Listing the Pods.....	104
Listing Logs .....	104
Describing the Service .....	106
Starting an Interactive Shell.....	107
Starting the MySQL CLI .....	109
Creating a Database Table.....	110
Exiting the MySQL CLI and Interactive Shell.....	111
Scaling the Replicas.....	111
Deleting the Replication Controller.....	113
Summary.....	114
<b>Chapter 5: Using PostgreSQL Database .....</b>	<b>115</b>
Setting the Environment.....	115
Creating a PostgreSQL Cluster Declaratively .....	117
Creating a Service .....	117
Creating a Replication Controller.....	119
Getting the Pods .....	123
Starting an Interactive Command Shell.....	123

**CONTENTS**

Starting the PostgreSQL SQL Terminal .....	124
Creating a Database Table .....	125
Exiting the Interactive Command Shell.....	126
Scaling the PostgreSQL Cluster .....	127
Listing the Logs .....	128
Deleting the Replication Controller .....	130
Stopping the Service .....	131
<b>Creating a PostgreSQL Cluster Imperatively .....</b>	<b>131</b>
Creating a Replication Controller.....	132
Getting the Pods .....	132
Creating a Service .....	133
Creating a Database Table .....	134
Scaling the PostgreSQL Cluster .....	137
Deleting the Replication Controller .....	138
Stopping the Service .....	139
Summary.....	139
<b>■Chapter 6: Using Oracle Database .....</b>	<b>141</b>
Setting the Environment.....	141
<b>Creating an Oracle Database Instance Imperatively .....</b>	<b>142</b>
Listing Logs .....	144
Creating a Service .....	145
Scaling the Database.....	146
Deleting the Replication Controller and Service .....	147
<b>Creating an Oracle Database Instance Declaratively .....</b>	<b>148</b>
Creating a Pod .....	148
Creating a Service .....	150
Creating a Replication Controller.....	153
Keeping the Replication Level .....	156
Scaling the Database.....	158
Starting the Interactive Shell .....	159

Connecting to Database.....	160
Creating a User .....	161
Creating a Database Table .....	162
Exiting the Interactive Shell.....	163
<b>Summary.....</b>	<b>163</b>
<b>■Part III: NoSQL Database.....</b>	<b>165</b>
<b>■Chapter 7: Using MongoDB Database.....</b>	<b>167</b>
Setting the Environment.....	167
Creating a MongoDB Cluster Declaratively.....	169
Creating a Service .....	169
Creating a Replication Controller.....	173
Creating a Volume.....	176
Listing the Logs .....	178
Starting the Interactive Shell for Docker Container .....	180
Starting a Mongo Shell .....	182
Creating a Database .....	182
Creating a Collection .....	183
Adding Documents .....	184
Finding Documents.....	186
Finding a Single Document.....	186
Finding Specific Fields in a Single Document .....	187
Dropping a Collection .....	188
Exiting Mongo Shell and Interactive Shell .....	188
Scaling the Cluster .....	188
Deleting the Replication Controller.....	189
Deleting the Service .....	190
Using a Host Port.....	190
Creating a MongoDB Cluster Imperatively.....	194
Creating a Replication Controller.....	194

■ CONTENTS

Listing the Pods .....	195
Listing the Logs .....	196
Creating a Service .....	197
Scaling the Cluster .....	198
Deleting the Service and Replication Controller.....	200
Summary.....	200
<b>■ Chapter 8: Using Apache Cassandra Database.....</b>	<b>201</b>
Setting the Environment.....	201
Creating a Cassandra Cluster Declaratively .....	203
Creating a Service .....	203
Creating a Replication Controller.....	206
Scaling the Database.....	211
Describing the Pod .....	212
Starting an Interactive Shell.....	213
Starting the CQL Shell.....	215
Creating a Keyspace.....	215
Altering a Keyspace.....	215
Using a Keyspace .....	216
Creating a Table .....	216
Deleting from a Table.....	217
Truncating a Table.....	218
Dropping a Table and Keyspace.....	218
Creating a Volume.....	219
Creating a Cassandra Cluster Imperatively .....	225
Creating a Replication Controller.....	225
Creating a Service .....	227
Scaling the Database.....	228
Deleting the Replication Controller and Service .....	229
Summary.....	230

<b>■ Chapter 9: Using Couchbase.....</b>	<b>231</b>
Setting the Environment.....	231
Creating a Couchbase Cluster Declaratively .....	234
Creating a Pod .....	234
Creating a Service .....	237
Creating a Replication Controller.....	239
Listing the Pods .....	243
Listing the Logs .....	243
Describing the Service .....	244
Listing the Endpoints .....	244
Setting Port Forwarding.....	244
Logging into Couchbase Web Console.....	246
Configuring Couchbase Server .....	247
Adding Documents .....	255
Starting an Interactive Shell .....	264
Using the cbtransfer Tool.....	265
Creating a Couchbase Cluster Imperatively .....	266
Creating a Replication Controller.....	266
Listing the Pods .....	266
Creating a Service .....	268
Scaling the Cluster .....	269
Keeping the Replication Level .....	270
Setting Port Forwarding.....	272
Logging in to Couchbase Admin Console.....	272
Summary.....	273
<b>■ Part IV: Apache Hadoop Ecosystem.....</b>	<b>275</b>
<b>■ Chapter 10: Using Apache Hadoop Ecosystem.....</b>	<b>277</b>
Setting the Environment.....	277
Creating an Apache Hadoop Cluster Declaratively .....	278
Creating a Service .....	279

■ CONTENTS

Creating a Replication Controller.....	281
Listing the Pods.....	283
Listing Logs .....	284
Scaling a Cluster.....	285
Starting an Interactive Shell .....	286
Running a MapReduce Application.....	287
Running Hive .....	296
Running HBase.....	302
Deleting the Replication Controller and Service.....	307
Creating an Apache Hadoop Cluster Imperatively .....	307
Creating a Replication Controller.....	307
Listing the Pods.....	308
Scaling a Cluster.....	309
Creating a Service .....	309
Starting an Interactive Shell .....	310
Summary.....	311
<b>■ Chapter 11: Using Apache Solr.....</b>	<b>313</b>
Setting the Environment.....	314
Creating a Service .....	315
Listing Service Endpoints.....	317
Describing the Service .....	317
Creating a Replication Controller.....	318
Listing the Pods.....	321
Describing a Replication Controller.....	322
Listing the Logs .....	323
Starting an Interactive Shell.....	325
Creating a Solr Core .....	328
Indexing Documents.....	329
Accessing Solr on Command Line with a REST Client .....	332

Setting Port Forwarding .....	337
Accessing Solr in Admin Console .....	338
Scaling the Cluster .....	344
Summary.....	345
<b>■ Chapter 12: Using Apache Kafka .....</b>	<b>347</b>
Setting the Environment.....	348
Modifying the Docker Image .....	349
Creating a Service .....	355
Creating a Replication Controller.....	358
Listing the Pods.....	361
Describing a Pod .....	362
Starting an Interactive Shell.....	363
Starting the Kafka Server .....	364
Creating a Topic.....	366
Starting a Kafka Producer .....	367
Starting a Kafka Consumer .....	367
Producing and Consuming Messages .....	367
Scaling the Cluster .....	368
Deleting Replication Controller and Service.....	370
Summary.....	371
<b>■ Part V: Multi Containers and Nodes.....</b>	<b>373</b>
<b>■ Chapter 13: Creating a Multi-Container Pod.....</b>	<b>375</b>
How to find Number of Containers in a Pod? .....	376
Types of Applications Using a Multi-Container Pod.....	376
Setting the Environment.....	377
Creating a Service.....	378
Describing a Service .....	379
Creating a Replication Container.....	380

<b>Listing the Pods.....</b>	<b>382</b>
<b>Listing the Docker Containers .....</b>	<b>383</b>
<b>Describing the Service after Creating Replication Controller.....</b>	<b>384</b>
<b>Invoking the Hello World Application on Command Line .....</b>	<b>385</b>
<b>Starting the Interactive Shell.....</b>	<b>386</b>
<b>Starting PostgreSQL Shell .....</b>	<b>387</b>
<b>Setting Port Forwarding .....</b>	<b>387</b>
<b>Opening the Hello World Application in a Browser .....</b>	<b>388</b>
<b>Scaling the Cluster .....</b>	<b>389</b>
<b>Listing the Docker Containers .....</b>	<b>391</b>
<b>Describing the Service after Scaling .....</b>	<b>392</b>
<b>Setting Port Forwarding.....</b>	<b>392</b>
<b>Opening the Hello World Application in a Browser .....</b>	<b>393</b>
<b>Invoking the Hello World Application from Command Line .....</b>	<b>394</b>
<b>Deleting the Replication Controller.....</b>	<b>396</b>
<b>Deleting the Service .....</b>	<b>397</b>
<b>Summary.....</b>	<b>397</b>
<b>■ Chapter 14: Installing Kubernetes on a Multi-Node Cluster .....</b>	<b>399</b>
<b>Components of a Multi-Node Cluster .....</b>	<b>400</b>
<b>Setting the Environment.....</b>	<b>400</b>
<b>Installing the Master Node .....</b>	<b>402</b>
<b>Setting Up Flanneld and etcd .....</b>	<b>402</b>
<b>Starting the Kubernetes Master .....</b>	<b>409</b>
<b>Running the Service Proxy .....</b>	<b>411</b>
<b>Testing the One-Node Cluster .....</b>	<b>412</b>
<b>Adding a Worker Node.....</b>	<b>412</b>
<b>Exporting the Master IP .....</b>	<b>412</b>
<b>Setting Up Flanneld .....</b>	<b>413</b>
<b>Starting Up Kubernetes on Worker Node .....</b>	<b>418</b>
<b>Running the Service Proxy .....</b>	<b>419</b>

Testing the Kubernetes Cluster .....	419
Running an Application on the Cluster .....	419
Exposing the Application as a Service .....	420
Testing the Application in a Browser.....	422
Scaling the Application.....	423
Summary.....	427
<b>Index.....</b>	<b>429</b>



# About the Author



**Deepak Vohra** is a consultant and a principal member of the NuBean.com software company. Deepak is a Sun-certified Java programmer and Web component developer. He has worked in the fields of XML, Java programming, and Java EE for over seven years. Deepak is the coauthor of *Pro XML Development with Java Technology* (Apress, 2006). Deepak is also the author of the *JDBC 4.0* and *Oracle JDeveloper for J2EE Development*, *Processing XML Documents with Oracle JDeveloper 11g*, *EJB 3.0 Database Persistence with Oracle Fusion Middleware 11g*, and *Java EE Development in Eclipse IDE* (Packt Publishing). He also served as the technical reviewer on *WebLogic: The Definitive Guide* (O'Reilly Media, 2004) and *Ruby Programming for the Absolute Beginner* (Cengage Learning PTR, 2007). Deepak is the author of *Pro Couchbase Development*, *Pro MongoDB Development*, and *Pro Docker*, all published by Apress in 2015.



# About the Technical Reviewer



**Massimo Nardone** holds a Master of Science degree in Computing Science from the University of Salerno, Italy. He has worked as a Project Manager, Software Engineer, Research Engineer, Chief Security Architect, Information Security Manager, PCI/SCADA Auditor, and Senior Lead IT Security/Cloud/SCADA Architect for many years. He currently works as Chief Information Security Office (CISO) for Cargotec Oyj. He has more than 22 years of work experience in IT including Security, SCADA, Cloud Computing, IT Infrastructure, Mobile, Security, and WWW technology areas for both national and international projects. He worked as a visiting lecturer and supervisor for exercises at the Networking Laboratory of the Helsinki University of Technology (Aalto University). He has been programming and teaching how to program with Android, Perl, PHP, Java, VB, Python, C/C++, and MySQL for more than 20 years. He holds four international patents (PKI, SIP, SAML, and Proxy areas).

He is the coauthor of *Pro Android Games* (Apress, 2015).

Massimo dedicates his work on this book to his loving brothers Mario Nardone and Roberto Nardone, who are always there when he needs them.



# Foreword

It is a great pleasure to provide the Foreword for this book, as I've been reading and following Deepak Vohra's work for some time. Deepak has been developing Web components and Java applications for many years, and the scope of his expertise is reflected in the books he has written – as is his passion to share that knowledge with others.

About a year ago, I was given the opportunity to perform a technical review on his Pro Couchbase Development book, and we formed an immediate connection. Since then, I've served as technical reviewer on several more of his books, including this one. The reason I keep coming back is simple – I always come away knowing more than I did before.

Docker is a new container technology that has become very popular because it is great for building and sharing disk images and enables users to run different operating systems such as Ubuntu, Fedora, and Centos. Docker is often used when a version control framework is required for an application's operating system, to distribute applications on different machines, or to run code on laptop in the same environment as on the server. In general, Docker will always run the same, regardless of the environment in which it will be running.

Kubernetes is an open source container cluster manager that complements and extends Docker's software encapsulation power and makes it easier to organize and schedule applications across a fleet of machines. It's a lightweight, portable (suited for the cloud architecture) and modular tool that can be run on almost any platform with different local machine solutions. Kubernetes offers a number of distinct advantages, first and foremost being that it combines all necessary tools – orchestration, service discovery, and load balancing – together in one nice package for you. Kubernetes also boasts heavy involvement from the developer community.

Kubernetes Microservices with Docker will show you how to use these two powerful tools in unison to manage complex big data and enterprise applications. Installing Kubernetes on single nodes and multi-node clusters, creating multi-container pods, using Kubernetes with the Apache Hadoop Ecosystem and NoSQL Databases – it's all here, and more. So sit back, and let Deepak be your guide.

—Massimo Nardone

Chief Security Information Officer (CISO), Cargotec Oyj

## PART I



# Getting Started

## CHAPTER 1



# Installing Kubernetes Using Docker

Kubernetes is software for managing a cluster of Docker containers. Kubernetes orchestration includes scheduling, distributing workload, and scaling. Kubernetes takes the software encapsulation provided by Docker further by introducing Pods. A Pod is a collection of one or more Docker containers with single interface features such as providing networking and filesystem at the Pod level rather than at the container level. Kubernetes also introduces “labels” using which services and replication controllers (replication controller is used to scale a cluster) identify or select the containers or pods they manage. Kubernetes is lightweight, portable (suited for the cloud architecture), and modular.

Kubernetes may be run on almost any platform. Local machine solutions include local Docker based, Vagrant, and no-VM local cluster. Hosted solutions include Google Container Engine. Some of the other platforms supported by Kubernetes are Fedora (Ansible and Manual), Amazon Web Services, Mesos, vSphere, and CoreOS. Kubernetes is an orchestration software for Docker containers; the recommended solution for installation is to use the Docker Engine. In this chapter we shall install Kubernetes on Docker, which runs on Ubuntu. We shall use an Amazon EC2 instance hosting Ubuntu as the operating system. In this chapter, a single node installation of Kubernetes is discussed. Multi-node installation of Kubernetes is discussed in chapter 14. This chapter has the following sections.

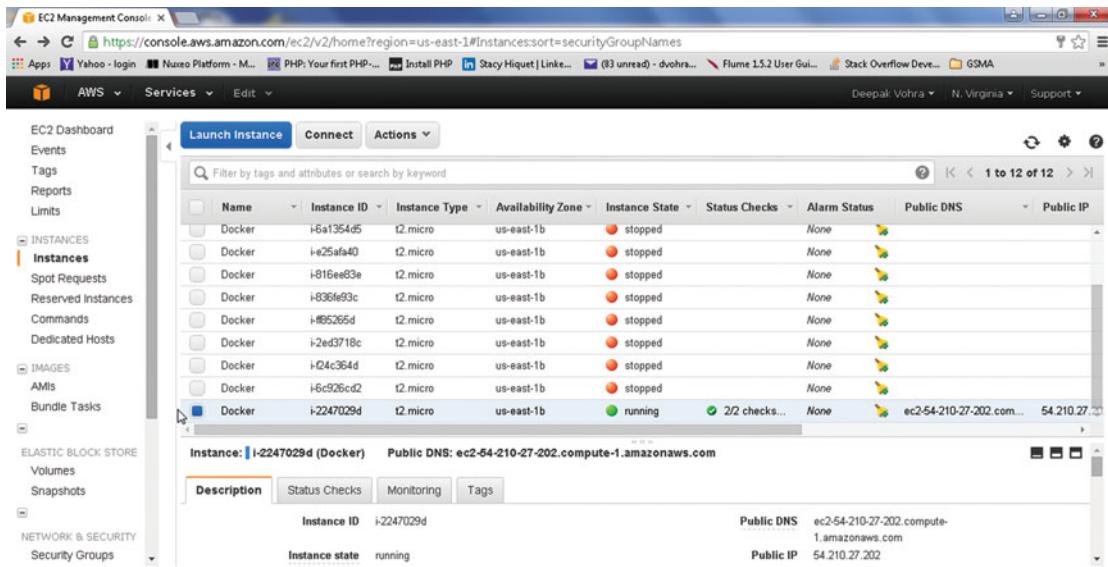
- Setting the Environment
- Installing Docker
- Installing Kubernetes
- Starting etcd
- Starting Kubernetes Master
- Starting Service Proxy
- Listing the Kubernetes Docker Containers
- Installing kubectl
- Listing Services
- Listing Nodes
- Testing the Kubernetes Installation

# Setting the Environment

The following software is required for this chapter.

- Docker Engine (latest version)
- Kubernetes (version 1.01)

Linux is required to support 64-bit software. We have used an Amazon EC2 instance created from AMI Ubuntu Server 14.04 LTS (HVM), SSD Volume Type - ami-d05e75b8. An Amazon EC2 instance based on the Ubuntu AMI is shown in Figure 1-1.



**Figure 1-1.** Amazon EC2 Instance Based on Ubuntu AMI

A different Ubuntu version may be used if the requirement of a 64-bit architecture is met. The minimum kernel version requirement is 3.10. The kernel version may be verified with the following command.

```
uname -r
```

The Public IP would be different for different users. Multiple Amazon EC2 instances and therefore multiple Public IP addresses have been used in the book as a different Public IP is assigned each time an Amazon EC2 instance is started. The Private IP Address of an Amazon EC2 instance is the same across restarts. SSH into an Ubuntu instance on Amazon EC2 (Public IP is 52.91.80.173 in following command).

```
ssh -i "docker.pem" ubuntu@52.91.80.173
```

The Amazon EC2 instance gets logged in as shown in Figure 1-2. The command prompt becomes “ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190” instead of root@localhost. Ip 172.30.1.190 is the Private IP of the Amazon EC2 instance and would also be different for different users.

```

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190: ~
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
[root@localhost ~]# ssh -i "docker.pem" ubuntu@52.91.80.173
The authenticity of host '52.91.80.173 (52.91.80.173)' can't be established.
RSA key fingerprint is 85:8c:f8:23:a0:0b:6d:05:d0:e5:16:c6:64:b1:db:f5.
Are you sure you want to continue connecting (yes/no)? yes
Warning: Permanently added '52.91.80.173' (RSA) to the list of known hosts.
Welcome to Ubuntu 14.04.3 LTS (GNU/Linux 3.13.0-66-generic x86_64)

 * Documentation:  https://help.ubuntu.com/

 System information as of Mon Dec 14 19:27:41 UTC 2015

 System load: 0.0          Memory usage: 5%    Processes:      84
 Usage of /: 97.9% of 7.74GB Swap usage:  0%    Users logged in: 0
 => / is using 97.9% of 7.74GB

 Graph this data and manage this system at:
 https://landscape.canonical.com/

 Get cloud support with Ubuntu Advantage Cloud Guest:
 http://www.ubuntu.com/business/services/cloud

 12 packages can be updated.
 6 updates are security updates.

Last login: Fri Oct 23 17:48:38 2015 from d75-157-54-139.bchsia.telus.net
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:~$ █

```

**Figure 1-2.** Logging into an Amazon EC2 instance

In the next section we shall install Docker on Ubuntu hosted on an Amazon EC2 instance.

## Installing Docker

Ubuntu uses apt for package management; apt stores a list of repositories in the /etc/apt/sources.list list. Docker's apt repository is kept in the /etc/apt/sources.list.d/docker.list file. First, add the new repository key (gpg key) for the Docker repository with the following command.

```
sudo apt-key adv --keyserver hkp://pgp.mit.edu:80 --recv-keys
58118E89F3A912897C070ADBF76221572C52609D
```

The new gpg key gets added as shown in Figure 1-3.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$ sudo apt-key adv --keyserver hkp://pgp.mit.edu:80 --recv-keys 58118E89F3A912897C070ADBF76221572C52609D
Executing: gpg --ignore-time-conflict --no-options --no-default-keyring --homedir /tmp/tmp.w2kds1HSUy --no-auto-check-trustdb --trust-model always --keyring /etc/apt/trusted.gpg --primary-keyring /etc/apt/trusted.gpg --keyserver hkp://pgp.mit.edu:80 --recv-keys 58118E89F3A912897C070ADBF76221572C52609D
gpg: requesting key 2C52609D from hkp server pgp.mit.edu
gpg: key 2C52609D: public key "Docker Release Tool (releasedocker) <docker@docke
r.com>" imported
gpg: Total number processed: 1
gpg:           imported: 1  (RSA: 1)
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$ █
```

**Figure 1-3.** Adding a new gpg key

Next, update the apt sources for the Docker repository in the /etc/apt/sources.list.d/docker.list file based on the Ubuntu distribution, which may be found with the following command.

```
lsb_release -a
```

For Ubuntu Trusty, add the following line to the /etc/apt/sources.list.d/docker.list file; the docker.list file may be opened with sudo vi /etc/apt/sources.list.d/docker.list.

```
deb https://apt.dockerproject.org/repo ubuntu-trusty main
```

Create the /etc/apt/sources.list.d/docker.list file if the file does not already exist. The updated file is shown in Figure 1-4. Save the file with the :wq command if opened in the vi editor.

The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163: ~". The menu bar includes "File", "Edit", "View", "Search", "Terminal", and "Help". A command has been entered in the terminal: "deb https://apt.dockerproject.org/repo ubuntu-trusty main". The terminal window has a scroll bar on the right side.

**Figure 1-4.** Creating the *docker.list* file

The entry to be added would be different for different Ubuntu distributions as listed in Table 1-1.

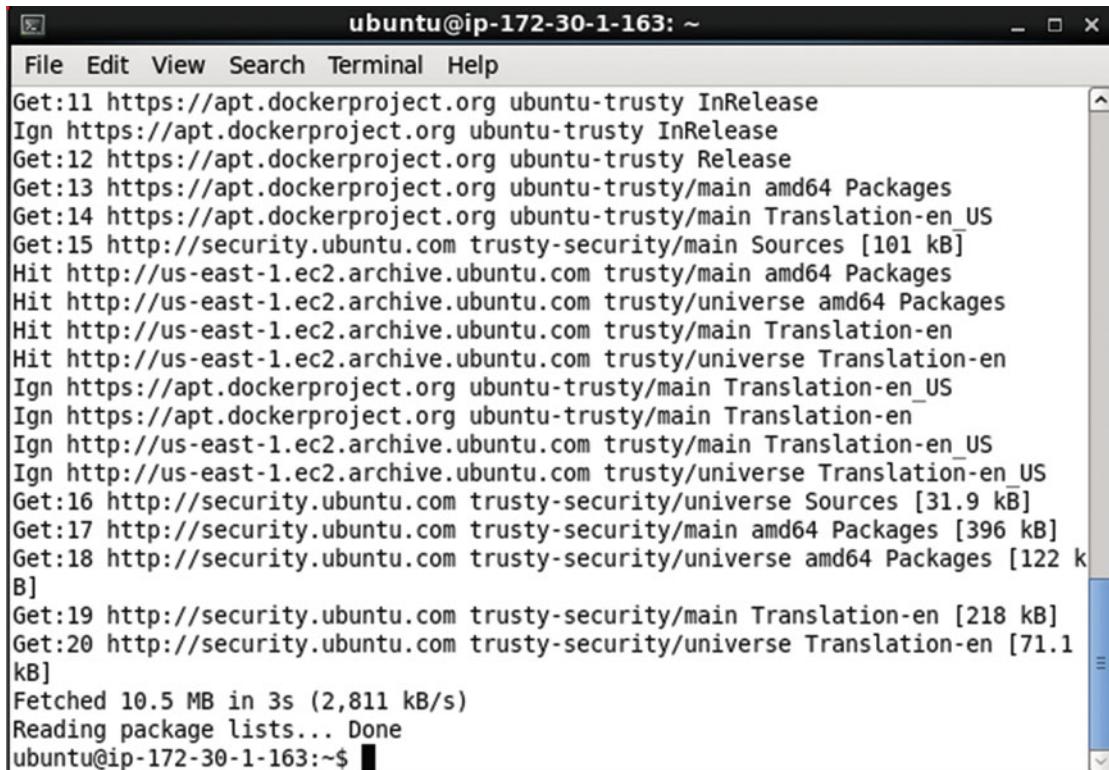
**Table 1-1.** The *docker.list* file Entry Based on Ubuntu Distribution

Ubuntu Distribution	Entry
Ubuntu Precise 12.04 (LTS)	deb <a href="https://apt.dockerproject.org/repo">https://apt.dockerproject.org/repo</a> ubuntu-precise main
Ubuntu Trusty 14.04 (LTS)	deb <a href="https://apt.dockerproject.org/repo">https://apt.dockerproject.org/repo</a> ubuntu-trusty main
Ubuntu Vivid 15.04	deb <a href="https://apt.dockerproject.org/repo">https://apt.dockerproject.org/repo</a> ubuntu-vivid main

Run the following commands after updating the /etc/apt/sources.list.d/docker.list file to update the apt package index.

```
sudo apt-get update
```

Apt package index gets updated as shown in Figure 1-5.



```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163: ~
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
Get:11 https://apt.dockerproject.org ubuntu-trusty InRelease
Ign https://apt.dockerproject.org ubuntu-trusty InRelease
Get:12 https://apt.dockerproject.org ubuntu-trusty Release
Get:13 https://apt.dockerproject.org ubuntu-trusty/main amd64 Packages
Get:14 https://apt.dockerproject.org ubuntu-trusty/main Translation-en_US
Get:15 http://security.ubuntu.com trusty-security/main Sources [101 kB]
Hit http://us-east-1.ec2.archive.ubuntu.com trusty/main amd64 Packages
Hit http://us-east-1.ec2.archive.ubuntu.com trusty/universe amd64 Packages
Hit http://us-east-1.ec2.archive.ubuntu.com trusty/main Translation-en
Hit http://us-east-1.ec2.archive.ubuntu.com trusty/universe Translation-en
Ign https://apt.dockerproject.org ubuntu-trusty/main Translation-en_US
Ign https://apt.dockerproject.org ubuntu-trusty/main Translation-en
Ign http://us-east-1.ec2.archive.ubuntu.com trusty/main Translation-en_US
Ign http://us-east-1.ec2.archive.ubuntu.com trusty/universe Translation-en
Get:16 http://security.ubuntu.com trusty-security/universe Sources [31.9 kB]
Get:17 http://security.ubuntu.com trusty-security/main amd64 Packages [396 kB]
Get:18 http://security.ubuntu.com trusty-security/universe amd64 Packages [122 kB]
Get:19 http://security.ubuntu.com trusty-security/main Translation-en [218 kB]
Get:20 http://security.ubuntu.com trusty-security/universe Translation-en [71.1 kB]
Fetched 10.5 MB in 3s (2,811 kB/s)
Reading package lists... Done
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$
```

**Figure 1-5.** Updating Ubuntu Package List

Purge the old repository if it exists with the following command.

```
sudo apt-get purge lxc-docker*
```

The output in Figure 1-6 indicates that the old packages lxc-docker and lxc-docker-virtual-package are not installed and therefore not removed.

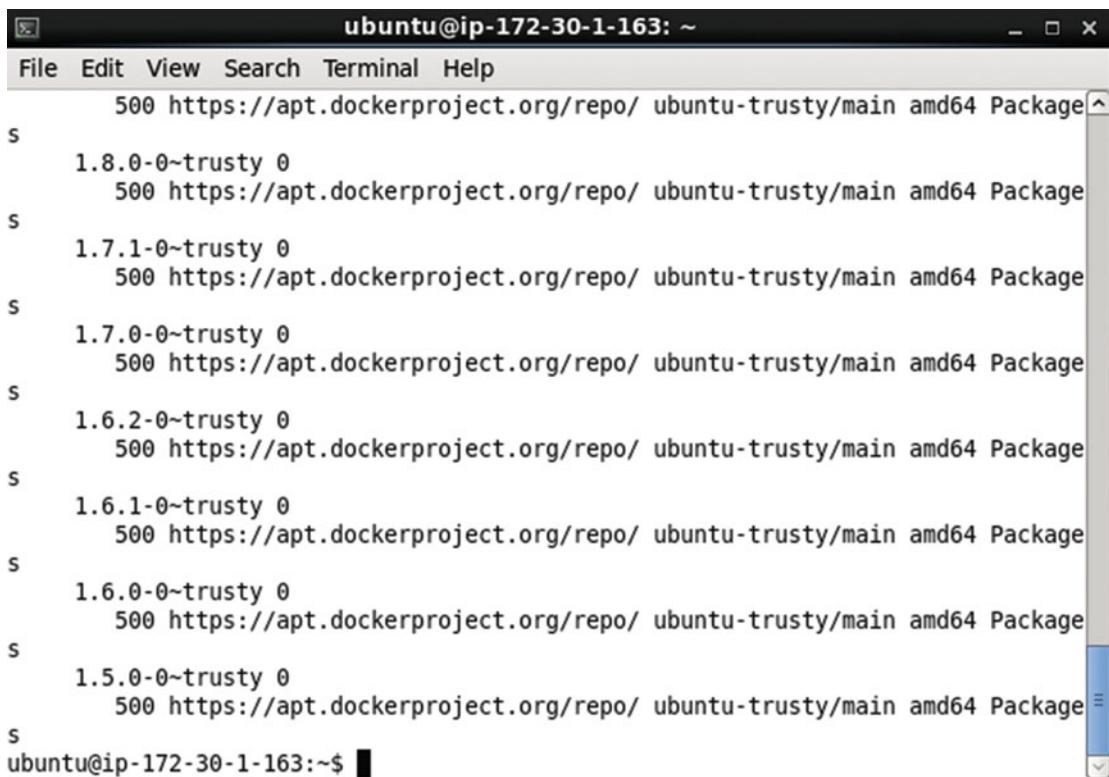
```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$ sudo apt-get purge lxc-docker*
Reading package lists... Done
Building dependency tree
Reading state information... Done
Note, selecting 'lxc-docker' for regex 'lxc-docker*'
Note, selecting 'lxc-docker-virtual-package' for regex 'lxc-docker*'
Package 'lxc-docker' is not installed, so not removed
Package 'lxc-docker-virtual-package' is not installed, so not removed
0 upgraded, 0 newly installed, 0 to remove and 139 not upgraded.
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$ █
```

**Figure 1-6.** Purguing the Old Repository

Run the following command to verify that apt is pulling from the updated repository for Docker.

```
sudo apt-cache policy docker-engine
```

The output in Figure 1-7 indicates that the new repository ubuntu-trusty as specified in the /etc/apt/sources.list.d/docker.list is being used.



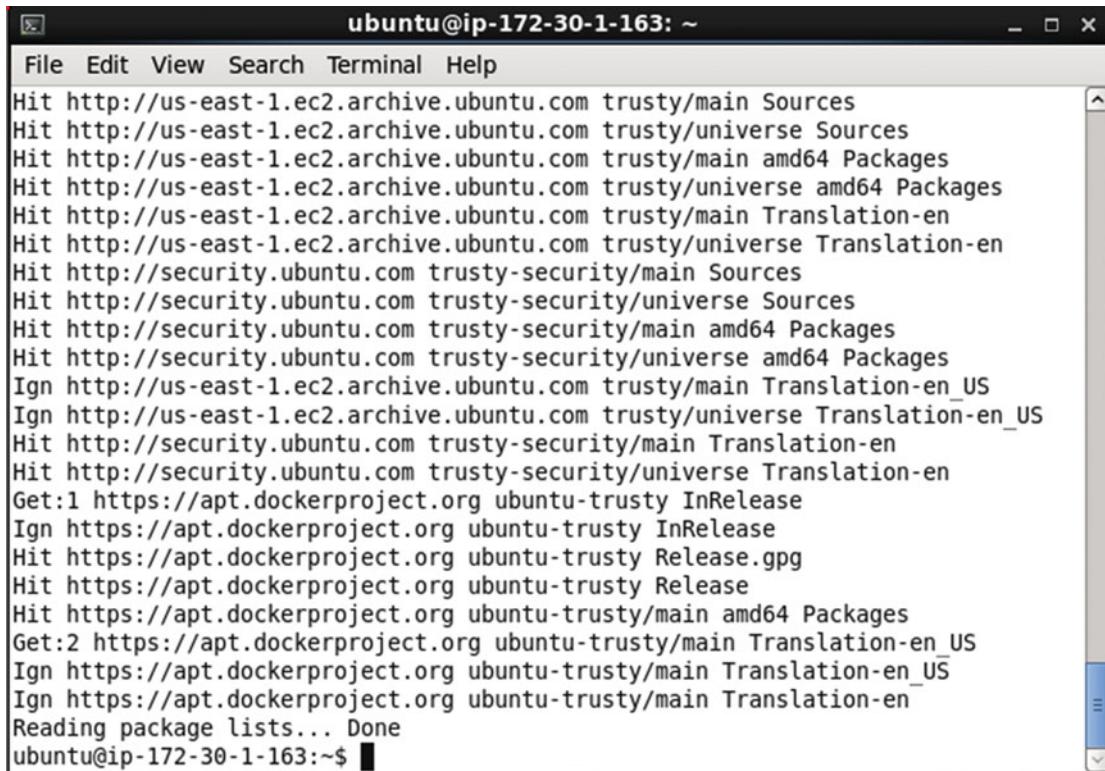
```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163: ~
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
      500 https://apt.dockerproject.org/repo/ ubuntu-trusty/main amd64 Package
S
  1.8.0-0~trusty 0
      500 https://apt.dockerproject.org/repo/ ubuntu-trusty/main amd64 Package
S
  1.7.1-0~trusty 0
      500 https://apt.dockerproject.org/repo/ ubuntu-trusty/main amd64 Package
S
  1.7.0-0~trusty 0
      500 https://apt.dockerproject.org/repo/ ubuntu-trusty/main amd64 Package
S
  1.6.2-0~trusty 0
      500 https://apt.dockerproject.org/repo/ ubuntu-trusty/main amd64 Package
S
  1.6.1-0~trusty 0
      500 https://apt.dockerproject.org/repo/ ubuntu-trusty/main amd64 Package
S
  1.6.0-0~trusty 0
      500 https://apt.dockerproject.org/repo/ ubuntu-trusty/main amd64 Package
S
  1.5.0-0~trusty 0
      500 https://apt.dockerproject.org/repo/ ubuntu-trusty/main amd64 Package
S
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$ █
```

**Figure 1-7.** Using the Updated Repository verification

Next, install the prerequisites for Ubuntu, but first update the package manager with the following command.

```
sudo apt-get update
```

The package manager gets updated as shown in Figure 1-8.



```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163: ~
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
Hit http://us-east-1.ec2.archive.ubuntu.com trusty/main Sources
Hit http://us-east-1.ec2.archive.ubuntu.com trusty/universe Sources
Hit http://us-east-1.ec2.archive.ubuntu.com trusty/main amd64 Packages
Hit http://us-east-1.ec2.archive.ubuntu.com trusty/universe amd64 Packages
Hit http://us-east-1.ec2.archive.ubuntu.com trusty/main Translation-en
Hit http://us-east-1.ec2.archive.ubuntu.com trusty/universe Translation-en
Hit http://security.ubuntu.com trusty-security/main Sources
Hit http://security.ubuntu.com trusty-security/universe Sources
Hit http://security.ubuntu.com trusty-security/main amd64 Packages
Hit http://security.ubuntu.com trusty-security/universe amd64 Packages
Ign http://us-east-1.ec2.archive.ubuntu.com trusty/main Translation-en_US
Ign http://us-east-1.ec2.archive.ubuntu.com trusty/universe Translation-en_US
Hit http://security.ubuntu.com trusty-security/main Translation-en
Hit http://security.ubuntu.com trusty-security/universe Translation-en
Get:1 https://apt.dockerproject.org ubuntu-trusty InRelease
Ign https://apt.dockerproject.org ubuntu-trusty InRelease
Hit https://apt.dockerproject.org ubuntu-trusty Release.gpg
Hit https://apt.dockerproject.org ubuntu-trusty Release
Hit https://apt.dockerproject.org ubuntu-trusty/main amd64 Packages
Get:2 https://apt.dockerproject.org ubuntu-trusty/main Translation-en_US
Ign https://apt.dockerproject.org ubuntu-trusty/main Translation-en_US
Ign https://apt.dockerproject.org ubuntu-trusty/main Translation-en
Reading package lists... Done
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$
```

**Figure 1-8.** Updating the Package Manager

Install the prerequisite linux-image-extra package with the following command.

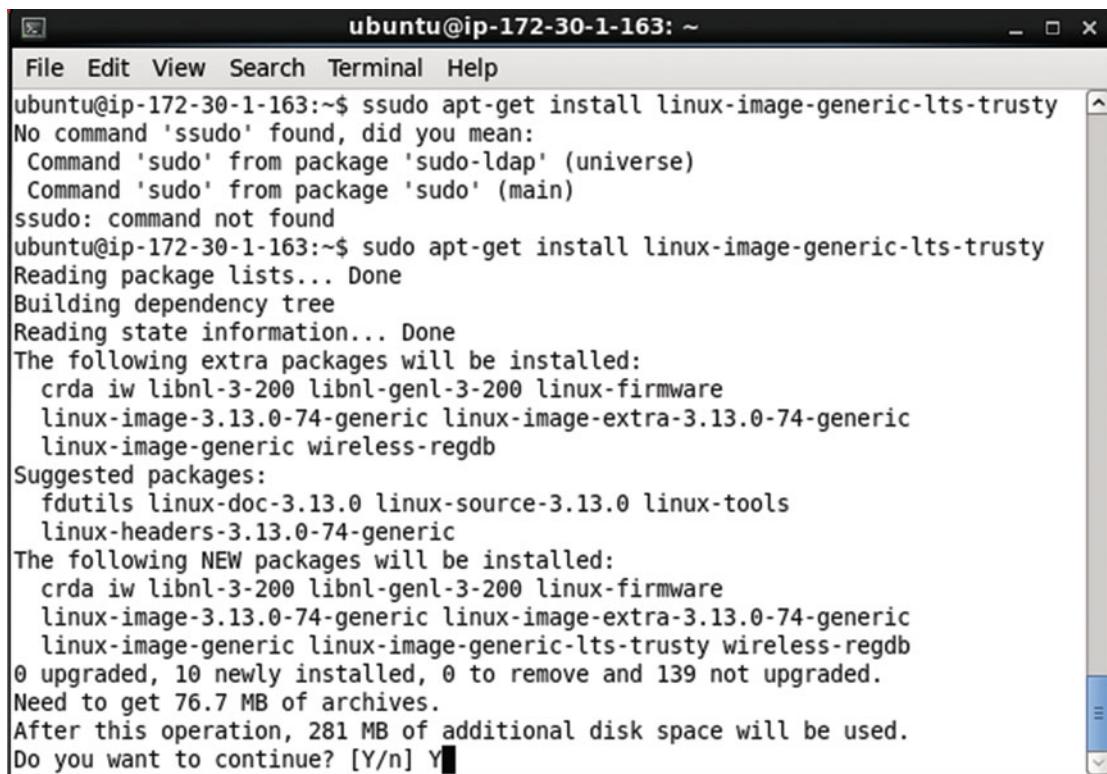
```
sudo apt-get install linux-image-generic-lts-trusty
```

When the preceding command is run, select Y if prompted with the following message.

*After this operation, 281 MB of additional disk space will be used.*

*Do you want to continue? [Y/n]*

The message prompt is shown in Figure 1-9.



A screenshot of a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163: ~". The window contains the following text:

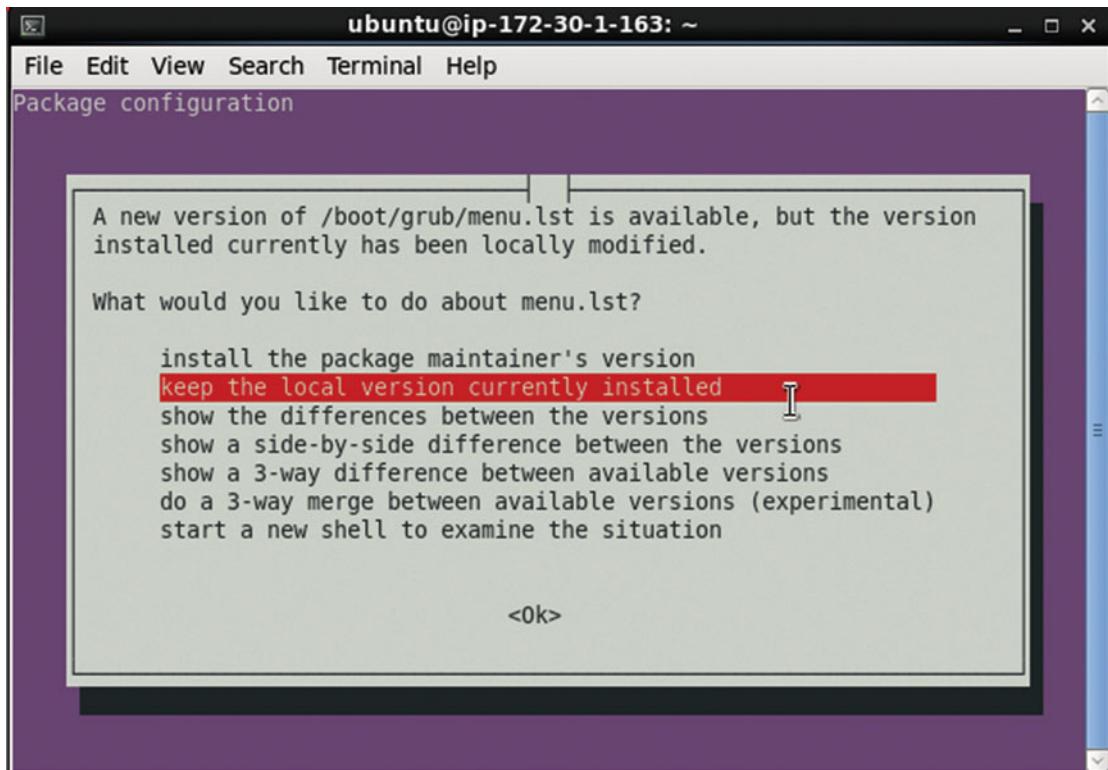
```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$ ssudo apt-get install linux-image-generic-lts-trusty
No command 'ssudo' found, did you mean:
 Command 'sudo' from package 'sudo-ldap' (universe)
 Command 'sudo' from package 'sudo' (main)
ssudo: command not found
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$ sudo apt-get install linux-image-generic-lts-trusty
Reading package lists... Done
Building dependency tree
Reading state information... Done
The following extra packages will be installed:
  crda iw libnl-3-200 libnl-genl-3-200 linux-firmware
    linux-image-3.13.0-74-generic linux-image-extra-3.13.0-74-generic
    linux-image-generic wireless-regdb
Suggested packages:
  fdutils linux-doc-3.13.0 linux-source-3.13.0 linux-tools
  linux-headers-3.13.0-74-generic
The following NEW packages will be installed:
  crda iw libnl-3-200 libnl-genl-3-200 linux-firmware
    linux-image-3.13.0-74-generic linux-image-extra-3.13.0-74-generic
    linux-image-generic linux-image-generic-lts-trusty wireless-regdb
0 upgraded, 10 newly installed, 0 to remove and 139 not upgraded.
Need to get 76.7 MB of archives.
After this operation, 281 MB of additional disk space will be used.
Do you want to continue? [Y/n] Y
```

**Figure 1-9.** Message Prompt to Continue

Subsequently, before the command completes, a Package Configuration dialog might prompt with the following message:

*A new version of /boot/grub/menu.lst is available, but the version installed currently has been locally modified. What would you like to do about menu.lst?*

Select the default selection, which is “keep the local version currently installed” and click on Enter as shown in Figure 1-10.



**Figure 1-10.** Selecting the Default Package Configuration

Reboot the system with the following command.

```
sudo reboot
```

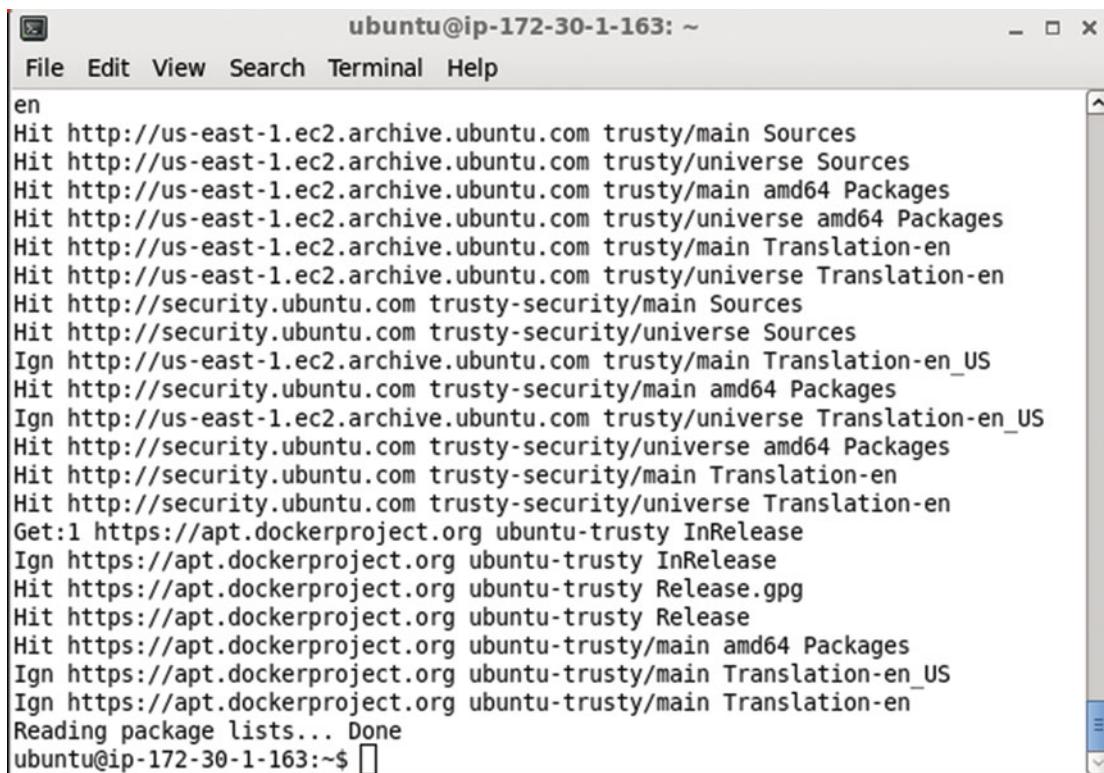
When the sudo reboot command is run the AmazonEC2 instance is exited. Reconnect with the Amazon EC2 Ubuntu instance with the same ssh command as before.

```
ssh -i "docker.pem" ubuntu@52.91.80.173
```

After the host system reboots, update the package manager again with the following command.

```
sudo apt-get update
```

Package manager gets updated as shown in Figure 1-11.



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163: ~". The window contains the output of an "apt update" command. The output lists various package sources and their URLs, including "Sources" and "Translation-en\_US" files for the "main" and "universe" repositories from "http://us-east-1.ec2.archive.ubuntu.com". It also includes entries for "InRelease" and "Release.gpg" files from "https://apt.dockerproject.org". The process concludes with "Reading package lists... Done".

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163: ~
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
en
Hit http://us-east-1.ec2.archive.ubuntu.com trusty/main Sources
Hit http://us-east-1.ec2.archive.ubuntu.com trusty/universe Sources
Hit http://us-east-1.ec2.archive.ubuntu.com trusty/main amd64 Packages
Hit http://us-east-1.ec2.archive.ubuntu.com trusty/universe amd64 Packages
Hit http://us-east-1.ec2.archive.ubuntu.com trusty/main Translation-en
Hit http://us-east-1.ec2.archive.ubuntu.com trusty/universe Translation-en
Hit http://security.ubuntu.com trusty-security/main Sources
Hit http://security.ubuntu.com trusty-security/universe Sources
Ign http://us-east-1.ec2.archive.ubuntu.com trusty/main Translation-en_US
Hit http://security.ubuntu.com trusty-security/main amd64 Packages
Ign http://us-east-1.ec2.archive.ubuntu.com trusty/universe Translation-en_US
Hit http://security.ubuntu.com trusty-security/universe amd64 Packages
Hit http://security.ubuntu.com trusty-security/main Translation-en
Hit http://security.ubuntu.com trusty-security/universe Translation-en
Get:1 https://apt.dockerproject.org ubuntu-trusty InRelease
Ign https://apt.dockerproject.org ubuntu-trusty InRelease
Hit https://apt.dockerproject.org ubuntu-trusty Release.gpg
Hit https://apt.dockerproject.org ubuntu-trusty Release
Hit https://apt.dockerproject.org ubuntu-trusty/main amd64 Packages
Ign https://apt.dockerproject.org ubuntu-trusty/main Translation-en_US
Ign https://apt.dockerproject.org ubuntu-trusty/main Translation-en
Reading package lists... Done
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$
```

**Figure 1-11.** Updating Package Manager List after Reboot

Install Docker with the following command.

```
sudo apt-get install docker-engine
```

Select Y at the following prompt, if displayed, as shown in Figure 1-12.

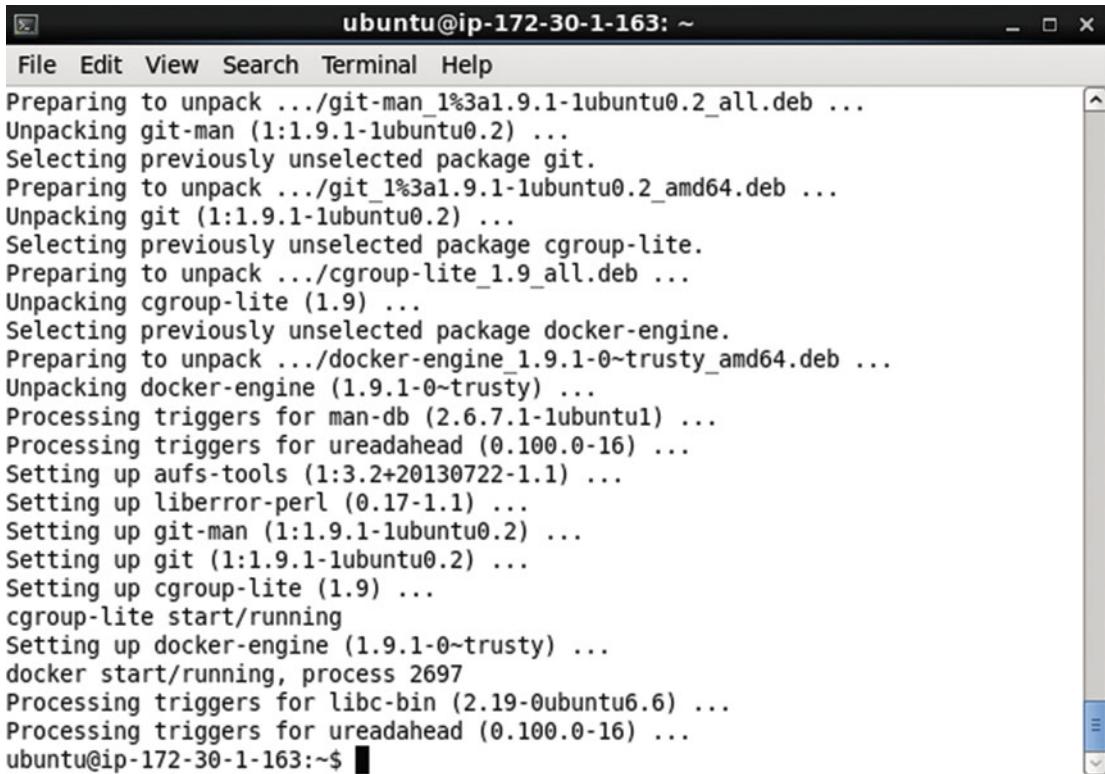
*After this operation, 60.3 MB of additional disk space will be used.*

*Do you want to continue? [Y/n]*

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$ sudo apt-get install docker-engine
Reading package lists... Done
Building dependency tree
Reading state information... Done
The following extra packages will be installed:
  aufs-tools cgroup-lite git git-man liberror-perl
Suggested packages:
  git-daemon-run git-daemon-sysvinit git-doc git-el git-email git-gui gitk
  gitweb git-arch git-bzr git-cvs git-mediawiki git-svn
The following NEW packages will be installed:
  aufs-tools cgroup-lite docker-engine git git-man liberror-perl
0 upgraded, 6 newly installed, 0 to remove and 139 not upgraded.
Need to get 11.0 MB of archives.
After this operation, 60.3 MB of additional disk space will be used.
Do you want to continue? [Y/n] Y
```

**Figure 1-12.** Message Prompt about the additional disk space being added

The Docker engine gets installed as shown in Figure 1-13.



A screenshot of a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163: ~". The window shows the process of installing the Docker Engine. The text output is as follows:

```
Preparing to unpack .../git-man_1%3a1.9.1-1ubuntu0.2_all.deb ...
Unpacking git-man (1:1.9.1-1ubuntu0.2) ...
Selecting previously unselected package git.
Preparing to unpack .../git_1%3a1.9.1-1ubuntu0.2_amd64.deb ...
Unpacking git (1:1.9.1-1ubuntu0.2) ...
Selecting previously unselected package cgroup-lite.
Preparing to unpack .../cgrouplite_1.9_all.deb ...
Unpacking cgrouplite (1.9) ...
Selecting previously unselected package docker-engine.
Preparing to unpack .../docker-engine_1.9.1-0~trusty_amd64.deb ...
Unpacking docker-engine (1.9.1-0~trusty) ...
Processing triggers for man-db (2.6.7.1-1ubuntu1) ...
Processing triggers for ureadahead (0.100.0-16) ...
Setting up aufs-tools (1:3.2+20130722-1.1) ...
Setting up liberror-perl (0.17-1.1) ...
Setting up git-man (1:1.9.1-1ubuntu0.2) ...
Setting up git (1:1.9.1-1ubuntu0.2) ...
Setting up cgrouplite (1.9) ...
cgrouplite start/running
Setting up docker-engine (1.9.1-0~trusty) ...
docker start/running, process 2697
Processing triggers for libc-bin (2.19-0ubuntu6.6) ...
Processing triggers for ureadahead (0.100.0-16) ...
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$
```

**Figure 1-13.** Installing the Docker Engine

Start the Docker service with the following command.

```
sudo service docker start
```

To verify the status of the Docker service, run the following command.

```
sudo service docker status
```

The output from the preceding commands is shown in Figure 1-14. The docker engine is indicated as running as process 2697.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$ sudo service docker start
start: Job is already running: docker
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$ sudo service docker status
docker start/running, process 2697
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$ █
```

**Figure 1-14.** Starting Docker and verifying its Status

Having installed Docker, next we shall install Kubernetes.

## Installing Kubernetes

Kubernetes is an open source container cluster manager. The main components of Kubernetes are the following:

1. etcd
2. Kubernetes master
3. Service proxy
4. kubelet

etcd is a simple, secure, fast and reliable distributed key-value store.

Kubernetes master exposes the Kubernetes API using which containers are run on nodes to handle tasks.

kubelet is an agent that runs on each node to monitor the containers running on the node, restarting them if required to keep the replication level.

A service proxy runs on each node to provide the Kubernetes service interface for clients. A service is an abstraction for the logical set of pods represented by the service, and a service selector is used to select the pods represented by the service. The service proxy routes the client traffic to a matching pod. Labels are used to match a service with a pod.

Optionally create a directory (/kubernetes) to install Kubernetes and set its permissions to global (777).

```
sudo mkdir /kubernetes
sudo chmod -R 777 /kubernetes
```

The output from the preceding commands is shown in Figure 1-15.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:~$ sudo mkdir /kubernetes
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:~$ sudo chmod -R 777 /kubernetes
```

**Figure 1-15.** Creating a Directory to install Kubernetes

Change directory to the /kubernetes directory and start the Docker engine.

```
cd /kubernetes
sudo service docker start
```

If the Docker Engine is not running, it gets started. The Docker Engine is shown as already running in Figure 1-16.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:~$ cd /kubernetes
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:/kubernetes$ sudo service docker start
start: Job is already running: docker
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:/kubernetes$ █
```

**Figure 1-16.** Starting Docker if not already running

As a prerequisite we need to set some Linux kernel parameters if not already set. Add support for memory and swap accounting. The following configs should be turned on in the kernel.

```
CONFIG_RESOURCE_COUNTERS=y
CONFIG_MEMCG=y
CONFIG_MEMCG_SWAP=y
CONFIG_MEMCG_SWAP_ENABLED=y
CONFIG_MEMCG_KMEM=y
```

The kernel configs are enabled when the Ubuntu system boots and the kernel configuration file is in the /boot directory. Change directory (cd) to the /boot directory and list the files/directories.

```
cd /boot
ls -l
```

The files in the /boot directory get listed as shown in Figure 1-17. The kernel configs are configured in the config-3.13.0-48-generic file. The kernel version could be different for different users; for example, the kernel config file could /boot/config-3.13.0-66-generic.

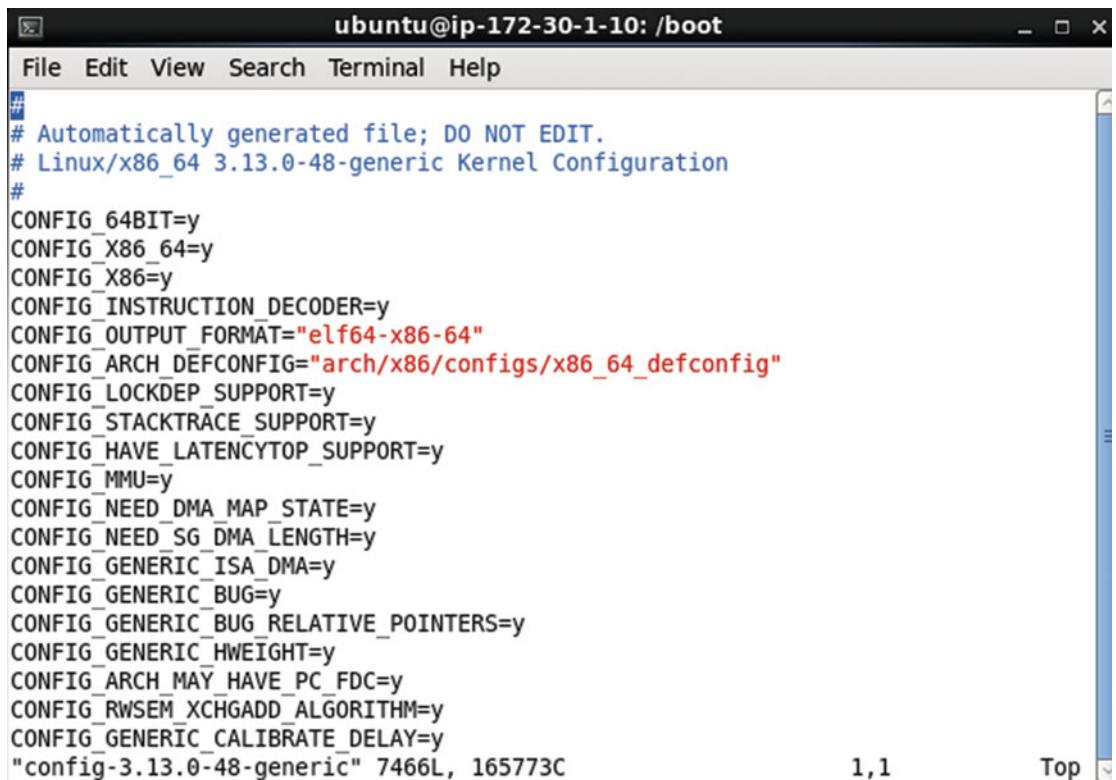
```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-10:/$ cd /boot
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-10:/boot$ ls -l
total 51924
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 1164723 Mar 12 2015 abi-3.13.0-48-generic
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 1165334 Dec 18 00:42 abi-3.13.0-74-generic
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 165773 Mar 12 2015 config-3.13.0-48-generic
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 165763 Dec 18 00:42 config-3.13.0-74-generic
drwxr-xr-x 5 root root 4096 Jan 2 18:42 grub
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 7266051 Mar 25 2015 initrd.img-3.13.0-48-generic
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 24794508 Jan 1 04:10 initrd.img-3.13.0-74-generic
-rw----- 1 root root 3389235 Mar 12 2015 System.map-3.13.0-48-generic
-rw----- 1 root root 3392888 Dec 18 00:42 System.map-3.13.0-74-generic
-rw----- 1 root root 5815680 Mar 12 2015 vmlinuz-3.13.0-48-generic
-rw----- 1 root root 5825376 Dec 18 00:42 vmlinuz-3.13.0-74-generic
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-10:/boot$
```

**Figure 1-17.** Listing the Files in the /boot Directory

Open the config-3.13.0-48-generic file in a vi editor.

```
sudo vi /boot/config-3.13.0-48-generic
```

The kernel configuration parameters get listed as shown in Figure 1-18.

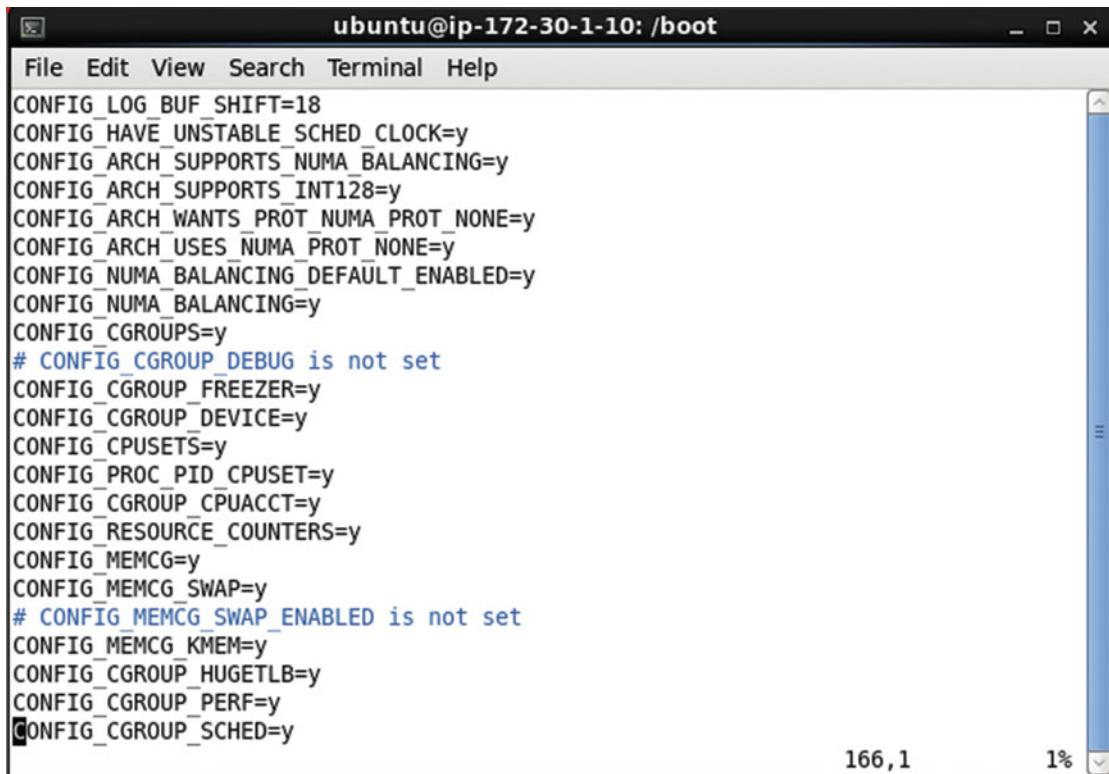


The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-10: /boot". The window contains the kernel configuration parameters for the config-3.13.0-48-generic file. The configuration includes various kernel options like CONFIG\_64BIT=y, CONFIG\_X86\_64=y, and CONFIG\_OUTPUT\_FORMAT="elf64-x86-64". It also lists specific configurations such as CONFIG\_ARCH\_DEFCONFIG="arch/x86/configs/x86\_64\_defconfig" and CONFIG\_GENERIC\_ISA\_DMA=y. The file ends with the line "config-3.13.0-48-generic" followed by its file size (7466L) and checksum (165773C).

```
# Automatically generated file; DO NOT EDIT.
# Linux/x86_64 3.13.0-48-generic Kernel Configuration
#
CONFIG_64BIT=y
CONFIG_X86_64=y
CONFIG_X86=y
CONFIG_INSTRUCTION_DECODER=y
CONFIG_OUTPUT_FORMAT="elf64-x86-64"
CONFIG_ARCH_DEFCONFIG="arch/x86/configs/x86_64_defconfig"
CONFIG_LOCKDEP_SUPPORT=y
CONFIG_STACKTRACE_SUPPORT=y
CONFIG_HAVE_LATENCYTOP_SUPPORT=y
CONFIG_MMU=y
CONFIG_NEED_DMA_MAP_STATE=y
CONFIG_NEED_SG_DMA_LENGTH=y
CONFIG_GENERIC_ISA_DMA=y
CONFIG_GENERIC_BUG=y
CONFIG_GENERIC_BUG_RELATIVE_POINTERS=y
CONFIG_GENERIC_HWEIGHT=y
CONFIG_ARCH_MAY_HAVE_PC_FDC=y
CONFIG_RWSEM_XCHGADD_ALGORITHM=y
CONFIG_GENERIC_CALIBRATE_DELAY=y
"config-3.13.0-48-generic" 7466L, 165773C
```

**Figure 1-18.** Kernel Configuration Parameter

Most of the configs listed earlier are already turned on as shown in Figure 1-19. The CONFIG\_MEMCG\_SWAP\_ENABLED config is not set.

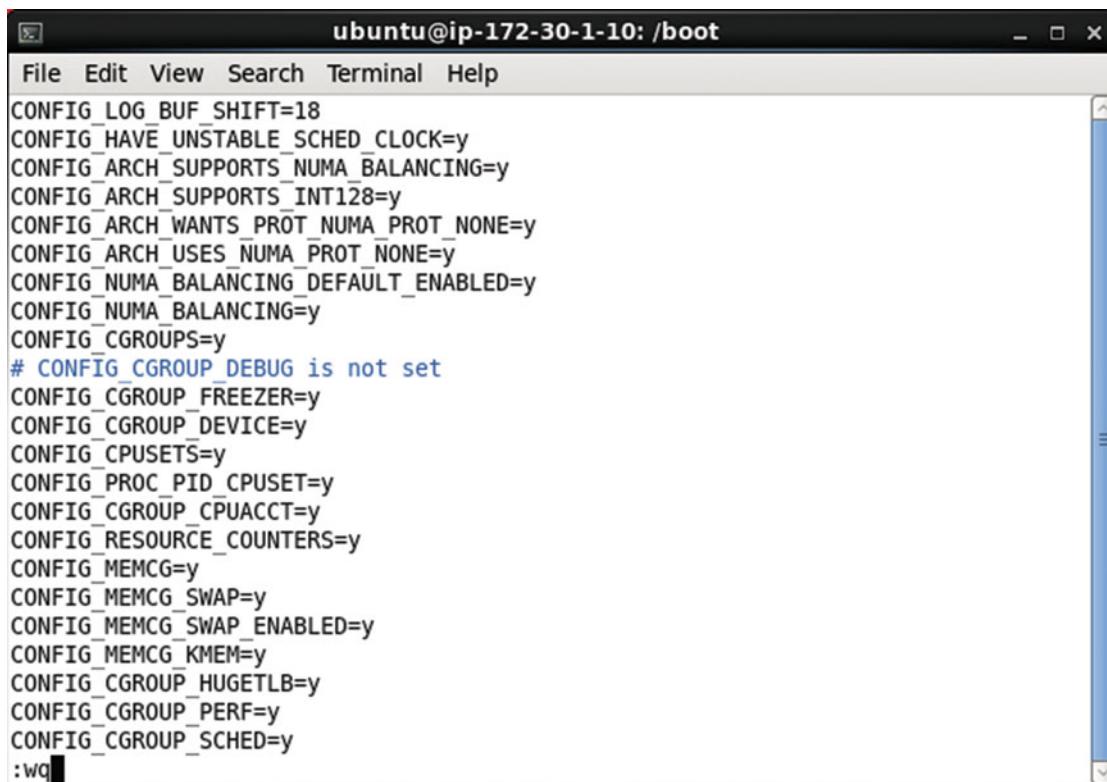


The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-10: /boot". The window contains a list of kernel configuration parameters. Most parameters are set to "y" (yes), while CONFIG\_MEMCG\_SWAP is set to "y" and CONFIG\_MEMCG\_SWAP\_ENABLED is commented out with "#". The terminal window has a dark theme with a light-colored text area. The status bar at the bottom right shows "166, 1" and "1%".

```
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
CONFIG_LOG_BUF_SHIFT=18
CONFIG_HAVE_UNSTABLE_SCHED_CLOCK=y
CONFIG_ARCH_SUPPORTS_NUMA_BALANCING=y
CONFIG_ARCH_SUPPORTS_INT128=y
CONFIG_ARCH_WANTS_PROT_NUMA_PROT_NONE=y
CONFIG_ARCH_USES_NUMA_PROT_NONE=y
CONFIG_NUMA_BALANCING_DEFAULT_ENABLED=y
CONFIG_NUMA_BALANCING=y
CONFIG_CGROUPS=y
# CONFIG_CGROUP_DEBUG is not set
CONFIG_CGROUP_FREEZER=y
CONFIG_CGROUP_DEVICE=y
CONFIG_CPUSETS=y
CONFIG_PROC_PID_CPUSET=y
CONFIG_CGROUP_CPUACCT=y
CONFIG_RESOURCE_COUNTERS=y
CONFIG_MEMCG=y
CONFIG_MEMCG_SWAP=y
# CONFIG_MEMCG_SWAP_ENABLED is not set
CONFIG_MEMCG_KMEM=y
CONFIG_CGROUP_HUGETLB=y
CONFIG_CGROUP_PERF=y
CONFIG_CGROUP_SCHED=y
```

**Figure 1-19.** Most of the Required Kernel Parameters are already Set

Set CONFIG\_MEMCG\_SWAP\_ENABLED=y and save the kernel configuration file as shown in Figure 1-20.



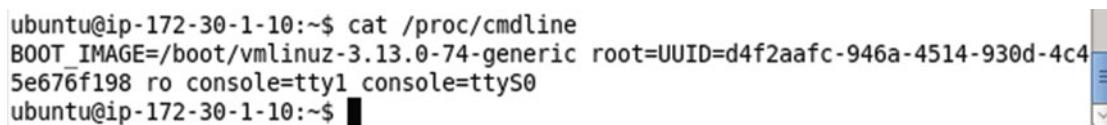
```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-10: /boot
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
CONFIG_LOG_BUF_SHIFT=18
CONFIG_HAVE_UNSTABLE_SCHED_CLOCK=y
CONFIG_ARCH_SUPPORTS_NUMA_BALANCING=y
CONFIG_ARCH_SUPPORTS_INT128=y
CONFIG_ARCH_WANTS_PROT_NUMA_PROT_NONE=y
CONFIG_ARCH_USES_NUMA_PROT_NONE=y
CONFIG_NUMA_BALANCING_DEFAULT_ENABLED=y
CONFIG_NUMA_BALANCING=y
CONFIG_CGROUPS=y
# CONFIG_CGROUP_DEBUG is not set
CONFIG_CGROUP_FREEZER=y
CONFIG_CGROUP_DEVICE=y
CONFIG_CPUSETS=y
CONFIG_PROC_PID_CPUSET=y
CONFIG_CGROUP_CPUACCT=y
CONFIG_RESOURCE_COUNTERS=y
CONFIG_MEMCG=y
CONFIG_MEMCG_SWAP=y
CONFIG_MEMCG_SWAP_ENABLED=y
CONFIG_MEMCG_KMEM=y
CONFIG_CGROUP_HUGETLB=y
CONFIG_CGROUP_PERF=y
CONFIG_CGROUP_SCHED=y
:wq
```

**Figure 1-20.** Setting the CONFIG\_MEMCG\_SWAP\_ENABLED Kernel Parameter

Next, we need to add support for memory and swap accounting to the kernel. The command-line parameters provided to the kernel may be listed with the following command.

```
cat /proc/cmdline
```

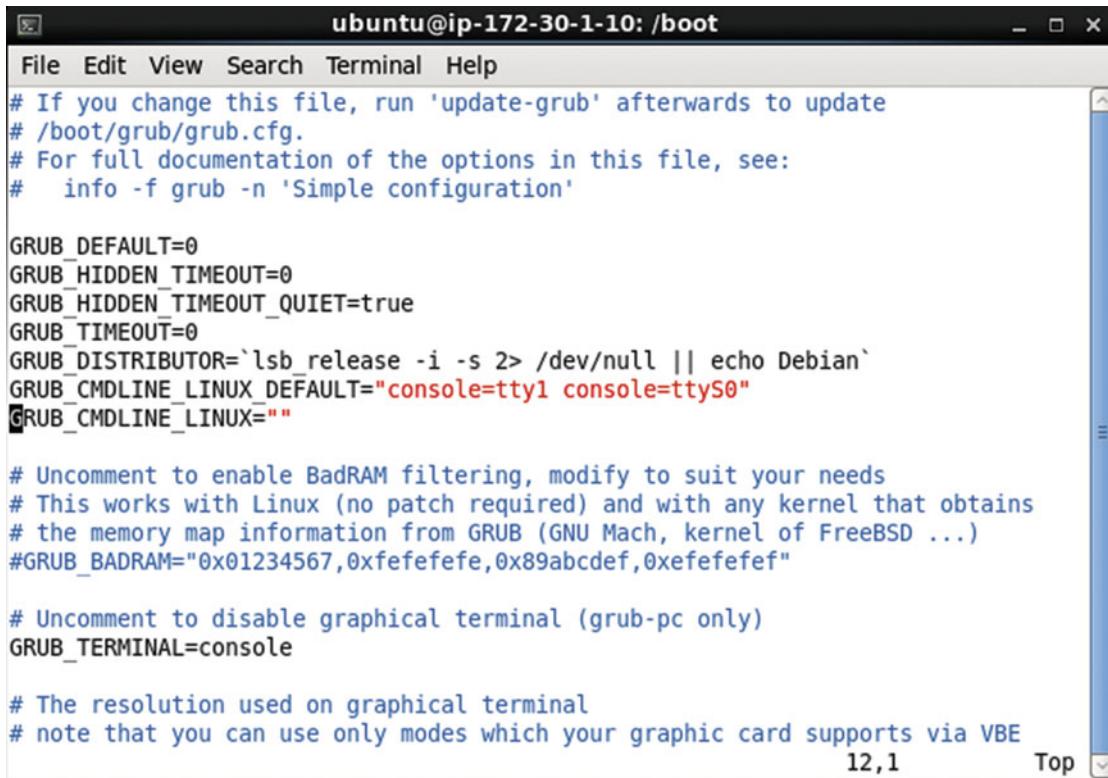
As shown in Figure 1-21 memory and swap accounting are not turned on.



```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-10:~$ cat /proc/cmdline
BOOT_IMAGE=/boot/vmlinuz-3.13.0-74-generic root=UUID=d4f2aafc-946a-4514-930d-4c4
5e676f198 ro console=tty1 console=ttyS0
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-10:~$
```

**Figure 1-21.** Listing the Command-Line Parameters

Grub 2 is the default boot loader for Ubuntu. To turn on memory and swap accounting, open the /etc/default/grub file in the vi editor. The GRUB\_CMDLINE\_LINUX is set to an empty string as shown in Figure 1-22.



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-10: /boot". The window contains the content of the /etc/default/grub file. The file includes comments about updating grub after changes, documentation, and various GRUB configuration variables like GRUB\_DEFAULT, GRUB\_HIDDEN\_TIMEOUT, and GRUB\_CMDLINE\_LINUX. A specific line, GRUB\_CMDLINE\_LINUX, is highlighted in red. The bottom right corner of the terminal shows the status bar with "12,1" and "Top".

```
# If you change this file, run 'update-grub' afterwards to update
# /boot/grub/grub.cfg.
# For full documentation of the options in this file, see:
#   info -f grub -n 'Simple configuration'

GRUB_DEFAULT=0
GRUB_HIDDEN_TIMEOUT=0
GRUB_HIDDEN_TIMEOUT_QUIET=true
GRUB_TIMEOUT=0
GRUB_DISTRIBUTOR=`lsb_release -i -s 2> /dev/null || echo Debian`
GRUB_CMDLINE_LINUX_DEFAULT="console=tty1 console=ttyS0"
GRUB_CMDLINE_LINUX=""

# Uncomment to enable BadRAM filtering, modify to suit your needs
# This works with Linux (no patch required) and with any kernel that obtains
# the memory map information from GRUB (GNU Mach, kernel of FreeBSD ...)
#GRUB_BADRAM="0x01234567,0xfefefefe,0x89abcdef,0xefefefef"

# Uncomment to disable graphical terminal (grub-pc only)
GRUB_TERMINAL=console

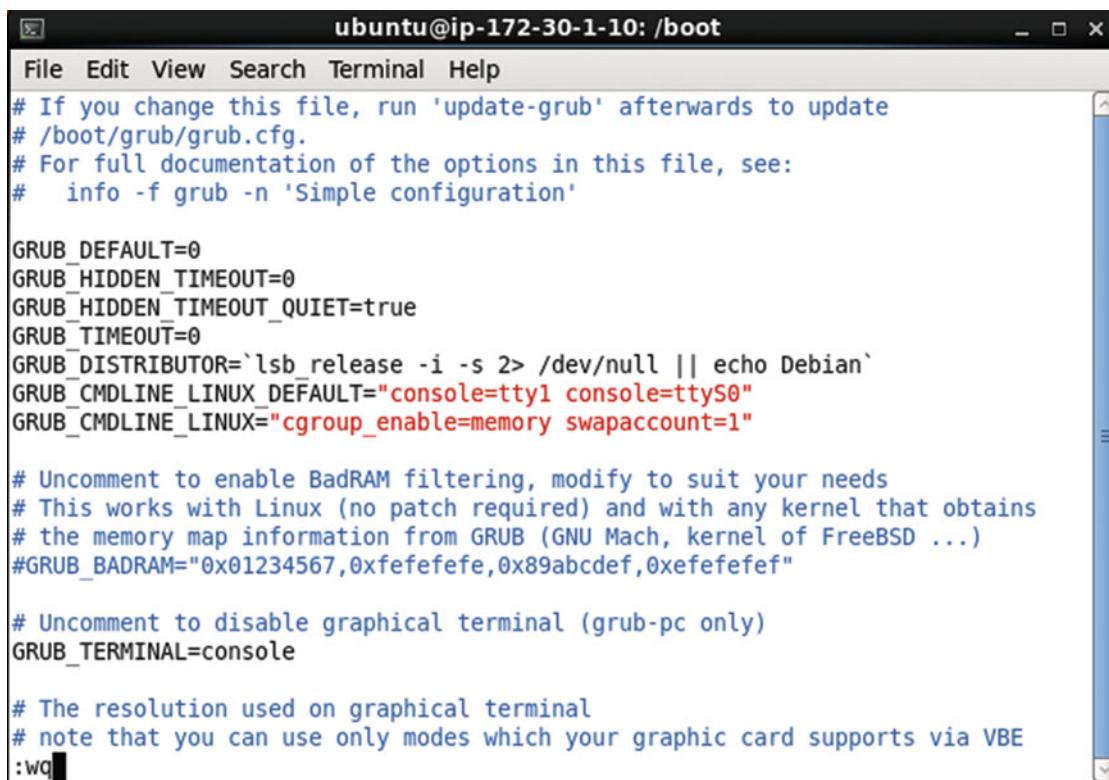
# The resolution used on graphical terminal
# note that you can use only modes which your graphic card supports via VBE
```

Figure 1-22. The /etc/default/grub file

Set the GRUB\_CMDLINE\_LINUX as follows, which enables memory and swap accounting in the kernel at boot.

```
GRUB_CMDLINE_LINUX="cgroup_enable=memory swapaccount=1"
```

The modified /etc/default/grub file is shown in Figure 1-23. Save the file with the :wq command.



```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-10: /boot
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
# If you change this file, run 'update-grub' afterwards to update
# /boot/grub/grub.cfg.
# For full documentation of the options in this file, see:
#   info -f grub -n 'Simple configuration'

GRUB_DEFAULT=0
GRUB_HIDDEN_TIMEOUT=0
GRUB_HIDDEN_TIMEOUT_QUIET=true
GRUB_TIMEOUT=0
GRUB_DISTRIBUTOR=`lsb_release -i -s 2> /dev/null || echo Debian`
GRUB_CMDLINE_LINUX_DEFAULT="console=tty1 console=ttyS0"
GRUB_CMDLINE_LINUX="cgroup_enable=memory swapaccount=1"

# Uncomment to enable BadRAM filtering, modify to suit your needs
# This works with Linux (no patch required) and with any kernel that obtains
# the memory map information from GRUB (GNU Mach, kernel of FreeBSD ...)
#GRUB_BADRAM="0x01234567,0xfefefefe,0x89abcdef,0xefefefef"

# Uncomment to disable graphical terminal (grub-pc only)
GRUB_TERMINAL=console

# The resolution used on graphical terminal
# note that you can use only modes which your graphic card supports via VBE
:wq
```

**Figure 1-23.** Modified /etc/default/grub file

Update the grub.cfg file with the following command.

```
sudo update-grub
```

The grub configuration file gets generated as shown in Figure 1-24.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-10:~$ sudo update-grub
Generating grub configuration file ...
Found linux image: /boot/vmlinuz-3.13.0-74-generic
Found initrd image: /boot/initrd.img-3.13.0-74-generic
Found linux image: /boot/vmlinuz-3.13.0-48-generic
Found initrd image: /boot/initrd.img-3.13.0-48-generic
done
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-10:~$ █
```

**Figure 1-24.** Generating an Updated Grub Configuration file

Reboot the system.

```
sudo reboot
```

Connection to the Ubuntu Amazon EC2 instance gets closed as shown in Figure 1-25.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-10:~$ sudo vi /etc/default/grub
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-10:~$ sudo reboot
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-10:~$
Broadcast message from ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-10
  (/dev/pts/0) at 19:29 ...
The system is going down for reboot NOW!
Connection to 52.91.212.17 closed by remote host.
Connection to 52.91.212.17 closed.
[root@localhost ~]# █
```

**Figure 1-25.** Rebooting Ubuntu Instance

SSH log in back into the Ubuntu instance. Rerun the command to list the command-line kernel parameters.

```
cat /proc/cmdline
```

The cgroup\_enable=memory swapaccount=1 settings get output as shown in Figure 1-26.

```

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-10: ~
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
Connection to 52.91.212.17 closed by remote host.
Connection to 52.91.212.17 closed.
[root@localhost ~]# ssh -i "docker.pem" ubuntu@52.91.212.17
Welcome to Ubuntu 14.04.2 LTS (GNU/Linux 3.13.0-74-generic x86_64)

 * Documentation:  https://help.ubuntu.com/

 System information as of Sat Jan  2 19:30:14 UTC 2016

 System load: 0.0          Memory usage: 5%    Processes:      82
 Usage of /: 26.9% of 7.74GB Swap usage:  0%    Users logged in: 0

 Graph this data and manage this system at:
 https://landscape.canonical.com/

 Get cloud support with Ubuntu Advantage Cloud Guest:
 http://www.ubuntu.com/business/services/cloud

Last login: Sat Jan  2 18:38:46 2016 from d108-180-43-187.bchsia.telus.net
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-10:~$ cat /proc/cmdline
BOOT_IMAGE=/boot/vmlinuz-3.13.0-74-generic root=UUID=d4f2aafc-946a-4514-930d-4c4
5e676f198 ro cgroup_enable=memory swapaccount=1 console=tty1 console=ttyS0
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-10:~$ █

```

**Figure 1-26.** Updated Settings

Having set the prerequisite kernel parameters, next we shall start the Kubernetes components etcd, master, and service proxy.

## Starting etcd

Run etcd with the following docker run command.

```
sudo docker run --net=host -d gcr.io/google_containers/etcd:2.0.12 /usr/local/bin/etcd
--addr=127.0.0.1:4001 --bind-addr=0.0.0.0:4001 --data-dir=/var/etcd/data
```

The docker run command parameters are as follows (Table 1-2).

**Table 1-2.** The docker run Command Parameters to start etcd

Parameter	Description
--net=host	Connects the Docker container to a network making use of the host container network inside the container
-d	Starts the container in the background
gcr.io/google_containers/etcd:2.0.12	The container image
/usr/local/bin/etcd --addr=127.0.0.1:4001	The command to run
--bind-addr=0.0.0.0:4001 --data-dir=/var/etcd/data	

The output from the preceding command is shown in Figure 1-27.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:/kubernetes$ sudo docker run --net=host -d gcr.io/google_containers/etcd:2.0.12 /usr/local/bin/etcd --addr=127.0.0.1:4001 --bind-addr=0.0.0.0:4001 --data-dir=/var/etcd/data
Unable to find image 'gcr.io/google_containers/etcd:2.0.12' locally
Pulling repository gcr.io/google_containers/etcd
fafe47352699: Download complete
cf2616975b4a: Download complete
6ce2e90b0bc7: Download complete
8c2e06607696: Download complete
25b7f6392583: Download complete
b4b56c254ad5: Download complete
Status: Downloaded newer image for gcr.io/google_containers/etcd:2.0.12
gcr.io/google_containers/etcd: this image was pulled from a legacy registry.
Important: This registry version will not be supported in future versions of docker.
71f375db4ea024bb81b02e13b903b431fa933e0e567324f21b26328a3bdc7d30
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:/kubernetes$
```

**Figure 1-27.** Starting etcd

The docker run command to start etcd is required to be run each time the Kubernetes cluster manager is to be started. Subsequent starts of etcd do not need to download the container image as shown in Figure 1-28.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:~$ sudo docker run --net=host -d gcr.io/google_containers/etcd:2.0.12 /usr/local/bin/etcd --addr=127.0.0.1:4001 --bind-addr=0.0.0.0:4001 --data-dir=/var/etcd/data
59d9f36f35e2a09e787f876c2df4e66e71ac168fa60923324f104e6bdf296a23
```

**Figure 1-28.** Subsequent Start of etcd does not need to download the container Image again

## Starting Kubernetes Master

The Kubernetes master is started using the kubelet, which also starts the other Master components apiserver, scheduler, controller, and pause, which are discussed in Table 1-3.

**Table 1-3.** The docker run Command Parameters to start etcd

Master Component	Description
Apiserver	The apiserver takes API requests, processes them, and stores the result in etcd if required and returns the result.
Scheduler	The scheduler monitors the API for unscheduled pods and schedules them on a node to run and also notifies the about the same to the API.
Controller	The controller manages the replication level of the pods, starting new pods in a scale up event and stopping some of the pods in a scale down.
Pause	The pause keeps the port mappings of all the containers in the pod or the network endpoint of the pod.

Run the Kubernetes master with the following command.

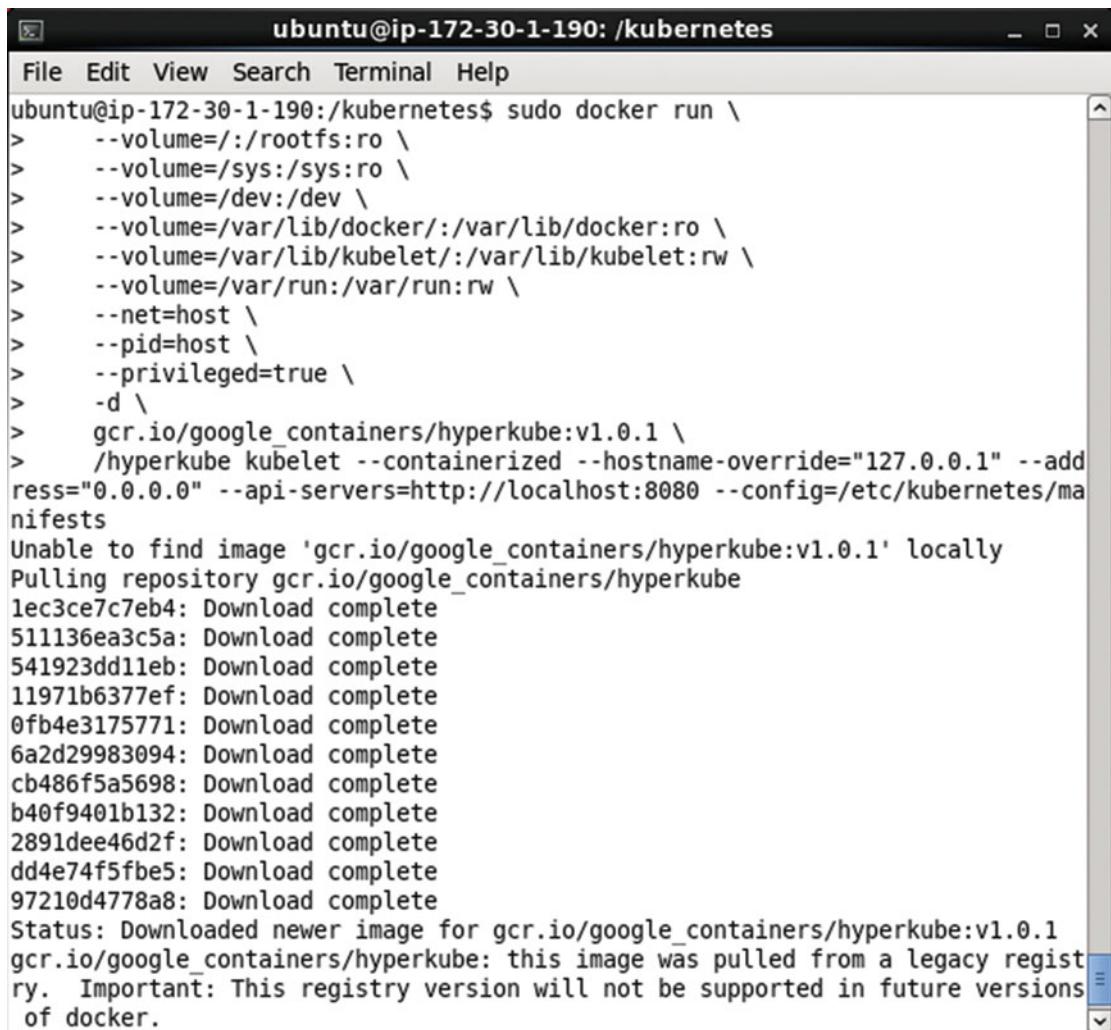
```
sudo docker run \
--volume=/:/rootfs:ro \
--volume=/sys:/sys:ro \
--volume=/dev:/dev \
--volume=/var/lib/docker/:/var/lib/docker:ro \
--volume=/var/lib/kubelet/:/var/lib/kubelet:rw \
--volume=/var/run:/var/run:rw \
--net=host \
--pid=host \
--privileged=true \
-d \
gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1 \
/hyperkube kubelet --containerized --hostname-override="127.0.0.1"
--address="0.0.0.0" --api-
servers=http://localhost:8080 --config=/etc/kubernetes/manifests
```

The docker run command parameters are discussed in Table 1-4.

**Table 1-4.** The docker run Command Parameters to start etcd

Parameter	Description
--volume=/:rootfs:ro \ --volume=/sys:/sys:ro \ --volume=/dev:/dev \ --volume=/var/lib/docker:/var/lib/docker:ro \ --volume=/var/lib/kubelet:/var/lib/kubelet:rw \ --volume=/var/run:/var/run:rw \  --net=host	The Docker volumes to use  Connects the Docker container to a network making use of the host container network inside the container
--pid=host	Sets the pid namespace
--privileged=true	Provides access to most of the capabilities of the host machine in terms of kernel features and host access
-d	Starts the container in the background
gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1	The container image
hyperkube kubelet	The command run
--containerized	
--hostname-override="127.0.0.1"	
--address="0.0.0.0"	
--api-	
servers=http://localhost:8080	
--config=/etc/kubernetes/manifests	

The output from the docker run command to start the master is shown in Figure 1-29.



A screenshot of a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190: /kubernetes". The window shows the command "sudo docker run" followed by a long list of options and arguments. The output includes messages about pulling the "hyperkube" image from the Google Container Registry, listing the download progress of various image components, and finally stating that a newer image was downloaded and the legacy registry will not be supported in future versions of docker.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:/kubernetes$ sudo docker run \
>   --volume=/:/rootfs:ro \
>   --volume=/sys:/sys:ro \
>   --volume=/dev:/dev \
>   --volume=/var/lib/docker:/var/lib/docker:ro \
>   --volume=/var/lib/kubelet:/var/lib/kubelet:rw \
>   --volume=/var/run:/var/run:rw \
>   --net=host \
>   --pid=host \
>   --privileged=true \
>   -d \
>   gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1 \
>   /hyperkube kubelet --containerized --hostname-override="127.0.0.1" --address="0.0.0.0" --api-servers=http://localhost:8080 --config=/etc/kubernetes/manifests
Unable to find image 'gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1' locally
Pulling repository gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube
1ec3ce7c7eb4: Download complete
511136ea3c5a: Download complete
541923dd11eb: Download complete
11971b6377ef: Download complete
0fb4e3175771: Download complete
6a2d29983094: Download complete
cb486f5a5698: Download complete
b40f9401b132: Download complete
2891dee46d2f: Download complete
dd4e74f5fbe5: Download complete
97210d4778a8: Download complete
Status: Downloaded newer image for gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1
gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube: this image was pulled from a legacy registry. Important: This registry version will not be supported in future versions of docker.
```

**Figure 1-29.** The docker run Command to start Kubernetes Master

The Master is required to be started each time the Kubernetes cluster manager is to be started. The container image is downloaded only the first time the command is run, and on subsequent runs the image is not downloaded as shown in Figure 1-30.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:~$ sudo docker run --net=host -d gcr.io/google_containe
rs/etcfd:2.0.12 /usr/local/bin/etcd --addr=127.0.0.1:4001 --bind-addr=0.0.0.0:4
001 --data-dir=/var/etcd/data
59d9f36f35e2a09e787f876c2df4e66e71ac168fa60923324f104e6bdf296a23
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:~$
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:~$ sudo docker run \
>   --volume=/:/rootfs:ro \
>   --volume=/sys:/sys:ro \
>   --volume=/dev:/dev \
>   --volume=/var/lib/docker:/var/lib/docker:ro \
>   --volume=/var/lib/kubelet:/var/lib/kubelet:rw \
>   --volume=/var/run:/var/run:rw \
>   --net=host \
>   --pid=host \
>   --privileged=true \
>   -d \
>   gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1 \
>   /hyperkube kubelet --containerized --hostname-override="127.0.0.1" --add
ress="0.0.0.0" --api-servers=http://localhost:8080 --config=/etc/kubernetes/m
anifests
9f030558236112fedb6a463b1c4d69dee34bec953a7b6edd935b06ddd4602e86
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:~$ █
```

*Figure 1-30. Subsequent starts of Kubernetes Master do not need to download Container image again*

## Starting Service Proxy

To start the service proxy, which is a proxy for the Kubernetes service providing a pod/s interface using a service selector with labels, start the service proxy by running the following docker run command.

```
sudo docker run -d --net=host --privileged gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1
/hyperkube proxy -- master=http://127.0.0.1:8080 --v=2
```

The command parameters for the preceding command are discussed in Table 1-5.

**Table 1-5.** The docker run Command Parameters to start service proxy

Parameter	Description
-d	Runs the container in the background
--net=host	Sets the network for the container to the host's network
--privileged	Provides access to most of the capabilities of the host machine in terms of kernel features and host access
gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1	The container image
hyperkube proxy -- master=http://127.0.0.1:8080 --v=2	The command to run. The master url is set to http://127.0.0.1:8080.

The output from the preceding docker run command is shown in Figure 1-31.



```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:/kubernetes$ sudo docker run -d --net=host --privileged gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1 /hyperkube proxy --master=http://127.0.0.1:8080 --v=2
ce152e8ae0ac60766381ee4a7925e82e4ebfee48bdf7bae81d7b71e24c1edb60
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:/kubernetes$
```

**Figure 1-31.** Starting the Service proxy

## Listing the Kubernetes Docker Containers

The Docker containers started for a Kubernetes cluster manager may be listed with the following command.

```
sudo docker ps
```

The Docker containers listed include a container for the service proxy; a container for the kubelet; a container for etcd; and containers each for the master scheduler, controller, and apiserver, and pause as shown in Figure 1-32.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:~$ sudo docker ps
CONTAINER ID        IMAGE               CREATED             STATUS              PORTS
0b850f877d8b        gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1   "hyperkube pr
oxy --m"    20 seconds ago   Up 19 seconds
92d7e1a1aa57        gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1   "/hyperkube sc
heduler"    49 seconds ago   Up 48 seconds
k8s_sc
9b8a8b75a22f        gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1   "/hyperkube ap
iserver"    49 seconds ago   Up 49 seconds
k8s_ap
iserver.cfb70250_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c4a
645c4127
37971b53f2c1        gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1   "/hyperkube co
ntrolle"    50 seconds ago   Up 49 seconds
k8s_co
ntroller-manager.1598ee5c_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba6
9c8856c4a_1b4e0ed5
f6c8f7f8ea70        gcr.io/google_containers/pause:0.8.0      "/pause"
About a minute ago Up 59 seconds
k8s_P0
D.e4cc795_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c4a_055f4a
5a
9f0305582361        gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1   "/hyperkube ku
belet -"    About a minute ago Up About a minute
sleepy
_cori
59d9f36f35e2        gcr.io/google_containers/etcd:2.0.12      "/usr/local/bi
n/etcd"    About a minute ago Up About a minute
ptolemy
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:~$
```

**Figure 1-32.** Listing the Docker Containers

The Docker container info may be found using the Docker container id. For example, obtain the container id for the Docker container running the controller as shown in Figure 1-33.

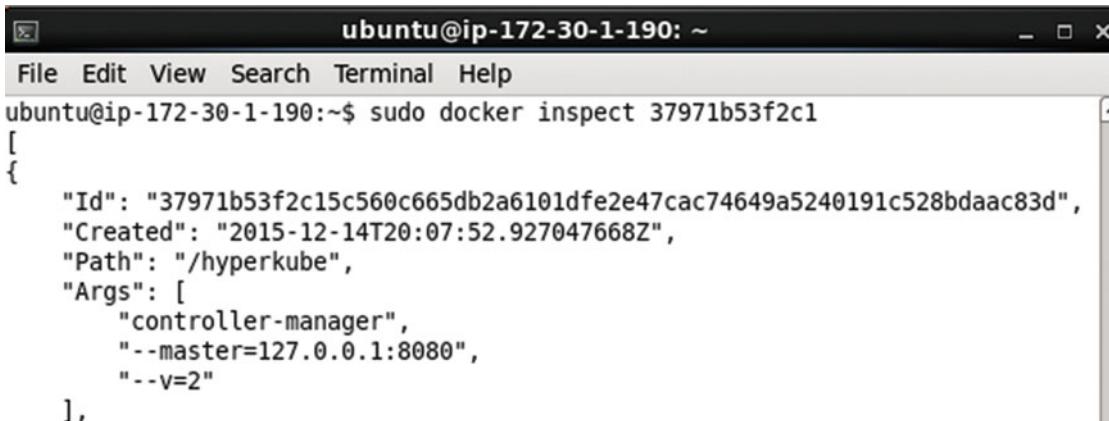
```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:~$ sudo docker ps
CONTAINER ID        IMAGE               CREATED             STATUS              PORTS
0b850f877d8b        gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1   "hyperkube pr
oxy --m"    37 minutes ago   Up 37 minutes
92d7e1a1aa57        gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1   "/hyperkube pr
oxy --m"    38 minutes ago   Up 38 minutes
9b8a8b75a22f        gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1   "/hyperkube ap
iserver"   38 minutes ago   Up 38 minutes
37971b53f2c1        gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1   "/hyperkube co
ntroller"   38 minutes ago   Up 38 minutes
f6c8f7f8ea70        gcr.io/google_containers/pause:0.8.0      "/pause"
. e4cc795_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c4a_055f4a5
a
9f0305582361        gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1   "/hyperkube ku
belet -"   38 minutes ago   Up 38 minutes
59d9f36f35e2        gcr.io/google_containers/etcd:2.0.12       "/usr/local/bi
n/etcd"    38 minutes ago   Up 38 minutes
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:~$
```

**Figure 1-33.** Obtaining the Docker Container Id

Run the following command to find the detail about the Docker container.

```
sudo docker inspect 37971b53f2c1
```

The detail such as the master ip and about the Docker container running the controller manager gets output as shown in Figure 1-34.



A screenshot of a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190: ~". The window has a standard Linux-style title bar with icons for minimize, maximize, and close. Below the title bar is a menu bar with "File", "Edit", "View", "Search", "Terminal", and "Help". The main area of the terminal shows the command "sudo docker inspect 37971b53f2c1" followed by its JSON output. The JSON output details the Docker container's configuration, including its ID, creation timestamp, path, and arguments. The arguments listed are "controller-manager", "--master=127.0.0.1:8080", and "--v=2".

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:~$ sudo docker inspect 37971b53f2c1
[
{
    "Id": "37971b53f2c15c560c665db2a6101dfe2e47cac74649a5240191c528bdaac83d",
    "Created": "2015-12-14T20:07:52.927047668Z",
    "Path": "/hyperkube",
    "Args": [
        "controller-manager",
        "--master=127.0.0.1:8080",
        "--v=2"
    ],
}
```

**Figure 1-34.** Listing Docker Container Information

## Installing kubectl

The kubectl is used to control the Kubernetes cluster manager including running an image, getting the pods, getting the replication controller, making an application available as a service exposed at a specified port, and scaling the cluster. Download Kubectl binaries with the following command.

```
sudo wget https://storage.googleapis.com/kubernetes-release/release/v1.0.1/bin/linux/amd64/kubectl
```

The kubectl binaries get downloaded as shown in Figure 1-35.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:/kubernetes$ wget https://storage.googleapis.com/kubernetes-release/v1.0.1/bin/linux/amd64/kubectl
--2015-12-14 19:50:08-- https://storage.googleapis.com/kubernetes-release/release/v1.0.1/bin/linux/amd64/kubectl
Resolving storage.googleapis.com (storage.googleapis.com)... 173.194.207.128,
2607:f8b0:400d:c0a::80
Connecting to storage.googleapis.com (storage.googleapis.com)|173.194.207.128|:443... connected.
HTTP request sent, awaiting response... 200 OK
Length: 20341304 (19M) [application/octet-stream]
Saving to: 'kubectl'

100%[=====] 20,341,304 30.0MB/s in 0.6s
2015-12-14 19:50:09 (30.0 MB/s) - 'kubectl' saved [20341304/20341304]
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:/kubernetes$ █
```

**Figure 1-35.** Installing Kubectl

Make the kubectl application executable by applying the +x permissions.

```
sudo chmod +x kubectl
```

Move the kubectl binaries to the /usr/local/bin/ directory.

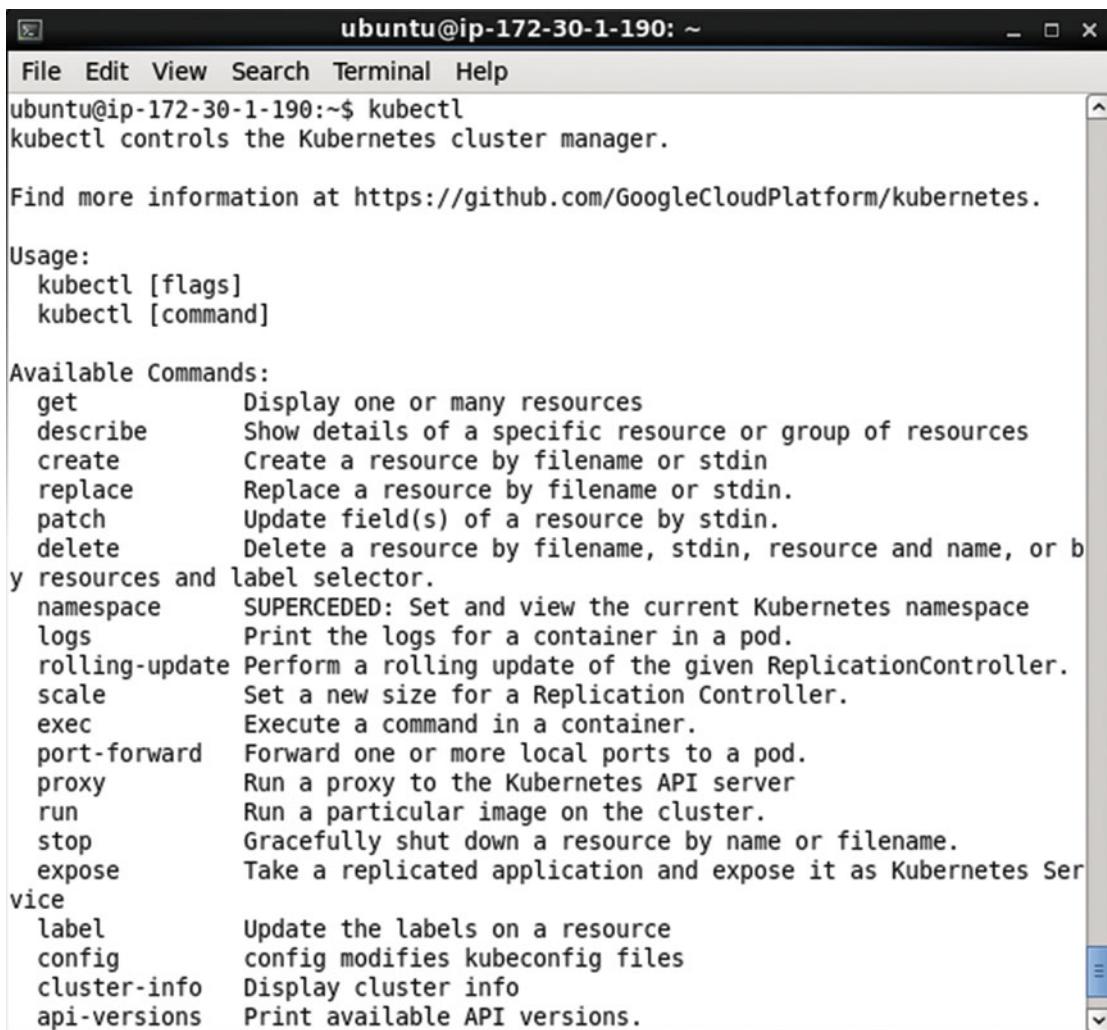
```
sudo mv kubectl /usr/local/bin/
```

The output from the preceding commands is shown in Figure 1-36.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:~$ sudo chmod +x kubectl
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:~$ sudo mv kubectl /usr/local/bin/
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:~$ █
```

**Figure 1-36.** Moving and making kubectl Binaries executable

The kubectl command lists the usage as shown in Figure 1-37.



A screenshot of a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190: ~". The window shows the output of the "kubectl" command. It starts with a brief introduction, followed by usage instructions, and then a detailed list of available commands with their descriptions.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:~$ kubectl
kubectl controls the Kubernetes cluster manager.

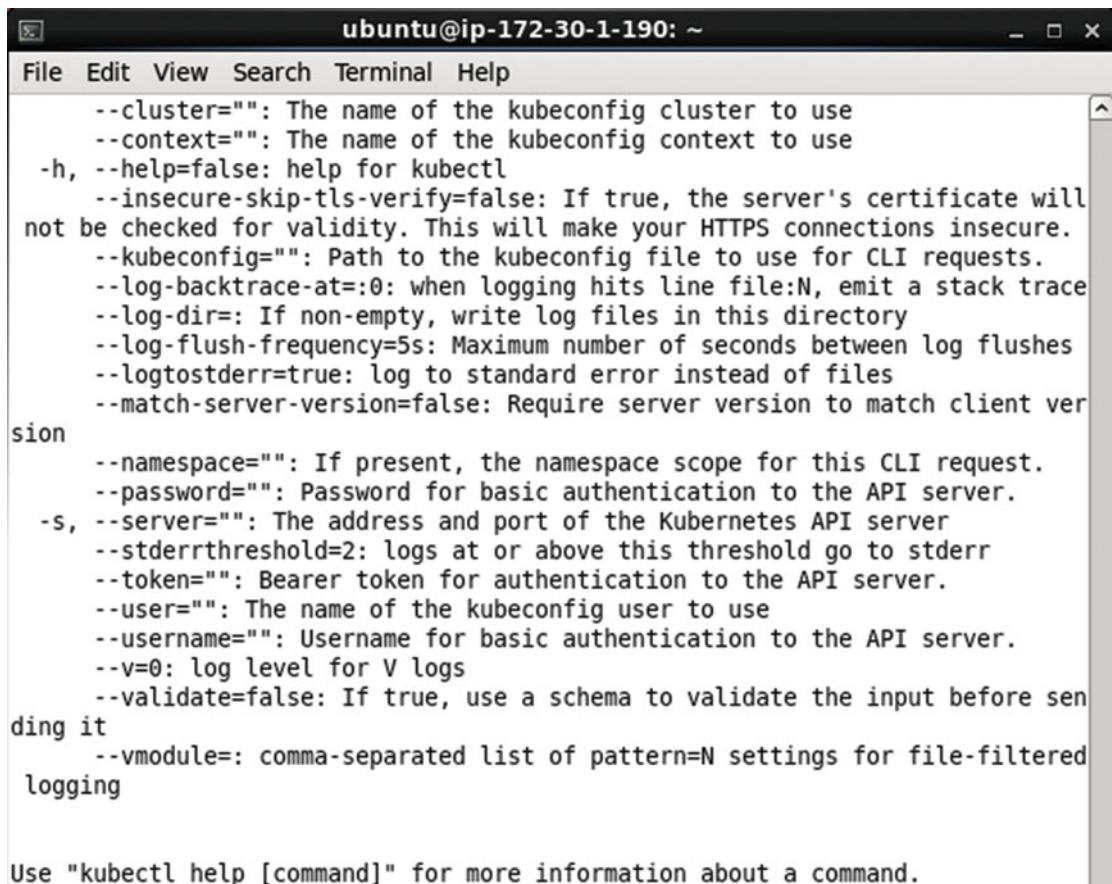
Find more information at https://github.com/GoogleCloudPlatform/kubernetes.

Usage:
  kubectl [flags]
  kubectl [command]

Available Commands:
  get           Display one or many resources
  describe     Show details of a specific resource or group of resources
  create        Create a resource by filename or stdin
  replace       Replace a resource by filename or stdin.
  patch         Update field(s) of a resource by stdin.
  delete        Delete a resource by filename, stdin, resource and name, or b
y resources and label selector.
  namespace    SUPERCEDED: Set and view the current Kubernetes namespace
  logs          Print the logs for a container in a pod.
  rolling-update Perform a rolling update of the given ReplicationController.
  scale         Set a new size for a Replication Controller.
  exec          Execute a command in a container.
  port-forward  Forward one or more local ports to a pod.
  proxy         Run a proxy to the Kubernetes API server
  run           Run a particular image on the cluster.
  stop          Gracefully shut down a resource by name or filename.
  expose        Take a replicated application and expose it as Kubernetes Ser
vice
  label         Update the labels on a resource
  config        config modifies kubeconfig files
  cluster-info  Display cluster info
  api-versions  Print available API versions.
```

Figure 1-37. Kubectl Command Usage

The command parameters also get listed as shown in Figure 1-38.



```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190: ~
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
--cluster="": The name of the kubeconfig cluster to use
--context="": The name of the kubeconfig context to use
-h, --help=false: help for kubectl
--insecure-skip-tls-verify=false: If true, the server's certificate will
not be checked for validity. This will make your HTTPS connections insecure.
--kubeconfig="": Path to the kubeconfig file to use for CLI requests.
--log-backtrace-at=:0: when logging hits line file:N, emit a stack trace
--log-dir=: If non-empty, write log files in this directory
--log-flush-frequency=5s: Maximum number of seconds between log flushes
--logtostderr=true: log to standard error instead of files
--match-server-version=false: Require server version to match client ver
sion
--namespace="": If present, the namespace scope for this CLI request.
--password="": Password for basic authentication to the API server.
-s, --server="": The address and port of the Kubernetes API server
--stderrthreshold=2: logs at or above this threshold go to stderr
--token="": Bearer token for authentication to the API server.
--user="": The name of the kubeconfig user to use
--username="": Username for basic authentication to the API server.
--v=0: log level for V logs
--validate=false: If true, use a schema to validate the input before sen
ding it
--vmodule=: comma-separated list of pattern=N settings for file-filtered
logging

Use "kubectl help [command]" for more information about a command.
```

*Figure 1-38. Command Parameters for Kubectl*

## Listing Services

The following command should list the Kubernetes service.

```
kubectl get services
```

The kubernetes service gets listed as shown in Figure 1-39.

NAME		LABELS	SELECTOR	IP(S)	POR
T(S)	kubernetes	component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes	<none>	10.0.0.1	443

*Figure 1-39. Listing the Kubernetes Service*

## Listing Nodes

The following command should list the Kubernetes node.

```
kubectl get nodes
```

The single node in the cluster gets listed as shown in Figure 1-40.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:~$ kubectl get nodes
NAME      LABELS           STATUS
127.0.0.1  kubernetes.io/hostname=127.0.0.1  Ready
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:~$
```

**Figure 1-40.** Listing the Nodes

## Testing the Kubernetes Installation

To test the Kubernetes cluster manager, run the nginx application using the following command.

```
kubectl -s http://localhost:8080 run nginx --image=nginx --port=80
```

The output from the kubectl run command lists the replication controller, container/s, image/sm selector, and replicas as shown in Figure 1-41.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:~$ kubectl -s http://localhost:8080 run nginx --image=n
ginx --port=80
CONTROLLER  CONTAINER(S)   IMAGE(S)   SELECTOR   REPLICAS
nginx       nginx        nginx      run=nginx  1
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:~$
```

**Figure 1-41.** Running the nginx Application on Kubernetes Cluster

Expose the nginx application replication controller as a service with the kubectl expose command.

```
kubectl expose rc nginx --port=80
```

The nginx Kubernetes service gets created running on port 80 as shown in Figure 1-42.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:~$ kubectl expose rc nginx --port=80
NAME      LABELS      SELECTOR      IP(S)      PORT(S)
nginx    run=nginx    run=nginx    80/TCP
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:~$
```

**Figure 1-42.** Creating a Kubernetes Service for nginx Application

List the detail about the nginx service with the kubectl get svc command.

```
kubectl get svc nginx
```

The nginx service detail gets listed as shown in Figure 1-43.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:~$ kubectl get svc nginx
NAME      LABELS      SELECTOR      IP(S)      PORT(S)
nginx     run=nginx   run=nginx   10.0.0.146   80/TCP
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:~$ █
```

**Figure 1-43.** Listing the Kubernetes Service nginx

The cluster IP may be obtained with the following command.

```
kubectl get svc nginx --template={{.spec.clusterIP}}
```

The cluster ip is listed as 10.0.0.146 as shown in Figure 1-44.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:~$ kubectl get svc nginx --template={{.spec.clusterIP}}
10.0.0.146ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:~$ kubectl get svc nginx --template={{.spec.c
10.0.0.146ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:~$ █
```

**Figure 1-44.** Listing the Cluster IP

The web server may be called making use of the cluster ip with the following command.

```
curl 10.0.0.146
```

The html output as text gets output as shown in Figure 1-45.

```
10.0.0.146ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:~$ kubectl get svc nginx --template={{.spec.c
10.0.0.146ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:~$ curl 10.0.0.146
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head>
<title>Welcome to nginx!</title>
<style>
  body {
    width: 35em;
    margin: 0 auto;
    font-family: Tahoma, Verdana, Arial, sans-serif;
  }
</style>
</head>
<body>
<h1>Welcome to nginx!</h1>
<p>If you see this page, the nginx web server is successfully installed and
working. Further configuration is required.</p>
<p>For online documentation and support please refer to
<a href="http://nginx.org/">nginx.org</a>.<br/>
Commercial support is available at
<a href="http://nginx.com/">nginx.com</a>.</p>
<p><em>Thank you for using nginx.</em></p>
</body>
</html>
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-190:~$ █
```

**Figure 1-45.** Using curl to invoke Application

## Summary

In this chapter we installed Kubernetes using Docker. An Amazon EC2 instance running Ubuntu is used to install Docker and Kubernetes. The nginx application is run only to test the installation of the Kubernetes cluster manager. The kubectl commands to create an application, replication controller, and service are discussed in more detail in the next chapter.

## CHAPTER 2



# Hello Kubernetes

Kubernetes is a cluster manager for Linux containers. While Kubernetes supports other types of containers such as Rocket, and support for more types is to be added, we shall discuss Kubernetes in the context of Docker containers only. Docker is an open source container virtualization platform to build, package, and run distributed applications in containers that are lightweight snapshots of the underlying OS. A Docker image, which is application specific, encapsulates all the required software including dependencies for an application and is used to create Docker containers to run applications in the containers. The Docker containers are isolated from each other and have their own networking and filesystem and provide Container as a Service (CaaS). Docker is similar to virtual machines based on virtualization platforms such as Oracle VirtualBox and VMWare Player in that it is a virtualization over the underlying OS, but is different in that while a virtual machine makes use of an entire operating system, multiple Docker containers share the kernel and run in isolation on the host OS. Docker containers run on the Docker Engine, which runs on the underlying OS kernel.

In this chapter we shall introduce Kubernetes concepts using a Hello-World application. This chapter has the following sections.

- Overview
- Why Kubernetes
- Setting the Environment
- Creating an Application Imperatively
- Creating an Application Declaratively
- Using JSON for the Resource Definitions

## Overview

Kubernetes concepts include Pod, Service, and Replication controller and are defined in the following subsections.

### What Is a Node?

A *node* is a machine (physical or virtual) running Kubernetes onto which Pods may be scheduled. The node could be the *master node* or one of the *worker nodes*. In the preceding chapter on installing Kubernetes only a single node was used. In a later chapter, Chapter 14, we shall discuss creating a multi-node cluster with a master and worker node/s.

## What Is a Cluster?

A *cluster* is a collection of nodes including other resources such as storage to run Kubernetes applications. A cluster has a single Kubernetes master node and zero or more worker nodes. A highly available cluster consists of multiple masters or master nodes.

## What Is a Pod?

A *Pod* is a collection of containers that are collocated and form an atomic unit. Multiple applications may be run within a Pod and though the different containers within a Pod could be for the same application, typically the different containers are for different applications. A Pod is a higher level abstraction for managing a group of containers with shared volumes and network namespace. All the applications (containers) in a Pod share the same filesystem and IP address with the port on which each application is exposed being different. Applications running in a Pod may access each other at “localhost”. Scheduling and replication are performed at the Pod level rather than at the individual container level. For example if a Pod defines two containers for different applications and replication level is set at 1, a single replica of the Pod consists of two containers, one each for the two applications. Pods facilitate resource sharing and communication what would otherwise be implemented using --link in individually running Docker containers. A Pod consisting of multiple containers would typically be used for tightly coupled applications. For example, if an nginx application makes use of MySQL database, the two applications are able to interact by Kubernetes running containers for each in the same Pod.

## What Is a Service?

A *Service* is the external interface for one or more Pods providing endpoint/s at which the application/s represented by the Service may be invoked. A Service is hosted at a single IP address but provides zero or more endpoints depending on the application/s interfaced by the Service. Services are connected to Pods using label selectors. Pods have label/s on them and a Service with a selector expression the same as a Pod label represents the Pod to an external client. An external client does not know or need to know about the Pods represented by a Service. An external client only needs to know the name of the Service and the port at which a particular application is exposed. The Service routes requests for an application based on a round-robin manner to one of the Pods selected using a label selector/. Thus, a Service is a high level abstraction for a collection of applications leaving the detail of which Pod to route a request to up to the Service. A Service could also be used for load balancing.

## What Is a Replication Controller?

A *Replication Controller* manages the replication level of Pods as specified by the “replicas” setting in a Replication Controller definition or on the command line with the -replicas parameter. A Replication Controller ensures that the configured level of Pod replicas are running at any given time. If a replica fails or is stopped deliberately a new replica is started automatically. A Replication Controller is used for scaling the Pods within a cluster. A replica is defined at the Pod level implying that if a Pod consists of two containers a group of the two configured containers constitute a replica.

## What Is a Label?

A *Label* is a key-value pair identifying a resource such as a Pod, Service, or Replication Controller: most commonly a Pod. Labels are used to identify a group or subset of resources for tasks such as assigning them to a Service. Services use label selectors to select the Pods they manage. For example, if a Pod is labeled “app=helloApp” and a Service “selector” is set as “app=helloApp” the Pod is represented by the Service. Service selectors are based on labels and not on the type of application they manage. For example, a Service could be representing a Pod running a hello-world application container with a specific label. Another Pod also running a hello-world container but with a label different than the Service selector expression would not be represented by the Service. And a third Pod running an application that is not a hello-world application but has the same label as the Service selector would also be represented by the same Service.

## What Is a Selector?

A *selector* is a key-value expression to identify resources using matching labels. As discussed in the preceding subsection a Service selector expression “app=helloApp” would select all Pods with the label “app=helloApp”. While typically a Service defines a selector to select Pods a Service could be defined to not include a selector and be defined to abstract other kinds of back ends. Two kinds of selectors are supported: equality-based and set-based. A selector could be made of multiple requirements implying that multiple expressions (equality-based or set-based) separated by ‘,’ could be specified. All of the requirements must be met by a matching resource such as a Pod for the resource to be selected. A resource such as a Pod could have additional labels, but the ones in the selector must be specified for the resource to be selected. The equality-based selector, which is more commonly used and also the one used in the book, supports `=,!=,==` operators, the `=` being synonymous to `==`.

## What Is a Name?

A *name* identifies a resource. A name is not the same as a label. For matching resources with a Service a label is used and not a name.

## What Is a Namespace?

A *namespace* is a level above the name to demarcate a group of resources for a project or team to prevent name collisions. Resources within different namespaces could have the same name, but resources within a namespace have different names.

## What Is a Volume?

A *volume* is a directory within the filesystem of a container. A volume could be used to store data. Kubernetes volumes evolve from Docker volumes.

## Why Kubernetes?

Docker containers introduced a new level of modularity and fluidity for applications with the provision to package applications including dependencies, and transfer and run the applications across different environments. But with the use of Docker containers in production, practical problems became apparent such as which container to run on which node (scheduling), how to increase/decrease the number of running containers for an application (scaling), and how to communicate within containers. Kubernetes

was designed to overcome all these and other practical issues of container cluster management. Kubernetes provides dynamic container cluster orchestration in real time. Kubernetes as a cluster manager provides the following benefits.

- Microservices by breaking an application into smaller, manageable, scalable components that could be used by groups with different requirements.
- Fault-tolerant cluster in which if a single Pod replica fails (due to node failure, for example), another is started automatically.
- Horizontal scaling in which additional or fewer replicas of a Pod could be run by just modifying the “replicas” setting in the Replication Controller or using the –replicas parameter in the kubectl scale command.
- Higher resource utilization and efficiency.
- Separation of concerns. The Service development team does not need to interface with the cluster infrastructure team.

## Setting the Environment

The following software is required for this chapter.

- Docker Engine (latest version)
- Kubernetes (version 1.01)
- Kubectl (version 1.01)

We have used an Amazon EC2 Linux instance created from AMI Ubuntu Server 14.04 LTS (HVM), SSD Volume Type - ami-d05e75b8.

SSH Login to the Ubuntu interface (Public IP address would be different for different users and multiple IP Addresses may have been used in this chapter).

```
ssh -i "docker.pem" ubuntu@54.152.82.142
```

Install Docker as discussed in Chapter 1 and start the Docker Engine and verify its status using the following commands.

```
sudo service docker start
sudo service docker status
```

Install kubectl and start the Kubernetes cluster manager as discussed in Chapter 1. Output the Kubernetes cluster information using the following command.

```
kubectl cluster-info
```

The Kubernetes Master is shown running on <http://localhost:8080> in Figure 2-1.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ kubectl cluster-info
Kubernetes master is running at http://localhost:8080
```

**Figure 2-1.** Getting Cluster Info

In the following sections we shall run a `hello-world` application using the Kubernetes cluster manager. An application may be run imperatively using the `kubectl` tool on the command line or declaratively using definition files for a Pod, Replication Controller, and Service. We shall discuss each of these methods. The `kubectl` tool is used throughout this chapter and in subsequent chapters and a complete command reference is available at <https://cloud.google.com/container-engine/docs/kubectl/>.

## Creating an Application Imperatively

With the Kubernetes master running on `http://localhost:8080`, as obtained in the preceding section, run the following `kubectl run` command to run a `hello-world` application using the image `tutum/hello-world`. The `-s` option specifies the Kubernetes API server host and port. The `--image` command parameter specifies the Docker image to run as `tutum/hello-world`. The `--replicas` parameter specifies the number of replicas to create as 1. A Replication Controller is created even if the `--replicas` parameter is not specified. The default number of replicas is 1. The `--port` parameter specifies the container port the application is hosted at as 80.

```
kubectl -s http://localhost:8080 run hello-world --image=tutum/hello-world --replicas=1 --port=80
```

A new application container called `hello-world` gets created as shown in Figure 2-2. A Replication Controller called “`hello-world`” also gets created. The Pod is created implicitly and label “`run=hello-world`” is added to the Pod. The number of replicas created is 1. The Replication Controller’s selector field is also set to “`run=hello-world`”. The Pods managed by a Replication Controller must specify a label that is the same as the selector specified at the Replication Controller level. By default a Replication Controller selector is set to the same expression as the Pod label.

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~\$ kubectl -s http://localhost:8080 run hello-world --image=tutum/hello-world --replicas=1 --port=80				
CONTROLLER	CONTAINER(S)	IMAGE(S)	SELECTOR	REPLICAS
<code>hello-world</code>	<code>hello-world</code>	<code>tutum/hello-world</code>	<code>run=hello-world</code>	1

**Figure 2-2.** Creating an Application including a Replication Controller and Pod Replica/s

The Replication Controller created may be listed with the following command.

```
kubectl get rc
```

The `hello-world` Replication Controller gets listed as shown in Figure 2-3.

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~\$ kubectl get rc				
CONTROLLER	CONTAINER(S)	IMAGE(S)	SELECTOR	REPLICAS
<code>hello-world</code>	<code>hello-world</code>	<code>tutum/hello-world</code>	<code>run=hello-world</code>	1

**Figure 2-3.** Listing the Replication Controllers

The Pods created and started are listed with the following command.

```
kubectl get pods
```

The single Pod created gets listed as shown in Figure 2-4. A Pod name is assigned automatically. A Pod STATUS “Running” is listed, but the Pod may still not be ready and available. The READY column value of 0/1 indicates that 0 of 1 containers in the Pod are ready, which implies that the Pod has been created and is running but not yet ready. It could take a few seconds for a Pod to become Ready.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
hello-world-syruzq   0/1     Running   0          12s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   0          2m
```



**Figure 2-4.** Listing the Pods

Run the same command again after a few seconds or a minute.

```
kubectl get pods
```

The Pod gets listed as ready as indicated by 1/1 in the READY column in Figure 2-5. A value of 1/1 in the READY column indicates that 1 of 1 containers in the Pod are ready. The syntax for the READY column value is  $nReady/nTotal$ , which implies that  $nReady$  of the total  $nTotal$  containers in the Pod are ready. The Kubernetes Pod `k8s-master-127.0.0.1`, for example, has a READY column value of 3/3, which implies that 3 of 3 containers in the Kubernetes Pod are ready.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
hello-world-syruzq   1/1     Running   0          43s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   0          3m
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$
```



**Figure 2-5.** Listing a Pod as ready with all containers in the Pod as ready

Running a Pod and a Replication Controller does not implicitly create a Service. In the next subsection we shall create a Service for the `hello-world` application.

## Creating a Service

Create a Kubernetes Service using the `kubectl expose` command, which creates a Service from a Pod, Replication Controller, or another Service. As we created a Replication Controller called `hello-world`, create a Service using the following command in which the port to expose the Service is set to 8080 and the Service type is `LoadBalancer`.

```
kubectl expose rc hello-world --port=8080 --type=LoadBalancer
```

A Kubernetes Service called `hello-world` gets created as shown in Figure 2-6. The Service labels and selector also get set. The Service selector, listed in Figure 2-6, is set to the same expression `run=hello-world` as the Replication Controller selector, which is shown in Figure 2-3, which implies that the Service manages the Pods in the Replication Controller `hello-world`.

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~\$ kubectl expose rc hello-world --port=8080 --type=LoadBalancer				
NAME	LABELS	SELECTOR	IP(S)	POR(T)S
hello-world	run=hello-world	run=hello-world		8080/TCP

**Figure 2-6.** Creating a Kubernetes Service

The different types of Services are ClusterIp, NodePort, and LoadBalancer with the default being ClusterIP, as discussed in Table 2-1.

**Table 2-1.** Types of Services

Service Type	Description
ClusterIp	Uses a cluster-internal IP only.
NodePort	In addition to a cluster IP exposes the Service on each node of the cluster.
LoadBalancer	In addition to exposing the Service on a cluster internal IP and a port on each node on the cluster, requests the cloud provider to provide a load balancer for the Service. The load balancer balances the load between the Pods in the Service.

List all the Kubernetes Services with the following command.

```
kubectl get services
```

In addition to the “kubernetes” Service for the Kubernetes cluster manager a “hello-world” Service gets created as shown in Figure 2-7.

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~\$ kubectl get services			
NAME	LABELS	SELECTOR	IP(S)
hello-world	run=hello-world	run=hello-world	10.0.0.1
.57	8080/TCP		
kubernetes	component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes	<none>	10.0.0.1
.1	443/TCP		

**Figure 2-7.** Listing the Services

## Describing a Pod

Using the Pod name hello-world-syrqz obtained from the NAME column in the result for the `kubectl get pods` command use the `kubectl describe pod` command to list detailed information about the Pod.

```
kubectl describe pod hello-world-syrqz
```

Detailed information about the Pod including the IP address gets listed as shown in Figure 2-8. The Pod has a Label `run=hello-world`, which is the same as the replication controller selector and also same as the service selector, which implies that the replication controller manages the Pod when scaling the cluster of Pods for example, and the service represents the Pod to external clients.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ kubectl describe pod hello-world-syrqz
Name:           hello-world-syrqz
Namespace:      default
Image(s):       tutum/hello-world
Node:          127.0.0.1/127.0.0.1
Labels:         run=hello-world
Status:        Running
Reason:
Message:
IP:            172.17.0.2
Replication Controllers:  hello-world (1/1 replicas created)
Containers:
  hello-world:
    Image:      tutum/hello-world
    State:      Running
    Started:   Sat, 26 Dec 2015 22:49:30 +0000
    Ready:     True
    Restart Count: 0
Conditions:
  Type      Status
  Ready     True
Events:
FirstSeen      LastSeen      Count  Reason
from           SubobjectPath
message        Sat, 26 Dec 2015 22:49:18 +0000  1      scheduled
scheduler }   Sat, 26 Dec 2015 22:49:18 +0000  1      successfully assigned hello-world-syrqz to 127.0.0.1
success       Sat, 26 Dec 2015 22:49:19 +0000  1      kubelet 127.0.0.1} implicitly required container POD pulled
pod          pod container image "gcr.io/google_containers/pause:0.8.0" already present on machine
```

**Figure 2-8.** Describing a Pod

Next, we shall invoke the application using the IP Address 172.0.17.2 listed in the IP field.

## Invoking the Hello-World Application

The hello-world application may be invoked using the IP for the application as listed in Figure 2-8 with the following curl command.

```
curl 172.17.0.2
```

The HTML output from the application is shown in Figure 2-9.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ curl 172.17.0.2
<html>
<head>
    <title>Hello world!</title>
    <link href='http://fonts.googleapis.com/css?family=Open+Sans:400,700' rel='stylesheet' type='text/css'>
        <style>
            body {
                background-color: white;
                text-align: center;
                padding: 50px;
                font-family: "Open Sans", "Helvetica Neue", Helvetica, Arial, sans-serif;
            }

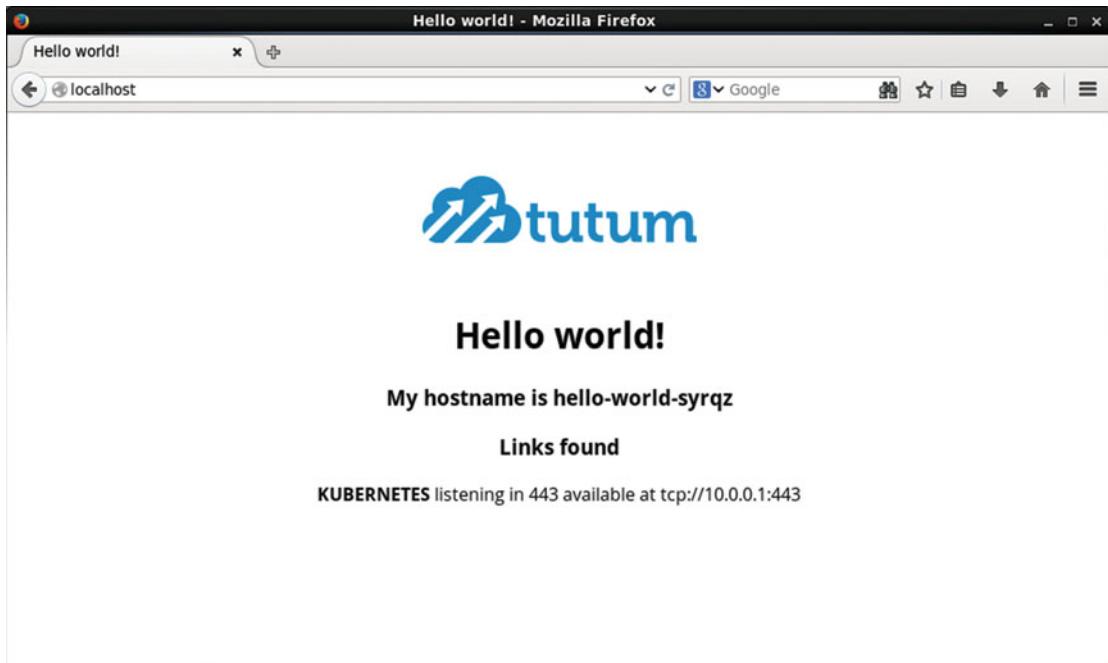
            #logo {
                margin-bottom: 40px;
            }
        </style>
</head>
<body>
    
    <h1>Hello world!</h1>
    <h3>My hostname is hello-world-syrqz</h3>
        <h3>Links found</h3>
        <b>KUBERNETES</b> listening in 443 available at tcp://10.0.0.1:443<br />
</body>
</html>
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ █
```

**Figure 2-9.** Invoking a Application using Pod IP with curl

To display the HTML output in a browser we need to invoke the application from a browser using URL `172.17.0.2:80`. If a browser is not available on the Amazon EC2 Ubuntu instance, as it is not by default, we need to set up a SSH tunnel to the IP Address of the application using local port forwarding. Obtain the Public DNS for the Amazon EC2 instance (`ec2-52-91-200-41.compute-1.amazonaws.com` in the example) and run the following command to set up a SSH tunnel to the `172.17.0.2:80 host:port` from a local machine. The `-L` indicates that local port forwarding is used to forward local port 80 to `172.17.0.2:80`.

```
ssh -i "docker.pem" -f -nNT -L 80:172.17.0.2:80 ubuntu@ec2-52-91-200-41.compute-1.amazonaws.com
```

Invoke the URL `http://localhost` in a browser on the local machine. The HTML output from the `hello-world` application gets displayed as shown in Figure 2-10. The hostname is listed the same as the Pod name in Figure 2-5.



**Figure 2-10.** Invoking the Hello-World Application in a Browser

## Scaling the Application

A Replication Controller was created by default when we created the `hello-world` application with replicas set as 1. Next, we shall scale up the number of Pods to 4. The `kubectl scale` command is used to scale a Replication Controller. Run the following command to scale up the Replication Controller `hello-world` to 4.

```
kubectl scale rc hello-world --replicas=4
```

Subsequently, list the Pods using the following command.

```
kubectl get pods
```

The additional Pods get listed but some of the new Pods could be listed in various states such as running but not ready, or image ready and container creating as shown in Figure 2-11.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ kubectl scale rc hello-world --replicas=4
scaled
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS
hello-world-53evr   0/1    Running
                  0          10s
hello-world-ju6d7   0/1    Image: tutum/hello-world is ready, container is
                  0          creating
                  0          10s
hello-world-syruzq  1/1    Running
                  0          1h
hello-world-yjyjme  0/1    Running
                  0          10s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3    Running
                  0          1h
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$
```

**Figure 2-11.** Scaling the Cluster of Pods with the Replication Controller

After a few seconds run the same command again to list the Pods.

```
kubectl get pods
```

If the Pods have started all the Pods are listed with STATUS->Running and READY state 1/1 as shown in Figure 2-12. Scaling to 4 replicas does not create 4 new Pods, but the total number of Pods is scaled to 4 and the single Pod created initially is included in the new scaled replicas of 4.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
hello-world-53evr   1/1    Running   0          35s
hello-world-ju6d7   1/1    Running   0          35s
hello-world-syruzq  1/1    Running   0          1h
hello-world-yjyjme  1/1    Running   0          35s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3    Running   0          1h
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$
```

**Figure 2-12.** Listing all the Pods as Running and Ready

Describe the hello-world Service using the following command.

```
kubectl describe svc hello-world
```

The Service name, label/s, selector, type, IP, and Endpoints get listed as shown in Figure 2-13. The Service may be invoked using the Endpoints for the various Pod replicas.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ kubectl describe svc hello-world
Name:           hello-world
Namespace:      default
Labels:         run=hello-world
Selector:       run=hello-world
Type:          LoadBalancer
IP:            10.0.0.57
Port:          <unnamed>     8080/TCP
NodePort:       <unnamed>     31236/TCP
Endpoints:     172.17.0.2:8080,172.17.0.3:8080,172.17.0.4:8080 + 1 more
...
Session Affinity: None
No events.

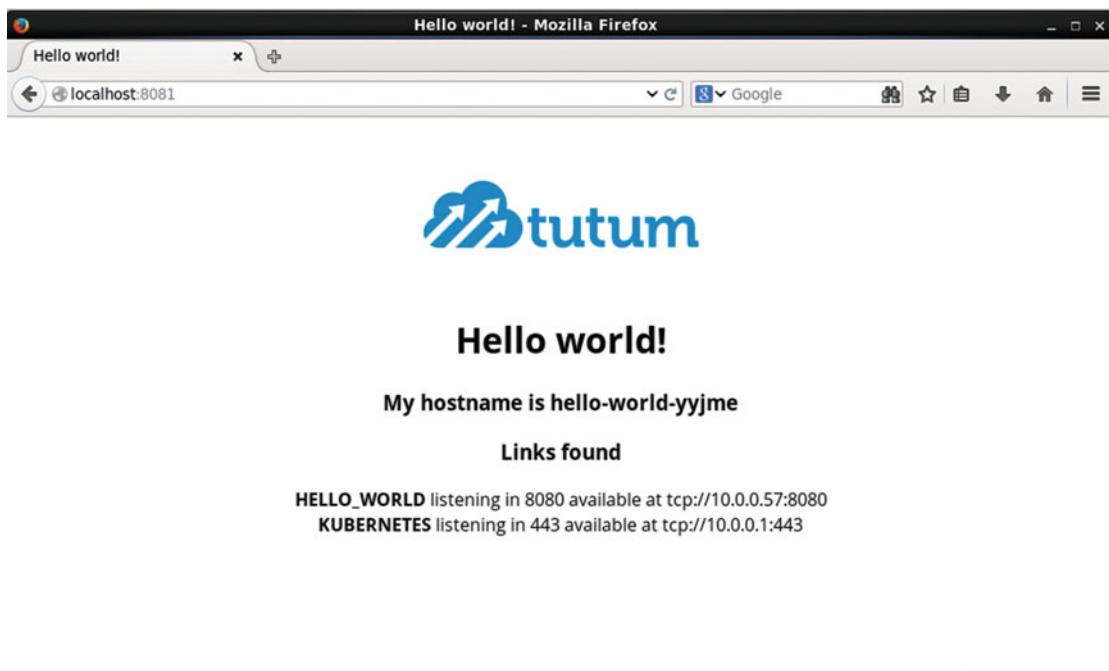
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ █
```

**Figure 2-13.** Describing the Service hello-world

As discussed previously, set up SSH tunneling with port forwarding for the newly added endpoints. The following command sets up a SSH tunnel with port forwarding from localhost port 8081 to 172.17.0.3:80 on the Amazon EC2 instance.

```
ssh -i "docker.pem" -f -nNT -L 8081:172.17.0.3:80 ubuntu@ec2-52-91-200-41.compute-1.amazonaws.com
```

Subsequently invoke the hello-world application in a browser on a local machine with url <http://localhost:8081> to display the application output as shown in Figure 2-14.

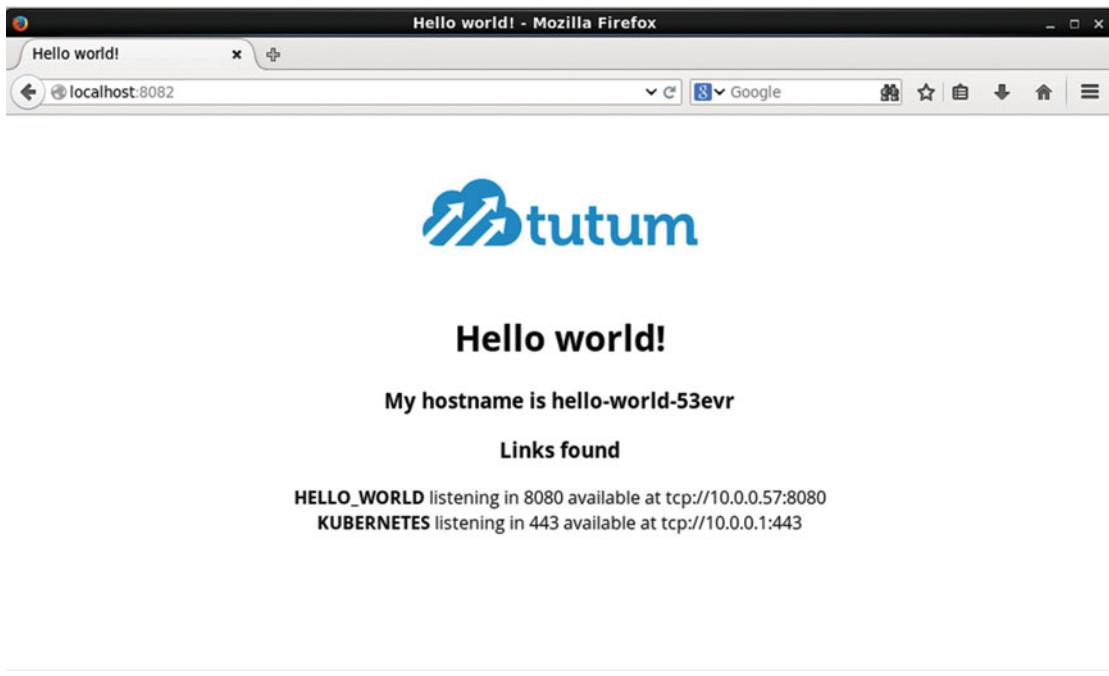


**Figure 2-14.** Invoking an Application in a Local Browser

Similarly the following command from a local machine sets up a SSH tunnel with port forwarding from localhost port 8082 to 172.17.0.4:80 on the Amazon EC2 instance.

```
ssh -i "docker.pem" -f -nNT -L 8082:172.17.0.4:80 ubuntu@ec2-52-91-200-41.compute-1.amazonaws.com
```

Subsequently invoke the hello-world application using url <http://localhost:8082> to display the application output as shown in Figure 2-15.



**Figure 2-15.** Invoking the second Service Endpoint in a Local Browser

## Deleting a Replication Controller

The Replication Controller `hello-world` may be deleted with the following command.

```
kubectl delete rc hello-world
```

The Replication Controller gets deleted as shown in Figure 2-16. Subsequently invoke the following command to list the Replication Controllers.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ kubectl delete rc hello-world
replicationcontrollers/hello-world
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ kubectl get rc
CONTROLLER   CONTAINER(S)   IMAGE(S)   SELECTOR   REPLICAS
```

**Figure 2-16.** Deleting a Replication Controller

```
kubectl get rc
```

The `hello-world` Replication Controller does not get listed as shown in Figure 2-16.

Deleting a Replication Controller deletes the Replication Controller and the Pods associated with the Replication Controller but does not delete the Service representing the Replication Controller. The `kubectl get services` command still lists the Service as shown in Figure 2-17.

NAME		LABELS	SELECTOR	IP(S)
PORT(S)				
hello-world	.57	run=hello-world 8080/TCP	run=hello-world	10.0.0.1
kubernetes	.1	component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes 443/TCP	<none>	10.0.0.1

**Figure 2-17.** Deleting a Replication Controller does not delete the Service

## Deleting a Service

To delete the Service `hello-world` run the following command.

```
kubectl delete svc hello-world
```

Subsequently invoke the following command to list the Services.

```
kubectl get services
```

The output from the preceding two commands is shown in Figure 2-18 and does not list the `hello-world` Service.

NAME		LABELS	SELECTOR	IP(S)	PORT(S)
kubernetes	/TCP	component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes	<none>	10.0.0.1	443

**Figure 2-18.** Deleting the `hello-world` Service

## Creating an Application Declaratively

Next, we shall create the same `hello-world` application declaratively using definition files for a Pod, Service, and Replication Controller. The definition files may be configured in YAML or JSON. We have used YAML initially and also discussed the JSON alternative later.

## Creating a Pod Definition

Create a `hello-world.yaml` file and specify a definition for a Pod in the file. For the `hello-world` application the following definition is used in which the `apiVersion` mapping is for the API schema version (`v1`), `kind` mapping is the resource and set to `Pod`. The `metadata` mapping specifies the Pod's metadata and sets the name to `hello-world` (arbitrary). The `spec` mapping specifies the Pod behavior. The `spec->containers` mapping specifies a collection of images to run. The `hello-world.yaml` specifies a single container for image `tutum/hello-world`. Container name is set to `hello-world` and `containerPorts` mapping is a list of ports with a single `containerPort` mapping for `8080` port.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: hello-world
spec:
  containers:
    -
      image: tutum/hello-world
      name: hello-world
      ports:
        - containerPort: 8080
```

The preceding is equivalent to the following command.

```
kubectl run hello-world --image=tutum/hello-world --port=8080
```

Only a few of the schema elements have been used in the `hello-world.yaml`. For the complete Pod schema refer [http://kubernetes.io/v1.1/docs/api-reference/v1/definitions.html#\\_v1\\_pod](http://kubernetes.io/v1.1/docs/api-reference/v1/definitions.html#_v1_pod).

Next, create the `hello-world` application using the `hello-world.yaml` definition file with the following `kubectl create` command. The `--validate` option validates the Pod definition file. A YAML lint validator (<http://www.yamlint.com/>) may be used to validate the YAML syntax in the `hello-world.yaml`. The syntax validation does not validate if the definition file conforms to the Pod schema.

```
kubectl create -f hello-world.yaml --validate
```

A Pod called `hello-world` gets created as shown in Figure 2-19.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ kubectl create -f hello-world.yaml --validate
pods/hello-world
```

**Figure 2-19.** Creating a Pod using a Definition File

List the Pods with the following command, which is the same regardless of how a Pod has been created.

```
kubectl get pods
```

The `hello-world` Pod gets listed as shown in Figure 2-20. Initially, the Pod may not be READY->1/1. A READY column value of “0/1” implies that 0 of 1 containers in the Pod are ready.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME             READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
hello-world      0/1     Running   0          11s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3     Running   0          1h
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME             READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
hello-world      0/1     Running   0          18s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3     Running   0          1h
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ █
```

**Figure 2-20.** Listing the Pods soon after creating the Pods

Run the same command again after a few more seconds.

```
kubectl get pods
```

The hello-world Pod gets listed with STATUS as “Running” and READY state as “1/1,” which implies that 1 of 1 containers in the Pod are ready, as shown in Figure 2-21.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ kubectl create -f hello-world.yaml --validate
pods/hello-world
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME             READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
hello-world      0/1     Running   0          11s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3     Running   0          1h
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME             READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
hello-world      0/1     Running   0          18s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3     Running   0          1h
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME             READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
hello-world      1/1     Running   0          43s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3     Running   0          1h
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ █
```

**Figure 2-21.** Listing the Pod as Ready and Running

Describe the hello-world Pod with the following command.

```
kubectl describe pod hello-world
```

The output from the preceding command is shown in Figure 2-22.

A screenshot of a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235: ~". The window displays the output of the command "kubectl describe pod hello-world". The output is as follows:

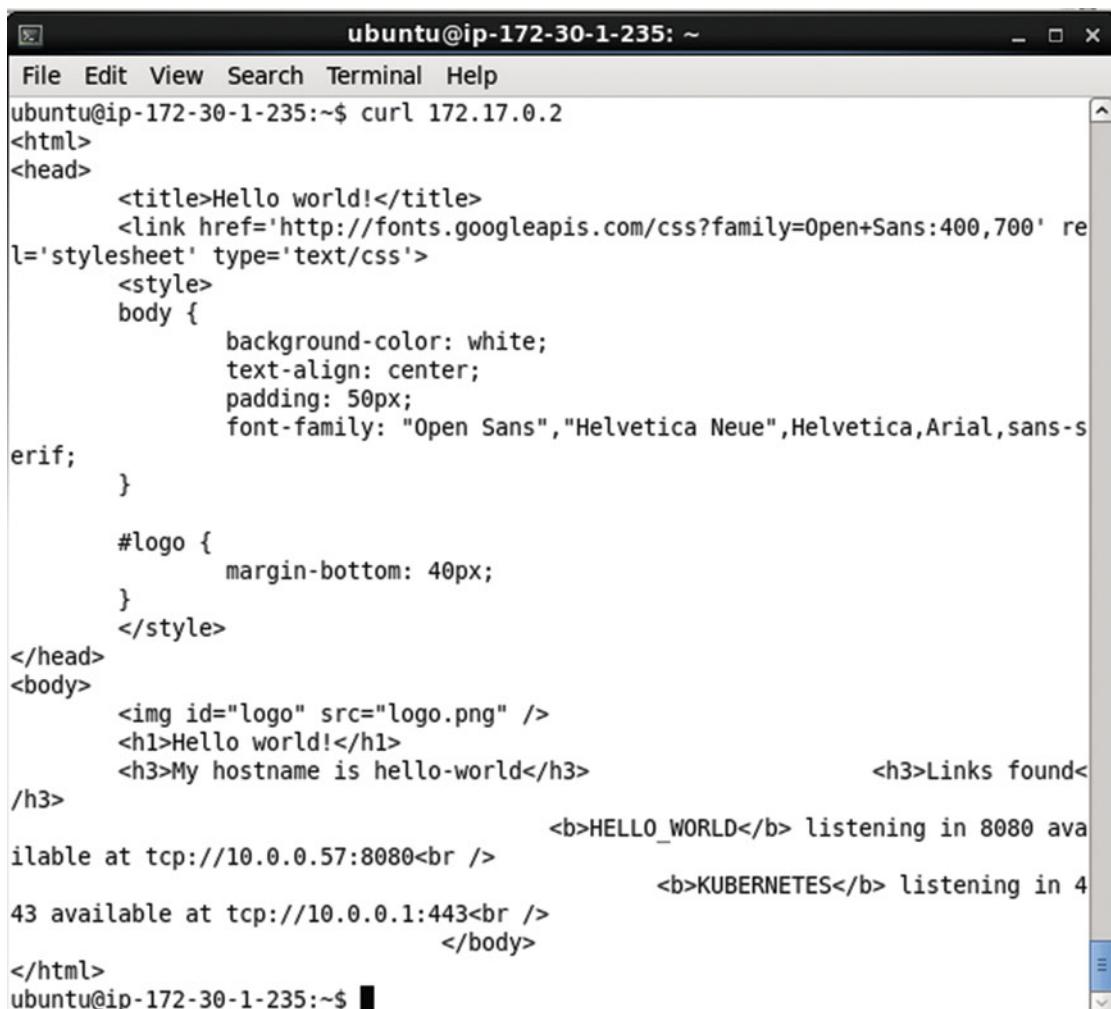
```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ kubectl describe pod hello-world
Name:           hello-world
Namespace:      default
Image(s):       tutum/hello-world
Node:          127.0.0.1/127.0.0.1
Labels:         <none>
Status:        Running
Reason:
Message:
IP:            172.17.0.2
Replication Controllers: <none>
Containers:
  hello-world:
    Image:      tutum/hello-world
    State:      Running
    Started:   Sun, 27 Dec 2015 00:35:30 +0000
    Ready:      True
    Restart Count: 0
Conditions:
  Type      Status
  Ready     True
Events:
FirstSeen      LastSeen      Count  Reason
2015-12-27T00:35:20+0000  2015-12-27T00:35:20+0000  1  scheduled
  message: successfully assigned hello-world to 127.0.0.1
2015-12-27T00:35:20+0000  2015-12-27T00:35:20+0000  1  pulled
  kubelet 127.0.0.1} implicitly required container POD
  pod container image "gcr.io/google_containers/pause:0.8.0" already present on machine
```

Figure 2-22. Describing the hello-world Pod

Invoke the hello-world Pod application using the IP 172.17.0.2.

```
curl 172.17.0.2
```

The HTML output from the hello-world application gets listed as shown in Figure 2-23.



```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235: ~
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ curl 172.17.0.2
<html>
<head>
    <title>Hello world!</title>
    <link href='http://fonts.googleapis.com/css?family=Open+Sans:400,700' rel='stylesheet' type='text/css'>
    <style>
        body {
            background-color: white;
            text-align: center;
            padding: 50px;
            font-family: "Open Sans", "Helvetica Neue", Helvetica, Arial, sans-serif;
        }

        #logo {
            margin-bottom: 40px;
        }
    </style>
</head>
<body>
    
    <h1>Hello world!</h1>
    <h3>My hostname is hello-world</h3>
    <h3>Links found</h3>
        <b>HELLO_WORLD</b> listening in 8080 available at tcp://10.0.0.57:8080<br />
        <b>KUBERNETES</b> listening in 443 available at tcp://10.0.0.1:443<br />
    </body>
</html>
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$
```

**Figure 2-23.** Invoking the hello-world Application with curl

Set up port forwarding from a local machine to the IP address of the hello-world Pod.

```
ssh -i "docker.pem" -f -nNT -L 80:172.17.0.2:80 ubuntu@ec2-52-91-200-41.compute-1.amazonaws.com
```

Subsequently invoke the url <http://localhost:80> in a browser on a local machine to display the HTML output from the application as shown in Figure 2-24. The default Hypertext transfer protocol port being 80, has been omitted from the URL, as shown in Figure 2-24.

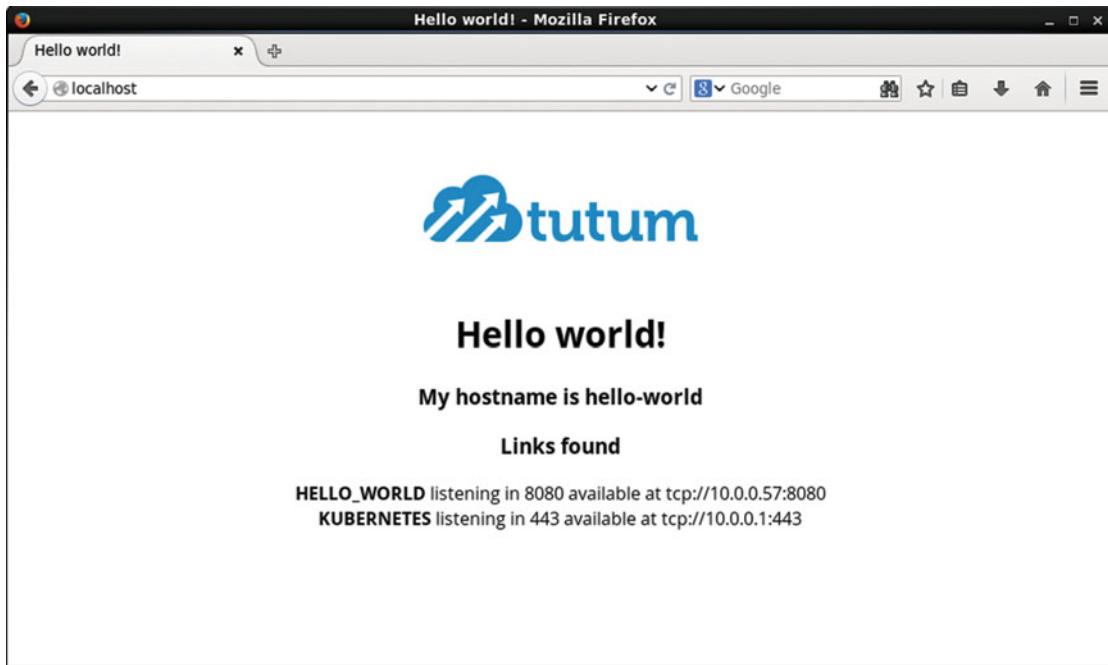


Figure 2-24. Invoking the hello-world Application in a Browser on a local machine

## Creating a Service Definition

We created a Pod definition file and started a single Pod, but the Pod is not associated with any Service or Replication Controller. External clients have to access the Pod directly and are not able to scale the application with just a single unassociated Pod. Create a Service definition file `hello-world-service.yaml` as listed below. If copying and pasting YAML files listed in this chapter and other chapters it is recommended to use the YAML Lint (<http://www.yamlint.com/>) to format the files before using in an application.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Service
metadata:
  labels:
    app: hello-world
    name: hello-world
spec:
  ports:
  -
    name: http
    port: 80
    targetPort: http
  selector:
    app: hello-world
  type: LoadBalancer
```

The main mappings of the Service definition file are kind, metadata, and spec. The kind is set to Service to indicate a Kubernetes Service. The label app and the name constitute the metadata. The spec mapping includes a ports mapping for port 80 with name http. Optionally a targetPort may be set, which defaults to the same value as port. The selector is the main mapping in the spec and specifies a mapping to be used for selecting the Pods to expose via the Service. The app:hello-world selector implies that all Pods with label app=hello-world are selected. The definition file may be created in the vi editor and saved with the :wq command as shown in Figure 2-25.

A screenshot of a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235: ~". The window contains the following text:

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Service
metadata:
  name: "hello-world"
  labels:
    app: "hello-world"
spec:
  ports:
  - name: http
    port: 80
    targetPort: http
  selector:
    app: "hello-world"
  type: LoadBalancer
```

The bottom of the terminal shows the command ":wq" being typed in the command line.

**Figure 2-25.** Service Definition File *hello-world-service.yaml*

A complete reference to the Kubernetes Service schema is available at [http://kubernetes.io/v1.1/docs/api-reference/v1/definitions.html#\\_v1\\_service](http://kubernetes.io/v1.1/docs/api-reference/v1/definitions.html#_v1_service).

Create a Service using the definition file with the kubectl create command.

```
kubectl create -f hello-world-service.yaml
```

The hello-world Service gets created as shown in Figure 2-26.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ kubectl create -f hello-world-service.yaml
services/hello-world
```

**Figure 2-26.** Creating the hello-world Service using the Definition File

List the Services with the following command.

```
kubectl get services
```

The hello-world Service gets listed in addition to the kubernetes Service as shown in Figure 2-27.

NAME		LABELS	SELECTOR	IP(S)
	PORT(S)			
hello-world	.57	run=hello-world 8080/TCP	run=hello-world	10.0.0
kubernetes	.1	component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes 443/TCP	<none>	10.0.0

**Figure 2-27.** Listing the hello-world Service

Describe the hello-world Service with the following command.

```
kubectl describe svc hello-world
```

The Service name, namespace, labels, selector, type, Ip get listed as shown in Figure 2-28. Because the hello-world Pod created using the Pod definition file does not include a label to match the Service selector, it is not managed by the Service. As the hello-world Service is not managing any Pods, no endpoint gets listed.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ kubectl create -f hello-world-service.yaml
services/hello-world
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ kubectl get services
NAME           LABELS   SELECTOR   IP(S)
hello-world    app=hello-world   app=hello-world  10.0.0.206
               .206  80/TCP
kubernetes     component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes <none>      10.0.0.1
               .1    443/TCP
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ kubectl describe service hello-world
Name:           hello-world
Namespace:      default
Labels:         app=hello-world
Selector:       app=hello-world
Type:          LoadBalancer
IP:            10.0.0.206
Port:          http    80/TCP
NodePort:       http    32600/TCP
Endpoints:     <none>
Session Affinity: None
No events.

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ █
```

**Figure 2-28.** Describing the hello-world Service

## Creating a Replication Controller Definition

Next, we shall create a Replication Controller and label the Replication Controller to match the selector of the Service created previously. Create a Service definition file `hello-rc.yaml`. The kind mapping of a Replication Controller is `ReplicationController`. The `replicas`' sub-mapping in the spec mapping is set to 2 to create two replicas from the Pod also specified in the spec. At least one of the labels in the template- > metadata- > labels must match the Service selector in the Service definition file for the Pod to be exposed by the Service. As the Service selector in the `hello-world` Service is `app:hello-world` add the `app:hello-world` label to the Replication Controller template. The `app:hello-world` setting in YAML translates to `app=hello-world`. The template may define one or more containers to be included in the Pod created from the Replication Controller. We have included container definition for only one container for image `tutum/hello-world`. The `hello-rc.yaml` is listed below. A YAML lint (<http://www.yamllint.com/>) may be used to validate the YAML syntax.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: ReplicationController
metadata:
  name: hello-world
spec:
  replicas: 2
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        app: hello-world
```

```

spec:
  containers:
    -
      image: tutum/hello-world
      name: hello-world
      ports:
        -
          containerPort: 8080
          name: http

```

A complete schema for the Replication Controller is available at [http://kubernetes.io/v1.1/docs/api-reference/v1/definitions.html#\\_v1\\_replicationcontroller](http://kubernetes.io/v1.1/docs/api-reference/v1/definitions.html#_v1_replicationcontroller).

Create the Replication Controller using the definition file with the `kubectl create` command, the same command that was used to create a Pod and a Service.

```
kubectl create -f hello-rc.yaml
```

Subsequently run the following command to list the Replication Controllers.

```
kubectl get rc
```

A hello-world Replication Controller gets created and gets listed as shown in Figure 2-29. The number of replicas are listed as 2 as specified in the definition file.

```

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ kubectl create -f hello-rc.yaml
replicationcontrollers/hello-world
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ kubectl get rc
CONTROLLER   CONTAINER(S)   IMAGE(S)           SELECTOR           REPLICAS
hello-world   hello-world   tutum/hello-world   app=hello-world   2

```

**Figure 2-29.** Creating a Replication Controller

List the Pods created with the Replication Controller with the following command.

```
kubectl get pods
```

The two Pods created from the definition file get listed as shown in Figure 2-30. The Pod created the Pod definition file also gets listed but is not associated with the Replication Controller. Initially some or all of the new Pods may be listed as not ready as indicated by the 0/1 value in the READY column for one of the Pods in Figure 2-30.

```

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME         READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
hello-world   1/1     Running   0          7m
hello-world-7p6mf   1/1     Running   0          10s
hello-world-husbv   0/1     Running   0          10s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3     Running   0          1h
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ █

```

**Figure 2-30.** Listing the Pods soon after creating a Replication Controller

Invoke the same command again to list the Pods after a few more seconds.

```
kubectl get pods
```

All the Pods get listed as READY->1/1 and Running as shown in Figure 2-31.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
hello-world    1/1     Running   0          7m
hello-world-7p6mf 1/1     Running   0          34s
hello-world-husbv 1/1     Running   0          34s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3     Running   0          1h
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$
```

**Figure 2-31.** Listing all the Pods as Running and Ready

To describe the hello-world Service run the following command.

```
kubectl describe service hello-world
```

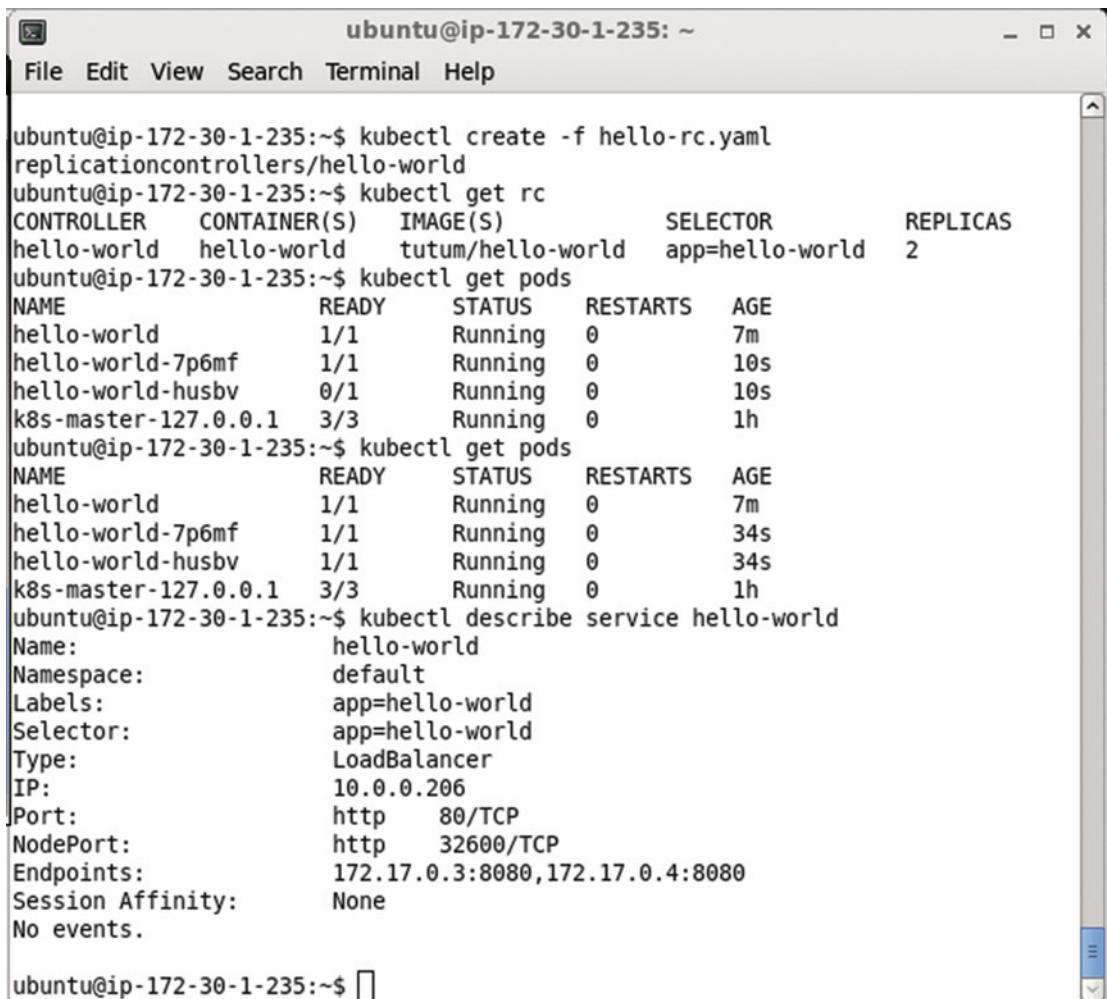
The Service detail including the Endpoints get listed as shown in Figure 2-32. The service selector is app=hello-world and the service endpoints are 172.17.0.3:8080 and 172.17.0.4:8080.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ kubectl describe service hello-world
Name:           hello-world
Namespace:      default
Labels:         app=hello-world
Selector:       app=hello-world
Type:          LoadBalancer
IP:            10.0.0.206
Port:          http  80/TCP
NodePort:       http  32600/TCP
Endpoints:     172.17.0.3:8080,172.17.0.4:8080
Session Affinity: None
No events.

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$
```

**Figure 2-32.** Describing the Service hello-world

All the preceding commands to create the hello-world Replication Controller, list its Pods and endpoints association with the hello-world Service shown in Figure 2-33.



```

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ kubectl create -f hello-rc.yaml
replicationcontrollers/hello-world
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ kubectl get rc
CONTROLLER   CONTAINER(S)   IMAGE(S)          SELECTOR      REPLICAS
hello-world   hello-world   tutum/hello-world   app=hello-world   2
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME         READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
hello-world   1/1     Running   0          7m
hello-world-7p6mf   1/1     Running   0          10s
hello-world-husbv   0/1     Running   0          10s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3     Running   0          1h
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME         READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
hello-world   1/1     Running   0          7m
hello-world-7p6mf   1/1     Running   0          34s
hello-world-husbv   1/1     Running   0          34s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3     Running   0          1h
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ kubectl describe service hello-world
Name:           hello-world
Namespace:      default
Labels:         app=hello-world
Selector:       app=hello-world
Type:          LoadBalancer
IP:            10.0.0.206
Port:          http   80/TCP
NodePort:      http   32600/TCP
Endpoints:     172.17.0.3:8080,172.17.0.4:8080
Session Affinity: None
No events.

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ 

```

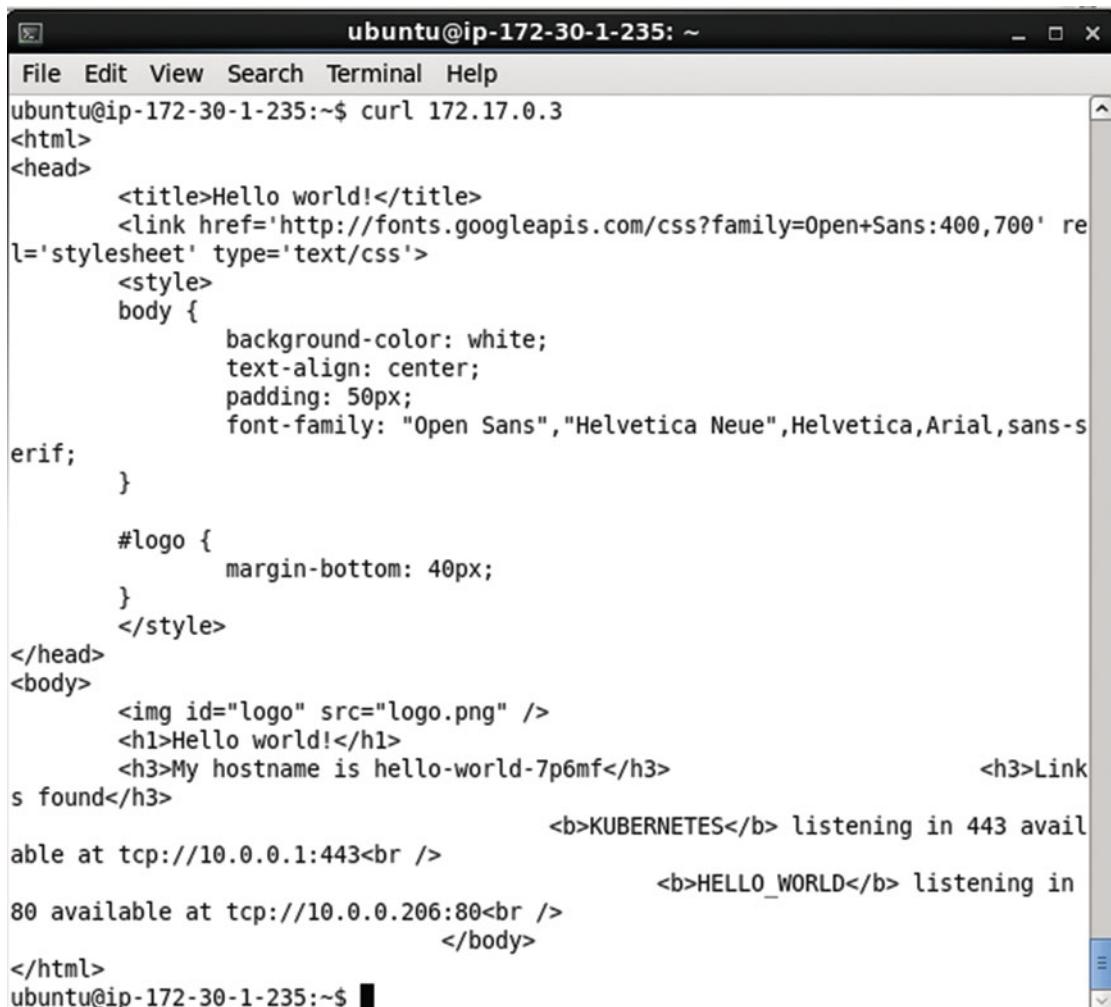
**Figure 2-33.** Summary of Commands to create a Replication Controller

## Invoking the Hello-World Application

The Pods associated with the hello-world Replication Controller and Service by the same name may be invoked using the Service endpoints as listed in the Service description in Figure 2-33. For example, invoke the 172.17.0.3 endpoint with the following curl command.

```
curl 172.17.0.3
```

The HTML output from the Pod gets output as shown in Figure 2-34.



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235: ~". The command "curl 172.17.0.3" is run, resulting in the following HTML output:

```
<html>
<head>
    <title>Hello world!</title>
    <link href='http://fonts.googleapis.com/css?family=Open+Sans:400,700' rel='stylesheet' type='text/css'>
    <style>
        body {
            background-color: white;
            text-align: center;
            padding: 50px;
            font-family: "Open Sans", "Helvetica Neue", Helvetica, Arial, sans-serif;
        }

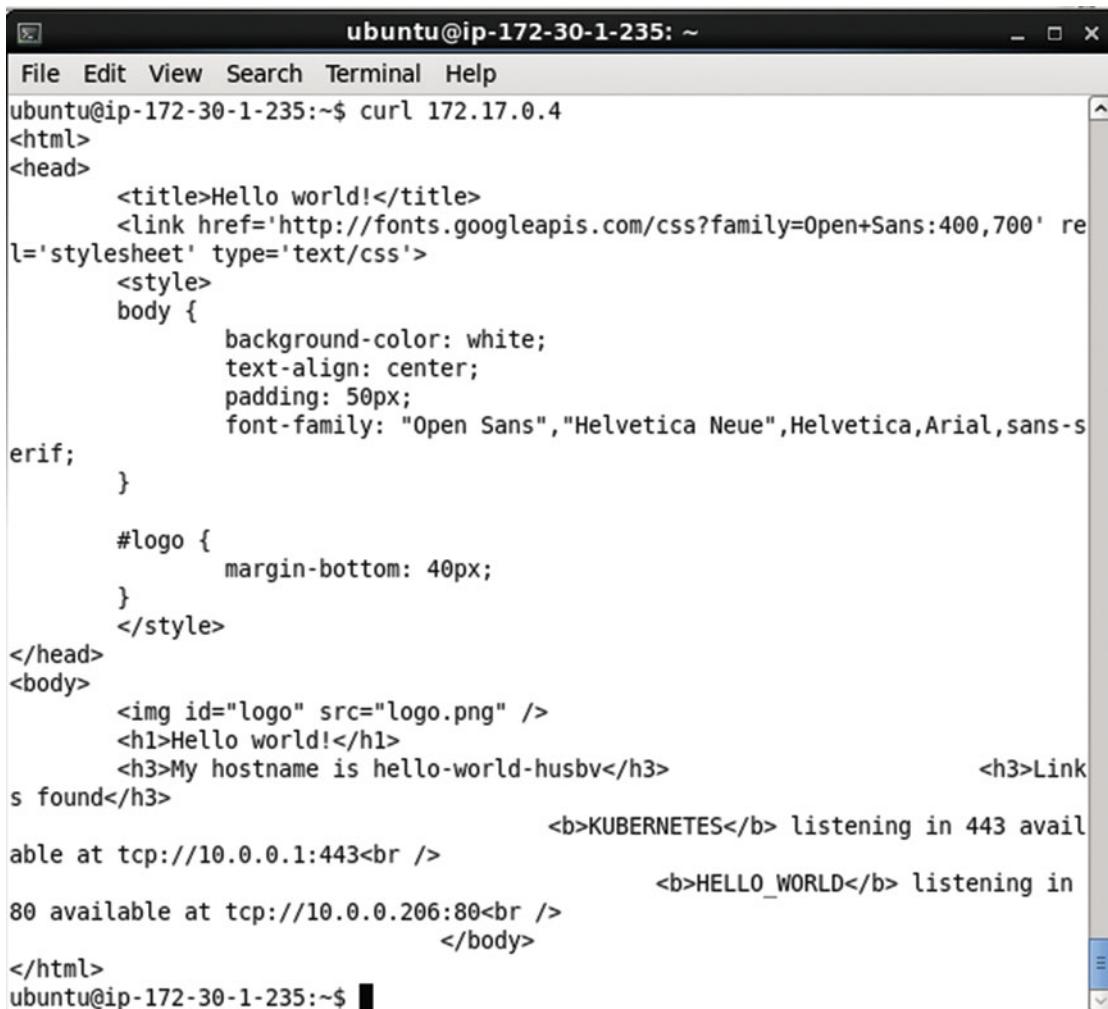
        #logo {
            margin-bottom: 40px;
        }
    </style>
</head>
<body>
    
    <h1>Hello world!</h1>
    <h3>My hostname is hello-world-7p6mf</h3>
        <h3>Link found</h3>
        <b>KUBERNETES</b> listening in 443 available at tcp://10.0.0.1:443<br />
        <b>HELLO_WORLD</b> listening in 80 available at tcp://10.0.0.206:80<br />
    </body>
</html>
```

**Figure 2-34.** HTML Output from invoking the hello-world Application with curl

Similarly, invoke the 172.17.0.4 endpoint with the following curl command.

```
curl 172.17.0.4
```

The HTML output from the other Pod gets output as shown in Figure 2-35.

A screenshot of a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235: ~". The window contains the following text:

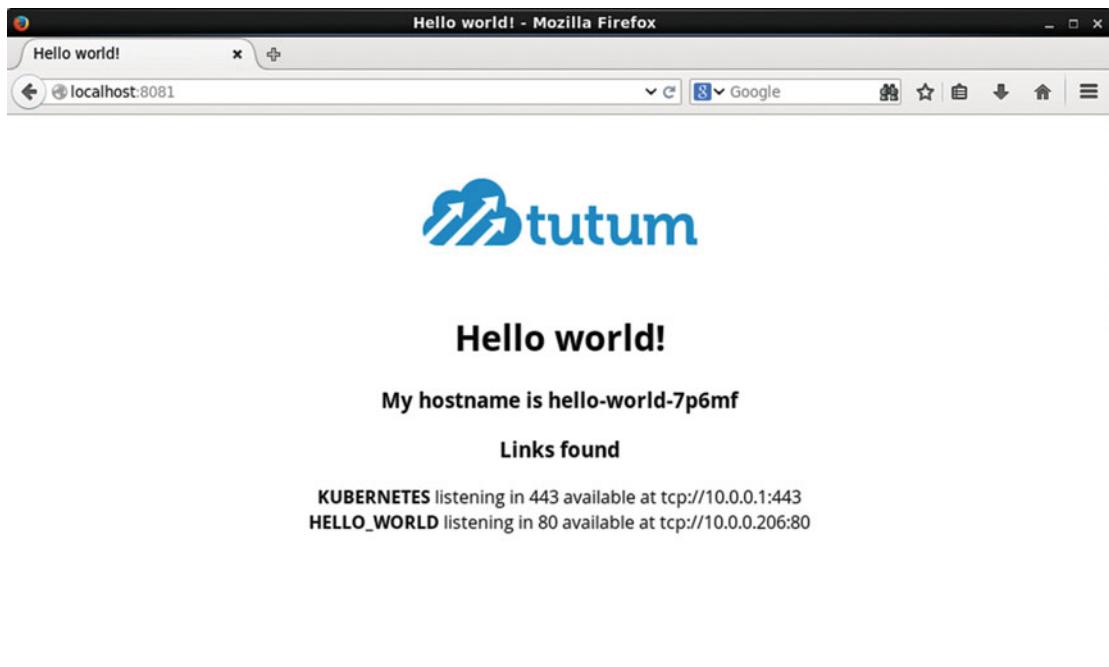
```
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ curl 172.17.0.4
<html>
<head>
<title>Hello world!</title>
<link href='http://fonts.googleapis.com/css?family=Open+Sans:400,700' rel='stylesheet' type='text/css'>
<style>
body {
    background-color: white;
    text-align: center;
    padding: 50px;
    font-family: "Open Sans", "Helvetica Neue", Helvetica, Arial, sans-serif;
}
#logo {
    margin-bottom: 40px;
}
</style>
</head>
<body>
    
    <h1>Hello world!</h1>
    <h3>My hostname is hello-world-husbv</h3>
    <h3>Link found</h3>
    <b>KUBERNETES</b> listening in 443 available at tcp://10.0.0.1:443<br />
    <b>HELLO_WORLD</b> listening in 80 available at tcp://10.0.0.206:80<br />
</body>
</html>
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$
```

Figure 2-35. Invoking another Service Endpoint with curl

To invoke the Service endpoints in a browser on a local machine configure local port forwarding for the Service endpoints.

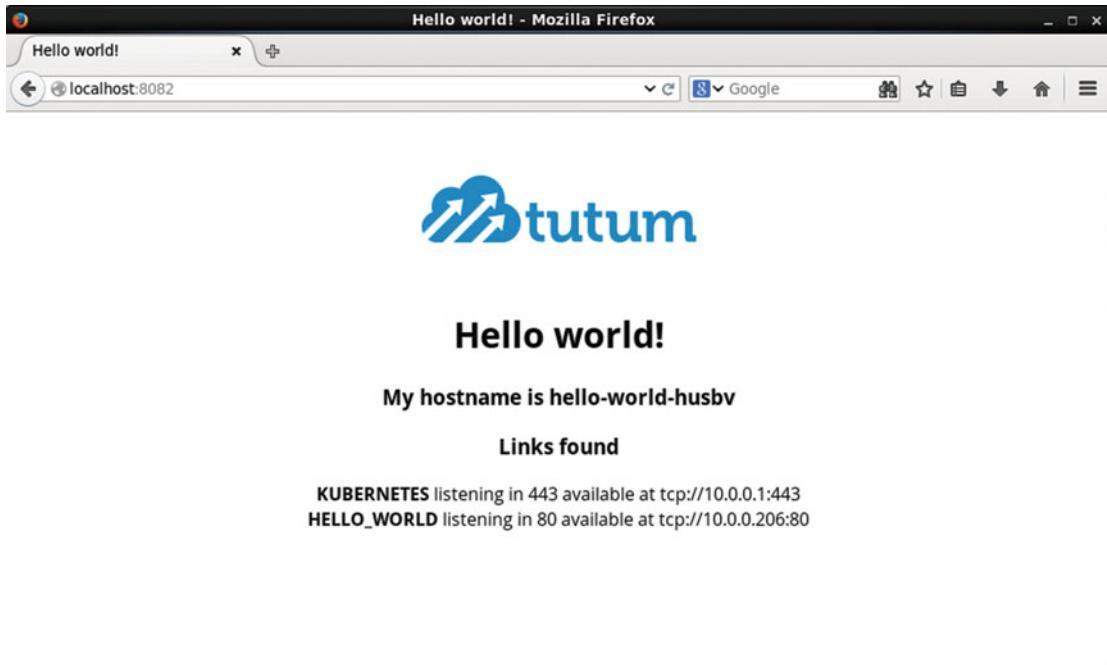
```
ssh -i "docker.pem" -f -nNT -L 8081:172.17.0.3:8080 ubuntu@ec2-52-91-200-41.compute-1.amazonaws.com
ssh -i "docker.pem" -f -nNT -L 8082:172.17.0.4:8080 ubuntu@ec2-52-91-200-41.compute-1.amazonaws.com
```

Subsequently invoke the localhost:8081 URL in a browser on a local machine as shown in Figure 2-36 to display the HTML output from the Pod at endpoint 172.17.0.3:8080.



**Figure 2-36.** Invoking the hello-world Application in a Local machine Browser with its Service Endpoint

Similarly invoke the localhost:8082 URL in a browser on a local machine as shown in Figure 2-37 to display the HTML output from the Pod at endpoint 172.17.0.4:8080.



**Figure 2-37.** Invoking another Service Endpoint in a Browser

## Scaling the Application

To scale the hello-world Replication Controller to 6 replicas, for example, run the following kubectl scale command.

```
kubectl scale rc hello-world --replicas=6
```

An output of “scaled” as shown in Figure 2-38 indicates the Replication Controller has been scaled.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ kubectl scale rc hello-world --replicas=6
scaled
```

**Figure 2-38.** Scaling an Application

The number of Pods for the hello-world Replication Controller increases when the Replication Controller is scaled up to 6. To list the Pods run the following command.

```
kubectl get pods
```

Six Pods get listed in addition to the hello-world Pod created initially using a Pod definition file as shown in Figure 2-39. The preceding command may have to be run more than once to list all the Pods with STATUS as Running and READY state as 1/1. The hello-world Pod is not associated with the hello-world Replication Controller as it does not include a label that matches the selector label (same as template label) in the Replication Controller.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
hello-world    1/1     Running   0          14m
hello-world-3ad39  1/1     Running   0          21s
hello-world-7p6mf  1/1     Running   0          7m
hello-world-gpoy5  1/1     Running   0          21s
hello-world-gr8j8  0/1     Running   0          21s
hello-world-hujw9  1/1     Running   0          21s
hello-world-husbv  1/1     Running   0          7m
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   0          2h
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
hello-world    1/1     Running   0          14m
hello-world-3ad39  1/1     Running   0          30s
hello-world-7p6mf  1/1     Running   0          7m
hello-world-gpoy5  1/1     Running   0          30s
hello-world-gr8j8  1/1     Running   0          30s
hello-world-hujw9  1/1     Running   0          30s
hello-world-husbv  1/1     Running   0          7m
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   0          2h
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$
```

**Figure 2-39.** Listing Pods after Scaling

In the preceding example we scaled *up* the Replication Controller, but the `kubectl scale` command may also be used to scale *down* the Replication Controller. As an example, scale down the hello-world Replication Controller to 2 replicas.

```
kubectl scale rc hello-world --replicas=2
```

Subsequently list the Pods.

```
kubectl get pods
```

The number of replicas gets listed as 2 in addition to the hello-world Pod as shown in Figure 2-40.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ kubectl scale rc hello-world --replicas=2
scaled
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
hello-world    1/1     Running   0          15m
hello-world-3ad39  1/1     Running   0          1m
hello-world-gr8j8  1/1     Running   0          1m
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   0          2h
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-235:~$ █
```

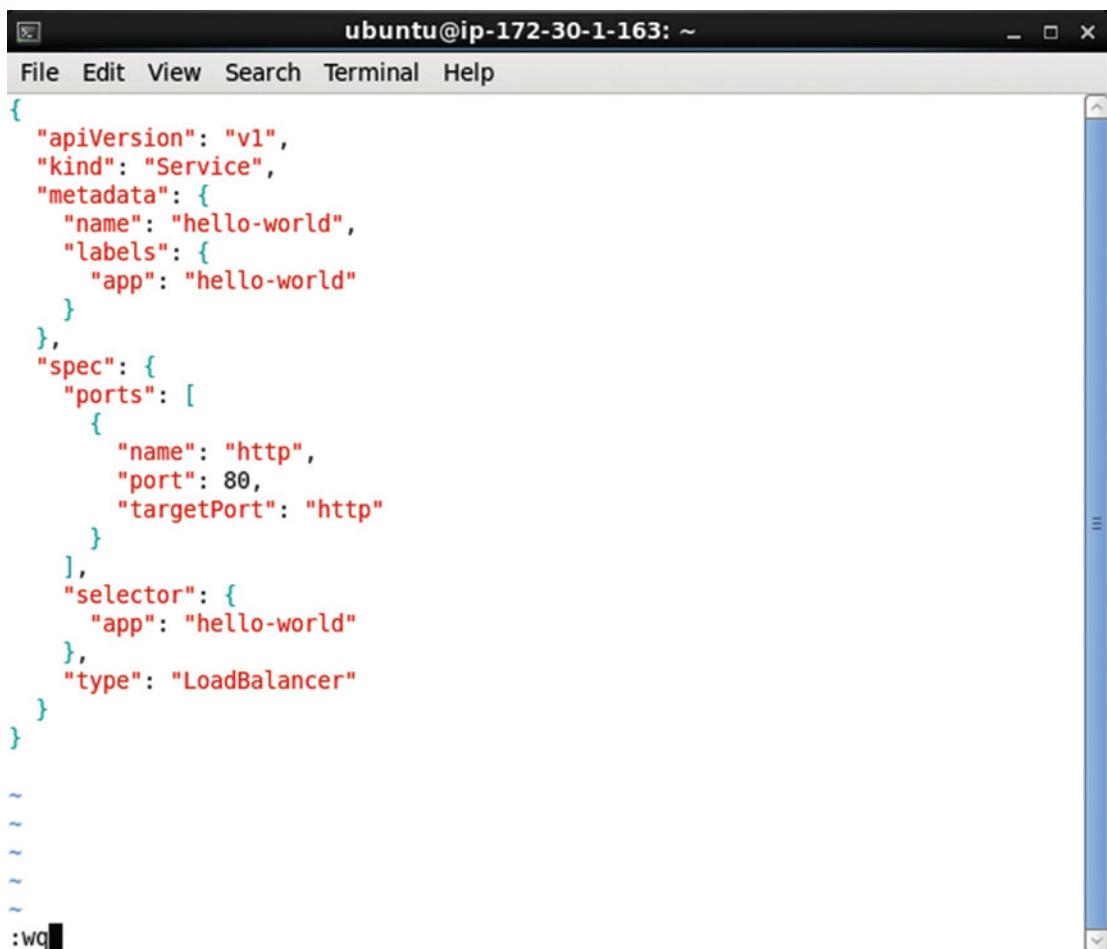
**Figure 2-40.** Scaling Down to 2 Replicas

## Using JSON for the Resource Definitions

In the preceding section we used the YAML format to create the Pod, Service, and Replication Controller definition files. The definition files may be developed in JSON format instead. The YAMLtoJSON utility (<http://yamltojson.com/>) may be used to convert from YAML to JSON and the JSON lint (<http://jsonlint.com/>) may be used to validate the JSON. A JSON to YAML utility is also available at <http://jsontoyaml.com/>. The JSON definition file `hello-world-service.json` for the `hello-world` Service is listed:

```
{
  "apiVersion": "v1",
  "kind": "Service",
  "metadata": {
    "name": "hello-world",
    "labels": {
      "app": "hello-world"
    }
  },
  "spec": {
    "ports": [
      {
        "name": "http",
        "port": 80,
        "targetPort": "http"
      }
    ],
    "selector": {
      "app": "hello-world"
    },
    "type": "LoadBalancer"
  }
}
```

Create a `hello-world-service.json` file using a vi editor and copy and paste the preceding listing to the file. Save the file using `:wq` as shown in Figure 2-41.



```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163: ~
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
{
  "apiVersion": "v1",
  "kind": "Service",
  "metadata": {
    "name": "hello-world",
    "labels": {
      "app": "hello-world"
    }
  },
  "spec": {
    "ports": [
      {
        "name": "http",
        "port": 80,
        "targetPort": "http"
      }
    ],
    "selector": {
      "app": "hello-world"
    },
    "type": "LoadBalancer"
  }
}
~
```

The terminal window title is "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163: ~". The menu bar includes File, Edit, View, Search, Terminal, and Help. The code area contains a JSON object representing a Kubernetes Service definition for a "hello-world" application. The service has a single port named "http" on port 80, targeting the "http" port of the pods. It uses a "LoadBalancer" type and selects pods with the "app" label set to "hello-world". The file ends with a colon and "wq" to save and quit.

**Figure 2-41.** Service Definition File in JSON Format

Delete the hello-world Service and hello-world Replication Controller created previously. Run the following command to create a Service from the JSON format definition file.

```
kubectl create -f hello-world-service.json
```

The hello-world Service gets created as shown in Figure 2-42.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$ kubectl create -f hello-world-service.json
services/hello-world
```

**Figure 2-42.** Creating a Service from the JSON Definition File

Subsequently list all the Kubernetes Services.

```
kubectl get services
```

The hello-world Service gets listed as shown in Figure 2-43.

NAME	LABELS	SELECTOR	IP(S)
PORT(S)			
hello-world	app=hello-world	app=hello-world	10.0.0
.194	80/TCP		
kubernetes	component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes	<none>	10.0.0
.1	443/TCP		

**Figure 2-43.** Listing the Services

The JSON format version of the Replication Controller definition file, `hello-rc.json`, is as follows.

```
{
  "apiVersion": "v1",
  "kind": "ReplicationController",
  "metadata": {
    "name": "hello-world"
  },
  "spec": {
    "replicas": 2,
    "template": {
      "metadata": {
        "labels": {
          "app": "hello-world"
        }
      },
      "spec": {
        "containers": [
          {
            "image": "tutum/hello-world",
            "name": "hello-world",
            "ports": [
              {
                "containerPort": 8080,
                "name": "http"
              }
            ]
          }
        ]
      }
    }
  }
}
```

Create the hello-rc.json file in a vi editor and save the file with :wq as shown in Figure 2-44.

The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163: ~". The window contains the JSON configuration for a Replication Controller named "hello-world". The JSON code is as follows:

```
{
  "apiVersion": "v1",
  "kind": "ReplicationController",
  "metadata": {
    "name": "hello-world"
  },
  "spec": {
    "replicas": 2,
    "template": {
      "metadata": {
        "labels": {
          "app": "hello-world"
        }
      },
      "spec": {
        "containers": [
          {
            "image": "tutum/hello-world",
            "name": "hello-world",
            "ports": [
              {
                "containerPort": 8080,
                "name": "http"
              }
            ]
          }
        ]
      }
    }
  }
}

:wq
```

The bottom left corner of the terminal window shows the command ":wq" indicating the file is being saved.

**Figure 2-44.** Creating the hello-rc.json File in vi Editor

Delete all previously created Pods and Replication Controllers. Run the following command to create the hello-world Replication Controller.

```
kubectl create -f hello-rc.json
```

The hello-world Replication Controller gets created as shown in Figure 2-45. Subsequently run the following command to list the Replication Controllers.

```
kubectl get rc
```

The hello-world Replication Controller gets listed as shown in Figure 2-45. List the Pods created by the Replication Controller using the following command.

```
kubectl get pods
```

Because replicas is set as 2 two Pods get listed as shown in Figure 2-45.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$ kubectl create -f hello-rc.json
replicationcontrollers/hello-world
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$ kubectl get rc
CONTROLLER      CONTAINER(S)        IMAGE(S)          SELECTOR          REPLICAS
hello-world     hello-world       tutum/hello-world   app=hello-world   2
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME            READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
hello-world-hg7zs  1/1    Running   0          26s
hello-world-m7exj  1/1    Running   0          26s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3    Running   0          1h
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$ █
```

**Figure 2-45.** Creating a Replication Controller from the JSONformat Definition File

Describe the hello-world Service with the following command.

```
kubectl describe svc hello-world
```

Because the label on the hello-world Replication Controller matches the Service selector, the two Pods created using the Replication Controller are represented by the Service and have endpoints in the Service as shown in Figure 2-46.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$ kubectl describe svc hello-world
Name:           hello-world
Namespace:      default
Labels:         app=hello-world
Selector:       app=hello-world
Type:          LoadBalancer
IP:             10.0.0.194
Port:          http   80/TCP
NodePort:       http   32469/TCP
Endpoints:     172.17.0.2:8080,172.17.0.3:8080
Session Affinity: None
No events.

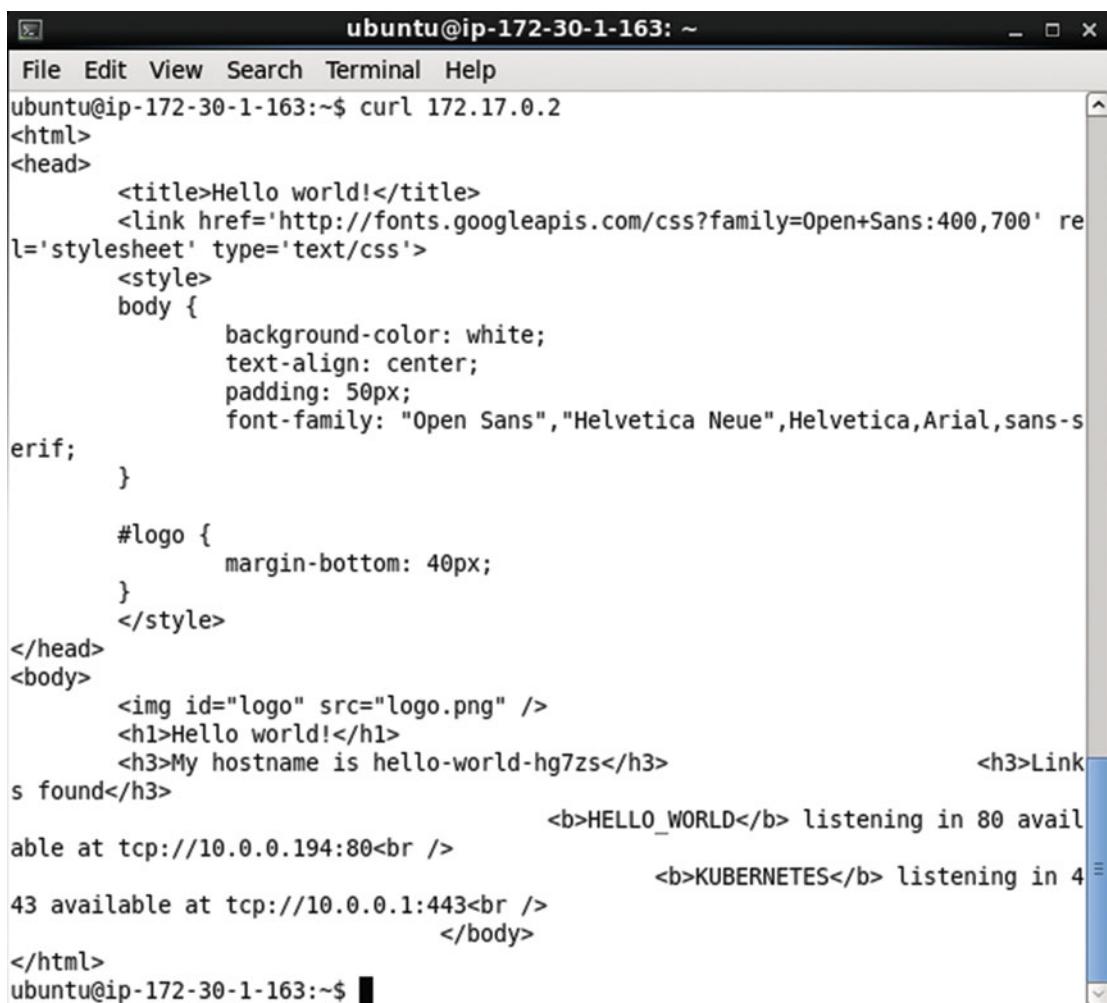
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$ █
```

**Figure 2-46.** Describing the hello-world Service

Invoke a Service endpoint using a curl command as follows.

```
curl 172.17.0.2
```

The HTML output from the curl command gets output as shown in Figure 2-47.



A screenshot of a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163: ~". The window shows the command "curl 172.17.0.2" being run, followed by the resulting HTML response. The response includes a title "Hello world!", a CSS style block for the body and #logo, and an image tag for "logo.png". It also contains several **h3** tags with text like "Hello world!", "My hostname is hello-world-hg7zs", and "Link found". At the bottom, it lists ports 80 and 443 with their respective service names: "HELLO\_WORLD" and "KUBERNETES".

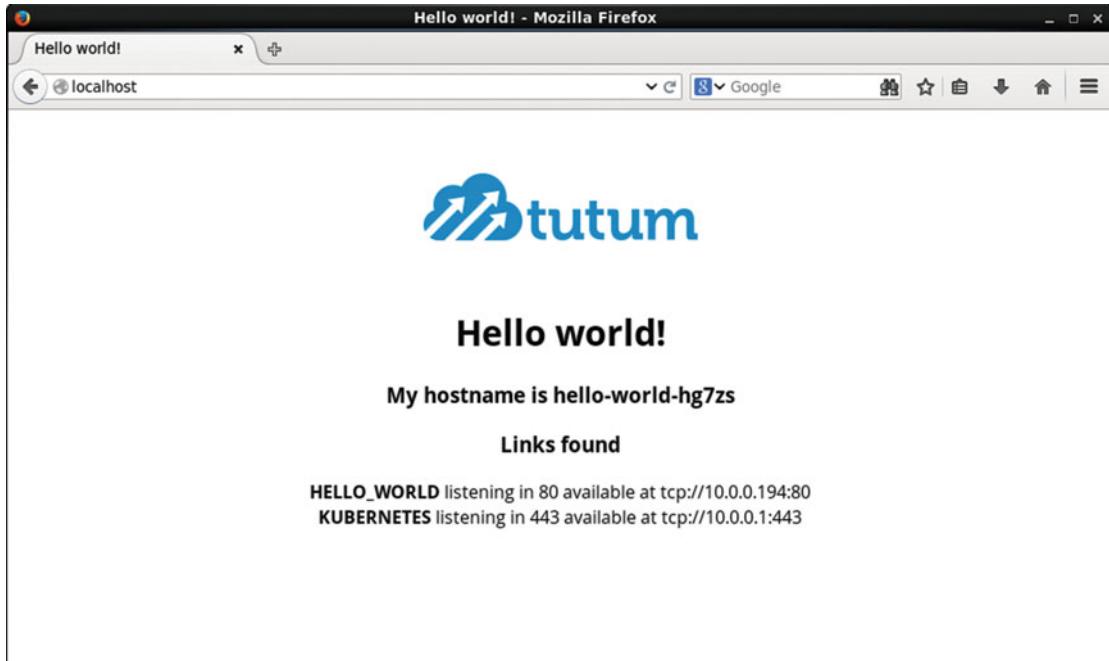
```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$ curl 172.17.0.2
<html>
<head>
    <title>Hello world!</title>
    <link href='http://fonts.googleapis.com/css?family=Open+Sans:400,700' rel='stylesheet' type='text/css'>
        <style>
            body {
                background-color: white;
                text-align: center;
                padding: 50px;
                font-family: "Open Sans", "Helvetica Neue", Helvetica, Arial, sans-serif;
            }
            #logo {
                margin-bottom: 40px;
            }
        </style>
    </head>
    <body>
        
        <h1>Hello world!</h1>
        <h3>My hostname is hello-world-hg7zs</h3>
        <h3>Link found</h3>
        <b>HELLO_WORLD</b> listening in 80 available at tcp://10.0.0.194:80<br />
        <b>KUBERNETES</b> listening in 443 available at tcp://10.0.0.1:443<br />
    </body>
</html>
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$
```

Figure 2-47. Invoking the hello-world Application with curl

Set up local port forwarding to a Service endpoint.

```
ssh -i "docker.pem" -f -nNT -L 80:172.17.0.2:8080 ubuntu@ec2-52-91-200-41.compute-1.amazonaws.com
```

Subsequently invoke the Service endpoint in a browser in a local machine to display the HTML output as shown in Figure 2-48.



**Figure 2-48.** Displaying hello-world Application HTML in a Browser

## Summary

In this chapter we introduced the Kubernetes concepts such as Pod, Service, Replication Controller, Labels, and Selector. We also developed a hello-world application both imperatively on the command line, and declaratively using definition files. We discussed two different supported formats for the definition files: YAML and JSON. In the next chapter we shall discuss using environment variables in Pod definitions.

## CHAPTER 3



# Using Custom Commands and Environment Variables

Kubernetes orchestrates Docker containers, and the instructions to run for a Docker image are specified in the Dockerfile. The `ENTRYPOINT` instruction specifies the command to run, and the `CMD` instruction specifies the default arguments for the `ENTRYPOINT` command. Kubernetes provides two fields, "Command" and "Args", to be specified for a container image in a Pod definition to override the default settings of `ENTRYPOINT` and `CMD`. We shall discuss these fields in this chapter. We shall also discuss using environment variables in a Pod definition's container mapping with the "env" field mapping.

This chapter has the following sections.

Setting the Environment

The `ENTRYPOINT` and `CMD` Instructions

The Command and Args Fields in a Pod Definition

Environment Variables

Using the default `ENTRYPOINT` and `CMD` from a Docker Image

Overriding Both the `ENTRYPOINT` and `CMD` in a Docker Image

Specifying both the Executable and the Parameters in the Command Mapping

Specifying both the Executable and the Parameters in the Args Mapping

## Setting the Environment

The following software is used in this chapter.

-Docker Engine (latest version)

-Kubernetes (version 1.01)

-Kubectl (version 1.01)

Install Docker engine, Kubernetes, and Kubectl as discussed in chapter 1. Start Docker Engine and verify its status with the following commands.

```
sudo service docker start  
sudo service docker status
```

The output shown in Figure 3-1 indicates that Docker is running.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-41:~$ sudo service docker start
start: Job is already running: docker
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-41:~$ sudo service docker status
docker start/running, process 2699
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-41:~$ █
```

**Figure 3-1.** Starting Docker and Verifying Its Status

## The ENTRYPOINT and CMD Instructions

The ENTRYPOINT in a Docker image's Dockerfile specifies the command to run when the image is run. The ENTRYPOINT has two forms discussed in Table 3-1. A Dockerfile may have only one ENTRYPOINT. If multiple ENTRYPOINTS are specified, the last ENTRYPOINT entry is run.

**Table 3-1.** ENTRYPOINT Forms

Form	Description	Format
Exec form	Runs an executable using the specified parameters. The exec form is the preferred form if environment variable substitution is not used. But if environment variable substitution is used the shell form must be used. The exec form does not perform any environment variable substitution.	ENTRYPOINT ["executable", "param1", "param2"]
Shell form	Runs the command in a shell and prevents any CMD or run command-line arguments to be used in conjunction with ENTRYPOINT. The shell form starts a shell with /bin/sh -c even though a shell is not invoked explicitly.	ENTRYPOINT command param1 param2

The CMD instruction specifies the args for the ENTRYPOINT command in exec form. The CMD has three forms as discussed in Table 3-2. A Dockerfile may have only one CMD entry. If multiple CMDs are specified the last CMD entry is run. The CMD instruction may include an executable.

**Table 3-2.** CMD Forms

Form	Description	Format
Exec form	The exec form specifies the command to invoke and the command parameters in JSON array format. The exec form does not perform environment variable substitution. If environment variable substitution is to be performed, use the shell form or invoke the shell explicitly in the exec form. In JSONs array format, double quotes “” must be used around names.	CMD [“executable”, “param1”, “param2”]
Default parameters to ENTRYPOINT	Specifies the default args to the ENTRYPOINT command. Both the ENTRYPOINT and CMD must be specified. Both the ENTRYPOINT and CMD must be specified using JSON array formats. In JSONs array format, double quotes “” must be used around names.	CMD [“param1”, “param2”]
Shell form	Invokes a shell to invoke the specified command using the parameters. The command is invoked as a sub-command of /bin/sh -c.	CMD command param1 param2

If command-line args are provided to the docker run command those override the default args in CMD instruction. The ENTRYPOINT instruction could also be used in combination with a helper script. Next, we shall discuss the two fields, “command” and “args” that could be used to override the ENTRYPOINT and CMD instructions in a Dockerfile respectively.

## The Command and Args Fields in a Pod Definition

Kubernetes has the provision to override the ENTRYPOINT (command) and CMD (args) instructions specified in the Dockerfile. Two field mappings in a Pod’s definition file could be used to override the ENTRYPOINT and CMD instructions. These fields are “Command” and “Args,” and they override the Dockerfile “ENTRYPOINT” and “CMD” instructions respectively. The overriding applies based on which of these instructions and fields are specified. Some examples of overriding are discussed in Table 3-3.

**Table 3-3.** Examples of Overriding ENTRYPOINT and CMD with Command and Args

	<b>ENTRYPOINT</b>	<b>CMD</b>	<b>Command</b>	<b>Args</b>	<b>Used</b>
Example 1	yes	yes	yes	yes	The Command and Args field mappings in the Pod definition file override the ENTRYPOINT and CMD instructions in Dockerfile.
Example 2	yes	yes	no	no	The Dockerfile ENTRYPOINT command and CMD args are used.
Example 3	yes	yes	yes	no	Only the command in the Command is used and Dockerfile ENTRYPOINT and CMD instructions are ignored.
Example 4	yes	yes	no	yes	The Docker image's command as specified in the ENTRYPOINT is used with the args specified in the Pod definition's Args. The args from the Dockerfile's CMD are ignored.
Example 5	no	yes	no	no	The command and parameters from the CMD instruction are run.
Example 6	no	yes	yes	yes	The Command and Args field mappings in the Pod definition file are used. The CMD instruction in Dockerfile is overridden.
Example 7	no	yes	no	yes	The Args field mapping in the Pod definition file is used. The CMD instruction in Dockerfile is overridden.
Example 8	no	yes	yes	no	The command in the Command mapping is used, and Dockerfile CMD instruction is ignored.

## Environment Variables

A Pod's schema has the provision to specify environment variables. The environment variables are specified as "name" and "value" field mappings as a collection within a container definition's "env" mapping. The format for specifying environment variables is as follows.

```
spec:
  containers:
    -
      image: "image name"
      name: "container name"
      env:
        -
          name: "env variable 1"
          value: " env variable 1 value"
        -
          name: "env variable 2"
          value: " env variable 2 value"
```

The environment variables are added to the docker run command using -e when the Docker image is run by Kubernetes. The environment variables may also be used in “command” and “args” mappings using the environment variable substitution if a shell is used to run the Docker image command. A shell is invoked if one or more of the following is used:

- The shell form of the ENTRYPOINT or CMD is used
- The shell is invoked explicitly in the ENTRYPOINT or CMD instruction

In the following sections we shall use the “ubuntu” Docker image to demonstrate overriding the default ENTRYPOINT command and the default CMD args. We shall start with using the default ENTRYPOINT and CMD instructions.

## Using the Default ENTRYPOINT and CMD from a Docker Image

The Dockerfile for the Ubuntu image does not provide an ENTRYPOINT instruction but the CMD instruction is set to CMD ["/bin/bash"]. In the example in this section we shall create a Pod definition that does not override the ENTRYPOINT or CMD instruction from the Docker image. Create a Pod definition file as follows with the image as “ubuntu” and some environment variables set.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: "hello-world"
  labels:
    app: "helloApp"
spec:
  restartPolicy: Never
  containers:
    -
      image: "ubuntu"
      name: "hello"
      ports:
        -
          containerPort: 8020
      env:
        -
          name: "MESSAGE1"
          value: "hello"
        -
          name: "MESSAGE2"
          value: "kubernetes"
```

The env.yaml file may be created in a vi editor and saved with the :wq command as shown in Figure 3-2.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-41: ~
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: "hello-world"
  labels:
    name: "helloApp"
spec:
  restartPolicy: Never
  containers:
    image: "ubuntu"
    name: "hello"
    ports:
      - containerPort: 8020
    env:
      - name: "MESSAGE1"
        value: "hello"
      - name: "MESSAGE2"
        value: "kubernetes"
#    command: ['/bin/echo']
#    args: ["$(MESSAGE1) $(MESSAGE2)"]
:wq
```

**Figure 3-2.** A Pod definition file `env.yaml` to demonstrate Environment Variables

Run the following command to create a Pod from the definition file `env.yaml`.

```
kubectl create -f env.yaml
```

The `hello-world` pod gets created as shown in Figure 3-3. Run the following command to list the pods.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-41:~$ kubectl create -f env.yaml
pods/hello-world
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-41:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS
RESTARTS      AGE
hello-world    0/1     Image: ubuntu is ready, container is creating
0             8s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3     Running
```

**Figure 3-3.** Creating and listing a Pod

```
kubectl get pods
```

The hello-world pod gets created but the Docker container created is listed as “creating” as shown in Figure 3-3.

When the Docker container gets created the STATUS column value transitions to “Running” and the READY column value becomes 1/1, which indicates that 1 of 1 containers in the Pod are ready and which is not shown in Figure 3-4 because the READY state transitions to 0/1 quickly thereafter. After the Pod command/args have run the Pod terminates and STATUS becomes ExitCode:0 as shown in Figure 3-4.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-41:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
hello-world    0/1     Running   0          11s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3     Running   0          2h
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-41:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
hello-world    0/1     Running   0          13s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3     Running   0          2h
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-41:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
hello-world    0/1     Running   0          16s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3     Running   0          2h
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-41:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
hello-world    0/1     ExitCode:0  0          22s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3     Running   0          2h
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-41:~$ █
```

**Figure 3-4.** After the Command/Args have run, a Pod terminates and the Pod’s Status becomes ExitCode:0

Run the following command to list the output from the Pod.

```
kubectl logs hello-world
```

As the default CMD [“/bin/bash”] in the “Ubuntu” Docker image is just the invocation of the bash shell using /bin/bash, no output is generated as shown in Figure 3-5.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-41:~$ kubectl logs hello-world
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-41:~$ █
```

**Figure 3-5.** No output generated with Default CMD ["/bin/bash"] in "ubuntu" Docker Image

## Overriding Both the ENTRYPOINT and CMD

In the second example we shall override both the ENTRYPOINT and CMD in a Dockerfile using Command and Args mappings in the Pod definition file. Using in combination ENTRYPOINT and CMD will help us to specify the default executable for the image and also it will provide the default arguments to that executable. Environment variable substitution is used for the MESSAGE1 and MESSAGE2 environment variables with the `$(VARIABLE_NAME)` syntax.

```
command: ["/bin/echo"]
args: ["$(MESSAGE1)", "$(MESSAGE2)"]
```

The `env.yaml` Pod definition file is listed:

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: "hello-world"
  labels:
    app: "helloApp"
spec:
  restartPolicy: Never
  containers:
    -
      image: "ubuntu"
      name: "hello"
      ports:
        -
          containerPort: 8020
      env:
        -
          name: "MESSAGE1"
          value: "hello"
        -
          name: "MESSAGE2"
          value: "kubernetes"
      command: ["/bin/echo"]
      args: ["$(MESSAGE1)", "$(MESSAGE2)"]
```

The `env.yaml` file may be opened and modified in the vi editor and saved using the :wq command as shown in Figure 3-6.

```

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-41: ~
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: "hello-world"
  labels:
    name: "helloApp"
spec:
  restartPolicy: Never
  containers:
    image: "ubuntu"
    name: "hello"
    ports:
      containerPort: 8020
    env:
      - name: "MESSAGE1"
        value: "hello"
      - name: "MESSAGE2"
        value: "kubernetes"
    command: ['/bin/echo']
    args: ["$(MESSAGE1) $(MESSAGE2)"]
:wq

```

**Figure 3-6.** Modifying env.yaml in a vi Editor

First, we need to delete the hello-world pod created in the first example with the following command.

```
kubectl delete pod hello-world
```

The hello-world pod gets deleted as shown in Figure 3-7.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-41:~$ kubectl delete pod hello-world
pods/hello-world
```

**Figure 3-7.** Deleting the hello-world Pod

Run the `kubectl create` command to create a Pod from the definition file `env.yaml`.

```
kubectl create -f env.yaml
```

The `hello-world` Pod gets created as shown in Figure 3-8.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-41:~$ kubectl create -f env.yaml
pods/hello-world
```

**Figure 3-8.** Creating the `hello-world` Pod from definition file `env.yaml`

Run the `kubectl get` command to list the pods.

```
kubectl get pods
```

The `hello-world` pod gets listed as shown in Figure 3-9. The Pod transitions quickly from the STATUS of “Running” to `ExitCode:0` as shown in Figure 3-9.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-41:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME          READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
hello-world   0/1     Running   0          17s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3     Running   0          2h
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-41:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME          READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
hello-world   0/1     ExitCode:0  0          21s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3     Running   0          2h
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-41:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME          READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
hello-world   0/1     ExitCode:0  0          26s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3     Running   0          2h
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-41:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME          READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
hello-world   0/1     ExitCode:0  0          32s
```

**Figure 3-9.** Listing the Pods with transitioning STATUS value

Run the following command to list the output from the Pod.

```
kubectl logs hello-world
```

The message created from environment variables `MESSAGE1` and `MESSAGE2` using substitution gets listed as shown in Figure 3-10.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-41:~$ kubectl logs hello-world
hello kubernetes
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-41:~$ █
```

**Figure 3-10.** Outputting Message Generated from Environment Variables using Value Substitution

## Specifying both the Executable and the Parameters in the Command Mapping

In the third example, specify that both the executable and the parameters are specified in the Command mapping in the Pod definition file. Environment variable substitution is used for the MESSAGE1 and MESSAGE2 environment variables. The shell is not required to be invoked/started explicitly if the environment variable syntax `$(VARIABLE_NAME)` is used, which is what we have used.

```
command: ["/bin/echo", " $(MESSAGE1)", " $(MESSAGE2)"]
```

The `env.yaml` Pod definition file is listed:

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: "hello-world"
  labels:
    app: "helloApp"
spec:
  restartPolicy: Never
  containers:
    -
      image: "ubuntu"
      name: "hello"
      ports:
        -
          containerPort: 8020
      env:
        -
          name: "MESSAGE1"
          value: "hello"
        -
          name: "MESSAGE2"
          value: "kubernetes"
      command: ["/bin/echo", " $(MESSAGE1)", " $(MESSAGE2)"]
```

The `env.yaml` file may be opened and modified in the vi editor and saved using the `:wq` command as shown in Figure 3-11.

The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-41: ~". The window displays a YAML configuration file for a Kubernetes Pod. The file defines a pod named "hello-world" with a single container named "hello" running an "ubuntu" image. The container exposes port 8020. It uses environment variables "MESSAGE1" and "MESSAGE2" with values "hello" and "kubernetes" respectively. The command to run is set to "/bin/echo \$(MESSAGE1) \$(MESSAGE2)". A comment indicates args should be set to the same values. The terminal status bar at the bottom shows the file is "env.yaml" with 26L and 478C, and the cursor is at position 1,1.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: "hello-world"
  labels:
    name: "helloApp"
spec:
  restartPolicy: Never
  containers:
    - image: "ubuntu"
      name: "hello"
      ports:
        - containerPort: 8020
      env:
        - name: "MESSAGE1"
          value: "hello"
        - name: "MESSAGE2"
          value: "kubernetes"
      command: ["/bin/echo", "$(MESSAGE1)", "$(MESSAGE2)"]
    #   args: ["/bin/echo", "$(MESSAGE1) $(MESSAGE2)"]
```

**Figure 3-11.** The Command mapping with both the Command Executable and the Parameters

Run the `kubectl create` command to create a Pod from the definition file `env.yaml`.

```
kubectl create -f env.yaml
```

The `hello-world` pod gets created as shown in Figure 3-12. Run the `kubectl get` command to list the pods.

```

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-41:~$ sudo vi env.yaml
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-41:~$ kubectl create -f env.yaml
pods/hello-world
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-41:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME          READY   STATUS
hello-world   0/1     Image: ubuntu is ready, container is creating
0             4s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3     Running
0             3h
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-41:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME          READY   STATUS
hello-world   0/1     Image: ubuntu is ready, container is creating
0             9s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3     Running
0             3h
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-41:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME          READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
hello-world   0/1     Running   0          12s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3     Running   0          3h
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-41:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME          READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
hello-world   0/1     Running   0          16s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3     Running   0          3h
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-41:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME          READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
hello-world   0/1     ExitCode:0 0          21s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3     Running   0          3h

```

**Figure 3-12.** Creating and Listing the Pod with Definition file from Figure 3-11

kubectl get pods

The hello-world pod gets listed though initially the Pod STATUS is not listed as “Running” as shown in Figure 3-12. The Pod transitions quickly to the READY value of 1/1 and subsequently 0/1. The 1/1 READY value is not shown in Figure 3-12 as it transitions quickly to 0/1. After the command has run the Pod terminates and the STATUS becomes ExitCode:0 as shown in Figure 3-12.

Subsequently invoke the following command to list the output generated by the Pod.

kubectl get logs

The message created from environment variables MESSAGE1 and MESSAGE2 gets listed as shown in Figure 3-13.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-41:~$ kubectl logs hello-world
  hello  kubernetes
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-41:~$
```



**Figure 3-13.** Message output by Pod created in Figure 3-12

## Specifying Both the Executable and the Parameters in the Args Mapping

In the fourth example, specify both the executable and the parameters in the Args mapping in the Pod definition file as a result overriding the CMD instruction in the Dockerfile. Environment variable substitution is used for the MESSAGE1 and MESSAGE2 environment variables with the environment variable syntax \${VARIABLE\_NAME}.

```
args: ["/bin/echo", " $(MESSAGE1)", " $(MESSAGE2)"]
```

The env.yaml Pod definition file is listed:

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: "hello-world"
  labels:
    app: "helloApp"
spec:
  restartPolicy: Never
  containers:
    -
      image: "ubuntu"
      name: "hello"
      ports:
        -
          containerPort: 8020
  env:
    -
      name: "MESSAGE1"
      value: "hello"
    -
      name: "MESSAGE2"
      value: "kubernetes"
  args: ["/bin/echo", " $(MESSAGE1)", " $(MESSAGE2)"]
```

The env.yaml file may be opened and modified in the vi editor and saved using the :wq command as shown in Figure 3-14.

```

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-41: ~
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: "hello-world"
  labels:
    name: "helloApp"
spec:
  restartPolicy: Never
  containers:
    image: "ubuntu"
    name: "hello"
    ports:
      containerPort: 8020
    env:
      - name: "MESSAGE1"
        value: "hello"
      - name: "MESSAGE2"
        value: "kubernetes"
    #   command: ['/bin/echo']
    args: ["./bin/echo", "$(MESSAGE1) $(MESSAGE2)"]

```

:wq

**Figure 3-14.** The args Mapping in the Pod definition file specifies both the Command Executable and the Parameters

The hello-world Pod created from the previous example must be deleted as otherwise the error shown in Figure 3-15 gets generated when the `kubectl create` command is run.

```

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-41:~$ kubectl create -f env.yaml
Error from server: error when creating "env.yaml": pods "hello-world" already exists
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-41:~$ kubectl delete pod hello-world
pods/hello-world

```

**Figure 3-15.** Error Generated if hello-world Pod already exists

Run the `kubectl create` command to create a Pod from the definition file `env.yaml`.

```
kubectl create -f env.yaml
```

The output from the command is shown in Figure 3-16.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-41:~$ kubectl create -f env.yaml
pods/hello-world
```

**Figure 3-16.** Creating a Pod from definition file in Figure 3-14

The `hello-world` pod gets created as shown in Figure 3-17. Run the `kubectl get` command to list the pods.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-41:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME          READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
hello-world   0/1     ExitCode:0   0          16s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1   3/3     Running   0          2h
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-41:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME          READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
hello-world   0/1     ExitCode:0   0          19s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1   3/3     Running   0          2h
```

**Figure 3-17.** The Pod terminates and its Status transitions to `ExitCode:0` after the command has run

```
kubectl get pods
```

The `hello-world` pod gets listed as shown in Figure 3-17. The Pod transitions quickly to the `READY` value of `1/1` and subsequently `0/1`. The `1/1` `READY` value is not shown in Figure 3-17 as it transitions quickly to `0/1`. After the command has run the Pod terminates and the `STATUS` becomes `ExitCode:0` as shown in Figure 3-17.

Subsequently invoke the following command to list the output generated by the Pod.

```
kubectl get logs
```

The message created with environment variables substitution from `MESSAGE1` and `MESSAGE2` gets listed as shown in Figure 3-18.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-41:~$ kubectl logs hello-world
hello kubernetes
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-41:~$ █
```

**Figure 3-18.** Outputting the Message Generated by Pod

## Summary

In this chapter we discussed the `ENTRYPOINT` and `CMD` instructions in a Docker image `Dockerfile`: instructions used to run the default command with the default parameters when the image is run in a Kubernetes Pod. We also discussed the `Command` and `Args` mappings in a Pod definition file that could be used to override the `ENTRYPOINT` and `CMD` instructions. We discussed various examples of overriding the default instructions for the “ubuntu” Docker image with “`command`” and “`args`” field mappings in a Pod definition file. We also demonstrated the use of environment variables in a Pod definition file. In the next chapter we shall discuss using MySQL Database with Kubernetes.

## PART II



# Relational Databases

## CHAPTER 4



# Using MySQL Database

MySQL database is the most commonly used open source database. The Docker image “mysql” could be used to create a Docker container running a MySQL database instance. Running Docker separately for a single MySQL instance or multiple instances lacks the features of scheduling multiple instances, scaling, and providing a service for external clients. In this chapter we shall discuss how the Kubernetes container cluster manager could be used to overcome all of those deficiencies.

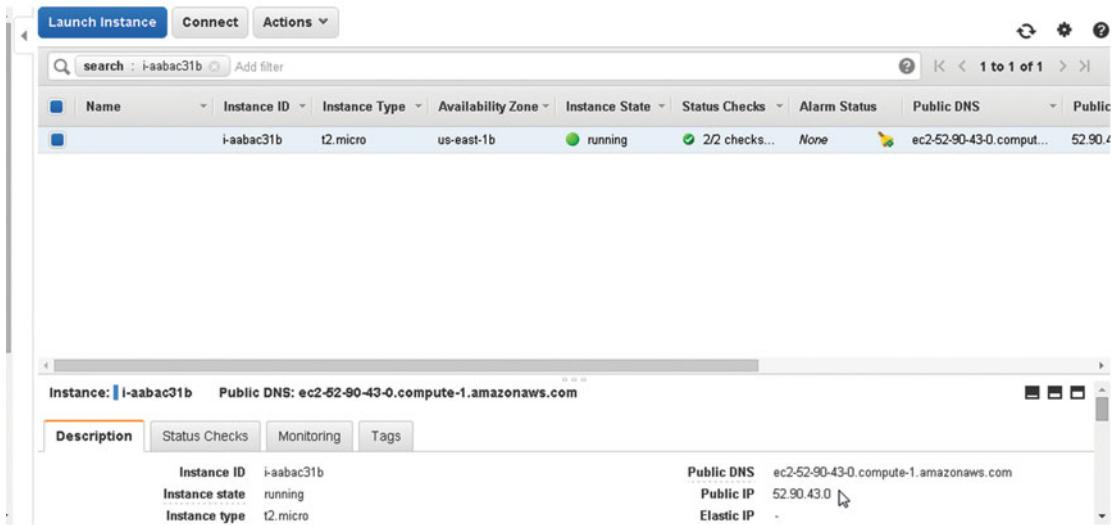
- Setting the Environment
- Creating a Service
- Creating a Replication Controller
- Listing the Pods
- Listing Logs
- Describing the Service
- Starting an Interactive Shell
- Starting the MySQL CLI
- Creating a Database Table
- Exiting the MySQL CLI and Interactive Shell
- Scaling the Replicas
- Deleting the Replication Controller

## Setting the Environment

The following software is required for this chapter.

- Docker Engine (latest version)
- Kubernetes Cluster Manager (version 1.01)
- Kubectl (version 1.01)
- Docker image “mysql” (latest version)

We have used an Amazon EC2 instance created from AMI Ubuntu Server 14-04 LTS (HVM), SSD Volume Type - ami-d05e75b8 to install the required software. The procedure to install Docker, Kubernetes, and Kubectl is discussed in chapter 1. Obtain the Public IP address of the Amazon EC2 instance as shown in Figure 4-1.



**Figure 4-1.** Obtaining the Public IP Address

SSH log in to the Ubuntu instance using the Public IP Address, which would be different for different users.

```
sh -i "docker.pem" ubuntu@52.90.43.0
```

Start the Docker engine and verify its status.

```
sudo service docker start
sudo service docker status
```

The Docker Engine should be listed as “running” as shown in Figure 4-2.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-179:~$ sudo service docker start
start: Job is already running: docker
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-179:~$ sudo service docker status
docker start/running, process 2699
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-179:~$
```

**Figure 4-2.** Starting Docker and Verifying Its Status

## Creating a Service

In this section we shall create a Kubernetes service using a definition file. We have used the YAML format for definition files, but JSON could be used just as well. Create a service definition file called `mysql-service.yaml` and copy the following listing to the file. Within the spec field mapping for the service the “selector” expression is set to `app: "mysql-app,"` which translates to service selector `app=mysql-app` and which implies that the service routes traffic to Pods with the label `app=mysql-app`. If the selector expression is empty all Pods are selected. The port to expose the service is set to 3306 within the ports listing. And the service has a label `app: "mysql-app"`. The `kind` field mapping must have value “Service.”

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Service
metadata:
  name: "mysql"
  labels:
    app: "mysql-app"
spec:
  ports:
    # the port that this service should serve on
    - port: 3306
  # label keys and values that must match in order to receive traffic for this service
  selector:
    app: "mysql-app"
```

The service schema is available at [http://kubernetes.io/v1.1/docs/api-reference/v1/definitions.html#\\_v1\\_service](http://kubernetes.io/v1.1/docs/api-reference/v1/definitions.html#_v1_service). Setting the selector field in the YAML definition file to `app: "mysql-app"` implies that all Pods with the YAML definition file label setting `app: "mysql-app"` are managed by the service. Create the service using the definition file with the `kubectl create` command.

```
kubectl create -f mysql-service.yaml
```

The `mysql` service gets created and the output is “`services/mysql`” as shown in Figure 4-3.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-179:~$ kubectl create -f mysql-service.yaml
services/mysql
```

**Figure 4-3.** Creating a Service for MySQL Database

List the service using the following command.

```
kubectl get services
```

The mysql service gets listed as shown in Figure 4-4.

NAME		LABELS	SELECTOR	IP(S)
PORT(S)				
kubernetes	443/TCP	component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes	<none>	10.0.0.1
mysql	3306/TCP	app=mysql-app	app=mysql-app	10.0.0.14

Figure 4-4. Listing the mysql Service

## Creating a Replication Controller

In this section we shall create a replication controller managed by the service created in the previous section. Create a replication controller definition file called `mysql-rc.yaml` and copy the following/next listing to the file. The kind field mapping must have value "ReplicationController." The replication controller has a label `app: "mysql-app"` in the metadata field mapping. If the labels are empty they are defaulted to the labels of the Pods the replication controller manages. The "spec" field mapping defines the replication controller and includes the "replicas" field mapping for the number of replicas to create. The `replicas` is set to 1 in the following/next listing. The default number of replicas is also 1. The spec includes a selector field mapping called `app: "mysql-app,"` which selects all Pods with label `app: "mysql-app"` for the replication controller to manage and count toward the "replicas" setting. A Pod could have other labels in addition to the selector, but must include the selector expression/s of a replication controller to be managed by the replication controller. Similarly, a replication controller could be managing Pods not started with the replication controller definition file.

Labels and selector expression settings in YAML definition files are not used as such, but are translated to a label/selector by replacing the ':' with the '='. For example, service/replication controller selector setting `app: "mysql-app"` becomes selector `app=mysql-app` selector and label setting `app: "mysql-app"` becomes label `app=mysql-app`.

If a selector is not specified the labels on the template are used to match the Pods and count toward the "replicas" setting. The "template" field mapping defines a Pod managed by the replication controller. The spec field mapping within the template field specifies the behavior of the Pod. The "containers" field mapping within the "spec" field defines the collection/list of containers to create including the image, the environment variables if any, and the ports to use for each container.

We need to use an environment variable for the MySQL database replication controller. The Docker image "mysql" requires (is mandatory) the environment variable `MYSQL_ROOT_PASSWORD` to run a Docker container for MySQL database. The `MYSQL_ROOT_PASSWORD` variable sets the password for the root user. Environment variables are set with the "env" mapping within a containers field listing. An env mapping consists of a name mapping and a value mapping. The `MYSQL_ROOT_PASSWORD` environment variable is set as shown in the following listing. The "ports" field collection includes a `containerPort` mapping for port 3306. The indentations and hyphens in a YAML file must be well formatted and the following listing should be copied and syntax validated in the YAML Lint (<http://www.yamllint.com/>). The YAML lint only validates the syntax and does not validate if the Pod definition field conforms to the schema for a pod. The Pod schema is available at [http://kubernetes.io/v1.1/docs/api-reference/v1/definitions.html#\\_v1\\_podspec](http://kubernetes.io/v1.1/docs/api-reference/v1/definitions.html#_v1_podspec).

```
---
apiVersion: v1
kind: ReplicationController
metadata:
  labels:
    app: "mysql-app"
spec:
  replicas: 1
  selector:
    app: "mysql-app"
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        app: "mysql-app"
    spec:
      containers:
        -
          env:
            -
              name: "MYSQL_ROOT_PASSWORD"
              value: "mysql"
            image: "mysql"
            name: "mysql"
            ports:
              -
                containerPort: 3306
```

The `mysql-rc.yaml` definition file may be created in the vi editor and saved with the `:wq` command as shown in Figure 4-5.

The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-179: ~". The window contains a YAML configuration file for a Kubernetes Replication Controller named "mysql". The file defines a single replica pod with the "mysql" image, exposing port 3306, and setting the environment variable "MYSQL\_ROOT\_PASSWORD" to "mysql". The terminal prompt at the bottom is ":wq".

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: ReplicationController
metadata:
  name: "mysql"
  labels:
    app: "mysql-app"
spec:
  replicas: 1
  selector:
    app: "mysql-app"
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        app: "mysql-app"
    spec:
      containers:
        - env:
            - name: "MYSQL_ROOT_PASSWORD"
              value: "mysql"
          image: "mysql"
          name: "mysql"
          ports:
            - containerPort: 3306
```

**Figure 4-5.** Definition File for Replication Controller

Create a replication controller from the service definition file with the `kubectl create` command.

```
kubectl create -f mysql-rc.yaml
```

As the output in Figure 4-6 indicates, the `mysql` replication controller gets created.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-179:~$ kubectl create -f mysql-rc.yaml
replicationcontrollers/mysql
```

**Figure 4-6.** Creating a Replication Controller for MySQL Database

List the replication with the following command.

```
kubectl get rc
```

The mysql replication controller including the container name, image name, selector expression (app=mysql-app), and number of replicas get listed as shown in Figure 4-7.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-179:~$ kubectl get rc
CONTROLLER   CONTAINER(S)   IMAGE(S)   SELECTOR           REPLICAS
mysql        mysql          mysql       app=mysql-app    1
```

**Figure 4-7.** Listing the MySQL Replication Controller

To describe the mysql replication controller run the following command.

```
kubectl describe rc mysql
```

The replication controller name, namespace, image, selector, labels, replicas, pod status, and events get listed as shown in Figure 4-8.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-179:~$ kubectl describe rc mysql
Name:           mysql
Namespace:      default
Image(s):       mysql
Selector:       app=mysql-app
Labels:         app=mysql-app
Replicas:       1 current / 1 desired
Pods Status:   1 Running / 0 Waiting / 0 Succeeded / 0 Failed
Events:
  FirstSeen            LastSeen          Count  F
  from                 SubobjectPath    Reason
  Fri, 01 Jan 2016 01:58:45 +0000   Fri, 01 Jan 2016 01:58:45 +0000 1  {
replication-controller }                                successfulCreate   Created
pod: mysql-wuo7x

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-179:~$ █
```

**Figure 4-8.** Describing the MySQL Replication Controller

## Listing the Pods

The Pods created may be listed with the following command.

```
kubectl get pods
```

As shown in Figure 4-9 the 2 replicas created by the replication controller get listed. Initially the Pods may not be listed as READY 1/1. Run the preceding command after a few seconds, multiple times if required, to list all the Pods as ready.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-179:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   0          48m
mysql-wuo7x      0/1     Running   0          14s
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-179:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   0          48m
mysql-wuo7x      0/1     Running   0          18s
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-179:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   0          48m
mysql-wuo7x      1/1     Running   0          21s
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-179:~$ █
```

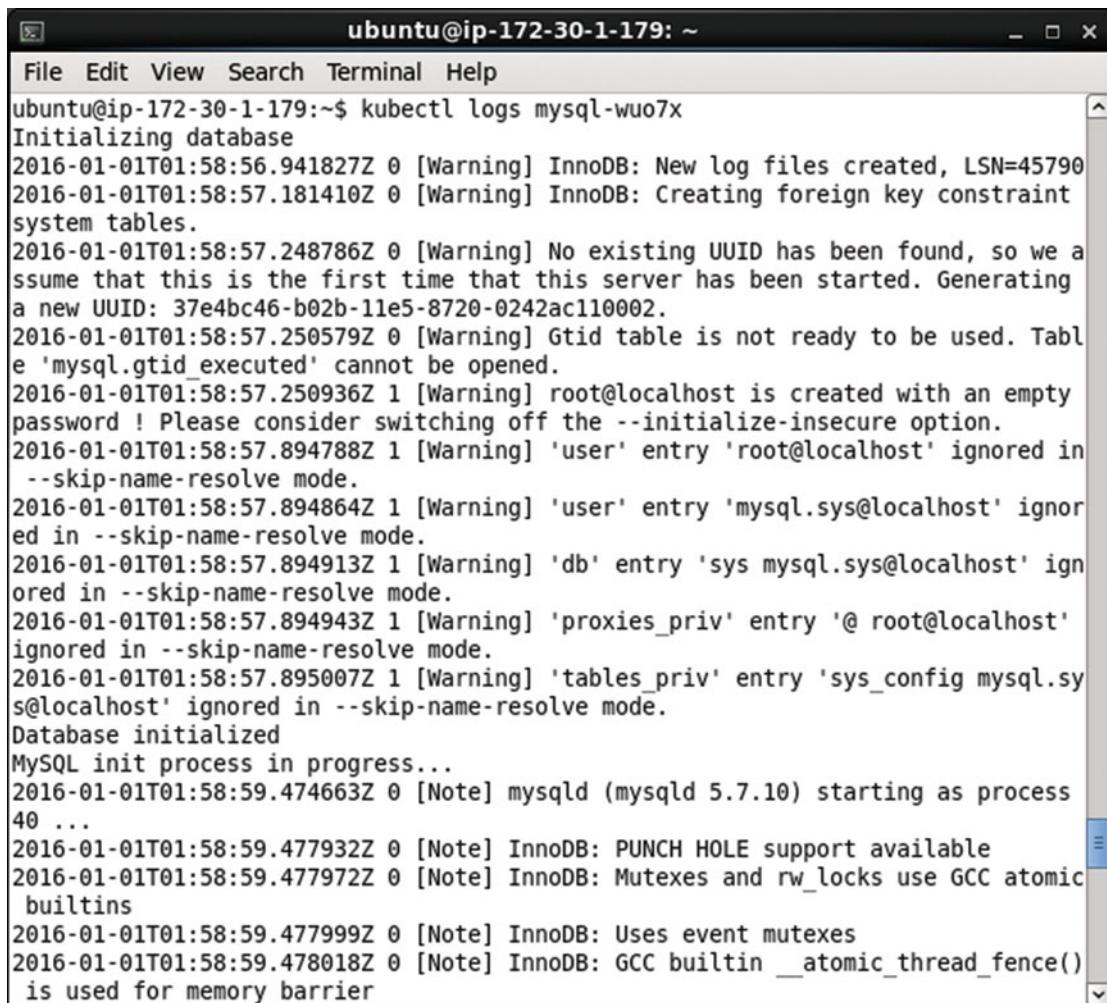
Figure 4-9. Listing the Pod/s for MySQL Database

## Listing Logs

List the Pod logs for a pod: for example, the mysql-wuo7x pod, with the following command.

```
kubectl logs mysql-wuo7x
```

The Pod logs get listed as shown in Figure 4-10.

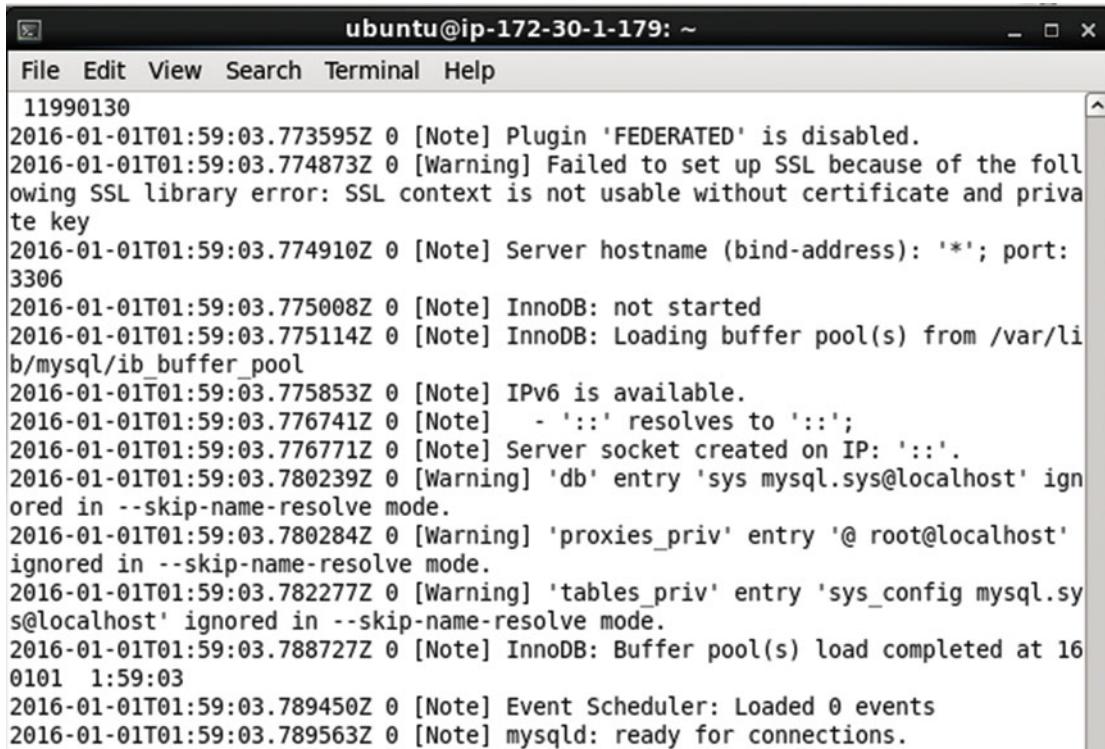


A screenshot of a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-179: ~". The window contains the output of the command "kubectl logs mysql-wuo7x". The logs show the MySQL server initializing its database, creating foreign key constraints, generating a new UUID, and starting the mysqld process. It also notes the use of InnoDB's PUNCH HOLE support and Mutexes/rw\_locks atomic builtins.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-179:~$ kubectl logs mysql-wuo7x
Initializing database
2016-01-01T01:58:56.941827Z 0 [Warning] InnoDB: New log files created, LSN=45790
2016-01-01T01:58:57.181410Z 0 [Warning] InnoDB: Creating foreign key constraint system tables.
2016-01-01T01:58:57.248786Z 0 [Warning] No existing UUID has been found, so we assume that this is the first time that this server has been started. Generating a new UUID: 37e4bc46-b02b-11e5-8720-0242ac110002.
2016-01-01T01:58:57.250579Z 0 [Warning] Gtid table is not ready to be used. Table 'mysql.gtid_executed' cannot be opened.
2016-01-01T01:58:57.250936Z 1 [Warning] root@localhost is created with an empty password ! Please consider switching off the --initialize-insecure option.
2016-01-01T01:58:57.894788Z 1 [Warning] 'user' entry 'root@localhost' ignored in --skip-name-resolve mode.
2016-01-01T01:58:57.894864Z 1 [Warning] 'user' entry 'mysql.sys@localhost' ignored in --skip-name-resolve mode.
2016-01-01T01:58:57.894913Z 1 [Warning] 'db' entry 'sys mysql.sys@localhost' ignored in --skip-name-resolve mode.
2016-01-01T01:58:57.894943Z 1 [Warning] 'proxies_priv' entry '@ root@localhost' ignored in --skip-name-resolve mode.
2016-01-01T01:58:57.895007Z 1 [Warning] 'tables_priv' entry 'sys_config mysql.sys@localhost' ignored in --skip-name-resolve mode.
Database initialized
MySQL init process in progress...
2016-01-01T01:58:59.474663Z 0 [Note] mysqld (mysqld 5.7.10) starting as process 40 ...
2016-01-01T01:58:59.477932Z 0 [Note] InnoDB: PUNCH HOLE support available
2016-01-01T01:58:59.477972Z 0 [Note] InnoDB: Mutexes and rw_locks use GCC atomic builtins
2016-01-01T01:58:59.477999Z 0 [Note] InnoDB: Uses event mutexes
2016-01-01T01:58:59.478018Z 0 [Note] InnoDB: GCC builtin __atomic_thread_fence() is used for memory barrier
```

Figure 4-10. Listing the Logs generated by the Pod for MySQL Database

The MySQL Server is listed as started and “ready for connections” as shown in Figure 4-11.



A screenshot of a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-179: ~". The window contains a list of log messages from the MySQL server. The messages include notes about plugin status, SSL setup, server hostname, InnoDB startup, IPv6 availability, socket creation, and event scheduler loading. The final message indicates that mysqld is ready for connections.

```
11990130
2016-01-01T01:59:03.773595Z 0 [Note] Plugin 'FEDERATED' is disabled.
2016-01-01T01:59:03.774873Z 0 [Warning] Failed to set up SSL because of the following SSL library error: SSL context is not usable without certificate and private key
2016-01-01T01:59:03.774910Z 0 [Note] Server hostname (bind-address): '*' ; port: 3306
2016-01-01T01:59:03.775008Z 0 [Note] InnoDB: not started
2016-01-01T01:59:03.775114Z 0 [Note] InnoDB: Loading buffer pool(s) from /var/lib/mysql/ib_buffer_pool
2016-01-01T01:59:03.775853Z 0 [Note] IPv6 is available.
2016-01-01T01:59:03.776741Z 0 [Note] - '::' resolves to '::';
2016-01-01T01:59:03.776771Z 0 [Note] Server socket created on IP: '::'.
2016-01-01T01:59:03.780239Z 0 [Warning] 'db' entry 'sys mysql.sys@localhost' ignored in --skip-name-resolve mode.
2016-01-01T01:59:03.780284Z 0 [Warning] 'proxies_priv' entry '@ root@localhost' ignored in --skip-name-resolve mode.
2016-01-01T01:59:03.782277Z 0 [Warning] 'tables_priv' entry 'sys_config mysql.sys@localhost' ignored in --skip-name-resolve mode.
2016-01-01T01:59:03.788727Z 0 [Note] InnoDB: Buffer pool(s) load completed at 160101 1:59:03
2016-01-01T01:59:03.789450Z 0 [Note] Event Scheduler: Loaded 0 events
2016-01-01T01:59:03.789563Z 0 [Note] mysqld: ready for connections.
```

**Figure 4-11.** Listing mysqld as Ready for Connections

## Describing the Service

To describe the mysql service run the following command.

```
kubectl describe svc mysql
```

The service name, namespace, labels, selector, type, Ip, port and endpoints get listed. Because the number of replicas is set to 1 only one endpoint is listed as shown in Figure 4-12.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-179:~$ kubectl describe service mysql
Name:           mysql
Namespace:      default
Labels:         app=mysql-app
Selector:       app=mysql-app
Type:          ClusterIP
IP:            10.0.0.143
Port:          <unnamed>    3306/TCP
Endpoints:     172.17.0.2:3306
Session Affinity: None
No events.

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-179:~$ █
```

*Figure 4-12.* Describing the MySQL Service

## Starting an Interactive Shell

Bash is the free version of the Bourne shell distributed with Linux and GNU operating systems (OS). For Docker images that have a Linux OS image as the base image as specified in the FROM instruction in the Dockerfile, the software running in a Docker container may be accessed using the Bash shell. The "mysql" Docker image is based on the "debian" image and as a result supports access to software running in the Docker containers via a bash interactive shell.

Next, we shall start an interactive shell to start the MySQL CLI. But first we need to obtain the container id for one of the containers running MySQL. Run the following command to list the Docker containers.

```
sudo docker ps
```

The Docker container for the mysql image is shown listed in Figure 4-13.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-179:~$ sudo docker ps
CONTAINER ID        IMAGE               COMMAND
526f5d5f6c2e        mysql              "/entrypoint.sh
mysql"              2 minutes ago      Up 2 minutes
ee40a2a_mysql-wuo7x_default_31260fe7-b02b-11e5-b23e-12f950ce75ef 9f9a3ac1
d0cb27674b17        gcr.io/google_containers/pause:0.8.0   "/pause"
                                         2 minutes ago      Up 2 minutes
1e8b5_mysql-wuo7x_default_31260fe7-b02b-11e5-b23e-12f950ce75ef 0626965c
e5a6aecdc22d        gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1  "/hyperkube apis
server"             50 minutes ago     Up 50 minutes
                                         k8s_apiserv
er.cfb70250_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c4a_e73ec6
59
b54e261a68d6        gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1  "/hyperkube cont
rolle"              50 minutes ago     Up 50 minutes
                                         k8s_control
ler-manager.1598ee5c_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c
4a_a67e9916
2d89f7dcbb6d6       gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1  "/hyperkube sche
duler"              50 minutes ago     Up 50 minutes
                                         k8s_schedul
er.2744e742_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c4a_7bbdc5
94
fc71fab17c41        gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1  "/hyperkube prox
y --m"              51 minutes ago     Up 50 minutes
                                         agitated_ch
andrasekhar
11724fa32151        gcr.io/google_containers/pause:0.8.0   "/pause"
                                         51 minutes ago      Up 51 minutes
                                         k8s_POD.e4c
c795_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c4a_14d01177
ae22e68886b3        gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1  "/hyperkube kube
let -"              51 minutes ago     Up 51 minutes
                                         admiring_be
ll
4d1be6207c1c        gcr.io/google_containers/etcd:2.0.12    "/usr/local/bin/
etcd "              51 minutes ago     Up 51 minutes
                                         silly_frank
```

**Figure 4-13.** Listing the Docker Containers

Using the Docker container id from the output from the preceding command, start an interactive shell.

```
sudo docker exec -it 526f5d5f6c2e bash
```

An interactive shell or tty gets started as shown in Figure 4-14.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-179:~$ sudo docker exec -it 526f5d5f6c2e bash
root@mysql-wuo7x:/#
```

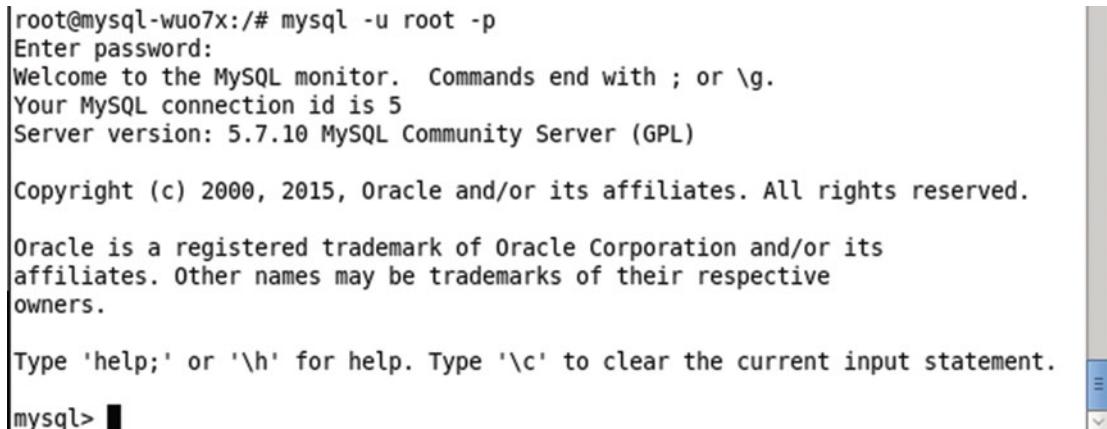
**Figure 4-14.** Starting the Interactive Terminal

## Starting the MySQL CLI

Within the interactive shell run the following command to start the MySQL CLI as user root.

```
mysql -u root -p
```

When prompted with Password: set the password as the value of the environment variable `MYSQL_ROOT_PASSWORD`, which was set as "mysql" in the `mysql-rc.yaml` definition file. The MySQL CLI gets started as shown in Figure 4-15.



```
root@mysql-wuo7x:/# mysql -u root -p
Enter password:
Welcome to the MySQL monitor. Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MySQL connection id is 5
Server version: 5.7.10 MySQL Community Server (GPL)

Copyright (c) 2000, 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Oracle is a registered trademark of Oracle Corporation and/or its
affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective
owners.

Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the current input statement.

mysql> ■
```

**Figure 4-15.** Starting the MySQL CLI Shell

List the databases with the following command.

```
show databases;
```

The default databases shown in Figure 4-16 include the "mysql" database, which we shall use to create a database table. The other databases are system databases and should not be used for user tables.



```
mysql> show databases;
+-----+
| Database      |
+-----+
| information_schema |
| mysql          |
| performance_schema |
| sys            |
+-----+
4 rows in set (0.00 sec)

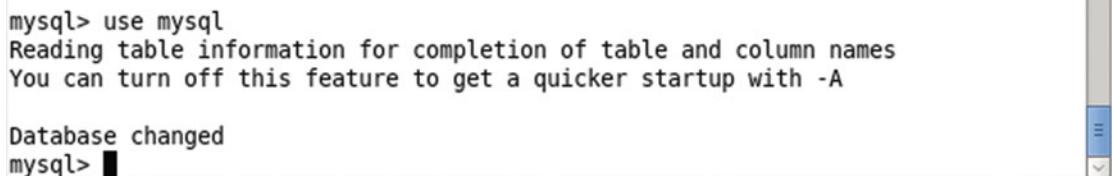
mysql> ■
```

**Figure 4-16.** Listing the Databases

Set the database “mysql” as the current database with the following command.

```
use mysql
```

The database gets set as mysql as indicated by the “Database changed” output in Figure 4-17.



```
mysql> use mysql
Reading table information for completion of table and column names
You can turn off this feature to get a quicker startup with -A

Database changed
mysql> ■
```

**Figure 4-17.** Setting the Database

## Creating a Database Table

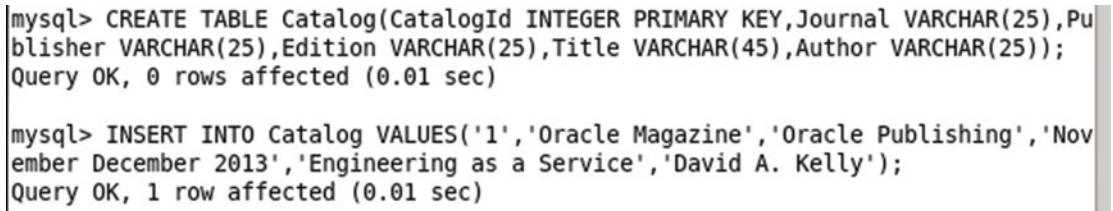
Next, create a database table called Catalog with the following SQL statement.

```
CREATE TABLE Catalog(CatalogId INTEGER PRIMARY KEY,Journal VARCHAR(25),
Publisher VARCHAR(25),Edition VARCHAR(25),Title VARCHAR(45),Author VARCHAR(25));
```

Add a row of data to the Catalog table with the following SQL statement.

```
INSERT INTO Catalog VALUES('1','Oracle Magazine','Oracle Publishing',
'November December 2013','Engineering as a Service','David A. Kelly');
```

The Catalog table gets created and a row of data gets added as shown in Figure 4-18.



```
mysql> CREATE TABLE Catalog(CatalogId INTEGER PRIMARY KEY,Journal VARCHAR(25),Pu
blisher VARCHAR(25),Edition VARCHAR(25),Title VARCHAR(45),Author VARCHAR(25));
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.01 sec)

mysql> INSERT INTO Catalog VALUES('1','Oracle Magazine','Oracle Publishing','Nov
ember December 2013','Engineering as a Service','David A. Kelly');
Query OK, 1 row affected (0.01 sec)
```

**Figure 4-18.** Creating a MySQL Database Table

Subsequently run the following SQL statement to query the database table Catalog.

```
SELECT * FROM Catalog;
```

The single row of data added gets listed as shown in Figure 4-19.

```
mysql> SELECT * FROM Catalog;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| CatalogId | Journal      | Publisher    | Edition     | Title
|           | le          | Author       |           |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
|       1 | Oracle Magazine | Oracle Publishing | November December 2013 | Eng
ineering as a Service | David A. Kelly |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)

mysql> █
```

**Figure 4-19.** Querying the Database Table

## Exiting the MySQL CLI and Interactive Shell

Exit the MySQL CLI with the “quit” command.

```
quit
```

Exit the interactive terminal with the “exit” command.

```
exit
```

The output from the preceding commands is shown in Figure 4-20.

```
mysql> quit
Bye
root@mysql-wuo7x:/# exit
exit
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-179:~$ █
```

**Figure 4-20.** Exiting the MySQL CLI Shell and Docker Container Interactive Shell

## Scaling the Replicas

One of the main benefits of Kubernetes is to be able to scale the number of MySQL instances in the cluster. Run the following kubectl scale command to scale the replicas from 1 to 4.

```
kubectl scale rc mysql --replicas=4
```

Subsequently run the following command to list the Pods.

```
kubectl get pods
```

The number of Pods for the MySQL database gets increased to 4 as shown in Figure 4-21. Some of the Pods may be listed as READY->0/1, which implies the Pod/s are not ready yet. When READY becomes 1/1 a Pod is ready to be accessed. The 0/1 value implies that 0 of the 1 Docker containers in the Pod are ready and similarly the 1/1 value implies that 1 of 1 containers is ready. The general syntax for the READY column value if all the n containers in the Pod are running is of the form n/n. The STATUS must be “Running” for a Pod to be considered available.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-179:~$ kubectl scale rc mysql --replicas=4
scaled
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-179:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   0          1h
mysql-0lsm2      0/1     Running   0          15s
mysql-5gbec       1/1     Running   0          15s
mysql-cniw8        1/1     Running   0          15s
mysql-wuo7x        1/1     Running   0          13m
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-179:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   0          1h
mysql-0lsm2      0/1     Running   0          21s
mysql-5gbec       1/1     Running   0          21s
mysql-cniw8        1/1     Running   0          21s
mysql-wuo7x        1/1     Running   0          13m
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-179:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   0          1h
mysql-0lsm2      1/1     Running   0          38s
mysql-5gbec       1/1     Running   0          38s
mysql-cniw8        1/1     Running   0          38s
mysql-wuo7x        1/1     Running   0          13m
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-179:~$ █
```

**Figure 4-21.** Scaling the Pod Replicas to Four

To describe the mysql service, run the following command.

```
kubectl describe svc mysql
```

The service description is the same as before except that the number of endpoints has increased to 4 as shown in Figure 4-22.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-179:~$ kubectl describe service mysql
Name:           mysql
Namespace:      default
Labels:          app=mysql-app
Selector:        app=mysql-app
Type:           ClusterIP
IP:             10.0.0.143
Port:           <unnamed>    3306/TCP
Endpoints:      172.17.0.2:3306,172.17.0.3:3306,172.17.0.4:3306 + 1 more
...
Session Affinity:   None
No events.

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-179:~$ █
```

**Figure 4-22.** Describing the MySQL Service After Scaling the Pod Replicas

The command “scale” will also allow us to specify one or more preconditions for the scale actions needed. The following (Table 4-1) preconditions are supported.

**Table 4-1.** Preconditions for the ‘kubernetes scale’ command

Precondition	Description
--current-replicas	The current number of replicas for the scale to be performed.
--resource-version	The resource version to match for the scale to be performed.

## Deleting the Replication Controller

To delete the replication controller `mysql`, run the following command.

```
kubectl delete rc mysql
```

The replication controller gets deleted as shown in Figure 4-23. Whenever a `kubectl` command output to create or delete an artifact (a Pod, service or replication controller) is of the form *artifact type/artifact name*, it implies that the command has succeeded to create/delete the pod/service/replication controller.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-179:~$ kubectl delete rc mysql
replicationcontrollers/mysql
```

**Figure 4-23.** Deleting the Replication Controller

Subsequently run the following command to get the replication controllers. The `mysql` rc does not get listed as shown in Figure 4-24.

```
kubectl get rc
```

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-179:~$ kubectl delete rc mysql
replicationcontrollers/mysql
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-179:~$ kubectl get rc
CONTROLLER CONTAINER(S) IMAGE(S) SELECTOR REPLICAS
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-179:~$ kubectl describe svc mysql
Name:           mysql
Namespace:      default
Labels:         app=mysql-app
Selector:       app=mysql-app
Type:          ClusterIP
IP:            10.0.0.143
Port:          <unnamed>     3306/TCP
Endpoints:     <none>
Session Affinity: None
No events.

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-179:~$
```

**Figure 4-24.** Describing the Service after Deleting the Replication Controllers

Describe the service `mysql` again with the following command.

```
kubectl describe svc mysql
```

No “Endpoints” get listed as shown in Figure 4-24 because all the Pods get deleted when the replication controller managing them is deleted.

## Summary

In this chapter we discussed orchestrating the MySQL database cluster using the Kubernetes cluster manager. We created a Kubernetes service to represent a MySQL-based Pod. The “mysql” Docker image is used to create a Pod. We used a replication controller to create replicas for MySQL base Pods. Initially the number of replicas is set to 1. We used a Docker container running a MySQL instance to start the MySQL CLI and create a database table. Subsequently, we scaled the number of replicas to 4 using the replication controller. When scaled, the number of replicas and therefore the number of MySQL instances becomes 4. The replication controller maintains the replication level through replica failure or replica shut down by a user. This chapter also demonstrates the use of environment variables. The `MYSQL_ROOT_PASSWORD` environment variable is required to run a container for the Docker image “mysql” and we set the `MYSQL_ROOT_PASSWORD` environment variable in the Pod spec in the replication controller. In the next chapter we shall discuss using another open source database, the PostgreSQL database.

## CHAPTER 5



# Using PostgreSQL Database

PostgreSQL is an open source object-relational database. PostgreSQL is scalable both in terms of the quantity of data and number of concurrent users. PostgreSQL is supported in several of Apache Hadoop ecosystem projects such as Apache Sqoop and may be used for Apache Hive Metastore. PostgreSQL 9.5 offers several new features such as support for UPSERT, BRIN indexing, faster sorts, and the TABLESAMPLE clause for getting a statistical sample of a large table. In this chapter we shall discuss creating a PostgreSQL 9.5 cluster using the Kubernetes cluster manager. We shall discuss both the imperative approach and the declarative approach for creating and scaling a PostgreSQL cluster. This chapter has the following sections.

Setting the Environment

Creating a PostgreSQL Cluster Declaratively

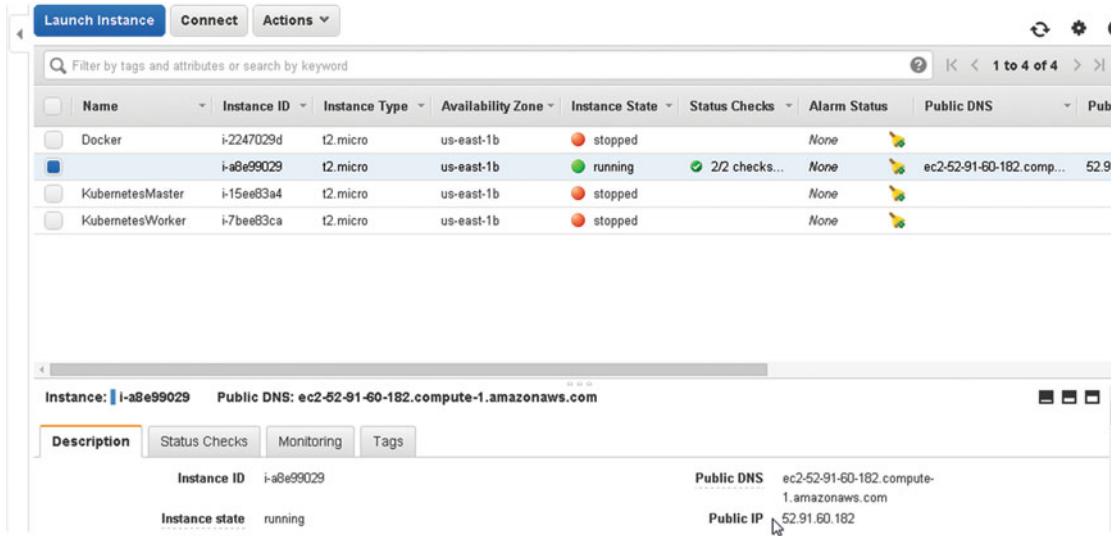
Creating a PostgreSQL Cluster Imperatively

## Setting the Environment

We have used the same type of Amazon EC2 instance in this chapter as in other chapters, an instance based on Ubuntu Server 14.04 LTS (HVM), SSD Volume Type - ami-d05e75b8 AMI. The following software is required for this chapter.

- Docker Engine (latest version)
- Kubernetes Cluster Manager (version 1.01)
- Kubectl (version 1.01)
- Docker Image “postgres” (latest version)

The procedure to install the required software, start Docker engine and Kubernetes cluster manager, is discussed in chapter 1. To install the software first we need to log in to the Amazon EC2 instance. Obtain the Public IP Address of the Amazon EC2 instance as shown in Figure 5-1.



**Figure 5-1.** Obtaining the Public IP Address

SSH Login to the Ubuntu instance using the Public IP Address.

```
ssh -i "docker.pem" ubuntu@52.91.60.182
```

Start the Docker engine and verify its status.

```
sudo service docker start
sudo service docker status
```

Docker should be indicated as “running” as shown in Figure 5-2.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ sudo service docker start
start: Job is already running: docker
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ sudo service docker status
docker start/running, process 2698
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ █
```

**Figure 5-2.** Starting Docker

List the services with the following command.

```
kubectl get services
```

The kubernetes service should get listed as shown in Figure 5-3.

NAME	LABELS	SELECTOR	IP(S)	PORT(S)
kubernetes	component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes	<none>	10.0.0.1	443/TCP

**Figure 5-3.** Listing the Kubernetes Services

## Creating a PostgreSQL Cluster Declaratively

In the following subsections we shall create and manage a PostgreSQL cluster declaratively, which implies we shall use definition files. The definition files could be based on the YAML format or the JSON format. We shall be using YAML format. It is recommended to create the service first so that any pods created subsequently have a service available to represent them. If the RC (replication controller) is created first, the pods are not usable until a service is created.

### Creating a Service

Create a service definition file `postgres-service.yaml` and copy the following listing to the file. The "spec" field mapping for the service specifies the behavior of the service. The ports on which the service is exposed are defined in the "ports" field mapping. Only the port 5432 is exposed because PostgreSQL runs on port 5432. The selector expression is set to app: "postgres". All Pods with the label app=postgres are managed by the service.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Service
metadata:
  name: "postgres"
  labels:
    app: "postgres"
spec:
  ports:
    - port: 5432
  selector:
    app: "postgres"
```

The `postgres-service.yaml` file may be created using the vi editor and saved with the :wq command as shown in Figure 5-4.



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13: ~". The window displays a YAML configuration file named "postgres-service.yaml". The file defines a Kubernetes Service object with the following specifications:

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Service
metadata:
  name: "postgres"
  labels:
    app: "postgres"
spec:
  ports:
    - port: 5432
  selector:
    app: "postgres"
```

The terminal window has a scroll bar on the right side. At the bottom, there is a command prompt with the text ":wq" followed by a small black square icon.

**Figure 5-4.** Service Definition File *postgres-service.yaml*

Create the service using the `kubectl create` command with the `postgres-service.yaml` definition file.

```
kubectl create -f postgres-service.yaml
```

Subsequently list the services.

```
kubectl get services
```

Also list the Pods.

```
kubectl get pods
```

An output of `services/postgres` from the first command indicates that the service has been created. The second command lists the `postgres` service as running at port 5432 as shown in Figure 5-5. The IP Address of the service is also listed. Creating a service by itself does not create a Pod by itself and only the Pod for the Kubernetes is listed. A service only manages or provides an interface for Pods with the label that matches the selector expression in the service.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl create -f postgres-service.yaml
services/postgres
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl get services
NAME          LABELS           SELECTOR   IP(S)
  PORT(S)
kubernetes    component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes <none>      10.0.0.1
  443/TCP
postgres       app=postgres        app=postgres  10.0.0.46
  5432/TCP
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME            READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3     Running   0          3m
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ █
```

**Figure 5-5.** Creating a Service and listing the Service

Describe the service `postgres` with the following command.

```
kubectl describe svc postgres
```

The service name, namespace, labels, selector, type, IP address, Port exposed on, and Endpoints get listed. Because no Pods are initially associated with the service, no endpoints are listed as shown in Figure 5-6.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl describe svc postgres
Name:           postgres
Namespace:      default
Labels:         app=postgres
Selector:       app=postgres
Type:          ClusterIP
IP:             10.0.0.46
Port:          <unnamed>      5432/TCP
Endpoints:      <none>
Session Affinity: None
No events.

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ █
```

**Figure 5-6.** Describing the `postgres` Service

## Creating a Replication Controller

In this section we shall create a definition file for a replication controller. Create a definition file called `postgres-rc.yaml`. The definition file has the field discussed in Table 5-1.

**Table 5-1.** Replication Controller Definition File *postgres-rc.yaml*

Field	Value	Description
apiVersion	v1	The API version.
kind	ReplicationController	Defines the file to be a replication controller.
metadata		Metadata for the replication controller.
metadata->name		The name of the replication controller. Either the name or the generateName field must be specified. The generateName field is the prefix to use in an automatically generated name.
spec		The specification for the replication controller.
spec->replicas	2	The number of Pod replicas to create.
template		Specifies the template for the Pod that the replication controller manages.
template->metadata		The metadata for the Pod including labels. The label is used to select the Pods managed by the replication controller and must manage the selector expression in the service definition file if the service is to represent the Pod.
template->spec		Pod specification or configuration.
template->spec->containers		The containers in a Pod. Multiple containers could be specified but in this chapter only the container for PostgreSQL is specified.
template->spec->containers->image		The Docker image to run in the container. For PostgreSQL the image is "postgres."
template->spec->containers->name		The name field specifies the container name.

Optionally the replication controller's `selector` field mapping may be specified. The key:value mapping in the `selector` must match a label in the `template->metadata` field mapping for the replication controller to manage the Pod in the template. The `selector` field mapping if not specified defaults to the `template->metadata->labels` field mapping. In the following listing the `selector` is italicized and not included in the definition file used. The Pod's `template->metadata->labels` field mapping specifies an expression `app: "postgres"`, which translates to Pod label `app=postgres`. The `labels` field expression must be the same as the "`selector`" field expression in the service definition file, which was discussed in the previous section, for the service to manage the Pod.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: ReplicationController
metadata:
  name: "postgres"
```

```
spec:  
  replicas: 2  
  selector:  
    - app: "postgres"  
template:  
  metadata:  
    labels:  
      app: "postgres"  
spec:  
  containers:  
  -  
    image: "postgres"  
    name: "postgres"
```

Copy the preceding listing to the `postgres-rc.yaml` file. The `postgres-rc.yaml` file may be opened in the vi editor and saved with :wq as shown in Figure 5-7.

The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13: ~". The window contains the YAML configuration for a Replication Controller named "postgres". The configuration includes fields for `apiVersion`, `kind`, `metadata`, and `spec`. The `spec` section defines two replicas, selects pods with the label `app: postgres`, and specifies a container image named `postgres`. At the bottom of the terminal, the command `:wq` is visible, indicating the user is about to save and exit the editor.

```
apiVersion: v1  
kind: ReplicationController  
metadata:  
  name: "postgres"  
spec:  
  replicas: 2  
  template:  
    metadata:  
      labels:  
        app: "postgres"  
  spec:  
    containers:  
    -  
      image: "postgres"  
      name: "postgres"
```

Figure 5-7. Replication Controller Definition File

Create a replication controller using the definition file `postgres-rc.yaml`.

```
kubectl create -f postgres-rc.yaml
```

Subsequently list the replication controllers.

```
kubectl get rc
```

An output of `replicationcontrollers/postgres` from the first command as shown in Figure 5-8 indicates that the replication controller `postgres` has been created. The second command lists the `postgres` replication controller. As discussed before the Replication Controller SELECTOR column is set to the same value as the Pod label, `app=postgres`.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl create -f postgres-rc.yaml
replicationcontrollers/postgres
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl get rc
CONTROLLER   CONTAINER(S)   IMAGE(S)   SELECTOR   REPLICAS
postgres      postgres       postgres    app=postgres 2
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ █
```

**Figure 5-8.** Creating and listing the Replication Controller for PostgreSQL Database

Describe the replication controller `postgres` with the following command.

```
kubectl describe rc postgres
```

The replication controller's name, namespace, image associated with the rc, selectors if any, labels, number of replicas, pod status, and events get listed as shown in Figure 5-9.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl describe rc postgres
Name:           postgres
Namespace:     default
Image(s):      postgres
Selector:      app=postgres
Labels:        app=postgres
Replicas:      2 current / 2 desired
Pods Status:   2 Running / 0 Waiting / 0 Succeeded / 0 Failed
Events:
  FirstSeen          LastSeen
  Last          SubobjectPath  Reason          Count F
  rom           Sat, 09 Jan 2016 01:12:45 +0000   Sat, 09 Jan 2016 01:12:45 +0000 1   {
  replication-controller }                      successfulCreate   Created
  pod: postgres-bqwhe
  Sat, 09 Jan 2016 01:12:45 +0000   Sat, 09 Jan 2016 01:12:45 +0000 1   {
  replication-controller }                      successfulCreate   Created
  pod: postgres-lmuut
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ █
```

**Figure 5-9.** Describing the Replication Controller for PostgreSQL Database

## Getting the Pods

To get and list the Pods run the following command.

```
kubectl get pods
```

The two Pods created by the replication controller get listed as shown in Figure 5-10. The Pods should have the Running STATUS and have the READY column value as 1/1.

NAME	READY	STATUS	RESTARTS	AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1	3/3	Running	0	5m
postgres-bqwhe	1/1	Running	0	1m
postgres-lmuut	1/1	Running	0	1m

**Figure 5-10.** Listing the Pods for PostgreSQL Database

## Starting an Interactive Command Shell

To be able to create a PostgreSQL table we need to start an interactive bash shell to access the PostgreSQL server running in a Docker container, and start the psql SQL shell for PostgreSQL. But, first we need to find the container id for a Docker container running the PostgreSQL database. Run the following command to list the Docker containers.

```
sudo docker ps
```

Two of the Docker containers are based on the “postgres” image as shown in Figure 5-11. Copy the container id for the first Docker container for the postgres image from the CONTAINER ID column.

CONTAINER ID	IMAGE	CREATED	STATUS	PORTS	COMMAND
a786960b2cb6	postgres	int.s" 52 seconds ago	Up 51 seconds		"/docker-entrypoint-initdb.d"
es.1121cd19_postgres-v0k42_default_62b21090-b66e-11e5-b153-12bccdb330eb_1591f63a36fdb7a33c3d	postgres	About a minute ago	Up About a minute		"/docker-entrypoint-initdb.d"
e69d0477357b	gcr.io/google_containers/pause:0.8.0	About a minute ago	Up About a minute		"/pause"
cc795_postgres-v0k42_default_62b21090-b66e-11e5-b153-12bccdb330eb_740ac2dd273fa84cbf93	gcr.io/google_containers/pause:0.8.0	About a minute ago	Up About a minute		"/pause"
cc795_postgres-sz0ga_default_62b1e640-b66e-11e5-b153-12bccdb330eb_6ab2588affa4172b379e	postgres	About a minute ago	Up About a minute		"/docker-entrypoint-initdb.d"
int.s" 2 minutes ago	postgres	Up 2 minutes			k8s_postgres
es.1121cd19_postgres-bqwhe_default_173efb5f-b66e-11e5-b153-12bccdb330eb_3d3ac343b0604e0a9677	postgres	Up 2 minutes			"/docker-entrypoint-initdb.d"
int.s" 2 minutes ago	gcr.io/google_containers/pause:0.8.0	Up 2 minutes			k8s_postgres
es.1121cd19_postgres-lmuut_default_173f0d4c-b66e-11e5-b153-12bccdb330eb_16a3edcbf8a3cbd11dc2	gcr.io/google_containers/pause:0.8.0	Up 3 minutes			"/pause"
cc795_postgres-lmuut_default_173f0d4c-b66e-11e5-b153-12bccdb330eb_5a26e3fb9888f3829724	gcr.io/google_containers/pause:0.8.0	Up 3 minutes			"/pause"
3 minutes ago		Up 3 minutes			k8s_POD.e4

**Figure 5-11.** Listing the Docker Containers

Using the container id start the interactive shell.

```
sudo docker exec -it a786960b2cb6 bash
```

The interactive shell gets started as shown in Figure 5-12.

**Figure 5-12.** Starting an Interactive Shell

## Starting the PostgreSQL SQL Terminal

Next, start the psql SQL shell for PostgreSQL. Set the user as postgres.

```
su -l postgres
```

Start the psql command line shell with the following command.

```
psql postgres
```

The psql shall get started as shown in Figure 5-13.

```
root@postgres-v0k42:/# su -l postgres
No directory, logging in with HOME=/
$ psql postgres
psql (9.5.0)
Type "help" for help.

postgres=#
```

**Figure 5-13.** Starting the psql CLI Shell

For the general command syntax for the psql command refer <http://www.postgresql.org/docs/9.5/static/app-psql.html>.

## Creating a Database Table

In the psql shell run the following SQL statements to create a database table called wlslog and add data to the table.

```
CREATE TABLE wlslog(time_stamp VARCHAR(255) PRIMARY KEY,category VARCHAR(255),type
VARCHAR(255),servername VARCHAR(255),code VARCHAR(255),msg VARCHAR(255));
INSERT INTO wlslog(time_stamp,category,type,servername,code,msg) VALUES('Apr-8-2014-7:
06:16-PM-PDT','Notice','WebLogicServer','AdminServer','BEA-000365','Server state changed
to STANDBY');
INSERT INTO wlslog(time_stamp,category,type,servername,code,msg) VALUES('Apr-8-2014-7:
06:17-PM-PDT','Notice','WebLogicServer','AdminServer','BEA-000365','Server state changed
to STARTING');
INSERT INTO wlslog(time_stamp,category,type,servername,code,msg) VALUES('Apr-8-2014-7:
06:18-PM-PDT','Notice','WebLogicServer','AdminServer','BEA-000360','Server started in
RUNNING mode');
```

Database table wlslog gets created and a row of data gets added as shown in Figure 5-14.

```
<),servername VARCHAR(255),code VARCHAR(255),msg VARCHAR(255));
CREATE TABLE
<rver','AdminServer','BEA-000365','Server state changed to STANDBY');
INSERT 0 1
<rver','AdminServer','BEA-000365','Server state changed to STARTING');
INSERT 0 1
<rver','AdminServer','BEA-000360','Server started in RUNNING mode');
INSERT 0 1
postgres=#
```

**Figure 5-14.** Creating a Database Table

Run the following SQL statement to query the database table wlslog.

```
SELECT * FROM wlslog;
```

The 3 rows of data added get listed as shown in Figure 5-15.

```
postgres=# SELECT * FROM wlslog;
      time_stamp      | category |      type      | servername |      code
      |          msg
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
Apr-8-2014-7:06:16-PM-PDT | Notice   | WebLogicServer | AdminServer | BEA-00036
5 | Server state changed to STANDBY
Apr-8-2014-7:06:17-PM-PDT | Notice   | WebLogicServer | AdminServer | BEA-00036
5 | Server state changed to STARTING
Apr-8-2014-7:06:18-PM-PDT | Notice   | WebLogicServer | AdminServer | BEA-00036
0 | Server started in RUNNING mode
(3 rows)

postgres=#
```

**Figure 5-15.** Querying the Database Table

## Exiting the Interactive Command Shell

To exit the psql shell run the following command.

```
\q
```

To exit the interactive terminal run the following command.

```
exit
```

The psql shell and the interactive shell get exited as shown in Figure 5-16.

```
postgres=# \q
could not save history to file "/home/postgres/.psql_history": No such file or directory
$ exit
root@postgres-v0k42:/# exit
exit
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$
```

**Figure 5-16.** Exiting the psql Shell and Docker Container Interactive Shell

## Scaling the PostgreSQL Cluster

One of the main benefits of the Kubernetes cluster manager is to be able to scale the cluster as required. Initially we created 2 replicas. For example, to scale up the number of PostgreSQL instances to 4 run the following command.

```
kubectl scale rc postgres --replicas=4
```

An output of “scaled” from the preceding command indicates that the cluster has been scaled as shown in Figure 5-17.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl scale rc postgres --replicas=4
scaled
```

**Figure 5-17.** Scaling the number of Pod Replicas to 4

Subsequently list the pods with the following command.

```
kubectl get pods
```

The 4 Pods get listed as shown in Figure 5-18. Initially some of the Pods could be listed as not “Running” and/or not in READY (1/1) state.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS
RESTARTS      AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1   3/3    Running
  0          5m
postgres-bqwhe     1/1    Running
  0          2m
postgres-lmuut      1/1    Running
  0          2m
postgres-sz0ga      0/1    Running
  0          8s
postgres-v0k42       0/1   Image: postgres is ready, container is creating
  0          8s
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$
```

**Figure 5-18.** Listing the Pods after Scaling

Run the preceding command again after a few seconds.

```
kubectl get pods
```

The new Pods added to the cluster also get listed as “Running” and in READY state 1/1 as shown in Figure 5-19.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   0          6m
postgres-bqwhe   1/1     Running   0          2m
postgres-lmuut   1/1     Running   0          2m
postgres-sz0ga   1/1     Running   0          23s
postgres-v0k42   1/1     Running   0          23s
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$
```

**Figure 5-19.** Listing all the Pods as running and ready

Describe the postgres service again.

```
kubectl describe svc postgres
```

Initially no Endpoint was listed as being associated with the service when the service was initially started. With 4 Pods running 4 Endpoints get listed as shown in Figure 5-20.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl describe svc postgres
Name:                     postgres
Namespace:                default
Labels:                   app=postgres
Selector:                 app=postgres
Type:                     ClusterIP
IP:                       10.0.0.46
Port:                     <unnamed>      5432/TCP
Endpoints:                172.17.0.2:5432,172.17.0.3:5432,172.17.0.4:5432 + 1 more
...
Session Affinity:         None
No events.

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$
```

**Figure 5-20.** Describing the postgres Service

## Listing the Logs

To list the logs data for a Pod, for example the postgres-v0k42 Pod, run the following command.

```
kubectl logs postgres-v0k42
```

The output in Figure 5-21 lists the PostgreSQL starting.



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13: ~". The window contains the output of the command "kubectl logs postgres-v0k42". The logs show the initialization process of a PostgreSQL database cluster. Key messages include:

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl logs postgres-v0k42
The files belonging to this database system will be owned by user "postgres".
This user must also own the server process.

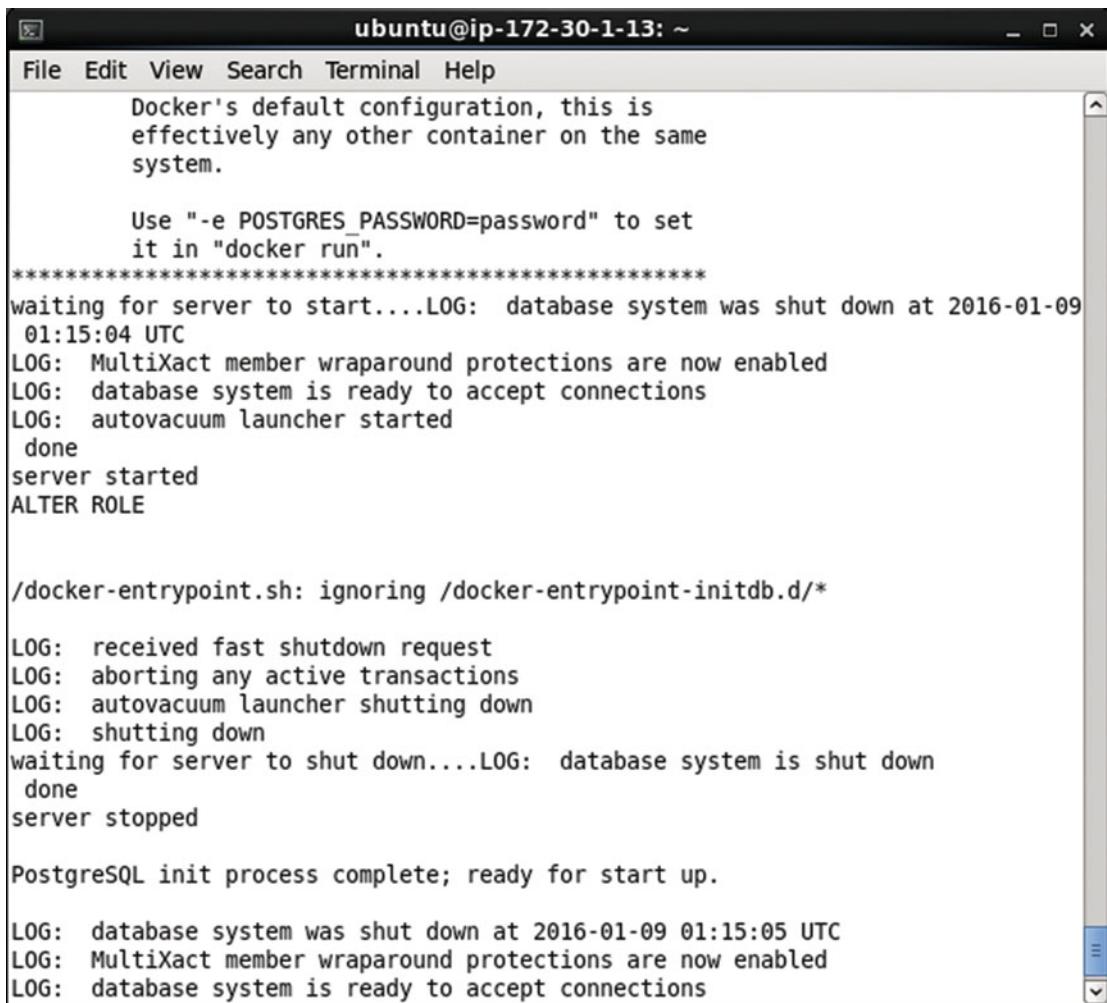
The database cluster will be initialized with locale "en_US.utf8".
The default database encoding has accordingly been set to "UTF8".
The default text search configuration will be set to "english".

Data page checksums are disabled.

fixing permissions on existing directory /var/lib/postgresql/data ... ok
creating subdirectories ... ok
selecting default max_connections ... 100
selecting default shared_buffers ... 128MB
selecting dynamic shared memory implementation ... posix
creating configuration files ... ok
creating template1 database in /var/lib/postgresql/data/base/1 ... ok
initializing pg_authid ... ok
initializing dependencies ... ok
creating system views ... ok
loading system objects' descriptions ... ok
creating collations ... ok
creating conversions ... ok
creating dictionaries ... ok
setting privileges on built-in objects ... ok
creating information schema ... ok
loading PL/pgSQL server-side language ... ok
vacuuming database template1 ... ok
copying template1 to template0 ... ok
copying template1 to postgres ... ok
syncing data to disk ... ok
```

**Figure 5-21.** Listing the Logs for a Pod running PostgreSQL Database

When the PostgreSQL database gets started completely the message “database system is ready to accept connections” gets output as shown in Figure 5-22.



```
Docker's default configuration, this is
effectively any other container on the same
system.

Use "-e POSTGRES_PASSWORD=password" to set
it in "docker run".
*****
waiting for server to start....LOG:  database system was shut down at 2016-01-09
01:15:04 UTC
LOG:  MultiXact member wraparound protections are now enabled
LOG:  database system is ready to accept connections
LOG:  autovacuum launcher started
done
server started
ALTER ROLE

/docker-entrypoint.sh: ignoring /docker-entrypoint-initdb.d/*
LOG:  received fast shutdown request
LOG:  aborting any active transactions
LOG:  autovacuum launcher shutting down
LOG:  shutting down
waiting for server to shut down....LOG:  database system is shut down
done
server stopped

PostgreSQL init process complete; ready for start up.

LOG:  database system was shut down at 2016-01-09 01:15:05 UTC
LOG:  MultiXact member wraparound protections are now enabled
LOG:  database system is ready to accept connections
```

**Figure 5-22.** PostgreSQL Database listed as Started and subsequently Shutdown in the Logs

## Deleting the Replication Controller

To delete the replication controller `postgres` and as a result delete all the Pods managed by the replication controller run the following command.

```
kubectl delete rc postgres
```

The `postgres` replication controller gets deleted as indicated by the `replicationcontrollers/postgres` output shown in Figure 5-23. Subsequently, run the following command to list the replication controllers.

```
kubectl get rc
```

The postgres replication controller does not get listed as shown in Figure 5-23. Deleting the replication controller does not delete the service managing the replication controller. To demonstrate list the services.

```
kubectl get services
```

The postgres service is still getting listed, as shown in Figure 5-23.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl delete rc postgres
replicationcontrollers/postgres
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl get rc
CONTROLLER   CONTAINER(S)   IMAGE(S)   SELECTOR   REPLICAS
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl get services
NAME         LABELS           SELECTOR           IP(S)
PORT(S)
kubernetes   component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes <none>      10.0.0.1
  443/TCP
postgres     app=postgres        app=postgres    10.0.0.46
  5432/TCP
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ █
```

**Figure 5-23.** Deleting a Replication Controller

## Stopping the Service

To stop the service postgres run the following command.

```
kubectl stop service postgres
```

Subsequently run the following command again.

```
kubectl get services
```

The postgres service does not get listed as shown in Figure 5-24.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl stop service postgres
services/postgres
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl get services
NAME         LABELS           SELECTOR           IP(S)   PORT(S)
T(S)
kubernetes   component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes <none>      10.0.0.1   443
  /TCP
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ █
```

**Figure 5-24.** Stopping the postgres Service

## Creating a PostgreSQL Cluster Imperatively

Using a declarative approach with definition files offers finer control over the service and replication controller. But a replication controller and service could also be created on the command line with kubectl commands. In the following subsections we shall create a replication controller and a service.

## Creating a Replication Controller

To create a replication controller called `postgres` for image “`postgres`” with number of replicas as 2 and Post as 5432 run the following command.

```
kubectl run postgres --image=postgres --replicas=2 --port=5432
```

The `postgres` replication controller with 2 replicas of Pod with image `postgres` and selector expression `run=postgres` gets created as shown in Figure 5-25.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-200:~$ kubectl run postgres --image=postgres --replicas=2 --port=5432
CONTROLLER   CONTAINER(S)   IMAGE(S)   SELECTOR   REPLICAS
postgres     postgres       postgres    run=postgres 2
```

**Figure 5-25.** Creating a Replication Controller Imperatively

List the replication controllers with the following command.

```
kubectl get rc
```

The `postgres` replication controller gets listed as shown in Figure 5-26.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-200:~$ kubectl get rc
CONTROLLER   CONTAINER(S)   IMAGE(S)   SELECTOR   REPLICAS
postgres     postgres       postgres    run=postgres 2
```

**Figure 5-26.** Listing the Replication Controllers

## Getting the Pods

To list the Pods managed by the replication controller run the following command.

```
kubectl get pods
```

The two Pods get listed as shown in Figure 5-27. Initially some of the Pods could be listed not Ready as indicated by the 0/1 READY column value. Run the preceding command again to list the Pods as ready with READY column value as 1/1.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-200:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME        READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   0          1h
postgres-c7kvs      1/1     Running   0          16s
postgres-yml3b       0/1     Running   0          16s
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-200:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME        READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   0          1h
postgres-c7kvs      1/1     Running   0          21s
postgres-yml3b       1/1     Running   0          21s
```

**Figure 5-27.** Listing the Pods

## Creating a Service

To create a service we need to run the `kubectl expose` command. Initially only the kubernetes service is running. To demonstrate, run the following command.

```
kubectl get services
```

As shown in Figure 5-28 only the kubernetes service is listed.

NAME	LABELS	SELECTOR	IP(S)	PORT(S)
T(S)				
kubernetes	component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes	<none>	10.0.0.1	443/TCP

**Figure 5-28.** Listing the “kubernetes” Service

To create a service for the replication controller “postgres” run the following command in which the `--port` parameter specifies the port at which the service is exposed. The service type is set as LoadBalancer.

```
kubectl expose rc postgres --port=5432 --type=LoadBalancer
```

Subsequently list the services.

```
kubectl get services
```

The postgres service gets listed as shown in Figure 5-29.

NAME	LABELS	SELECTOR	IP(S)	PORT(S)
postgres	run=postgres	run=postgres		5432/TCP
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-200:~\$	kubectl get services			
NAME	LABELS	SELECTOR	IP(S)	PORT(S)
PORT(S)				
kubernetes	component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes	<none>	10.0.0.1	443/TCP
postgres	run=postgres		run=postgres	10.0.0.191
5432/TCP				

**Figure 5-29.** Creating a Service exposed at Port 5432

## Creating a Database Table

The procedure to create a database table is the same as discussed previously for the declarative section and is discussed only briefly in this section. List the Docker containers with the following command.

```
sudo docker ps
```

Two of the Docker containers are listed with image as postgres in the IMAGE column as shown in Figure 5-30. Copy the container id for one of these columns from the CONTAINER ID column.

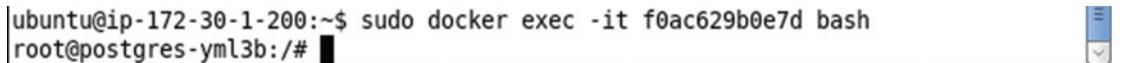
CONTAINER ID	IMAGE	STATUS	PORTS	COMMAND	NAMES
f0ac629b0e7d	postgres	Up 2 minutes		"/docker-entrypo	k8s_postgre
int.s" 2 minutes ago	s.caf5ee3b_postgres-yml3b_default_e4985e51-a5d4-11e5-be4e-125de5231bfd_a62f5163				
46ad310b853e	postgres	Up 2 minutes		"/docker-entrypo	k8s_postgre
int.s" 2 minutes ago	s.caf5ee3b_postgres-c7kvs_default_e4982898-a5d4-11e5-be4e-125de5231bfd_caa83357				
956b6753ac29	gcr.io/google_containers/pause:0.8.0			"/pause"	k8s_POD.37f
		Up 2 minutes			
ee8b7_postgres-yml3b_default_e4985e51-a5d4-11e5-be4e-125de5231bfd_eb03537a					
2e702a76532d	gcr.io/google_containers/pause:0.8.0			"/pause"	k8s_POD.37f
		Up 2 minutes			
ee8b7_postgres-c7kvs_default_e4982898-a5d4-11e5-be4e-125de5231bfd_30c22510					
e21c2b7afbd7	gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1			"/hyperkube prox	drunk_golds
y --m" About an hour ago		Up About an hour			tine
9ca9c866a057	gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1			"/hyperkube sche	
duler" About an hour ago		Up About an hour			k8s_schedul
er.2744e742_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c4a_7552cd					a1
d61cc8dee889	gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1			"/hyperkube apis	
erver" About an hour ago		Up About an hour			k8s_apiserv
er.cfb70250_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c4a_c116b2					fa
ba9079856a95	gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1			"/hyperkube cont	
rolle" About an hour ago		Up About an hour			k8s_control
ller-manager.1598ee5c_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c4a_89ea480e					4a
1aff75ca7e09	gcr.io/google_containers/pause:0.8.0			"/pause"	k8s_POD.e4c
		Up About an hour			
c795_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c4a_605c37ce					

**Figure 5-30.** Listing the Docker Containers

Start the interactive shell with the following command.

```
sudo docker exec -it af0ac629b0e7d bash
```

The interactive terminal gets started as shown in Figure 5-31.



```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-200:~$ sudo docker exec -it f0ac629b0e7d bash
root@postgres-yml3b:/#
```

**Figure 5-31.** Starting the TTY

Set the user as postgres.

```
su -l postgres
```

Start the psql command line shell.

```
psql postgres
```

The psql shell is shown in Figure 5-32.



```
$ psql postgres
psql (9.4.5)
Type "help" for help.

postgres=#
```

**Figure 5-32.** Starting the psql Shell

Run the following SQL statements to create a database table called wlslog and add data to the table.

```
CREATE TABLE wlslog(time_stamp VARCHAR(255) PRIMARY KEY,category VARCHAR(255),type
VARCHAR(255),servername VARCHAR(255),code VARCHAR(255),msg VARCHAR(255));

INSERT INTO wlslog(time_stamp,category,type,servername,code,msg) VALUES('Apr-8-2014-7:
06:16-PM-PDT','Notice','WebLogicServer','AdminServer','BEA-000365','Server state changed
to STANDBY');
INSERT INTO wlslog(time_stamp,category,type,servername,code,msg) VALUES('Apr-8-2014-7:
06:17-PM-PDT','Notice','WebLogicServer','AdminServer','BEA-000365','Server state changed
to STARTING');
INSERT INTO wlslog(time_stamp,category,type,servername,code,msg) VALUES('Apr-8-2014-7:
06:18-PM-PDT','Notice','WebLogicServer','AdminServer','BEA-000360','Server started in
RUNNING mode');
```

The database table wlslog gets created as shown in Figure 5-33.

```
<),servername VARCHAR(255), code VARCHAR(255),msg VARCHAR(255));
CREATE TABLE
<rver','AdminServer','BEA-000365','Server state changed to STANDBY');
INSERT 0 1
<rver','AdminServer','BEA-000365','Server state changed to STARTING');
INSERT 0 1
<rver','AdminServer','BEA-000360','Server started in RUNNING mode');
INSERT 0 1
postgres=#
```

**Figure 5-33.** Creating a Database Table

Run the following SQL statement to query the wlslog table.

```
SELECT * FROM wlslog;
```

The three rows of data added get listed as shown in Figure 5-34.

```
postgres=# SELECT * FROM wlslog;
      time_stamp      | category |      type      | servername |      code
      | msg
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
-----+
-----+
Apr-8-2014-7:06:16-PM-PDT | Notice   | WebLogicServer | AdminServer | BEA-00036
5 | Server state changed to STANDBY
Apr-8-2014-7:06:17-PM-PDT | Notice   | WebLogicServer | AdminServer | BEA-00036
5 | Server state changed to STARTING
Apr-8-2014-7:06:18-PM-PDT | Notice   | WebLogicServer | AdminServer | BEA-00036
0 | Server started in RUNNING mode
(3 rows)

postgres=#
```

**Figure 5-34.** Querying the wlslog Database Table

To quit the psql shell and the interactive shell for the Docker container running PostgreSQL, run the following commands.

```
\q
exit
```

The psql shell and the tty get exited as shown in Figure 5-35.

```
postgres=# \q
could not save history to file "/home/postgres/.pgsql_history": No such file or directory
$ exit
root@postgres-yml3b:/# exit
exit
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-200:~$ █
```

**Figure 5-35.** Exiting the Shells

## Scaling the PostgreSQL Cluster

When we created the cluster initially we set the replicas to 2. List the pods as follows.

```
kubectl get pods
```

Only two Pods get listed as shown in Figure 5-36.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-200:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME          READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   0          1h
postgres-c7kvs      1/1     Running   0          8m
postgres-yml3b        1/1     Running   0          8m
```

**Figure 5-36.** Listing the Pods

Scale the cluster to 4 replicas with the following command.

```
kubectl scale rc postgres --replicas=4
```

An output of “scaled” as shown in Figure 5-37 indicates that the cluster has been scaled.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-200:~$ kubectl scale rc postgres --replicas=4
scaled
```

**Figure 5-37.** Scaling the Pod Replicas to 4

Subsequently list the Pods.

```
kubectl get pods
```

The preceding command may have to be run multiple times to list all the Pods as “Running” and in READY state 1/1 as shown in Figure 5-38.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-200:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   0          1h
postgres-6brx1      0/1     Running   0          12s
postgres-c7kvs       1/1     Running   0          8m
postgres-gt6yb       1/1     Running   0          12s
postgres-yml3b       1/1     Running   0          8m
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-200:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   0          1h
postgres-6brx1      0/1     Running   0          17s
postgres-c7kvs       1/1     Running   0          8m
postgres-gt6yb       1/1     Running   0          17s
postgres-yml3b       1/1     Running   0          8m
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-200:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   0          1h
postgres-6brx1      1/1     Running   0          23s
postgres-c7kvs       1/1     Running   0          8m
postgres-gt6yb       1/1     Running   0          23s
postgres-yml3b       1/1     Running   0          8m
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-200:~$
```

*Figure 5-38. Listing the Pods in various states of starting*

## Deleting the Replication Controller

To delete the replication controller run the following command.

```
kubectl delete rc postgres
```

List the Pods subsequent to deleting the rc.

```
kubectl get pods
```

List the services.

```
kubectl get services
```

The postgres replication controller gets deleted and does not get listed subsequently as shown in Figure 5-39. The postgres service still gets listed also shown in Figure 5-39.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-200:~$ kubectl delete rc postgres
replicationcontrollers/postgres
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-200:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   0          1h
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-200:~$ kubectl get services
NAME         LABELS             SELECTOR   IP(S)
  PORT(S)
kubernetes   component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes <none>      10.0.0.1
  443/TCP
postgres      run=postgres       run=postgres  10.0.0.191
  5432/TCP
```

**Figure 5-39.** Deleting the Replication Controller

## Stopping the Service

To stop the service run the following command.

```
kubectl stop service postgres
```

The postgres service gets stopped as shown in Figure 5-40. Subsequently run the following command.

```
kubectl get services
```

The postgres service does not get listed as shown in Figure 5-40 also.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-200:~$ kubectl stop service postgres
services/postgres
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-200:~$ kubectl get services
NAME         LABELS             SELECTOR   IP(S)   PORT(S)
  T(S)
kubernetes   component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes <none>      10.0.0.1   443/TCP
  /TCP
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-200:~$ █
```

**Figure 5-40.** Stopping the Service

## Summary

In this chapter we used the Kubernetes cluster manager to start and manage a PostgreSQL server cluster. We demonstrated creating a cluster both imperatively on the command line and declaratively using definition files. We scaled the cluster using a replication controller and exposed a service for the cluster using a Kubernetes service. In the next chapter we shall discuss creating and managing an Oracle Database cluster.

## CHAPTER 6



# Using Oracle Database

Oracle Database is the most commonly used relational database (RDBMS). Installing and configuring Oracle Database would usually involve downloading the software, setting the kernel parameters, installing and configuring the software, all of which is quite involved. Using Docker containers coordinated with Kubernetes makes the task of installing, configuring, and orchestrating a Oracle Database cluster much easier. Oracle Database cluster consisting of multiple instances could benefit from the schedulability, scalability, distributedness, and failover features of the Kubernetes container cluster manager. In this chapter we shall install Oracle Database using a Docker image for the database. We shall create multiple replicas of the database Pod using a replication controller and expose the database as a service. This chapter has the following sections.

Setting the Environment

Creating an Oracle Database Instance Imperatively

Creating an Oracle Database Instance Declaratively

Keeping the Replication Level

Scaling the Database

Starting the Interactive Shell

Connecting to Database

Creating a User

Creating a Database Table

Exiting the Interactive Shell

## Setting the Environment

The following software is required for this chapter.

- Docker Engine (latest version)
- Kubernetes (version 1.01)
- Kubectl (version 1.01)
- Docker Image for Oracle Database (Oracle Database XE 11g)

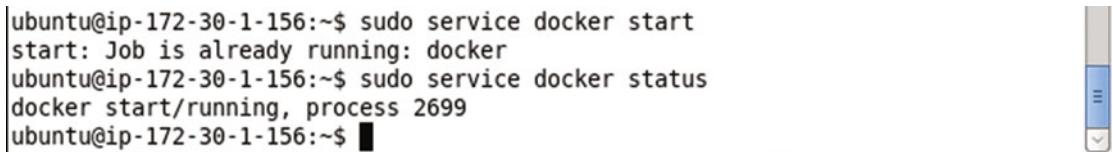
If not already installed, install Docker Engine, Kubernetes, and Kubectl as discussed in Chapter 1. SSH login to the Ubuntu instance on Amazon EC2 using the Public IP Address of the EC2 instance.

```
ssh -i "docker.pem" ubuntu@52.90.115.30
```

Start the Docker instance and verify its status with the following commands.

```
sudo service docker start
sudo service docker status
```

Docker is indicated as running in Figure 6-1.



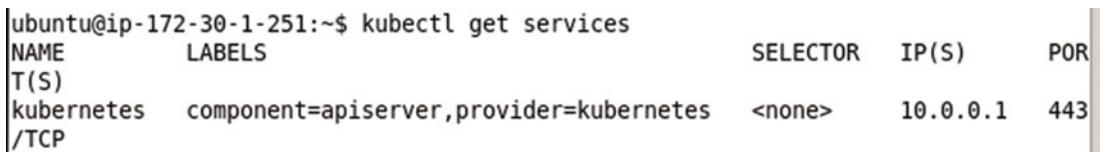
```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ sudo service docker start
start: Job is already running: docker
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ sudo service docker status
docker start/running, process 2699
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$
```

**Figure 6-1.** Starting Docker and verifying its Status

List the services running.

```
kubectl get services
```

Only the kubernetes service is listed as running in Figure 6-2.



NAME	LABELS	SELECTOR	IP(S)	PORT
T(S) kubernetes /TCP	component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes	<none>	10.0.0.1	443

**Figure 6-2.** Listing the Kubernetes Service

## Creating an Oracle Database Instance Imperatively

In this section we shall create an Oracle Database cluster using kubectl on the command line. Several Docker images are available for Oracle Database and we shall be using the sath89/oracle-xe-11g image (<https://hub.docker.com/r/sath89/oracle-xe-11g/>). Run the following kubectl command to create an Oracle Database cluster consisting of 2 replicas with port set as 1521.

```
kubectl run oradb --image=sath89/oracle-xe-11g --replicas=2 --port=1521
```

The output from the command in Figure 6-3 lists a replication controller called oradb, a Docker container called oradb, a selector (run=oradb) to select Pods that comprise the replication controller replicas, and the number of replicas (2). The Pod label is also set to run=oradb.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ kubectl run oradb --image=sath89/oracle-xe-11g --replicas=2 --port=1521
CONTROLLER CONTAINER(S) IMAGE(S) SELECTOR REPLICAS
oradb      oradb      sath89/oracle-xe-11g  run=oradb  2
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$
```

**Figure 6-3.** Creating a Replication Controller and Pod Replicas for Oracle Database

List the replication controller with the following command.

```
kubectl get rc
```

The oradb replication controller shown in Figure 6-4 gets listed.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ kubectl get rc
CONTROLLER CONTAINER(S) IMAGE(S) SELECTOR REPLICAS
oradb      oradb      sath89/oracle-xe-11g  run=oradb  2
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$
```

**Figure 6-4.** Listing the Replication Controllers

List the Pods using the following command.

```
kubectl get pods
```

In addition to the Kubernetes Pod k8s-master-127.0.0.1 two other pods get listed for Oracle Database as shown in Figure 6-5. Initially the Pods could be listed as “not ready” as shown in Figure 6-5 also. Run the preceding command after a duration of a few seconds, multiple times if required, to list the two Pods are Running and READY (1/1).

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME          READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   0          6m
oradb-ea57r       0/1     Image: sath89/oracle-xe-11g is not ready on the
node           0        45s
oradb-wjv2t        0/1     Image: sath89/oracle-xe-11g is not ready on the
node           0        45s
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME          READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   0          6m
oradb-ea57r       1/1     Running   0          51s
oradb-wjv2t        1/1     Running   0          51s
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$
```

**Figure 6-5.** Listing the Pods in various stages of running

Get the nodes with the following command.

```
kubectl get nodes
```

And get the Kubernetes services with the following command.

```
kubectl get services
```

Only the kubernetes service gets listed as shown in Figure 6-6 because we have not yet created a service for Oracle Database.

NAME		LABELS	STATUS			
NAME		LABELS		SELECTOR	IP(S)	PORT
T(S)						
kubernetes		component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes	<none>		10.0.0.1	443
/TCP						
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~\$ █						

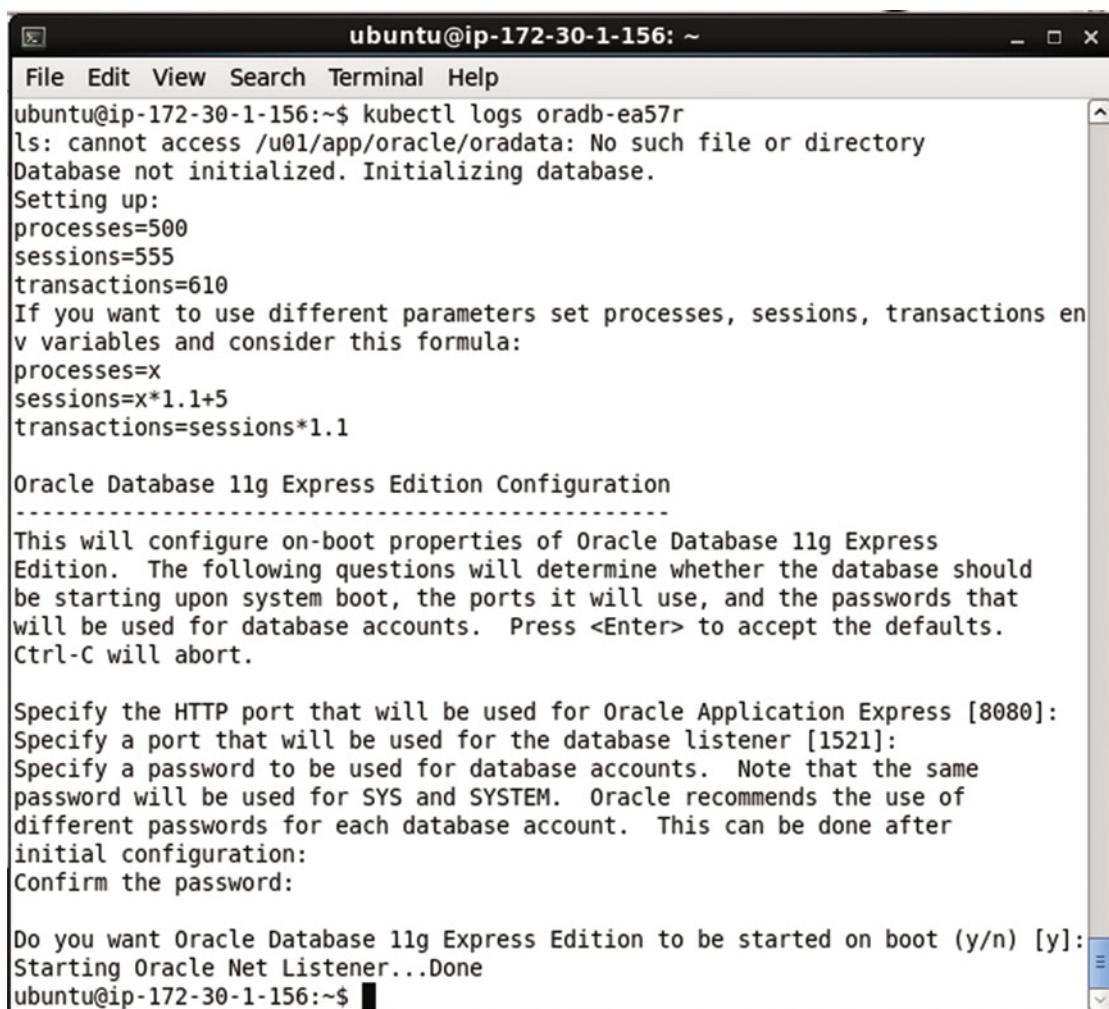
**Figure 6-6.** Creating a Replication Controller does not create a Service

## Listing Logs

List the logs for one of the Pods using the following command.

```
kubectl logs oradb-ea57r
```

The logs generated by a started Oracle Database instance get output as shown in Figure 6-7. Oracle Net Listener is indicated as having been started.



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156: ~". The terminal displays the following output:

```

File Edit View Search Terminal Help
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ kubectl logs oradb-ea57r
ls: cannot access /u01/app/oracle/oradata: No such file or directory
Database not initialized. Initializing database.
Setting up:
processes=500
sessions=555
transactions=610
If you want to use different parameters set processes, sessions, transactions en
v variables and consider this formula:
processes=x
sessions=x*1.1+5
transactions=sessions*1.1

Oracle Database 11g Express Edition Configuration
-----
This will configure on-boot properties of Oracle Database 11g Express
Edition. The following questions will determine whether the database should
be starting upon system boot, the ports it will use, and the passwords that
will be used for database accounts. Press <Enter> to accept the defaults.
Ctrl-C will abort.

Specify the HTTP port that will be used for Oracle Application Express [8080]:
Specify a port that will be used for the database listener [1521]:
Specify a password to be used for database accounts. Note that the same
password will be used for SYS and SYSTEM. Oracle recommends the use of
different passwords for each database account. This can be done after
initial configuration:
Confirm the password:

Do you want Oracle Database 11g Express Edition to be started on boot (y/n) [y]: y
Starting Oracle Net Listener...Done
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ █

```

**Figure 6-7.** Listing Logs for a Pod

## Creating a Service

Next, expose the replication controller oradb as a Kubernetes service on port 1521. Subsequently list the Kubernetes services.

```
kubectl expose rc oradb --port=1521 --type=LoadBalancer
kubectl get services
```

The first of the two preceding commands starts the oradb service. Subsequently the service gets listed as shown in Figure 6-8. The service selector is run=oradb, which is the same as the replication controller selector.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ kubectl expose rc oradb --port=1521 --type=LoadBalancer
NAME      LABELS      SELECTOR      IP(S)      PORT(S)
oradb     run=oradb   run=oradb    1521/TCP
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ kubectl get services
NAME      LABELS      SELECTOR      IP(S)      PORT(S)
kubernetes  component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes <none>  10.0.0.1  443/TCP
oradb      run=oradb   run=oradb    10.0.0.72  1521/TCP
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$
```

**Figure 6-8.** Creating a Service Imperatively

Describe the service with the following command.

```
kubectl describe svc oradb
```

The service name, namespace, labels, selector, type, IP, Port, NodePort, and endpoints get listed as shown in Figure 6-9.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ kubectl describe svc oradb
Name:           oradb
Namespace:      default
Labels:         run=oradb
Selector:       run=oradb
Type:          LoadBalancer
IP:            10.0.0.72
Port:          <unnamed>      1521/TCP
NodePort:       <unnamed>      31626/TCP
Endpoints:     172.17.0.2:1521,172.17.0.3:1521
Session Affinity: None
No events.

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$
```

**Figure 6-9.** Describing the oradb Service

## Scaling the Database

Run the `kubectl scale` command to scale the replicas. For example, reduce the number of replicas to 1.

```
kubectl scale rc oradb --replicas=1
```

An output of “scaled” indicates that the replicas have been scaled as shown in Figure 6-10.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ kubectl scale rc oradb --replicas=1
scaled
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ █
```

**Figure 6-10.** Scaling the Replicas to 1

Subsequently list the running Pods.

```
kubectl get pods
```

Only one Oracle Database Pod gets listed as the other has been stopped to reduce the replication level to one as shown in Figure 6-11. Subsequently, describe the service.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ kubectl scale rc oradb --replicas=1
scaled
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   0          17m
oradb-06z2g      1/1     Running   0          6m
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ kubectl describe svc oradb
Name:           oradb
Namespace:      default
Labels:         run=oradb
Selector:       run=oradb
Type:          LoadBalancer
IP:            10.0.0.72
Port:          <unnamed>      1521/TCP
NodePort:       <unnamed>      31626/TCP
Endpoints:     172.17.0.5:1521
Session Affinity: None
No events.
```

**Figure 6-11.** Listing and Describing the Single Pod

```
kubectl describe svc oradb
```

Because the cluster has been scaled down to one replica the number of endpoints also gets reduced to one as shown in Figure 6-11.

## Deleting the Replication Controller and Service

In subsequent sections we shall be creating a cluster of Oracle Database instances declaratively using definition files. As we shall be using the same configuration parameters, delete the “oradb” replication controller and the “oradb” service with the following commands.

```
kubectl delete rc oradb
kubectl delete svc oradb
```

Both the replication controller and the service get deleted as shown in Figure 6-12.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ kubectl delete rc oradb
replicationcontrollers/oradb
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ kubectl delete service oradb
services/oradb
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$
```

**Figure 6-12.** Deleting the Replication Controller and Service

## Creating an Oracle Database Instance Declaratively

In this section we shall create Oracle Database cluster declaratively using definition files for a Pod, replication controller, and service. We have used the YAML format in the definition files but the JSON format may be used instead.

### Creating a Pod

Create a definition file for a Pod called `oradb.yaml`. Copy the following listing, which defines a Pod named "oradb" with a label setting name: "oradb", which translates to Pod label name=oradb. The container image is set as "sath89/oracle-xe-11g" and the container port is set as 1521.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: "oradb"
  labels:
    name: "oradb"
spec:
  containers:
    -
      image: "sath89/oracle-xe-11g"
      name: "oradb"
      ports:
        -
          containerPort: 1521
  restartPolicy: Always
```

The `oradb.yaml` file may be created in the vi editor and saved with the :wq command as shown in Figure 6-13.

```

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156: ~
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: "oradb"
  labels:
    name: "oradb"
spec:
  containers:

    image: "sath89/oracle-xe-11g"
    name: "oradb"
    ports:
      - containerPort: 1521
restartPolicy: Always

:wq

```

**Figure 6-13.** Pod Definition File

Create a Pod using the definition file `oradb.yaml` with the `kubectl create` command.

```
kubectl create -f oradb.yaml --validate
```

An output of “pods/oradb” in Figure 6-14 indicates that the `oradb` Pod has been created.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ kubectl create -f oradb.yaml --validate
pods/oradb
```

**Figure 6-14.** Creating a Pod from a Definition File

Subsequently list the running Pods with the following command.

```
kubectl get pods
```

The single Pod oradb gets listed as shown in Figure 6-15. Initially, the oradb Pod could be listed in various phases of starting such as Image “is ready, container is creating” or the READY value could be 0/1 indicating that the Pod is not ready yet. When the STATUS column becomes “Running” and the READY column becomes 1/1 the Pod is started and ready. The preceding command may have to be run multiple times to list the Pod as Running and Ready.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1   3/3     Running   0          18m
oradb          0/1     Image: sath89/oracle-xe-11g is ready, container
                  is creating   0          8s
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1   3/3     Running   0          18m
oradb          0/1     Running   0          11s
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1   3/3     Running   0          19m
oradb          0/1     Running   0          20s
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1   3/3     Running   0          19m
oradb          1/1     Running   0          42s
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ █
```

**Figure 6-15.** Listing the Pod/s, which could initially be not Running and not Ready

## Creating a Service

Next, create a service for an Oracle Database cluster. The service does not specify how many instances (replicas) of the Oracle Database image are running or should be running. The replicas are controlled by the replication controller. The service only defines a port to expose the service at, a label for the service and a selector to match the Pods to be managed by the service. The selector setting is app: “oradb”, which translates to service selector app=oradb. Create a service definition file oradb-service.yaml and copy the following listing to the definition file.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Service
metadata:
  name: "oradb"
  labels:
    app: "oradb"
```

```
spec:  
  ports:  
    -  
      port: 1521  
  selector:  
    app: "oradb"
```

The oradb-service.yaml definition file may be created in the vi editor and saved with :wq as shown in Figure 6-16.

**Figure 6-16.** Service Definition File

Run the following command to create a service from the service definition file.

```
kubectl create -f oradb-service.yaml
```

The oradb service gets created as indicated by the “services/oradb” output in Figure 6-17. Subsequently list the services.

```
kubectl get services
```

The oradb service gets listed as shown in Figure 6-17.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ kubectl create -f oradb-service.yaml
services/oradb
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ kubectl get services
NAME      LABELS           SELECTOR   IP(S)
PORT(S)
kubernetes  component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes <none>     10.0.0.1
443/TCP
oradb       app=oradb          app=oradb  10.0.0.214
1521/TCP
```

**Figure 6-17.** Creating a Service from a Service Definition File

Describe the oradb service with the following command.

```
kubectl describe svc oradb
```

No service endpoint gets listed as shown in Figure 6-18 because the service selector does not match the label on the Pod already running. The service selector app=oradb has to match a Pod label for the service to be able to manage the Pod. In the next section we shall create a replication controller with a matching label.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ kubectl describe svc oradb
Name:            oradb
Namespace:       default
Labels:          app=oradb
Selector:        app=oradb
Type:            ClusterIP
IP:              10.0.0.214
Port:            <unnamed>    1521/TCP
Endpoints:       <none>
Session Affinity: None
No events.
```

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ █
```

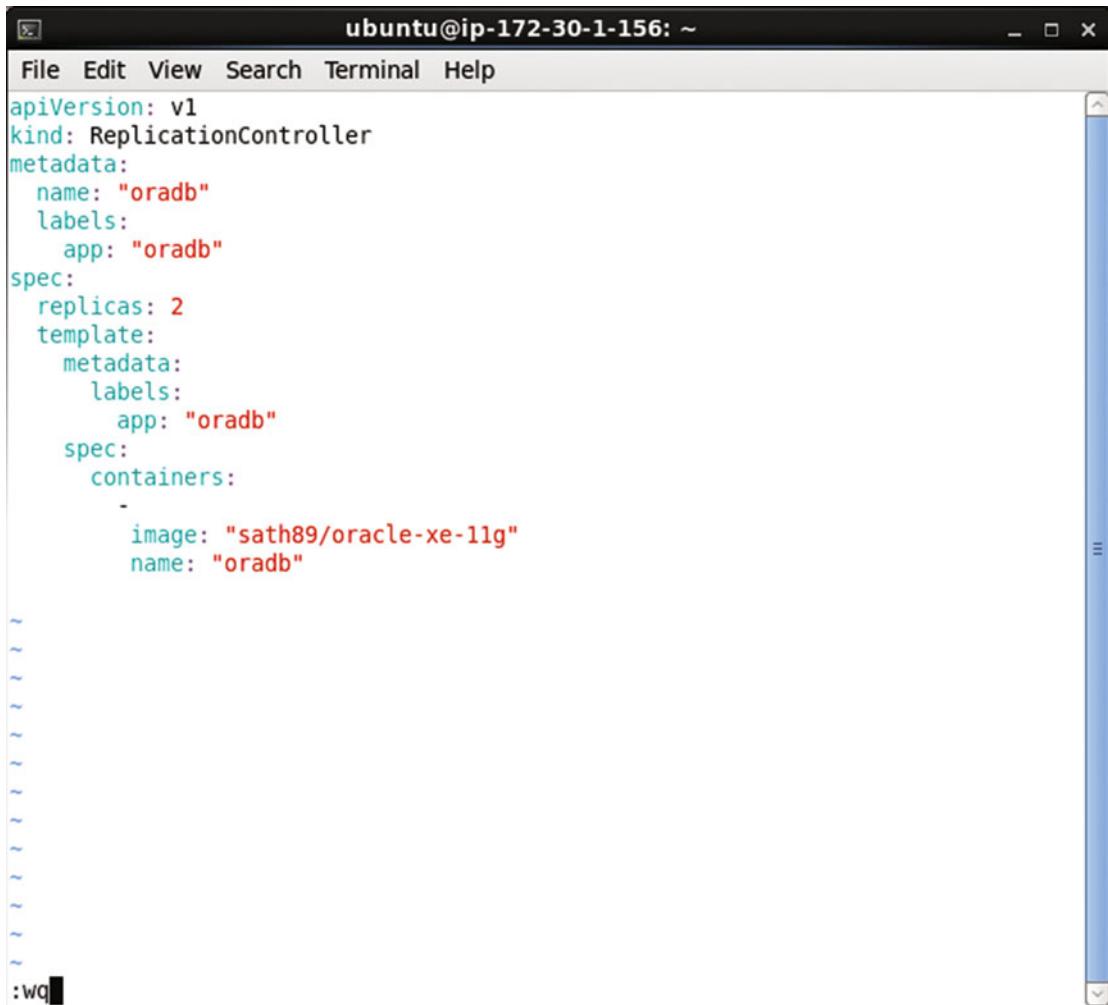
**Figure 6-18.** Describing a Service for Oracle Database

## Creating a Replication Controller

Create a replication controller definition file called `oradb-rc.yaml` and copy the following listing, which defines a replication controller, to the definition file. For the replication controller to manage the Pods defined in the spec field the key:value expression of the selector in the replication controller has to match a label in the Pod template mapping. The selector is omitted in the `oradb-rc.yaml` but the `spec->template->metadata->labels` must be specified. The selector defaults to the same setting as the `spec->template->metadata->labels`. The template->spec->containers mapping defines the containers in the Pod. Only the Oracle Database container “`sath89/oracle-xe-11g`” is defined.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: ReplicationController
metadata:
  name: "oradb"
  labels:
    app: "oradb"
spec:
  replicas: 2
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        app: "oradb"
  spec:
    containers:
      -
        image: "sath89/oracle-xe-11g"
        name: "oradb"
```

The oradb-rc.yaml file may be edited in the vi editor and saved with the :wq command as shown in Figure 6-19.



```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156: ~
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
apiVersion: v1
kind: ReplicationController
metadata:
  name: "oradb"
  labels:
    app: "oradb"
spec:
  replicas: 2
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        app: "oradb"
    spec:
      containers:
        image: "sath89/oracle-xe-11g"
        name: "oradb"
:wq
```

**Figure 6-19.** Replication Controller Definition File

Next, run the following command to create a replication controller from the definition file oradb-rc.yaml.

```
kubectl create -f oradb-rc.yaml
```

The replication controller gets created as shown in Figure 6-20. List the replication controller with the following command.

```
kubectl get rc
```

The oradb replication controller gets created as shown in Figure 6-20.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ kubectl create -f oradb-rc.yaml
replicationcontrollers/oradb
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ kubectl get rc
CONTROLLER   CONTAINER(S)   IMAGE(S)          SELECTOR      REPLICAS
oradb        oradb          sath89/oracle-xe-11g  app=oradb    2
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ █
```

**Figure 6-20.** Creating and listing a Replication Controller from a Definition File

The Pods created by the replication controller are listed with the following command.

```
kubectl get pods
```

Three Oracle Database Pods get listed as shown in Figure 6-21. Why do three Pods get listed even though the replication controller replicas are set to 2? Because the Pod started using the Pod definition file `oradb.yaml` does not include a label that matches the selector in the replication controller. The replication controller selector is app: "oradb" while the label on the Pod is name: "oradb". Two replicas are started by the replication controller and one Pod was started earlier by the pod definition file.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME            READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   0          21m
oradb           1/1     Running   0          2m
oradb-5ntnj      1/1     Running   0          44s
oradb-ulavr       1/1     Running   0          44s
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ █
```

**Figure 6-21.** Listing the Pod Replicas

Describe the service oradb with the following command.

```
kubectl describe svc oradb
```

The service endpoints get listed as shown in Figure 6-22. Only two endpoints get listed because the service selector app: "oradb" matches the Pod label in the replication controller with two replicas. The Pod created earlier does not include a label that matches the selector expression.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ kubectl describe svc oradb
Name:           oradb
Namespace:      default
Labels:         app=oradb
Selector:       app=oradb
Type:          ClusterIP
IP:            10.0.0.214
Port:          <unnamed>    1521/TCP
Endpoints:     172.17.0.3:1521,172.17.0.4:1521
Session Affinity: None
No events.

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ █
```

**Figure 6-22.** Describing the Service after creating the Replication Controller

## Keeping the Replication Level

The task of the replication controller is to maintain the replication level of the Pods. Because the replicas field mapping in the replication controller spec is 2, two replicas of the Pod configured in the Pod spec must be running at all time while the replication controller is running. To demonstrate that the replication level is kept, delete a Pod.

```
kubectl delete pod oradb-5ntnj
```

Subsequently list the running Pods.

```
kubectl get pods
```

One of the two replicas got deleted with the `kubectl delete pod` command but another replica is listed as getting started in Figure 6-23. It may take a few seconds for the replicas to reach the replication level. Run the preceding command multiple times to list the replicas as running. The number of replicas gets back to 2.

```

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ kubectl delete pod oradb-5ntnj
pods/oradb-5ntnj
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS
              RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1   3/3     Running
                      0          22m
oradb           1/1     Running
                      0          3m
oradb-ulavr    1/1     Running
                      0          1m
oradb-wh9j2     0/1     Image: sath89/oracle-xe-11g is ready, container
is creating     0          12s
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS   RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1   3/3     Running   0          22m
oradb           1/1     Running   0          3m
oradb-ulavr    1/1     Running   0          2m
oradb-wh9j2     0/1     Running   0          34s
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS   RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1   3/3     Running   0          23m
oradb           1/1     Running   0          4m
oradb-ulavr    1/1     Running   0          2m
oradb-wh9j2     1/1     Running   0          1m
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ █

```

**Figure 6-23.** Maintaining the Replication Level

The "oradb" Pod is not associated with the replication controller and therefore it is not counted as one of the replicas managed by the replication controller. The oradb Pod is not managed by the replication controller because, as discussed earlier, the label on the oradb Pod does not match the label on the replication controller. To demonstrate that the oradb pod is not managed by the replication controller delete the Pod.

```
kubectl delete pod oradb
```

Subsequently list the running Pods.

```
kubectl get pods
```

The oradb Pod gets deleted and a replacement Pod does not get started and does not get listed in the running Pods as shown in Figure 6-24.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ kubectl delete pod oradb
pods/oradb
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME READY STATUS RESTARTS AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3 Running 0 28m
oradb-ulavr 0/1 Running 1 8m
oradb-wh9j2 1/1 Running 0 6m
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME READY STATUS RESTARTS AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3 Running 0 28m
oradb-ulavr 1/1 Running 1 8m
oradb-wh9j2 1/1 Running 0 6m
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$
```

**Figure 6-24.** The oradb Pod is not managed by the Replication Controller

## Scaling the Database

The replication controller may be used to scale the number of Pods running for Oracle Database. As an example scale up the number of Pod replicas to 3 from 2.

```
kubectl scale rc oradb --replicas=3
```

The “scaled” output indicates that the replicas have been scaled. Subsequently run the following command, multiple times if required, to list the new Pod replica as running and ready.

```
kubectl get pods
```

Three replicas of the Pod get listed as shown in Figure 6-25.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ kubectl scale rc oradb --replicas=3
scaled
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME READY STATUS
RESTARTS AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3 Running
0 29m
oradb-bo1ks 0/1 Image: sath89/oracle-xe-11g is ready, container
is creating 0 10s
oradb-ulavr 1/1 Running
1 8m
oradb-wh9j2 1/1 Running
0 7m
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME READY STATUS RESTARTS AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3 Running 0 30m
oradb-bo1ks 1/1 Running 0 50s
oradb-ulavr 1/1 Running 1 9m
oradb-wh9j2 1/1 Running 0 8m
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$
```

**Figure 6-25.** Scaling the Cluster to 3 Replicas

Describe the service again.

```
kubectl describe svc oradb
```

Three endpoints get listed instead of two as shown in Figure 6-26. The service has a single IP address.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ kubectl describe svc oradb
Name:           oradb
Namespace:      default
Labels:         app=oradb
Selector:       app=oradb
Type:          ClusterIP
IP:            10.0.0.214
Port:          <unnamed>    1521/TCP
Endpoints:     172.17.0.2:1521,172.17.0.3:1521,172.17.0.4:1521
Session Affinity: None
No events.

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-156:~$ █
```

**Figure 6-26.** Listing the 3 Endpoints in the Service

## Starting the Interactive Shell

In this section we shall start an interactive tty (shell) to connect to the software, which is Oracle Database, running in a Docker container started with and managed by Kubernetes. First, list the Docker containers with the following command.

```
sudo docker ps
```

Copy the container id for one of the Docker containers for the sath89/oracle-xe-11g image as shown in Figure 6-27.

CONTAINER ID	IMAGE	CREATED	STATUS	PORTS	COMMAND	NAMES
9f74a82d4ea0	sath89/oracle-xe-11g	" 7 minutes ago	Up 7 minutes		"/entrypoint.sh	k8s_oradb.8
1cbcef9_oradb-xwlcv_default_4883f3bd-a50c-11e5-8487-12b7ac747519_eb574ebf	gcr.io/google_containers/pause:0.8.0	08232b5a09fe	7 minutes ago	Up 7 minutes	"/pause"	k8s_POD.e4c
c795_oradb-xwlcv_default_4883f3bd-a50c-11e5-8487-12b7ac747519_7fa5bc60	sath89/oracle-xe-11g	92b6fa8dcc3a	7 minutes ago	Up 7 minutes	"/entrypoint.sh	k8s_oradb.8
1cbcef9_oradb-38lw5_default_2acb1a03-a50c-11e5-8487-12b7ac747519_eeb2ae45	gcr.io/google_containers/pause:0.8.0	35dcbbf7ca53	8 minutes ago	Up 8 minutes	"/pause"	k8s_POD.e4c
c795_oradb-38lw5_default_2acb1a03-a50c-11e5-8487-12b7ac747519_4c0634bf	gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1	30783d28a48f	9 minutes ago	Up 9 minutes	"/hyperkube prox	sick_sammet
y --m" 9 minutes ago	gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1	c696ef71a152	9 minutes ago	Up 9 minutes	"/hyperkube sche	duler" 9 minutes ago
er.2744e742_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c4a_bec529	gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1	9e	9 minutes ago	Up 9 minutes	"/hyperkube apis	server" 9 minutes ago
ac90a0b9136c	gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1	er.cfb70250_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c4a_2d9644	Up 9 minutes		"/hyperkube apiserv	k8s_apiserv

**Figure 6-27.** Copying the Container Id for a Docker Container

Using the container id start an interactive shell with the following command.

```
sudo docker exec -it 9f74a82d4ea0 bash
```

The interactive shell gets started as shown in Figure 6-28.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ sudo docker exec -it 9f74a82d4ea0 bash
root@oradb-xwlcv:/#
```

**Figure 6-28.** Starting an Interactive Shell

## Connecting to Database

In the interactive tty change the user to “oracle.”

```
su -l oracle
```

The difference between `su oracle` and `su - oracle` is that the latter logs in with the environment variables of oracle user and also sets the current directory to oracle home directory while the former logs in as oracle but the environment variables and current directory remain unchanged.

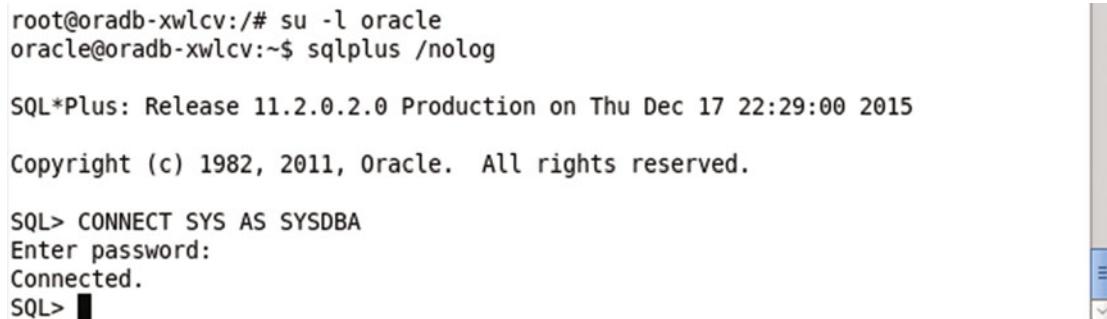
Subsequently start the SQL\*Plus. Using the /nolog option does not establish an initial connection with the database.

```
sqlplus /nolog
```

Run the following command to connect SYS as SYSDBA.

```
CONNECT SYS AS SYSDBA
```

Specify the Password as “oracle” when prompted. The output from the preceding commands to start SQL\*Plus and connect SYS are shown in Figure 6-29. A connection gets established.



```
root@oradb-xwlcv:/# su -l oracle
oracle@oradb-xwlcv:~$ sqlplus /nolog

SQL*Plus: Release 11.2.0.2.0 Production on Thu Dec 17 22:29:00 2015

Copyright (c) 1982, 2011, Oracle. All rights reserved.

SQL> CONNECT SYS AS SYSDBA
Enter password:
Connected.
SQL>
```

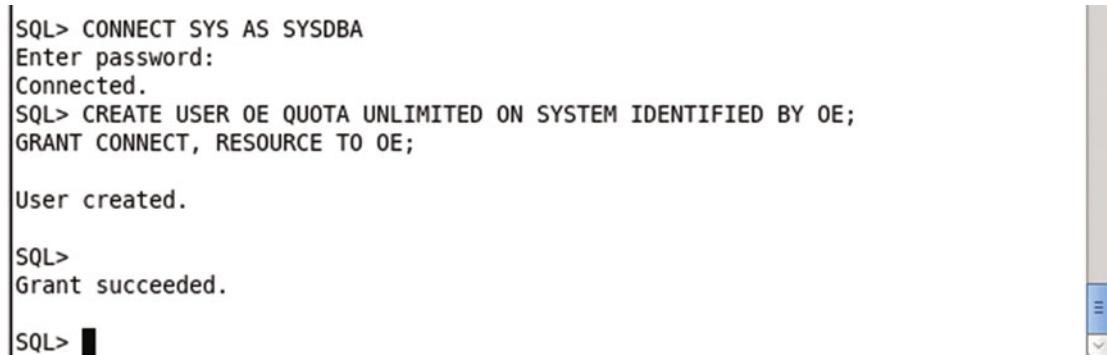
**Figure 6-29.** Starting SQL\*Plus

## Creating a User

To create a user called OE and grant CONNECT and RESOURCE roles to the user, run the following commands.

```
CREATE USER OE QUOTA UNLIMITED ON SYSTEM IDENTIFIED BY OE;
GRANT CONNECT, RESOURCE TO OE;
```

The OE user gets created and the roles get granted as shown in Figure 6-30.



```
SQL> CONNECT SYS AS SYSDBA
Enter password:
Connected.
SQL> CREATE USER OE QUOTA UNLIMITED ON SYSTEM IDENTIFIED BY OE;
GRANT CONNECT, RESOURCE TO OE;

User created.

SQL>
Grant succeeded.

SQL>
```

**Figure 6-30.** Connecting as SYSDBA and creating a User

## Creating a Database Table

Create a database table called OE.Catalog with the following SQL statement.

```
CREATE TABLE OE.Catalog(CatalogId INTEGER PRIMARY KEY,Journal VARCHAR2(25),Publisher  
VARCHAR2(25),Edition VARCHAR2(25),Title VARCHAR2(45),Author VARCHAR2(25));
```

Add a row of data to the OE.Catalog table with the following SQL statement.

```
INSERT INTO OE.Catalog VALUES('1','Oracle Magazine','Oracle Publishing',  
'November December 2013','Engineering as a Service','David A. Kelly');
```

The OE.Catalog table gets created and a row of data gets added as shown in Figure 6-31.

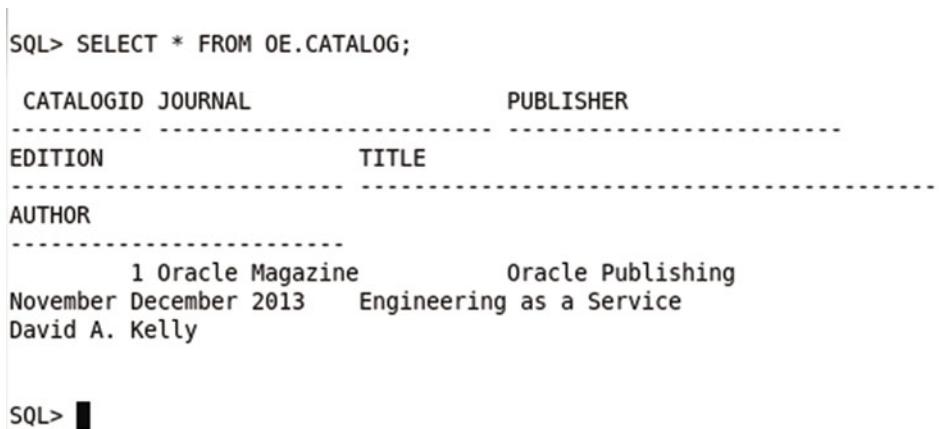
```
SQL> CREATE TABLE OE.Catalog(CatalogId INTEGER PRIMARY KEY,Journal VARCHAR2(25),  
Publisher VARCHAR2(25),Edition VARCHAR2(25),Title VARCHAR2(45),Author VARCHAR2(2  
5));  
  
INSERT INTO OE.Catalog VALUES('1','Oracle Magazine','Oracle Publishing','Novembe  
r December 2013','Engineering as a Service','David A. Kelly');  
  
Table created.  
  
SQL> SQL>  
1 row created.  
  
SQL> ■
```

**Figure 6-31.** Creating a Database Table

Run the following SQL statement to query the OE.CATALOG table.

```
SELECT * FROM OE.CATALOG;
```

The single row of data added gets listed as shown in Figure 6-32.



SQL> SELECT \* FROM OE.CATALOG;

CATALOGID	JOURNAL	PUBLISHER
EDITION	TITLE	
AUTHOR		
1	Oracle Magazine	Oracle Publishing
November December 2013	Engineering as a Service	
David A. Kelly		

SQL> █

**Figure 6-32.** Querying the Database Table

## Exiting the Interactive Shell

Logout from SQL\*Plus command with the “exit” command and exit the “oracle” user with the “exit” command and exit the interactive terminal with the “exit” command also as shown in Figure 6-33.



```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39: ~
oracle@oradb-xwlcv:~$ exit
logout
root@oradb-xwlcv:/# exit
exit
```

**Figure 6-33.** Exiting the Interactive Shell

## Summary

In this chapter we used Kubernetes to create and orchestrate an Oracle Database cluster. We discussed both the imperative and declarative approaches to creating and managing a cluster. Using the imperative method, the kubectl commands may be used directly without a definition file to create a replication controller and a service. With the declarative method definition files for a Pod, replication controller and service have to be used. We demonstrated scaling a cluster. We also used a Docker container to log in to SQL\*Plus and create a database table. In the next chapter we shall discuss using MongoDB with Kubernetes.

## PART III



# NoSQL Database

## CHAPTER 7



# Using MongoDB Database

MongoDB is a flexible schema model NoSQL data store, the most commonly used NoSQL data store. MongoDB is based on the BSON (binary JSON) storage model. Documents are stored in collections. Being a schema-free data store, no two documents need to be alike in terms of the fields in a BSON document. In a large scale cluster several instances of MongoDB could be running and several issues could arise.

- MongoDB instances scheduling
- Scaling the MongoDB Cluster
- Load Balancing
- Providing MongoDB as a Service

While Docker has made it feasible to provide Container as a Service (CaaS) it does not provide by itself any of the features listed previously. In this chapter we discuss using Kubernetes container cluster manager to manage and orchestrate a cluster of Docker containers running MongoDB. This chapter has the following sections.

- Setting the Environment
- Creating a MongoDB Cluster Declaratively
- Creating a MongoDB Cluster Imperatively

## Setting the Environment

The following software is required for this chapter.

- Docker Engine (latest version)
- Kubernetes (version 1.01)
- Kubectl (version 1.01)
- Docker image for MongoDB (latest version)

Install the required software on an Amazon EC2 instance running Ubuntu 14; the same AMI is used as in the other chapters. SSH Login to the Ubuntu instance using the Public IP Address, which would be different for different users.

```
ssh -i "docker.pem" ubuntu@52.91.190.195
```

The Ubuntu instance gets logged into as shown in Figure 7-1.

```

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39: ~
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
[root@localhost ~]# ssh -i "docker.pem" ubuntu@52.91.190.195
The authenticity of host '52.91.190.195 (52.91.190.195)' can't be established.
RSA key fingerprint is 35:40:5c:41:4b:49:63:44:7e:ce:8c:7c:e7:60:0f:87.
Are you sure you want to continue connecting (yes/no)? yes
Warning: Permanently added '52.91.190.195' (RSA) to the list of known hosts.
Welcome to Ubuntu 14.04.2 LTS (GNU/Linux 3.13.0-73-generic x86_64)

 * Documentation:  https://help.ubuntu.com/

 System information as of Sat Dec 19 13:55:12 UTC 2015

 System load: 0.0          Memory usage: 5%    Processes:      81
 Usage of /: 16.6% of 7.74GB Swap usage:  0%    Users logged in: 0

 Graph this data and manage this system at:
 https://landscape.canonical.com/

 Get cloud support with Ubuntu Advantage Cloud Guest:
 http://www.ubuntu.com/business/services/cloud

Last login: Fri Dec 18 19:51:11 2015 from d108-180-43-187.bchsia.telus.net
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ sudo service docker start
start: Job is already running: docker
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ █

```

**Figure 7-1.** Logging into Ubuntu Instance on Amazon EC2

The procedure to install is discussed in chapter 1. To verify that Docker is running run the following command.

```
sudo service docker start
```

Docker should be listed as running as shown in Figure 7-2.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ sudo service docker start
start: Job is already running: docker
```

**Figure 7-2.** Starting Docker

List the Pods with the following command.

```
kubectl get pods
```

And list the nodes with the following command.

```
kubectl get nodes
```

The Kubernetes Pod gets listed and the node also gets listed as shown in Figure 7-3.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1   3/3     Running   0          3m
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl get nodes
NAME         LABELS           STATUS
127.0.0.1   kubernetes.io/hostname=127.0.0.1   Ready
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ █
```

*Figure 7-3. Listing Kubernetes Pod and the single Node*

To list the services run the following command.

```
kubectl get services
```

The “kubernetes” service gets listed as shown in Figure 7-4.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl get services
NAME        LABELS           SELECTOR   IP(S)      PORT(S)
T(S)
kubernetes   component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes   <none>     10.0.0.1   443/TCP
/ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ █
```

*Figure 7-4. Listing the Kubernetes Service*

## Creating a MongoDB Cluster Declaratively

In the following subsections we shall create a Kubernetes service and replication controller for a MongoDB cluster. We shall scale the cluster and also demonstrate features such as using a volume and a host port. We shall create a MongoDB collection and add documents to the collection in a Mongo shell running in a Docker container tty (interactive terminal or shell).

### Creating a Service

Create a service definition file `mongo-service.yaml`. Add the following (Table 7-1) field mappings in the definition file.

**Table 7-1.** Service Definition File mongo-service.yaml File Fields

Field	Value	Description
apiVersion	v1	The API version.
kind	Service	Specifies the definition file to be a service.
metadata		The service metadata.
metadata->labels	name: mongo	
metadata->name	mongo	A label mapping. A label may be added multiple times and does not generate an error and has no additional significance.
spec		The service specification.
spec->ports		The port/s on which the service is exposed.
spec->ports->port	27017	The port on which the service is hosted.
spec->ports->targetPort	27017	The port that an incoming port is mapped to. The targetPort field is optional and defaults to the same value as the port field. The targetPort could be useful if the service is to evolve without breaking clients' settings. For example, the targetPort could be set to a string port name of a back-end Pod, which stays fixed. And the actual port number the back-end Pod exposes could be varied without affecting the clients' settings.
selector	name: mongo	The service selector used to select Pods. Pods with label expression the same as the selector are managed by the service.

Copy the following listing to the `mongo-service.yaml`.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Service
metadata:
  labels:
    name: mongo
  name: mongo
spec:
  ports:
    - port: 27017
      targetPort: 27017
  selector:
    name: mongo
```

The vi editor could be used to create the `mongo-service.yaml` file and saved using the `:wq` command as shown in Figure 7-5.

The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39: ~". Inside the terminal, a vi editor is open displaying a YAML configuration file for a Kubernetes Service. The file defines a service named "mongo" with port 27017, targeting the "mongo" selector. The file ends with a command ":wq" in the bottom right corner of the editor.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Service
metadata:
  labels:
    name: mongo
  name: mongo
spec:
  ports:
    - port: 27017
      targetPort: 27017
  selector:
    name: mongo

:wq
```

**Figure 7-5.** Service Definition File in vi Editor

The default service type is `ClusterIp`, which uses a cluster-internal IP only. The type could be set to `LoadBalancer` as shown in Figure 7-6 to also expose the service on each of the nodes in the cluster and also requests the cloud provider to provision a load balancer.

The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39: ~". The window contains the following YAML code:

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Service
metadata:
  labels:
    name: mongo
  name: mongo
spec:
  ports:
    - port: 27017
      targetPort: 27017
  selector:
    name: mongo
  type: LoadBalancer
```

The terminal prompt at the bottom is ":wq".

**Figure 7-6.** Setting the Service Type

To create the service from the definition file run the following command.

```
kubectl create -f mongo-service.yaml
```

List the services with the following command.

```
kubectl get services
```

The mongo service gets listed as shown in Figure 7-7.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl create -f mongo-service.yaml
services/mongo
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl get services
NAME      LABELS                               SELECTOR   IP(S)
PORT(S)
kubernetes  component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes <none>     10.0.0.1
443/TCP
mongo       name=mongo                         name=mongo  10.0.0.161
27017/TCP
```

**Figure 7-7.** Creating the Service from the Definition File

## Creating a Replication Controller

In this section we shall create a replication controller. Create a definition file `mongo-rc.yaml`. Add the following (Table 7-2) field mappings to the definition file.

**Table 7-2.** Replication Controller Definition File Fields

Field	Value	Description
apiVersion	v1	The API version.
kind	ReplicationController	Specifies the definition file to be for a replication controller.
metadata		Specifies the metadata for the replication controller.
metadata -> labels	name: mongo	The labels mapping for the replication controller.
metadata -> name	mongo-rc	The replication controller name.
spec		The replication controller specification.
spec->replicas	2	The number of replicas to keep at all times.
spec->template		The template for a Pod.
spec->template->metadata		The metadata for the Pod.
spec->template->metadata->labels		The Pod labels. The labels are used by the replication controller and service to select Pods to manage. The selector in a replication controller and a service must match a Pod label for the replication controller and Service to managed the Pod.
spec->template->metadata->labels->name	mongo	A Pod label.
spec->template->spec		The specification for the Pod.

(continued)

**Table 7-2.** (continued)

Field	Value	Description
spec->template->spec->containers		The containers in a Pod. Multiple containers could be specified but we have configured only one container.
spec->template->spec->containers->image	mongo	The container for “mongo” Docker image.
spec->template->spec->containers->name	mongo	The container name.
spec->template->spec->containers->ports		The container ports to reserve.
spec->template->spec->containers->ports->name	mongo	The port name.
spec->template->spec->containers->ports->containerPort	27017	The container port number.

Each of the Pod, Service, and Replication Controllers are defined in a separate YAML mapping file. The `mongo-rc.yaml` is listed.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: ReplicationController
metadata:
  labels:
    name: mongo
    name: mongo-rc
spec:
  replicas: 2
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        name: mongo
    spec:
      containers:
        -
          image: mongo
          name: mongo
          ports:
            -
              containerPort: 27017
              name: mongo
```

The `mongo-rc.yaml` file may be edited in a vi editor and saved with :wq as shown in Figure 7-8.

```

File Edit View Search Terminal Help
apiVersion: v1
kind: ReplicationController
metadata:
  labels:
    name: mongo
  name: mongo-rc
spec:
  replicas: 2
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        name: mongo
    spec:
      containers:
        - image: mongo
          name: mongo
        ports:
          - name: mongo
            containerPort: 27017

:wq

```

**Figure 7-8.** Replication Controller Definition File

To create a replication controller from the definition file, run the following command.

```
kubectl create -f mongo-rc.yaml
```

The `mongo-rc` replication controller gets created as shown in Figure 7-9.

```
|ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl create -f mongo-rc.yaml
|replicationcontrollers/mongo-rc
```

**Figure 7-9.** Creating the Replication Controller

Run the following command to list the replication controllers.

```
kubectl get rc
```

The mongo-rc replication controller gets listed as shown in Figure 7-10.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl create -f mongo-rc.yaml
replicationcontrollers/mongo-rc
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl get rc
CONTROLLER   CONTAINER(S)   IMAGE(S)   SELECTOR   REPLICAS
mongo-rc      mongo        mongo       name=mongo  2
```

**Figure 7-10.** Creating and listing Replication Controllers

## Creating a Volume

Kubernetes supports volumes. A *volume* is a directory in a Pod that is accessible to containers in the Pod that provide a volume mount for the volume. Volumes persist as long as the Pod containing the volumes exists. Volumes are useful for the following purposes.

- Persist data across container crash. When a container that mounts a volume crashes, the data in the volume is not deleted as the volume is not on the container but is on the Pod.
- Data in a volume may be shared by multiple containers that mount the volume.

A volume in a Pod is specified with the spec->volume field. A container mounts a volume with the spec.containers.volumeMounts field. Several types of volumes are supported, some of which are discussed in Table 7-3.

**Table 7-3.** Types of Volumes

Volume Type	Description
emptyDir	An empty directory in the Pod that could be used to keep some files used by one or more containers. An empty directory could also be used for checkpointing.
hostPath	Mounts a directory from the host node into the Pod.
gcePersistentDisk	Mounts a Google Compute Engine Persistent disk into a Pod.
awsElasticBlockStore	Mounts an Amazon Web Services EBS volume into a Pod.
gitRepo	Mounts a git repo into the pod.
flocker	Mounts a Flocker dataset into a pod.
nfs	Mounts a Network File System into a Pod.

Next, we shall add a volume of type emptyDir to the replication controller definition file mongo-rc.yaml. A modified version of mongo-rc.yaml is listed.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: ReplicationController
metadata:
  labels:
    name: mongo
    name: mongo-rc
```

```

spec:
  replicas: 2
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        name: mongo
    spec:
      containers:
        -
          image: mongo
          name: mongo
          ports:
            -
              containerPort: 27017
              name: mongo
            volumeMounts:
              -
                mountPath: /mongo/data/db
                name: mongo-storage
      volumes:
        -
          emptyDir: {}
          name: mongo-storage

```

The preceding definition file includes the following volume configuration for a volume named `mongo-storage` of type `emptyDir`.

```

volumes:
  -
    emptyDir: {}
    name: mongo-storage

```

The volume exists in the Pod and individual containers in the Pod may mount the volume using field `spec->containers->volumeMounts`. The modified `mongo-rc.yaml` includes the following volume mount for the `mongo` container.

```

volumeMounts:
  -
    mountPath: /mongo/data/db
    name: mongo-storage

```

The preceding configuration adds a volume mount for the `mongo-storage` volume at mount path or directory path `/mongo/data/db` in the container. Within a container the volume may be accessed at `/mongo/data/db`. For example, in an interactive terminal for a container change directory (`cd`) to the `/mongo/data/db` directory.

```
cd /mongo/data/db
```

List the files and directories in the in the `/mongo/data/db` directory.

```
ls -l
```

The directory is empty as it is supposed to be initially as shown in Figure 7-11.

```
root@mongo-rc-03tet:/# cd /mongo/data/db
root@mongo-rc-03tet:/mongo/data/db# ls -l
total 0
```

**Figure 7-11.** Empty Directory

The volume should not be confused with the data directory for the MongoDB server. The data directory is created at /data/db by default and is created in each Docker container running a MongoDB server instance. The /mongo/data/db is common to all Docker containers while the /data/db exists in each Docker container.

## Listing the Logs

After having started a replication controller, list the Pods with the following command.

```
kubectl get pods
```

The two Pods get listed as shown in Figure 7-12.

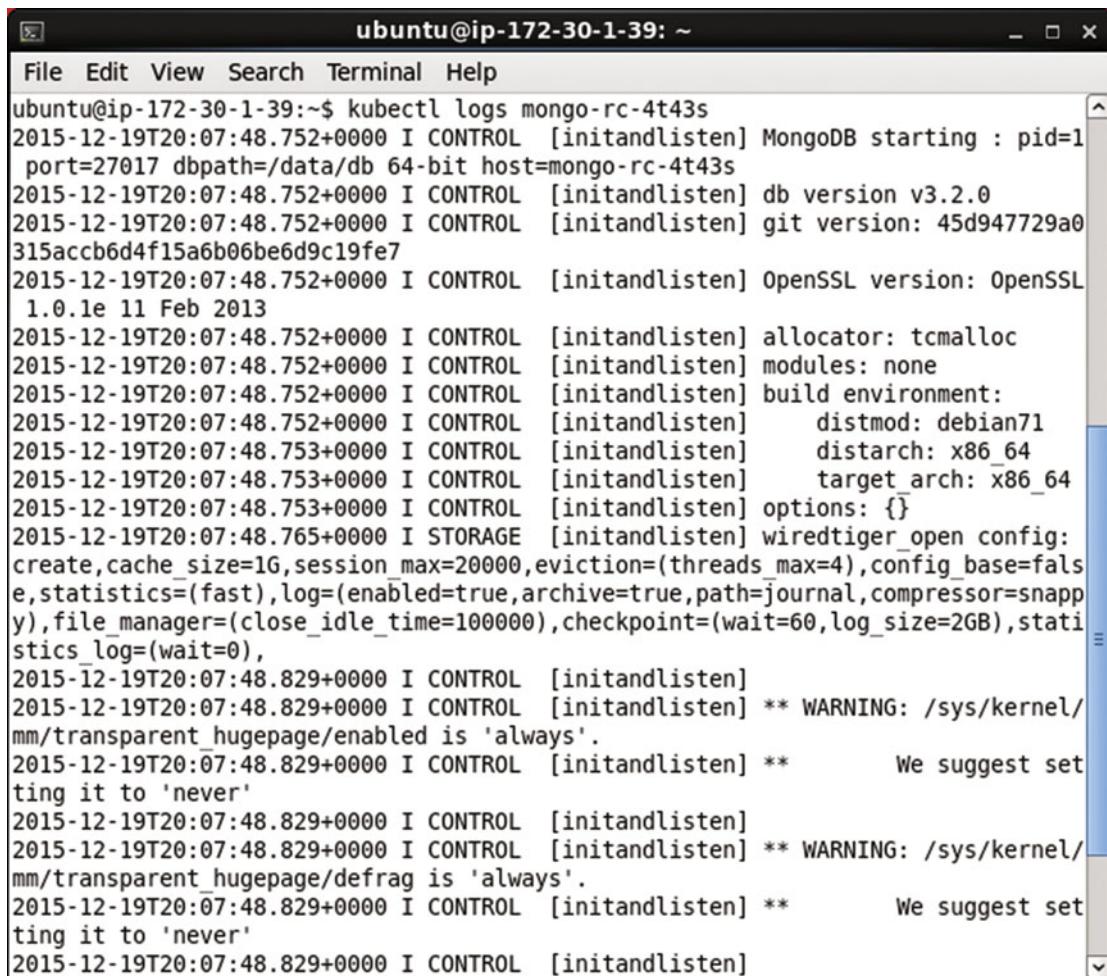
```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1   3/3     Running   0          7m
mongo-rc-4t43s      1/1     Running   0          22s
mongo-rc-bio0b       1/1     Running   0          22s
```

**Figure 7-12.** Listing the Pods

The logs for a Pod, for example, the mongo-rc-4t43s Pod, may be listed with the following command.

```
kubectl logs mongo-rc-4t43s
```

The Pod logs show the MongoDB server starting as shown in Figure 7-13.

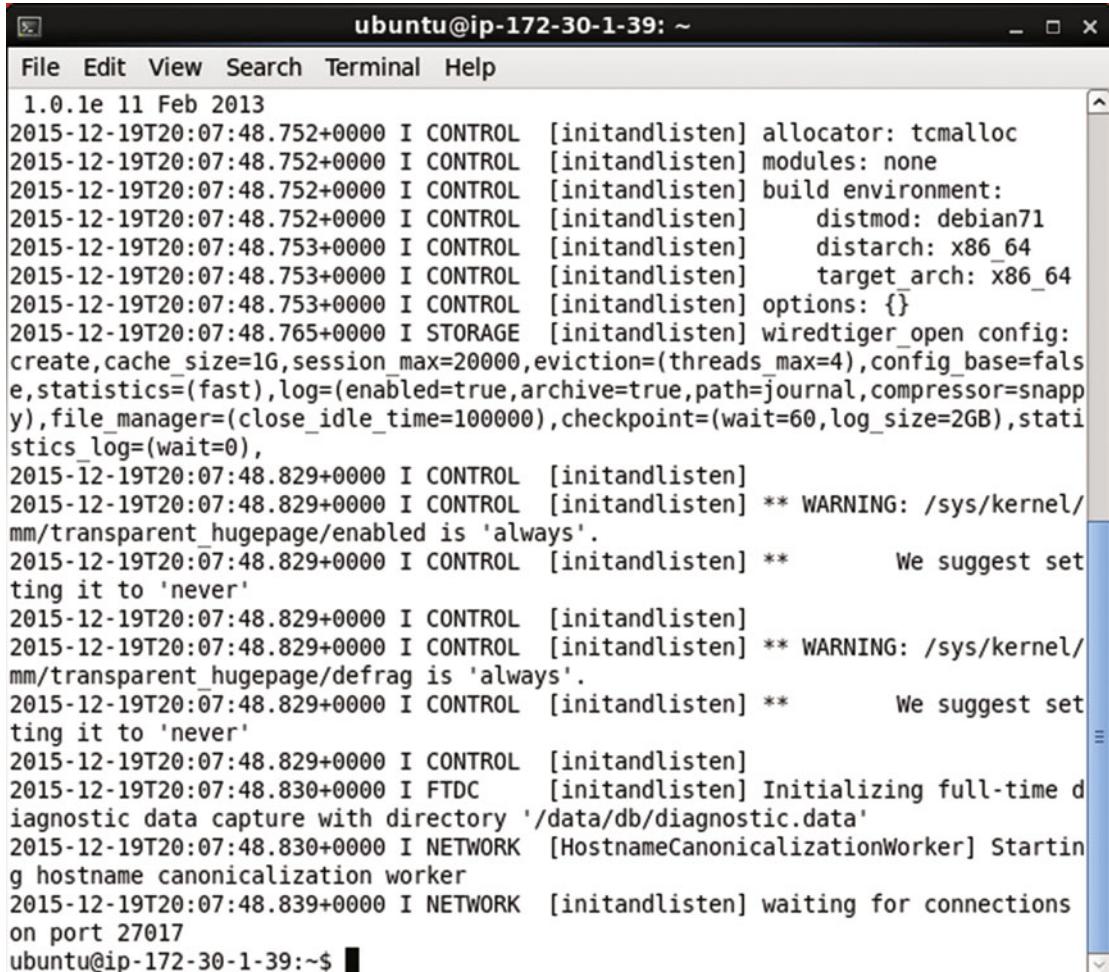


A screenshot of a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39: ~". The window displays the output of the command "kubectl logs mongo-rc-4t43s". The logs show the MongoDB server starting up, including details about the version (v3.2.0), git commit (45d947729a0315accb6d4f15a6b06be6d9c19fe7), and OpenSSL version (1.0.1e 11 Feb 2013). It also shows the configuration of the storage system, including the creation of a journal and the use of transparent hugepages. There are several warning messages about the configuration of /sys/kernel/mm/transparent\_hugepage/defrag being set to 'always'.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl logs mongo-rc-4t43s
2015-12-19T20:07:48.752+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] MongoDB starting : pid=1
port=27017 dbpath=/data/db 64-bit host=mongo-rc-4t43s
2015-12-19T20:07:48.752+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] db version v3.2.0
2015-12-19T20:07:48.752+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] git version: 45d947729a0
315accb6d4f15a6b06be6d9c19fe7
2015-12-19T20:07:48.752+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] OpenSSL version: OpenSSL
1.0.1e 11 Feb 2013
2015-12-19T20:07:48.752+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] allocator: tcmalloc
2015-12-19T20:07:48.752+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] modules: none
2015-12-19T20:07:48.752+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] build environment:
2015-12-19T20:07:48.752+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] distmod: debian71
2015-12-19T20:07:48.753+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] distarch: x86_64
2015-12-19T20:07:48.753+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] target_arch: x86_64
2015-12-19T20:07:48.753+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] options: {}
2015-12-19T20:07:48.765+0000 I STORAGE [initandlisten] wiredtiger_open config:
create,cache_size=1G,session_max=20000,eviction=(threads_max=4),config_base=fals
e,statistics=(fast),log=(enabled=true,archive=true,path=journal,compressor=snappy),
file_manager=(close_idle_time=100000),checkpoint=(wait=60,log_size=2GB),stati
stics_log=(wait=0),
2015-12-19T20:07:48.829+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten]
2015-12-19T20:07:48.829+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] ** WARNING: /sys/kernel/
mm/transparent_hugepage/enabled is 'always'.
2015-12-19T20:07:48.829+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] **           We suggest set
ting it to 'never'
2015-12-19T20:07:48.829+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten]
2015-12-19T20:07:48.829+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] ** WARNING: /sys/kernel/
mm/transparent_hugepage/defrag is 'always'.
2015-12-19T20:07:48.829+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] **           We suggest set
ting it to 'never'
2015-12-19T20:07:48.829+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten]
```

Figure 7-13. Listing the Pod Logs

When the MongoDB server gets started, the message “waiting for connections on port 27017” gets output as shown in Figure 7-14.



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39: ~". The window contains the following text:

```

1.0.1e 11 Feb 2013
2015-12-19T20:07:48.752+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] allocator: tcmalloc
2015-12-19T20:07:48.752+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] modules: none
2015-12-19T20:07:48.752+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] build environment:
2015-12-19T20:07:48.752+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] distmod: debian71
2015-12-19T20:07:48.753+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] distarch: x86_64
2015-12-19T20:07:48.753+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] target_arch: x86_64
2015-12-19T20:07:48.753+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] options: {}
2015-12-19T20:07:48.765+0000 I STORAGE [initandlisten] wiredtiger_open config:
create,cache_size=1G,session_max=20000,eviction=(threads_max=4),config_base=false,statistics=(fast),log=(enabled=true,archive=true,path=journal,compressor=snappy),file_manager=(close_idle_time=100000),checkpoint=(wait=60,log_size=2GB),statistics_log=(wait=0),
2015-12-19T20:07:48.829+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten]
2015-12-19T20:07:48.829+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] ** WARNING: /sys/kernel/mm/transparent_hugepage/enabled is 'always'.
2015-12-19T20:07:48.829+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] ** We suggest setting it to 'never'
2015-12-19T20:07:48.829+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten]
2015-12-19T20:07:48.829+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] ** WARNING: /sys/kernel/mm/transparent_hugepage/defrag is 'always'.
2015-12-19T20:07:48.829+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] ** We suggest setting it to 'never'
2015-12-19T20:07:48.829+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten]
2015-12-19T20:07:48.830+0000 I FTDC [initandlisten] Initializing full-time diagnostic data capture with directory '/data/db/diagnostic.data'
2015-12-19T20:07:48.830+0000 I NETWORK [HostnameCanonicalizationWorker] Starting hostname canonicalization worker
2015-12-19T20:07:48.839+0000 I NETWORK [initandlisten] waiting for connections on port 27017
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ 
```

**Figure 7-14.** MongoDB Running on Port 27017

## Starting the Interactive Shell for Docker Container

In this section we shall start an interactive terminal or bash shell for MongoDB server for which we need the container id of a Docker container running a MongoDB server. List the Docker containers.

```
sudo docker ps
```

Copy the container id for a container with image as “mongo” as shown in Figure 7-15.

CONTAINER ID	IMAGE	CREATED	STATUS	PORTS	COMMAND	NAMES
00c829e0a89d	mongo	"About a minute ago"	"Up About a minute"		"/entrypoint.sh"	k8s_mongo.
47490b36_mongo-rc-o3tet_default_e9b63cea-a692-11e5-b9c6-12b7ac747519_a65fe4ab	mongo	"About a minute ago"	"Up About a minute"			
8e4cfcc50bb6f	mongo	"About a minute ago"	"Up About a minute"		"/entrypoint.sh"	k8s_mongo.
47490b36_mongo-rc-ukhpkq_default_e9b5fc3d-a692-11e5-b9c6-12b7ac747519_144f922e	gcr.io/google_containers/pause:0.8.0	"About a minute ago"	"Up About a minute"		"/pause"	k8s_POD.32
9f2ea8ac06b3	gcr.io/google_containers/pause:0.8.0	"About a minute ago"	"Up About a minute"			
0eb0a_mongo-rc-o3tet_default_e9b63cea-a692-11e5-b9c6-12b7ac747519_581110c8	gcr.io/google_containers/pause:0.8.0	"About a minute ago"	"Up About a minute"			
7b37b03b2e1e	gcr.io/google_containers/pause:0.8.0	"About a minute ago"	"Up About a minute"			
0eb0a_mongo-rc-ukhpkq_default_e9b5fc3d-a692-11e5-b9c6-12b7ac747519_f8ca1227	gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1	"12 minutes ago"	"Up 12 minutes"		"/hyperkube proxy --m"	admiring_lbattani
324efe5d3e96	gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1	"12 minutes ago"	"Up 12 minutes"			
d9d110a5fd03	gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1	"12 minutes ago"	"Up 12 minutes"		"/hyperkube scheduler"	k8s_scheduler.2744e742_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c4a_14416e0b
318acd9de857	gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1	"12 minutes ago"	"Up 12 minutes"		"/hyperkube apiserver"	k8s_apiserver.cfb70250_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c4a_2018cad7
67956b071d33	gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1	"12 minutes ago"	"Up 12 minutes"		"/hyperkube controller-manager.1598ee5c_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c4a_d2b75790	k8s_controller-manager.1598ee5c_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c4a_d2b75790

**Figure 7-15.** Copying Docker Container ID

Because the “mongo” Docker image is based on the “debian” Docker image as specified in the FROM instruction, we are able to start a bash shell to interact with the MongoDB server running in a Docker container based on the “mongo” image. Start an interactive bash shell using the following command.

```
sudo docker exec -it 00c829e0a89d bash
```

An interactive shell gets started as shown in Figure 7-16.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ sudo docker exec -it 00c829e0a89d bash
root@mongo-rc-o3tet:/#
```

**Figure 7-16.** Starting an Interactive Shell

## Starting a Mongo Shell

Start the Mongo shell with the following command.

```
mongo
```

Mongo shell gets started as shown in Figure 7-17.

> █

**Figure 7-17.** Mongo Shell

## Creating a Database

List the databases with the following command from the Mongo shell.

```
show dbs
```

A database gets created implicitly when a database is used or set. For example, set the database to use as `mongodb`, which is not listed with `show dbs` and does not exist yet.

```
use mongodb
```

But, setting the database to use as `mongodb` does not create the database `mongodb` till the database is used. Run the following command to list the databases.

```
show dbs
```

The `mongodb` database does not get listed as shown in Figure 7-19. To create the `mongodb` database, invoke some operation on the database such as create a collection called `catalog` with the following command.

```
db.createCollection("catalog")
```

Subsequently list the databases again.

```
show dbs
```

The `mongodb` database gets listed as shown in Figure 7-18. To list the collections run the following command.

```
show collections
```

The `catalog` collection gets listed.

```
> show dbs
local 0.000GB
> use mongodb
switched to db mongodb
> show dbs
local 0.000GB
> db.createCollection("catalog")
{ "ok" : 1 }
> show dbs
local 0.000GB
mongodb 0.000GB
> show collections
catalog
```

**Figure 7-18.** Creating and Listing a MongoDB Database

## Creating a Collection

The `catalog` collection was created using the `db.createCollection` method in the previous section. As another example, create a capped collection called `catalog_capped` using the following command: a capped collection is a fixed size collection that supports high throughput operations to add and get documents based on insertion order.

```
db.createCollection("catalog_capped", {capped: true, autoIndexId: true, size: 64 * 1024,
max: 1000} )
```

A capped collection gets added as shown in Figure 7-19. Initially the collection is empty. Get the documents in the `catalog` collection with the following command.

```
db.catalog.count()
```

The document count is listed as 0 as we have not yet added any documents.

```
> db.createCollection("catalog_capped", {capped: true, autoIndexId: true, size: 64 * 1024, max: 1000} )
{
    "note" : "the autoIndexId option is deprecated and will be removed in a future release",
    "ok" : 1
}
> db.catalog.count()
0
```

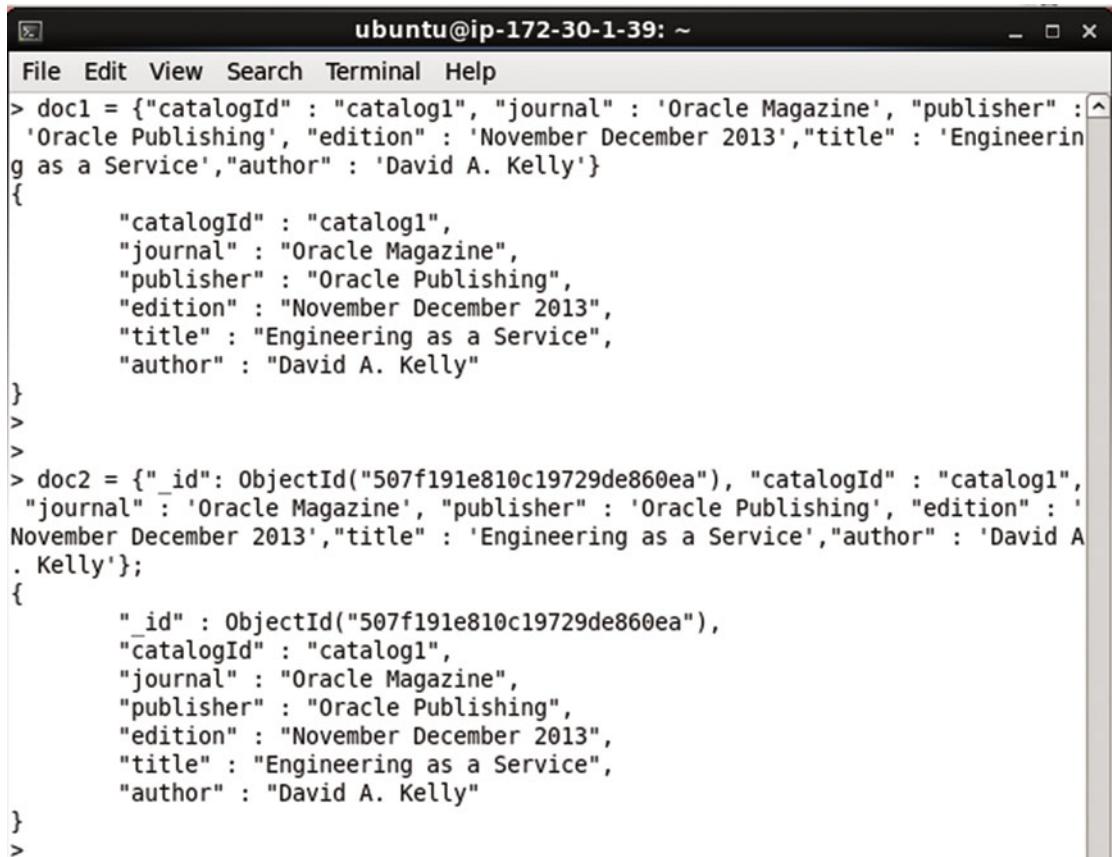
**Figure 7-19.** Creating a Capped Collection

## Adding Documents

In this section we shall add documents to the catalog collection. Specify the JSON for the documents to be added. The `_id` field is required in each document stored in MongoDB. The `_id` field may be added explicitly as in the `doc2` document. If not provided in the document JSON the `_id` is generated automatically.

```
doc1 = {"catalogId" : "catalog1", "journal" : 'Oracle Magazine', "publisher" : 'Oracle Publishing', "edition" : 'November December 2013', "title" : 'Engineering as a Service', "author" : 'David A. Kelly'}
doc2 = {"_id": ObjectId("507f191e810c19729de860ea"), "catalogId" : "catalog1", "journal" : 'Oracle Magazine', "publisher" : 'Oracle Publishing', "edition" : 'November December 2013', "title" : 'Engineering as a Service', "author" : 'David A. Kelly'};
```

The `doc1` and `doc2` are shown in Figure 7-20.



```

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39: ~
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
> doc1 = {"catalogId" : "catalog1", "journal" : 'Oracle Magazine', "publisher" : 'Oracle Publishing', "edition" : 'November December 2013', "title" : 'Engineering as a Service', "author" : 'David A. Kelly'}
{
    "catalogId" : "catalog1",
    "journal" : "Oracle Magazine",
    "publisher" : "Oracle Publishing",
    "edition" : "November December 2013",
    "title" : "Engineering as a Service",
    "author" : "David A. Kelly"
}
>
>
> doc2 = {"_id": ObjectId("507f191e810c19729de860ea"), "catalogId" : "catalog1", "journal" : 'Oracle Magazine', "publisher" : 'Oracle Publishing', "edition" : 'November December 2013', "title" : 'Engineering as a Service', "author" : 'David A. Kelly'};
{
    "_id" : ObjectId("507f191e810c19729de860ea"),
    "catalogId" : "catalog1",
    "journal" : "Oracle Magazine",
    "publisher" : "Oracle Publishing",
    "edition" : "November December 2013",
    "title" : "Engineering as a Service",
    "author" : "David A. Kelly"
}
>

```

**Figure 7-20.** Documents doc1 and doc2

To add the documents to the catalog collection run the following command.

```
db.catalog.insert([doc1, doc2], { writeConcern: { w: "majority", wtimeout: 5000 }, ordered:true })
```

As indicated by the nInserted field in the JSON result in Figure 7-21 documents get added.

```
>
> db.catalog.insert([doc1, doc2], { writeConcern: { w: "majority", wtimeout: 5000 }, ordered:true })
BulkWriteResult({
    "writeErrors" : [ ],
    "writeConcernErrors" : [ ],
    "nInserted" : 2,
    "nUpserted" : 0,
    "nMatched" : 0,
    "nModified" : 0,
    "nRemoved" : 0,
    "upserted" : [ ]
})
>
```

**Figure 7-21.** Adding Documents

## Finding Documents

To query the catalog invoke the `find()` method. To list all documents in the catalog collection run the following command.

```
db.catalog.find()
```

The two documents added get listed as shown in Figure 7-22. For one of the documents the `_id` field is generated automatically.

```
> db.catalog.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("5675c5db96172b52e58e08b6"), "catalogId" : "catalog1", "journal" : "Oracle Magazine", "publisher" : "Oracle Publishing", "edition" : "November December 2013", "title" : "Engineering as a Service", "author" : "David A. Kelly" }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("507f191e810c19729de860ea"), "catalogId" : "catalog1", "journal" : "Oracle Magazine", "publisher" : "Oracle Publishing", "edition" : "November December 2013", "title" : "Engineering as a Service", "author" : "David A. Kelly" }
> █
```

**Figure 7-22.** Finding Documents

## Finding a Single Document

To find a single document from the catalog collection run the following command to invoke the `findOne()` method.

```
db.catalog.findOne()
```

A single document gets listed as shown in Figure 7-23.

```
> db.catalog.findOne()
{
    "_id" : ObjectId("5675c5db96172b52e58e08b6"),
    "catalogId" : "catalog1",
    "journal" : "Oracle Magazine",
    "publisher" : "Oracle Publishing",
    "edition" : "November December 2013",
    "title" : "Engineering as a Service",
    "author" : "David A. Kelly"
}
>
```

**Figure 7-23.** Finding a Single Document

## Finding Specific Fields in a Single Document

To get only specific fields, `edition`, `title`, and `author`, for example, from a single document run the following command.

```
db.catalog.findOne(
    { },
    { edition: 1, title: 1, author: 1 }
)
```

Only the specific fields in a single document get listed as shown in Figure 7-24. The `_id` field always gets listed.

```
> db.catalog.findOne(
...     { },
...     { edition: 1, title: 1, author: 1 }
...
{
    "_id" : ObjectId("5675c5db96172b52e58e08b6"),
    "edition" : "November December 2013",
    "title" : "Engineering as a Service",
    "author" : "David A. Kelly"
}
> █
```

**Figure 7-24.** Finding Selected Fields in a Document

## Dropping a Collection

To drop the catalog collection run the following command.

```
db.catalog.drop()
```

Subsequently list the collections with the following command.

```
show collections
```

The catalog collection does not get listed and only the catalog\_capped collection gets listed as shown in Figure 7-25.

```
>
> db.catalog.drop()
true
> show collections
catalog_capped
> █
```



**Figure 7-25.** Dropping the catalog Collection

## Exiting Mongo Shell and Interactive Shell

To exit the Mongo shell run the following command.

```
exit
```

To exit the interactive terminal run the following command.

```
exit
```

The Mongo shell and the interactive terminal get exited as shown in Figure 7-26.

```
> exit
bye
root@mongo-rc-laqpl:/# exit
exit
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ █
```



**Figure 7-26.** Exiting the Shells

## Scaling the Cluster

To scale the Mongo cluster run the kubectl scale command. For example, the following command scales the cluster to 4 replicas.

```
kubectl scale rc mongo --replicas=4
```

An output of “scaled” as shown in Figure 7-27 scales the cluster to 4 replicas.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl scale rc mongo-rc --replicas=4
scaled
```

**Figure 7-27.** Scaling a Replication Controller

List the Pods after scaling.

```
kubectl get pods
```

The four Pods get listed. Initially some of the Pods could be listed as not in READY (1/1) state. Run the preceding command multiple times to list all pods running and ready as shown in Figure 7-28.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   0          1h
mongo-rc-a26uq      1/1     Running   0          2m
mongo-rc-ja5t6       1/1     Running   0          11s
mongo-rc-rhf2n       0/1     Running   0          11s
mongo-rc-w7qu6       1/1     Running   0          2m
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   0          1h
mongo-rc-a26uq      1/1     Running   0          2m
mongo-rc-ja5t6       1/1     Running   0          14s
mongo-rc-rhf2n       0/1     Running   0          14s
mongo-rc-w7qu6       1/1     Running   0          2m
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   0          1h
mongo-rc-a26uq      1/1     Running   0          3m
mongo-rc-ja5t6       1/1     Running   0          20s
mongo-rc-rhf2n       1/1     Running   0          20s
mongo-rc-w7qu6       1/1     Running   0          3m
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$
```

**Figure 7-28.** Listing the Pods after Scaling

## Deleting the Replication Controller

To delete a replication controller `mongo-rc` run the following command.

```
kubectl delete replicationcontroller mongo-rc
```

All the Pods managed by the replication controller also get deleted. Subsequently run the following command to list the Pods.

```
kubectl get pods
```

The mongo Pods do not get listed as shown in Figure 7-29.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl delete replicationcontroller mongo-rc
replicationcontrollers/mongo-rc
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1   3/3     Running   0          33m
```

*Figure 7-29. Deleting a Replication Controller*

## Deleting the Service

To delete the service called mongo run the following command.

```
kubectl delete service mongo
```

The mongo service does not get listed as shown in Figure 7-30.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl delete service mongo
services/mongo
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl get services
NAME      LABELS                                     SELECTOR   IP(S)      PORT(S)
T(S)
kubernetes   component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes   <none>     10.0.0.1   443
/TCP
```

*Figure 7-30. Deleting the mongo Service*

## Using a Host Port

The container specification within a Pod has the provision to configure a host port. A host port is a container port mapping to the host implying that the specified host port gets reserved for a single container. The hostPort field should be used for a single machine container. Multiple containers of the type in which the hostPort is specified cannot be started because the host port can be reserved only by a single container. Other Pods that do not specify a hostPort field could be run, however, on the same machine on which a container with hostPort field mapping is running. As a variation of the replication controller we used earlier add a hostPort field in the spec->containers->ports field. The modified mongo-rc.yaml is listed.

```
---
apiVersion: v1
kind: ReplicationController
metadata:
  labels:
    name: mongo
    name: mongo-rc
spec:
  replicas: 2
  template:
    metadata:
```

```

labels:
  name: mongo
spec:
  containers:
    -
      image: mongo
      name: mongo
      ports:
        -
          containerPort: 27017
          hostPort: 27017
          name: mongo

```

Run the following command to create a replication controller.

```
kubectl create -f mongo-rc.yaml
```

List the replication controllers with the following command.

```
kubectl get rc
```

The mongo-rc replication controller gets created and listed as shown in Figure 7-31.

```

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl create -f mongo-rc.yaml
replicationcontrollers/mongo-rc
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl get rc
CONTROLLER  CONTAINER(S)  IMAGE(S)  SELECTOR      REPLICAS
mongo-rc     mongo       mongo      name=mongo   2
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ █

```

**Figure 7-31.** Creating a Replication Controller from a Definition File

List the Pods with the following command.

```
kubectl get pods
```

Only one of the two replicas is listed as Running and READY (1/1). Even if the preceding command is run multiple times, only one replica is listed as running as shown in Figure 7-32.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl create -f mongo-rc.yaml
replicationcontrollers/mongo-rc
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl get rc
CONTROLLER   CONTAINER(S)   IMAGE(S)   SELECTOR   REPLICAS
mongo-rc      mongo        mongo      name=mongo  2
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME          READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3    Running   0          7m
mongo-rc-28rwu       0/1    Pending   0          1m
mongo-rc-laqpl       1/1    Running   0          1m
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME          READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3    Running   0          7m
mongo-rc-28rwu       0/1    Pending   0          1m
mongo-rc-laqpl       1/1    Running   0          1m
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME          READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3    Running   0          7m
mongo-rc-28rwu       0/1    Pending   0          1m
mongo-rc-laqpl       1/1    Running   0          1m
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME          READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3    Running   0          7m
mongo-rc-28rwu       0/1    Pending   0          1m
mongo-rc-laqpl       1/1    Running   0          1m
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME          READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3    Running   0          7m
mongo-rc-28rwu       0/1    Pending   0          1m
mongo-rc-laqpl       1/1    Running   0          1m
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$
```

**Figure 7-32.** Listing the Pods after creating a Replication Controller

Scale the MongoDB cluster to 4 replicas with the following command.

```
kubectl scale rc mongo --replicas=4
```

Though the output from the command is “Scaled” and 4 Pods get created but only one Pod is in READY (1/1) state at any particular time as shown in Figure 7-33.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl scale rc mongo-rc --replicas=4
scaled
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   0          29m
mongo-rc-1olyf      0/1     Pending   0          18s
mongo-rc-28rwu       0/1     Pending   0          24m
mongo-rc-laqpl       1/1     Running   0          24m
mongo-rc-yu720       0/1     Pending   0          18s
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   0          30m
mongo-rc-1olyf      0/1     Pending   0          42s
mongo-rc-28rwu       0/1     Pending   0          24m
mongo-rc-laqpl       1/1     Running   0          24m
mongo-rc-yu720       0/1     Pending   0          42s
```

**Figure 7-33.** Scaling the Replication Controller to 4 Replicas

Even if the single running Pod is stopped only one new Pod gets started. To demonstrate, stop the single running Pod.

```
kubectl stop pod mongo-rc-laqpl
```

The Pod gets removed but a replacement Pod gets created to maintain the replication level of 1 as shown in Figure 7-34.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl stop pod mongo-rc-laqpl
pods/mongo-rc-laqpl
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   0          30m
mongo-rc-1olyf      0/1     Pending   0          1m
mongo-rc-28rwu       0/1     Pending   0          25m
mongo-rc-eih4s       0/1     Running   0          12s
mongo-rc-yu720       0/1     Pending   0          1m
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ █
```

**Figure 7-34.** Another Pod gets created when the single running Pod is stopped

List the Pods again after a few seconds and only one Pod gets listed as shown in Figure 7-35.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME          READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   0          31m
mongo-rc-1olyf      0/1     Pending   0          1m
mongo-rc-28rwu       0/1     Pending   0          25m
mongo-rc-eih4s       1/1     Running   0          51s
mongo-rc-yu720       0/1     Pending   0          1m
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ █
```

**Figure 7-35.** Only a single Pod is Running and Ready

Using the hostPort field is not recommended unless a single container machine is to be used or only a single container is required to be mapped to the host port.

## Creating a MongoDB Cluster Imperatively

In the following subsections we shall create a Kubernetes replication controller and service for a MongoDB cluster on the command line using kubectl.

### Creating a Replication Controller

To create a replication controller for the Docker image “mongo” with 2 replicas and port 27017 run the following command.

```
kubectl run mongo --image=mongo --replicas=2 --port=27017
```

The replication controller gets created as shown in Figure 7-36.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl run mongo --image=mongo --replicas=2 --port=27017
CONTROLLER  CONTAINER(S)  IMAGE(S)  SELECTOR  REPLICAS
mongo        mongo        mongo      run=mongo  2
```

**Figure 7-36.** Creating a Replication Controller Imperatively

List the Pods with the following command.

```
kubectl get rc
```

The mongo-rc gets listed as shown in Figure 7-37.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl get rc
CONTROLLER   CONTAINER(S)   IMAGE(S)   SELECTOR   REPLICAS
mongo        mongo          mongo      run=mongo  2
```

**Figure 7-37.** Listing the Replication Controllers

## Listing the Pods

List the Pods with the following command.

```
kubectl get pods
```

The two Pods started for MongoDB get listed as shown in Figure 7-38. Initially the Pods could be listed as not running.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS
RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1   3/3     Running
0          5m
mongo-15n17       0/1     Image: mongo is ready, container is creating
0          10s
mongo-cbjct        0/1     Running
0          10s
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$
```

**Figure 7-38.** Listing the Pods with some of the pods not Running yet

Run the following preceding multiple times if required to list the Pods as running as shown in Figure 7-39.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1   3/3     Running   0          5m
mongo-15n17       1/1     Running   0          29s
mongo-cbjct        1/1     Running   0          29s
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$
```

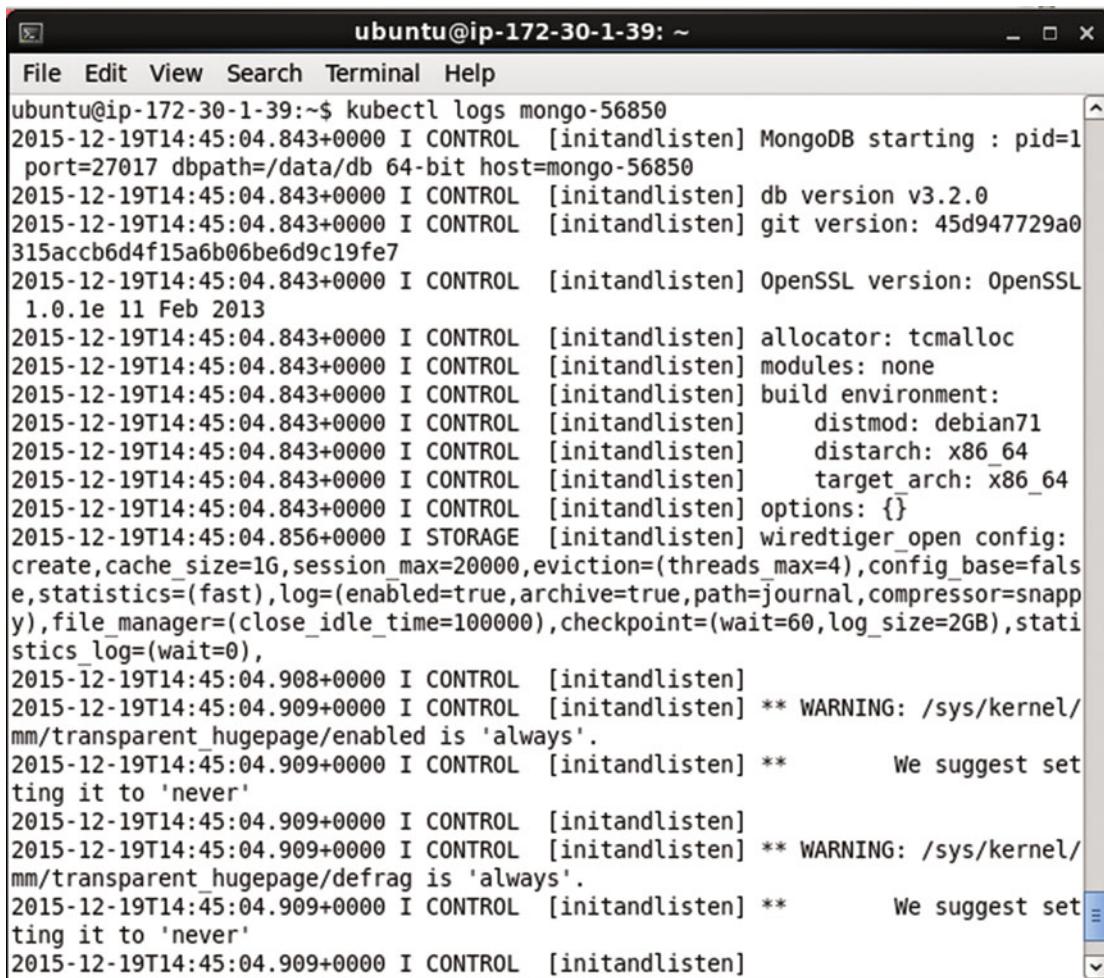
**Figure 7-39.** Listing all the Pods as Running

## Listing the Logs

List the logs for a Pod with the following command. The mongo-56850 is the Pod name.

```
kubectl logs mongo-56850
```

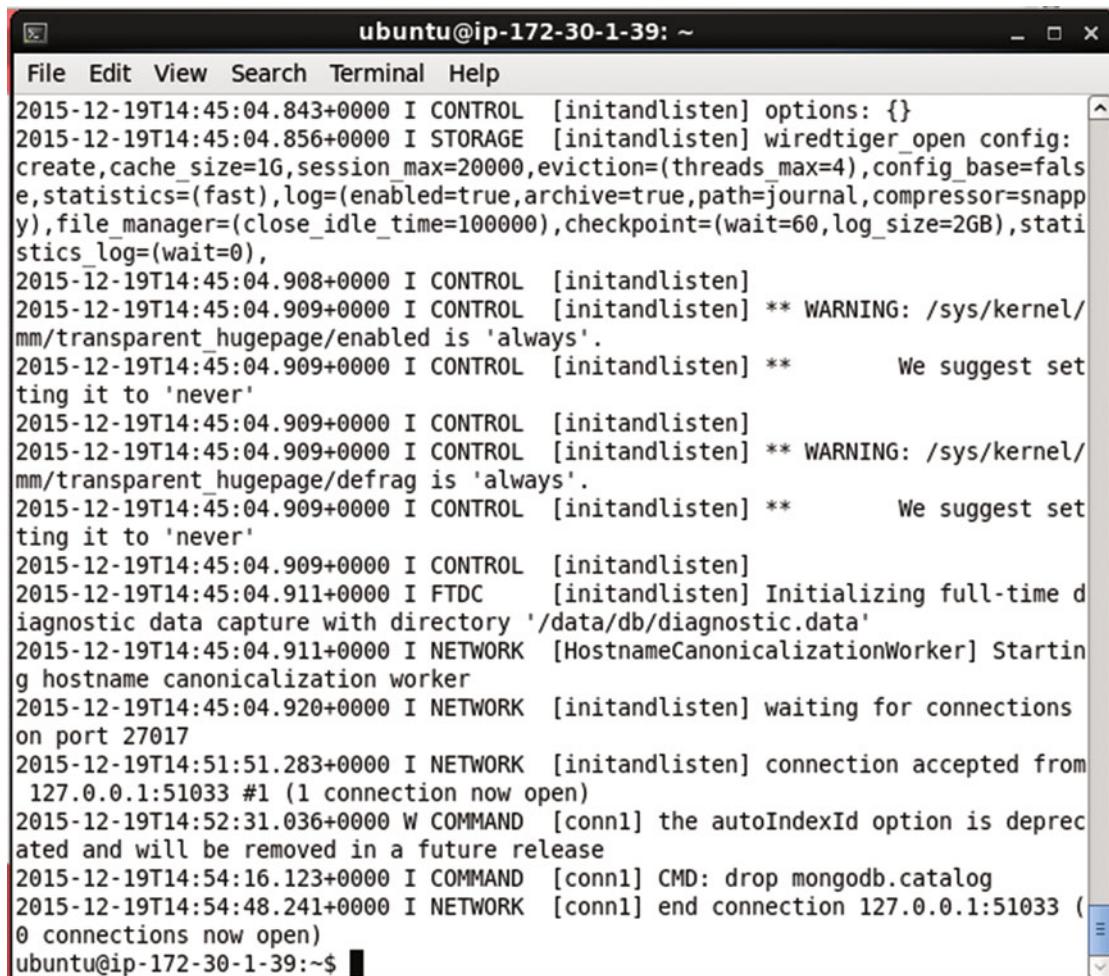
The Pod logs get listed as shown in Figure 7-40.



```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl logs mongo-56850
2015-12-19T14:45:04.843+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] MongoDB starting : pid=1
port=27017 dbpath=/data/db 64-bit host=mongo-56850
2015-12-19T14:45:04.843+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] db version v3.2.0
2015-12-19T14:45:04.843+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] git version: 45d947729a0
315accb6d4f15a6b06be6d9c19fe7
2015-12-19T14:45:04.843+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] OpenSSL version: OpenSSL
1.0.1e 11 Feb 2013
2015-12-19T14:45:04.843+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] allocator: tcmalloc
2015-12-19T14:45:04.843+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] modules: none
2015-12-19T14:45:04.843+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] build environment:
2015-12-19T14:45:04.843+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] distmod: debian71
2015-12-19T14:45:04.843+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] distarch: x86_64
2015-12-19T14:45:04.843+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] target_arch: x86_64
2015-12-19T14:45:04.843+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] options: {}
2015-12-19T14:45:04.856+0000 I STORAGE [initandlisten] wiredtiger_open config:
create,cache_size=1G,session_max=20000,eviction=(threads_max=4),config_base=fals
e,statistics=(fast),log=(enabled=true,archive=true,path=journal,compressor=snappy),
file_manager=(close_idle_time=100000),checkpoint=(wait=60,log_size=2GB),stati
stics_log=(wait=0),
2015-12-19T14:45:04.908+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten]
2015-12-19T14:45:04.909+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] ** WARNING: /sys/kernel/
mm/transparent_hugepage/enabled is 'always'.
2015-12-19T14:45:04.909+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] ** We suggest set
ting it to 'never'
2015-12-19T14:45:04.909+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten]
2015-12-19T14:45:04.909+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] ** WARNING: /sys/kernel/
mm/transparent_hugepage/defrag is 'always'.
2015-12-19T14:45:04.909+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] ** We suggest set
ting it to 'never'
2015-12-19T14:45:04.909+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten]
```

**Figure 7-40.** Listing Pod Logs

MongoDB is listed as started as shown in Figure 7-41. Output on commands run on the server also get output.



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39: ~". The window displays the log output of a MongoDB server. The logs show various initialization messages, including configuration settings like storage options and memory management, and a warning about transparent hugepage settings. It also shows the server starting a diagnostic data capture and a hostname canonicalization worker. A connection from IP 127.0.0.1:51033 was accepted, and a command was received from this connection. The server is currently waiting for connections on port 27017.

```

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39: ~
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
2015-12-19T14:45:04.843+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] options: {}
2015-12-19T14:45:04.856+0000 I STORAGE [initandlisten] wiredtiger_open config:
create,cache_size=1G,session_max=20000,eviction=(threads_max=4),config_base=false,
statistics=(fast),log=(enabled=true,archive=true,path=journal,compressor=snappy),
file_manager=(close_idle_time=100000),checkpoint=(wait=60,log_size=2GB),
statistics_log=(wait=0),
2015-12-19T14:45:04.908+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten]
2015-12-19T14:45:04.909+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] ** WARNING: /sys/kernel/mm/transparent_hugepage/enabled is 'always'.
2015-12-19T14:45:04.909+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] ** We suggest setting it to 'never'
2015-12-19T14:45:04.909+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten]
2015-12-19T14:45:04.909+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] ** WARNING: /sys/kernel/mm/transparent_hugepage/defrag is 'always'.
2015-12-19T14:45:04.909+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten] ** We suggest setting it to 'never'
2015-12-19T14:45:04.909+0000 I CONTROL [initandlisten]
2015-12-19T14:45:04.911+0000 I FTDC [initandlisten] Initializing full-time diagnostic data capture with directory '/data/db/diagnostic.data'
2015-12-19T14:45:04.911+0000 I NETWORK [HostnameCanonicalizationWorker] Starting hostname canonicalization worker
2015-12-19T14:45:04.920+0000 I NETWORK [initandlisten] waiting for connections on port 27017
2015-12-19T14:51:51.283+0000 I NETWORK [initandlisten] connection accepted from 127.0.0.1:51033 #1 (1 connection now open)
2015-12-19T14:52:31.036+0000 W COMMAND [conn1] the autoIndexId option is deprecated and will be removed in a future release
2015-12-19T14:54:16.123+0000 I COMMAND [conn1] CMD: drop mongodb.catalog
2015-12-19T14:54:48.241+0000 I NETWORK [conn1] end connection 127.0.0.1:51033 (0 connections now open)
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ 

```

**Figure 7-41.** Listing MongoDB Server as running and waiting for connections on port 27017

## Creating a Service

To create a service for the mongo replication controller run the following command to expose a service on port 27017 of type LoadBalancer, which was discussed earlier.

```
kubectl expose rc mongo --port=27017 --type=LoadBalancer
```

The mongo service gets created as shown in Figure 7-42.



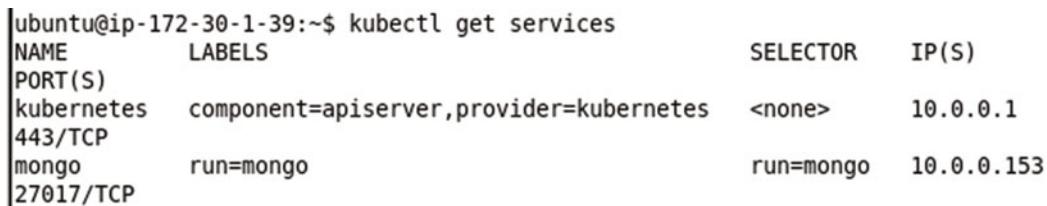
```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl expose rc mongo --port=27017 --type=LoadBalancer
r
NAME      LABELS      SELECTOR      IP(S)      PORT(S)
mongo     run=mongo   run=mongo   27017/TCP
```

**Figure 7-42.** Creating a Service Imperatively

List the services with the following command.

```
kubectl get services
```

The mongo service is listed as running in Figure 7-43.



NAME	LABELS	SELECTOR	IP(S)
kubernetes	component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes	<none>	10.0.0.1
mongo	run=mongo	run=mongo	10.0.0.153
27017/TCP			

**Figure 7-43.** Listing the Services including the mongo Service

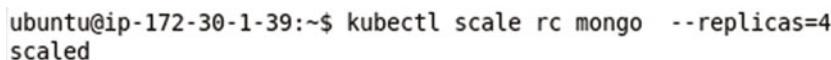
An interactive terminal and a Mongo shell may get started to create a MongoDB database and collection to add and query documents in the collection as discussed when creating a MongoDB cluster declaratively.

## Scaling the Cluster

To scale the cluster to 4 replicas, for example, run the following command.

```
kubectl scale rc mongo --replicas=4
```

An output of “scaled” indicates that the cluster has been scaled as shown in Figure 7-44.



```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl scale rc mongo --replicas=4
scaled
```

**Figure 7-44.** Scaling the Cluster created Imperatively

Subsequently get the Pods.

```
kubectl get pods
```

Four pods get listed as shown in Figure 7-45. Initially some of the Pods could be shown as not running or ready.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   0          50m
mongo-56850      1/1     Running   0          10m
mongo-j5amq       1/1     Running   0          10m
mongo-kygrc        1/1     Running   0          15s
mongo-nc2dh       0/1     Running   0          15s
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   0          50m
mongo-56850      1/1     Running   0          11m
mongo-j5amq       1/1     Running   0          11m
mongo-kygrc        1/1     Running   0          23s
mongo-nc2dh       1/1     Running   0          23s
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$
```

**Figure 7-45.** Listing Pods after Scaling

To describe the mongo service run the following command.

```
kubectl describe svc mongo
```

The service description includes the service label, selector in addition to the service endpoints, one for each of the four pods as shown in Figure 7-46.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl describe svc mongo
Name:           mongo
Namespace:      default
Labels:         run=mongo
Selector:       run=mongo
Type:          LoadBalancer
IP:            10.0.0.153
Port:          <unnamed>    27017/TCP
NodePort:       <unnamed>    30092/TCP
Endpoints:     172.17.0.2:27017,172.17.0.3:27017,172.17.0.4:27017 + 1 more...
Session Affinity: None
No events.
```

**Figure 7-46.** Describing the Service mongo after Scaling

## Deleting the Service and Replication Controller

The `mongo` service and the `mongo` replication controller may be deleted with the following commands.

```
kubectl delete service mongo  
kubectl delete rc mongo
```

The “`mongo`” service and the “`mongo`” replication controller get deleted as shown in Figure 7-47. Deleting one does not delete the other; the decoupling of the replication controller from the service is a feature suitable to evolve one without having to modify the other.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl delete service mongo  
services/mongo  
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl delete rc mongo  
replicationcontrollers/mongo  
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ █
```

**Figure 7-47.** Deleting the Service and the Replication Controller

## Summary

In this chapter we used the Kubernetes cluster manager to create and orchestrate a MongoDB cluster. We created a replication controller and a service both imperatively and declaratively. We also demonstrated scaling a cluster. We introduced two other features of Kubernetes replication controllers: volumes and host port. This chapter is about using Kubernetes with MongoDB and the emphasis is less on MongoDB; but if MongoDB is to be explored in more detail, refer to the Apress book *Pro MongoDB Development* (<http://www.apress.com/9781484215999?gtmf=s>). In the next chapter we shall discuss another NoSQL database, Apache Cassandra.

## CHAPTER 8



# Using Apache Cassandra Database

Apache Cassandra is an open source wide column data store. Cassandra is a scalable, reliable, fault-tolerant, and highly available NoSQL database. Cassandra is based on a flexible schema data model in which data is stored in rows in a table (also called column family) with a primary key identifying a row. The primary key could be a single column or multiple column (compound) row key. A relational database also stores data in table rows, but what makes Cassandra different is that the table rows do not have to follow a fixed schema. Each row in a table could have different columns or some of the columns could be the same as other rows. Each row does not have to include all the columns or any column data at all. In this regard Cassandra provides a dynamic column specification. A keyspace is a namespace container for the data stored in Cassandra. In this chapter we shall discuss using Kubernetes cluster manager with Apache Cassandra. This chapter has the following sections.

Setting the Environment

Creating a Cassandra Cluster Declaratively

Creating a Cassandra Cluster Imperatively

## Setting the Environment

The following software is required for this chapter.

- Docker Engine (latest version)
- Kubernetes (version 1.01)
- Kubectl (version 1.01)
- Docker image for Apache Cassandra (latest version)

Install the software on an Amazon EC2 instance created from Ubuntu Server 14.04 LTS (HVM), SSD Volume Type - ami-d05e75b8 AMI as explained in chapter 1. SSH Login to the Ubuntu instance using the Public IP Address of the Amazon EC2 instance.

```
ssh -i "docker.pem" ubuntu@52.23.160.7
```

Start the Docker engine and verify its status.

```
sudo service docker start  
sudo service docker status
```

The Docker engine should be running as shown in Figure 8-1.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ sudo service docker start
start: Job is already running: docker
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ sudo service docker status
docker start/running, process 823
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ █
```

**Figure 8-1.** Starting Docker

List the services.

```
kubectl get services
```

The “kubernetes” service should be listed as shown in Figure 8-2.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl get services
NAME      LABELS            SELECTOR      IP(S)      PORT(S)
kubernetes  component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes <none>        10.0.0.1   443/TCP
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ █
```

**Figure 8-2.** Listing the “kubernetes” Service

List the Pods and the nodes with the following commands.

```
kubectl get pods
kubectl get nodes
```

Initially the only pod running is the Kubernetes pod as shown in Figure 8-3.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME        READY  STATUS    RESTARTS  AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3   Running   3          12m
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl get nodes
NAME      LABELS           STATUS
127.0.0.1  kubernetes.io/hostname=127.0.0.1  Ready
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ █
```

**Figure 8-3.** Listing the Pod and Node for Kubernetes

A Cassandra cluster may be created and managed both declaratively and imperatively, and we shall discuss both the options.

## Creating a Cassandra Cluster Declaratively

In the following subsections we have discussed creating a Cassandra cluster using definition files based on the YAML format. First, create a service to represent a Cassandra cluster. A service is the external interface for a cluster of Pods, Apache Cassandra pods in the context of this chapter.

### Creating a Service

Create a service definition file called `cassandra-service.yaml`. Add the fields discussed in Table 8-1.

**Table 8-1.** Fields in the Service Definition File

Field	Description	Value
apiVersion	API Version.	v1
kind	Kind of the definition file.	Service
metadata	Metadata of the service.	
metadata -> name	Service name. Required field.	cassandra
metadata -> labels	Service labels. A label could be any key-> value pair. A service label is set as app:cassandra.	app:cassandra
spec	The service specification.	
spec -> labels	The spec labels. A label could be any key-> value pair. The service label is set as app:Cassandra.	app:cassandra
spec -> selector	Service selector. Used to select Pods to manage. Pods with a label the same as the selector expression are selected or managed by the service. The selector expression could be any key:value pair. Or, multiple requirements or expressions could be specified using a ','. The app:cassandra setting translates to service selector app=cassandra.	app:cassandra
spec -> ports	The service ports. The ports field is required.	
spec -> ports -> port	A single service port at which the service is exposed for access by external clients.	9042
spec -> type	The service type.	LoadBalancer

The `cassandra-service.yaml` is listed below. Use the YAML Lint (<http://www.yamlint.com/>) to validate the syntax.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Service
metadata:
  name: cassandra
  labels:
    app: cassandra
```

```
spec:  
  labels:  
    app: cassandra  
  selector:  
    app: cassandra  
  ports:  
    -  
      port: 9042  
  type: LoadBalancer
```

The `cassandra-service.yaml` file may be created in a vi editor and saved using the `:wq` command as shown in Figure 8-4.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13: ~
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
apiVersion: v1
kind: Service
metadata:
  name: cassandra
  labels:
    app: cassandra
spec:
  labels:
    app: cassandra
  selector:
    app: cassandra
  ports:
    - port: 9042
  type: LoadBalancer

~
~
```

**Figure 8-4.** Service Definition File in vi Editor

To create a service run the following command.

```
kubectl create -f cassandra-service.yaml
```

Subsequently list the services.

```
kubectl get services
```

The cassandra service gets listed as shown in Figure 8-5.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl create -f cassandra-service.yaml
services/cassandra
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl get services
NAME      LABELS           SELECTOR   IP(S)
cassandra app=cassandra   app=cassandra 10.0.0.24
5         9042/TCP
kubernetes component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes <none>     10.0.0.1
443/TCP
443/TCP
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$
```

**Figure 8-5.** Creating and listing a Service for Apache Cassandra

Describe the cassandra service with the following command.

```
kubectl describe svc cassandra
```

The service name, namespace, labels, selector, type, IP, Port, NodePort and endpoints get listed as shown in Figure 8-6. No service endpoint is listed initially because a Pod has not been created yet.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl describe svc cassandra
Name:           cassandra
Namespace:      default
Labels:         app=cassandra
Selector:       app=cassandra
Type:          LoadBalancer
IP:            10.0.0.245
Port:          <unnamed>    9042/TCP
NodePort:       <unnamed>    32434/TCP
Endpoints:     <none>
Session Affinity: None
No events.

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$
```

**Figure 8-6.** Describing the Service for Apache Cassandra

## Creating a Replication Controller

Next, we shall create a replication controller for Cassandra. A replication controller defines the configuration for the containers and their respective Docker images in the Pod. Create a definition file `cassandra-rc.yaml` and add the following (Table 8-2) fields.

**Table 8-2.** Fields in the Replication Controller Definition File

Field	Description	Value
apiVersion	The API Version.	v1
kind	Kind of definition file.	ReplicationController
metadata	Replication controller metadata.	
metadata -> labels	Replication controller labels. The key:value pair app:cassandra is set as a label on the replication controller.	app:cassandra
spec	The replication controller specification.	
spec -> replicas	The number of replicas.	1
spec -> selector	The selector expression for the replication controller. Must be the same as one of the labels in the spec -> template -> metadata -> labels field. Required field but not required to be set explicitly and defaults to the labels in spec -> template -> metadata -> labels field. If multiple requirements are set in the selector multiple labels in the Pod template labels must match. For example if the selector is app=cassandra, name=cassandra the Pod template labels spec -> template -> metadata -> labels must include both of these labels.	
spec -> template	The Pod template. Required field.	
spec -> template -> metadata	Template metadata.	
spec -> template -> metadata -> labels	Template labels. The key:value pair app:cassandra is set as a label on the Pod. A label must be set on the template. The label setting translates to Pod label app=cassandra.	app:cassandra
spec -> template -> spec	The container specification.	
spec -> template -> spec -> containers	The containers in the Pod.	
spec -> template -> spec -> containers -> image	The Docker image for a container.	cassandra
spec -> template -> spec -> containers -> name	The container name.	cassandra
spec -> template -> spec -> containers -> ports	The container ports.	

(continued)

**Table 8-2.** (continued)

Field	Description	Value
spec -> template -> spec -> containers -> ports -> containerPort	The container port for CQL command shell.	9042
spec -> template -> spec -> containers -> ports -> name	The port name.	cql
spec -> template -> spec -> containers -> ports -> containerPort	The container port for thrift clients.	9160
spec -> template -> spec -> containers -> ports -> name	The port name.	thrift

The `cassandra-rc.yaml` is listed.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: ReplicationController
metadata:
  name: cassandra-rc
  labels:
    app: cassandra
spec:
  replicas: 1
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        app: cassandra
    spec:
      containers:
        -
          image: cassandra
          name: cassandra
          ports:
            -
              containerPort: 9042
              name: cql
            -
              containerPort: 9160
              name: thrift
```

The `cassandra-rc.yaml` field may be created in a vi editor and saved with the `:wq` command as shown in Figure 8-7.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13: ~
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
apiVersion: v1
kind: ReplicationController
metadata:
  name: "cassandra-rc"
  labels:
    app: "cassandra"
spec:
  replicas: 1
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        app: "cassandra"
    spec:
      containers:
        - image: "cassandra"
          name: "cassandra"
          ports:
            - containerPort: 9042
              name: "cql"
            - containerPort: 9160
              name: "thrift"

:wq
```

**Figure 8-7.** Replication Controller Definition File in vi Editor

Create a replication controller with the following command.

```
kubectl create -f cassandra-rc.yaml
```

Subsequently list the replication controllers.

```
kubectl get rc
```

The `cassandra-rc` replication controller gets created and listed as shown in Figure 8-8.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl create -f cassandra-rc.yaml
replicationcontrollers/cassandra-rc
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl get rc
CONTROLLER   CONTAINER(S)   IMAGE(S)   SELECTOR   REPLICAS
cassandra-rc   cassandra   cassandra   app=cassandra   1
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ █
```

**Figure 8-8.** Creating a Replication Controller from Definition File

List the Pods created by the replication controller.

```
kubectl get pods
```

As the number of replicas is set to 1 in the replication controller definition file, one Pod gets created and is listed in Figure 8-9. The preceding command may have to be run multiple times to list the Pod as running and ready. Alternatively run the command for the first time after a few seconds of having created the replication controller; by a minute all Pods should have started.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME        READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
cassandra-rc-tou4u   1/1     Running   0          24s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   3          53m
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ █
```

**Figure 8-9.** Listing Pod/s for Apache Cassandra

Describe the Cassandra service.

```
kubectl describe svc cassandra
```

An endpoint gets listed for the Pod as shown in Figure 8-10. When the service description was listed before creating a replication controller, no endpoint got listed.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl describe svc cassandra
Name:           cassandra
Namespace:      default
Labels:         app=cassandra
Selector:       app=cassandra
Type:          LoadBalancer
IP:            10.0.0.245
Port:          <unnamed>    9042/TCP
NodePort:       <unnamed>    32434/TCP
Endpoints:     172.17.0.2:9042
Session Affinity: None
No events.

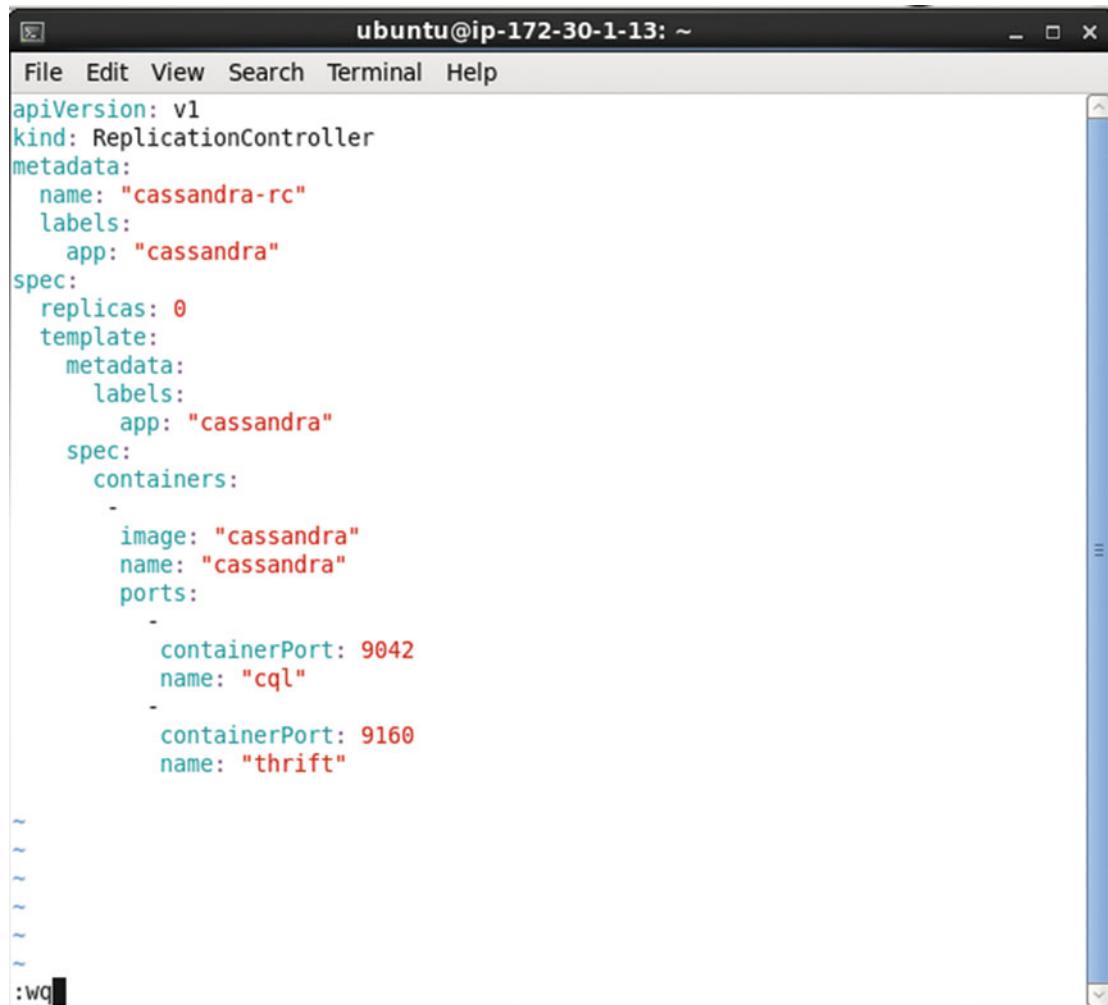
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ █
```

**Figure 8-10.** Describing the Service after creating the Replication Controller

In the preceding example we created a replication controller with the number of replicas set as 1. The replication controller does not have to create a replica to start with. To demonstrate we shall create the replication controller again, but with a different replicas setting. Delete the replication controller previously created.

```
kubectl delete rc cassandra-rc
```

Modify the `cassandra-rc.yaml` to set replicas field to 0 as shown in Figure 8-11.



```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13: ~
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
apiVersion: v1
kind: ReplicationController
metadata:
  name: "cassandra-rc"
  labels:
    app: "cassandra"
spec:
  replicas: 0
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        app: "cassandra"
    spec:
      containers:

        image: "cassandra"
        name: "cassandra"
        ports:
          -
            containerPort: 9042
            name: "cql"

          -
            containerPort: 9160
            name: "thrift"

:wq
```

**Figure 8-11.** Setting Replicas to 0

Create the replication controller again with the modified definition file.

```
kubectl create -f cassandra-rc.yaml
```

Subsequently list the replicas.

```
kubectl get rc
```

The cassandra-rc replication controller gets created and gets listed as shown in Figure 8-12.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl create -f cassandra-rc.yaml
replicationcontrollers/cassandra-rc
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl get rc
CONTROLLER      CONTAINER(S)    IMAGE(S)        SELECTOR          REPLICAS
cassandra-rc    cassandra     cassandra       app=cassandra    0
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ █
```

**Figure 8-12.** Creating the Replication Controller with Modified Definition File

List the Pods.

```
kubectl get pods
```

Because the replicas field is set to 0 the REPLICAS get listed as 0 as shown in Figure 8-13.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl create -f cassandra-rc.yaml
replicationcontrollers/cassandra-rc
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl get rc
CONTROLLER      CONTAINER(S)    IMAGE(S)        SELECTOR          REPLICAS
cassandra-rc    cassandra     cassandra       app=cassandra    0
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME            READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   3          1h
```

**Figure 8-13.** With Replicas as 0 no Pod gets created

## Scaling the Database

Starting with the replication controller with 0 replicas created we shall scale up the cluster to a single replica. Run the following command to scale the Pod cluster to 1 replica.

```
kubectl scale rc cassandra-rc --replicas=1
```

Subsequently list the Pods.

```
kubectl get pods
```

The output from the preceding commands is shown in Figure 8-14. A “scaled” output indicates that the cluster has been scaled. The single Pod could take a while (a few seconds) to get started and become ready.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl scale rc cassandra-rc --replicas=1
scaled
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
cassandra-rc-9p7gc   0/1     Running   0          11s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   3          1h
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
cassandra-rc-9p7gc   0/1     Running   0          15s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   3          1h
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
cassandra-rc-9p7gc   1/1     Running   0          29s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   3          1h
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ █
```

**Figure 8-14.** Scaling the Replication Controller to 1 Pod

Describe the cassandra service again.

```
kubectl describe svc cassandra
```

A single endpoint should get listed for the Pod added as shown in Figure 8-15.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl describe svc cassandra
Name:           cassandra
Namespace:      default
Labels:         app=cassandra
Selector:       app=cassandra
Type:          LoadBalancer
IP:            10.0.0.245
Port:          <unnamed>      9042/TCP
NodePort:       <unnamed>      32434/TCP
Endpoints:     172.17.0.2:9042
Session Affinity: None
No events.

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ █
```

**Figure 8-15.** Describing the Service after Scaling the Cluster

## Describing the Pod

To describe the Pod run the following command.

```
kubectl describe pod cassandra-rc-tou4u
```

Detailed information about the Pod such as name, namespace, image, node, labels, status, IP address, and events gets output as shown in Figure 8-16. The Pod label is `app=cassandra` as specified in the replication controller definition file.

```

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl describe pod cassandra-rc-tou4u
Name:           cassandra-rc-tou4u
Namespace:      default
Image(s):       cassandra
Node:          127.0.0.1/127.0.0.1
Labels:         app=cassandra
Status:        Running
Reason:
Message:
IP:            172.17.0.2
Replication Controllers:   cassandra-rc (1/1 replicas created)
Containers:
  cassandra:
    Image:      cassandra
    State:      Running
    Started:   Mon, 11 Jan 2016 00:05:16 +0000
    Ready:      True
    Restart Count: 0
Conditions:
  Type      Status
  Ready     True
Events:
FirstSeen           LastSeen          Count  Reason
Mon, 11 Jan 2016 00:05:06 +0000  Mon, 11 Jan 2016 00:05:06 +0000  1  scheduled
message
  Mon, 11 Jan 2016 00:05:06 +0000  Mon, 11 Jan 2016 00:05:06 +0000  1  successfully assigned cassandra-rc-tou4u to 127.0.0.1
scheduler }
  Mon, 11 Jan 2016 00:05:06 +0000  Mon, 11 Jan 2016 00:05:06 +0000  1  kubelet 127.0.0.1} implicitly required container POD pulled
pod container image "gcr.io/google_containers/pause:0.8.0" already present on machine

```

**Figure 8-16.** Describing the single Pod

## Starting an Interactive Shell

As the “cassandra” Docker image inherits from the “debian” Docker image an interactive bash shell may be used to access a Docker container based on the cassandra image. To start an interactive bash shell to access the Cassandra server running in a Docker container, we need to obtain the container id. List the running containers.

```
sudo docker ps
```

All the running containers get listed as shown in Figure 8-17. Copy the container id for the container for the cassandra image.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ sudo docker ps
CONTAINER ID        IMAGE               CREATED             STATUS              PORTS          NAMES
e8fc5e8dff57      cassandra          2 minutes ago     Up 2 minutes       "/docker-entrypo
int.s"              2 minutes ago     Up 2 minutes       "k8s_cassand
ra.a9a314d7_cassandra-rc-9p7gc_default_28b9b74e-b7f8-11e5-9c17-12bccdb330eb_1778
374c
50479f2e20a6      gcr.io/google_containers/pause:0.8.0   2 minutes ago     Up 2 minutes       "/pause"
                                         k8s_POD.dfb
60ee1_cassandra-rc-9p7gc_default_28b9b74e-b7f8-11e5-9c17-12bccdb330eb_2573f43b
8ec906d124e2      gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1   "/hyperkube sche
duler"              About an hour ago   Up About an hour   k8s_schedul
er.2744e742_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c4a_62b2c6
87
ddaa11503ceb0     gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1   "/hyperkube apis
erver"              About an hour ago   Up About an hour   k8s_apiserv
er.cfb70250_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c4a_5b6bb2
54
441472c8631d      gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1   "/hyperkube cont
rolle"              About an hour ago   Up About an hour   k8s_control
ler-manager.1598ee5c_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c
4a_ce1fc688
3d858bd1b5ca      gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1   "/hyperkube prox
y --m"              About an hour ago   Up About an hour   sad_wright
dad911766776       gcr.io/google_containers/pause:0.8.0       "/pause"
                                         About an hour ago   Up About an hour   k8s_POD.e4c
c795_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c4a_06602f0e
369443170caf       gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1   "/hyperkube kube
let -"              About an hour ago   Up About an hour   silly_borg
fbca93c75322       gcr.io/google_containers/etcd:2.0.12       "/usr/local/bin/
etcd "              About an hour ago   Up About an hour   naughty_ary
abhata
```

**Figure 8-17.** Listing the Docker Containers

Using the container id start an interactive bash shell.

```
sudo docker exec -it e8fc5e8dff57 bash
```

An interactive shell gets started as shown in Figure 8-18.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ sudo docker exec -it e8fc5e8dff57 bash
root@cassandra-rc-9p7gc:/#
```

**Figure 8-18.** Starting the Interactive Shell

## Starting the CQL Shell

Cassandra Query Language (CQL) is the query language for Apache Cassandra. In the following sections we shall run CQL commands to create a keyspace and a table. Start the CQL Shell with the following command.

```
cqlsh
```

CQL Shell 5.0.1 gets started as shown in Figure 8-19.

```
root@cassandra-rc-9p7gc:/# cqlsh
Connected to Test Cluster at 127.0.0.1:9042.
[cqlsh 5.0.1 | Cassandra 3.1.1 | CQL spec 3.3.1 | Native protocol v4]
Use HELP for help.
cqlsh> █
```

**Figure 8-19.** Starting the cqlsh Shell

## Creating a Keyspace

Next, create a keyspace called CatalogKeyspace using the replication class as SimpleStrategy and replication factor as 3.

```
CREATE KEYSPACE CatalogKeyspace
    WITH replication = {'class': 'SimpleStrategy', 'replication_factor' : 3};
```

A keyspace gets created as shown in Figure 8-20.

```
cqlsh> CREATE KEYSPACE CatalogKeyspace
<ication = {'class': 'SimpleStrategy', 'replication_factor' : 3};
cqlsh> █
```

**Figure 8-20.** Creating a Keyspace

## Altering a Keyspace

A keyspace may be altered with the ALTER KEYSPACE command. Run the following command to alter the keyspace setting replication factor to 1.

```
ALTER KEYSPACE CatalogKeyspace
    WITH replication = {'class': 'SimpleStrategy', 'replication_factor' : 1};
```

Keyspace gets altered as shown in Figure 8-21.

```
cqlsh> ALTER KEYSPACE CatalogKeyspace
<cation = {'class': 'SimpleStrategy', 'replication_factor' : 1};
cqlsh> █
```

**Figure 8-21.** Altering a Keyspace

## Using a Keyspace

To use the CatalogKeyspace keyspace run the following command.

```
use CatalogKeyspace;
```

Keyspace CatalogKeyspace gets set as shown in Figure 8-22.

```
cqlsh> use CatalogKeyspace;
cqlsh:catalogkeyspace> █
```

**Figure 8-22.** Setting a Keyspace to be used

## Creating a Table

A table is also called a column family. Both CREATE TABLE and CREATE COLUMN FAMILY clauses may be used to create a table (column family). Create a table called catalog using the following CQL statement.

```
CREATE TABLE catalog(catalog_id text,journal text,publisher text,edition text,title
text,author text,PRIMARY KEY (catalog_id)) WITH compaction = { 'class' :
'LeveledCompactionStrategy' };
```

Add two rows of data to the table using the following CQL statements.

```
INSERT INTO catalog (catalog_id, journal, publisher, edition,title,author) VALUES
('catalog1','Oracle Magazine', 'Oracle Publishing', 'November-December 2013', 'Engineering
as a Service','David A. Kelly') IF NOT EXISTS;
INSERT INTO catalog (catalog_id, journal, publisher, edition,title,author) VALUES
('catalog2','Oracle Magazine', 'Oracle Publishing', 'November-December 2013',
'Quintessential and Collaborative','Tom Haunert') IF NOT EXISTS;
```

Output from the preceding commands is shown in Figure 8-23. A Cassandra table gets created and two rows of data get added.

```
<compaction = { 'class' : 'LeveledCompactionStrategy' }>;
<'Engineering as a Service','David A. Kelly') IF NOT EXISTS;

[applied]
-----
True

cqlsh:catalogkeyspace>
<'Quintessential and Collaborative','Tom Haunert') IF NOT EXISTS;

[applied]
-----
True

cqlsh:catalogkeyspace> █
```

**Figure 8-23.** Creating an Apache Cassandra Table

Run the following CQL query statement to select data from the catalog table.

```
SELECT * FROM catalog;
```

The two rows of data added gets listed as shown in Figure 8-24.

```
cqlsh:catalogkeyspace> SELECT * FROM catalog;
catalog_id | author           | edition          | journal          | publisher
sher       | title
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
catalog1 | David A. Kelly | November-December 2013 | Oracle Magazine | Oracle Publishing |
          |                  | Engineering as a Service
catalog2 | Tom Haunert    | November-December 2013 | Oracle Magazine | Oracle Publishing |
          | Quintessential and Collaborative
(2 rows)
cqlsh:catalogkeyspace> █
```

**Figure 8-24.** Querying an Apache Cassandra Table

## Deleting from a Table

To delete row/s of data run a DELETE CQL statement. The primary key column value cannot be deleted with DELETE. Delete the other column values for the row with catalog\_id as 'catalog' with the following CQL statement.

```
DELETE journal, publisher, edition, title, author from catalog WHERE catalog_id='catalog1';
```

Subsequently run the following CQL query to select data from the catalog table.

```
SELECT * FROM catalog;
```

As shown in Figure 8-25 only one complete row of data gets output. The other row lists only the catalog\_id column value, and all the other column values are null.

```
<ition, title, author from catalog WHERE catalog_id='catalog1';
cqlsh:catalogkeyspace> SELECT * FROM catalog;

catalog_id | author      | edition          | journal        | publisher
           | title
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
catalog1 | null       | null            | null          | null
         | null       |                 null
catalog2 | Tom Haunert | November-December 2013 | Oracle Magazine | Oracle Publishing
         | Quintessential and Collaborative

(2 rows)
cqlsh:catalogkeyspace>
```

**Figure 8-25.** Querying Table after deleting Data from a Row

## Truncating a Table

Truncating a table implies removing all table data including primary key column values. Run the following TRUNCATE CQL statement to remove all rows.

```
TRUNCATE catalog;
```

Subsequently run the CQL query statement again.

```
SELECT * from catalog;
```

No rows get listed as shown in Figure 8-26; not even null values are listed after running a TRUNCATE statement.

```
cqlsh:catalogkeyspace> TRUNCATE catalog;
cqlsh:catalogkeyspace> SELECT * from catalog;

catalog_id | author | edition | journal | publisher | title
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
(0 rows)
```

**Figure 8-26.** Querying a Table after Truncating a Table

## Dropping a Table and Keyspace

To drop a table run the CQL statement with the DROP TABLE clause. The IF EXISTS clause drops the table if it exists but does not return an error if the table does not exist.

```
DROP TABLE IF EXISTS catalog;
```

Drop the CatalogKeyspace keyspace using the DROP KEYSPACE clause statement. The IF EXISTS clause drops the keyspace if it exists but does not return an error if the keyspace does not exist.

```
DROP KEYSPACE IF EXISTS CatalogKeyspace;
```

To verify that the keyspace CatalogKeyspace has been removed, run the following statement.

```
use CatalogKeyspace;
```

As the CatalogKeyspace keyspace does not exist an error gets generated as shown in Figure 8-27.

```
cqlsh:catalogkeyspace> DROP TABLE IF EXISTS catalog;
cqlsh:catalogkeyspace>
cqlsh:catalogkeyspace> DROP KEYSPACE IF EXISTS CatalogKeyspace;
cqlsh:catalogkeyspace> use CatalogKeyspace;
InvalidRequest: code=2200 [Invalid query] message="Keyspace 'catalogkeyspace' does not exist"
cqlsh:catalogkeyspace> ■
```

**Figure 8-27.** Dropping a Table

## Creating a Volume

In chapter 7 we introduced volumes, how they are mounted into a Pod using volume mounts, and how they are accessed within a container. We introduced various types of volumes and demonstrated the `emptyDir` type of volume. In this section we shall use another type of volume, the `hostPath` volume. The `hostPath` volume mounts a directory from the host into the Pod. All containers in the Pod and all Pods based on a Pod template using a `hostPath` type of volume may access the directory on the host. As a modification of the replication controller used earlier, we shall add a volume of type `hostPath` to the `cassandra-rc.yaml` file. For example, if the host directory `/cassandra/data` is to be mounted in a Pod add the following volume in the `spec->template` field.

```
volumes:
  -
    hostPath:
      path: /cassandra/data
      name: cassandra-storage
```

The volume is mounted in the Pod using the same fields as a `emptyDir` volume. The modified `cassandra-rc.yaml` is listed.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: ReplicationController
metadata:
  name: cassandra-rc
  labels:
    app: cassandra
```

```
spec:
  replicas: 1
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        app: cassandra
    spec:
      containers:
        -
          image: cassandra
          name: cassandra
          ports:
            -
              containerPort: 9042
              name: cql
            -
              containerPort: 9160
              name: thrift
      volumeMounts:
        -
          mountPath: /cassandra/data
          name: cassandra-storage
  volumes:
    -
      hostPath:
        path: /cassandra/data
        name: cassandra-storage
```

The `cassandra-rc.yaml` definition file may be edited in vi editor and saved with the `:wq` command as shown in Figure 8-28. It is recommended to add quotes in field values.

```

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13: ~
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
name: "cassandra-rc"
labels:
  app: "cassandra"
spec:
  replicas: 0
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        app: "cassandra"
    spec:
      containers:
        image: "cassandra"
        name: "cassandra"
        ports:
          containerPort: 9042
          name: "cql"
          containerPort: 9160
          name: "thrift"
        volumeMounts:
          name: "cassandra-storage"
          mountPath: "/cassandra/data"
      volumes:
        name: "cassandra-storage"
        hostPath:
          path: "/cassandra/data"

```

34,0-1      75%

**Figure 8-28.** Replication Controller Definition File with a Volume of type hostPath

The host directory that is mounted into a Pod has to pre-exist. Create the /cassandra/data directory and set its permissions to global (777).

```
sudo mkdir -p /cassandra/data
sudo chmod -R 777 /cassandra/data
```

The output from the preceding commands is shown in Figure 8-29. The /cassandra/data directory gets created.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ sudo mkdir -p /cassandra/data
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ sudo chmod -R 777 /cassandra/data
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ █
```

**Figure 8-29.** Creating the Directory for the Volume

Change directory (cd) to the /cassandra/data directory on the host.

```
cd /cassandra/data
```

List the files and directories in the /cassandra/data directory.

```
ls -l
```

Initially the /cassandra/data is empty as shown in Figure 8-30. Add a sample file, cassandra.txt, to the directory with the vi editor. Subsequently list the directory files and directories again.

```
vi cassandra.txt
ls -l
```

As shown in Figure 8-30 the cassandra.txt file gets listed. What the hostPath volume does is to make the /cassandra/data directory available to all containers in the Pod.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ cd /cassandra/data
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:/cassandra/data$ ls -l
total 0
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:/cassandra/data$ vi cassandra.txt
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:/cassandra/data$ ls -l
total 0
-rw-rw-r-- 1 ubuntu ubuntu 0 Jan 11 18:39 cassandra.txt
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:/cassandra/data$ █
```

**Figure 8-30.** Adding a file in the hostPath Volume Directory

Create a replication controller as discussed for the definition file used previously. One Pod should get created. List the Docker containers.

```
sudo docker ps
```

Copy the container id for the Docker container for image “cassandra” as shown in Figure 8-31.

```

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ sudo docker ps
CONTAINER ID        IMAGE               STATUS            PORTS          NAMES
11a4b26d9a09        cassandra         Up 2 minutes   "docker-entrypo
int.s"              2 minutes ago     Up 2 minutes   "/docker-entrypo
ra.69193449_cassandra-rc-tounc_default_f810d16d-b892-11e5-a7b1-12bccdb330eb_bf52
fe8c
1ac2b8fef2ca        gcr.io/google_containers/pause:0.8.0    "/pause"
                  2 minutes ago     Up 2 minutes   k8s_POD.dfb
60ee1_cassandra-rc-tounc_default_f810d16d-b892-11e5-a7b1-12bccdb330eb_887bfd97
849f86603d91        gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1  "/hyperkube prox
y --m"              7 minutes ago     Up 7 minutes   hopeful_sah
a
aaec2d3d6fff6        gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1  "/hyperkube sche
duler"              7 minutes ago     Up 7 minutes   k8s_schedul
er.2744e742_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c4a_5ae720
1c
246eda75a335        gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1  "/hyperkube apis
erver"              7 minutes ago     Up 7 minutes   k8s_apiserv
er.cfb70250_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c4a_f937d0
22
76bffee1493b        gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1  "/hyperkube cont
rolle"              7 minutes ago     Up 7 minutes   k8s_control
ler-manager.1598ee5c_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c
4a_2184a674
bdae0b9de6de        gcr.io/google_containers/pause:0.8.0      "/pause"
                  7 minutes ago     Up 7 minutes   k8s_POD.e4c
c795_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c4a_956c4456
8295574a1ceb        gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1  "/hyperkube kube
let -"              7 minutes ago     Up 7 minutes   compassionat
e_khorana
ea8d9ec5177f        gcr.io/google_containers/etcd:2.0.12      "/usr/local/bin/

```

**Figure 8-31.** Listing the Docker Containers

Using the container id start an interactive shell.

```
sudo docker exec -it 11a4b26d9a09 bash
```

The interactive shell gets started as shown in Figure 8-32.

```

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ sudo docker exec -it 11a4b26d9a09 bash
root@cassandra-rc-tounc:/# █

```

**Figure 8-32.** Starting an Interactive Shell

Change directory (cd) to the /cassandra/data directory and list the files in the directory.

```
cd /cassandra/data
ls -l
```

As shown in Figure 8-33 the cassandra.txt file gets listed. The /cassandra/data directory exists on the host but is accessible from a container.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ sudo docker exec -it 11a4b26d9a09 bash
root@cassandra-rc-tounc:/# cd /cassandra/data
root@cassandra-rc-tounc:/cassandra/data# ls -l
total 0
-rw-rw-r-- 1 1000 1000 0 Jan 11 18:39 cassandra.txt
root@cassandra-rc-tounc:/cassandra/data# █
```

**Figure 8-33.** Accessing the Volume in a Docker Container

Similarly volumes of other types could be created. Following is the volumeMounts and volumes fields settings for a AWS Volume. The volumeID field has the format aws://zone/volume id.

```
volumeMounts:
  -
    mountPath: /aws-ebs
    name: aws-volume
volumes:
  -
    name: aws-volume
    awsElasticBlockStore:
      volumeID: aws://us-east-1b/vol-428ba3ae
      fsType: ext4
```

A more complete `cassandra-rc.yaml` file is shown in Figure 8-34.

```

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13: ~
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
labels:
  app: "cassandra"
spec:
  replicas: 2
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        app: "cassandra"
    spec:
      containers:
        image: "cassandra"
        name: "cassandra"
        ports:
          containerPort: 9042
          name: "cql"
          containerPort: 9160
          name: "thrift"
        volumeMounts:
          mountPath: "/aws-ebs"
          name: "aws-volume"
      volumes:
        name: "aws-volume"
        awsElasticBlockStore:
          volumeID: "aws://us-east-1b/vol-428ba3ae"
          fsType: "ext4"
:wq

```

**Figure 8-34.** Volume of type `awsElasticBlockStore` in a Replication Controller Definition File

## Creating a Cassandra Cluster Imperatively

If the default settings for most of the fields are to be used, creating a replication controller imperatively is the better option.

### Creating a Replication Controller

To create a replication controller on the command line use the `kubectl run` command. For a replication controller based on the Docker image “cassandra” run the following command in which replication controller name is “cassandra” and port is 9042. The `replicas` is set to 1, also the default value.

```
kubectl run cassandra --image=cassandra --replicas=1 --port=9042
```

Subsequently list the replication controllers.

```
kubectl get rc
```

The “cassandra” replication controller gets created and get listed as shown in Figure 8-35.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl run cassandra --image=cassandra --replicas=1 - -port=9042
CONTROLLER CONTAINER(S) IMAGE(S) SELECTOR REPLICAS
cassandra   cassandra   cassandra  run=cassandra 1
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl get rc
CONTROLLER CONTAINER(S) IMAGE(S) SELECTOR REPLICAS
cassandra   cassandra   cassandra  run=cassandra 1
```

**Figure 8-35.** Creating a Replication Controller Imperatively

To list the Pods run the following command.

```
kubectl get pods
```

The single Pod created gets listed as shown in Figure 8-36.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME READY STATUS RESTARTS AGE
cassandra-zv7ei 1/1 Running 0 7m
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3 Running 3 1h
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$
```

**Figure 8-36.** Listing the single Pod

To describe the replication controller run the following command.

```
kubectl describe rc cassandra
```

The replication controller’s name, namespace, image, selector, labels, replicas, pod status, and events get listed as shown in Figure 8-37. The selector defaults to “run=cassandra” for the cassandra replication controller.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl describe rc cassandra
Name:           cassandra
Namespace:      default
Image(s):       cassandra
Selector:       run=cassandra
Labels:         run=cassandra
Replicas:      1 current / 1 desired
Pods Status:   1 Running / 0 Waiting / 0 Succeeded / 0 Failed
Events:
  FirstSeen          LastSeen
  --            SubobjectPath  Reason
rom           Mon, 11 Jan 2016 00:28:27 +0000  Mon, 11 Jan 2016 00:28:27 +0000  1 {replication-controller }   successfulCreate
pod: cassandra-zv7ei                                         Created
```

**Figure 8-37.** Describing the Replication Controller

## Creating a Service

To expose the replication controller `cassandra` as a service, run the `kubectl expose` command. The port is required to be specified and is set to 9042 for the service.

```
kubectl expose rc cassandra --port=9042 --type=LoadBalancer
```

The `cassandra` service gets created as shown in Figure 8-38.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl expose rc cassandra --port=9042 --type=LoadBalancer
NAME      LABELS      SELECTOR      IP(S)      PORT(S)
cassandra  run=cassandra  run=cassandra  9042/TCP
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl get services
NAME      LABELS      SELECTOR      IP(S)
      PORT(S)
cassandra  run=cassandra  run=cassandra  10.0.0.21
0  9042/TCP
kubernetes  component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes  <none>  10.0.0.1
443/TCP
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ █
```

**Figure 8-38.** Creating a Service for Apache Cassandra Imperatively

Describe the service with the following command.

```
kubectl describe service cassandra
```

As shown in Figure 8-39 the service name, namespace, labels, selector, type, IP, Port, NodePort, and Endpoint get listed. The service selector `run=cassandra` must be the same as the label on the Pod to manage.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl describe service cassandra
Name:           cassandra
Namespace:      default
Labels:          run=cassandra
Selector:        run=cassandra
Type:           LoadBalancer
IP:             10.0.0.210
Port:           <unnamed>     9042/TCP
NodePort:        <unnamed>     31166/TCP
Endpoints:      172.17.0.4:9042
Session Affinity: None
No events.
```

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~\$ █

**Figure 8-39.** Describing the Service

## Scaling the Database

To scale the cluster, run the `kubectl scale` command. An important reason to scale the Cassandra replication controller is to run more Cassandra nodes and have them join the cluster, and we demonstrated scaling up a cluster. But it is not always necessary to scale up a cluster. A cluster may also be scaled down. To scale down the cluster to 0 replicas run the following command.

```
kubectl scale rc cassandra --replicas=0
```

A output of “scaled” in Figure 8-40 indicates that the cluster has been scaled down.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl scale rc cassandra --replicas=0
scaled
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ █
```

**Figure 8-40.** Scaling Down the Database Cluster to 0 Replicas

List the Pods.

```
kubectl get pods
```

No pod gets listed as shown in Figure 8-41.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME        READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   3          1h
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ █
```

**Figure 8-41.** Listing the Pods after Scaling Down

List the services with the following command.

```
kubectl get services
```

Scaling the cluster to 0 replicas would leave no Pod for the service to manage but the service is still running as shown in Figure 8-42.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl scale rc cassandra --replicas=0
scaled
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl get services
NAME           LABELS             SELECTOR   IP(S)
cassandra      run=cassandra    run=cassandra   10.0.0.21
  9042/TCP
kubernetes     component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes <none>       10.0.0.1
  443/TCP
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ █
```

**Figure 8-42.** Listing the Services after Scaling Down

But the service does not have any endpoint associated with it as shown with the `kubectl describe` command in Figure 8-43.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl describe service cassandra
Name:           cassandra
Namespace:      default
Labels:         run=cassandra
Selector:       run=cassandra
Type:          LoadBalancer
IP:            10.0.0.210
Port:          <unnamed>      9042/TCP
NodePort:       <unnamed>      31166/TCP
Endpoints:     <none>
Session Affinity: None
No events.

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ █
```

**Figure 8-43.** Describing the Service after Scaling Down

## Deleting the Replication Controller and Service

To delete the replication controller “`cassandra`” run the following command.

```
kubectl delete rc cassandra
```

Subsequently list the replication controllers.

```
kubectl get rc
```

To delete the service “cassandra” run the following command.

```
kubectl delete service cassandra
```

Subsequently list the services.

```
kubectl get services
```

The output from the preceding commands is shown in Figure 8-44. The replication controller and service get deleted and do not get listed.



```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl delete rc cassandra
replicationcontrollers/cassandra
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl delete service cassandra
services/cassandra
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl get rc
CONTROLLER CONTAINER(S) IMAGE(S) SELECTOR REPLICAS
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ kubectl get services
NAME      LABELS           SELECTOR     IP(S)      PORT(S)
T(s)
kubernetes   component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes <none>       10.0.0.1   443/TCP
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-13:~$ █
```

**Figure 8-44.** Deleting the Replication Controller and the Service

## Summary

In this chapter we used Kubernetes to create an Apache Cassandra cluster. We used both the declarative and imperative approaches. We introduced the volumes in the previous chapter and in this chapter we discussed using two other types of volumes: hostPath and AWS Volume. We scaled the cluster not only up but also down. We demonstrated that a replication controller does not require a Pod to be running and could specify 0 replicas. In the next chapter we shall discuss using Kubernetes cluster manager with another NoSQL database, Couchbase.

## CHAPTER 9



# Using Couchbase

Couchbase is a distributed NoSQL database based on the JSON data model. Couchbase is faster than MongoDB and Apache Cassandra. Couchbase offers some features not available in MongoDB and Cassandra such as a Graphical User Interface (GUI), the Couchbase Web Console. Couchbase also provides command-line tools such as couchbase-cli, cbbackup, cbrestore, and cbtransfer. Couchbase, being a distributed database, could benefit from the cluster management provided by Kubernetes cluster manager, which is what we shall discuss in this chapter. This chapter has the following sections.

Setting the Environment

Creating a Couchbase Cluster Declaratively

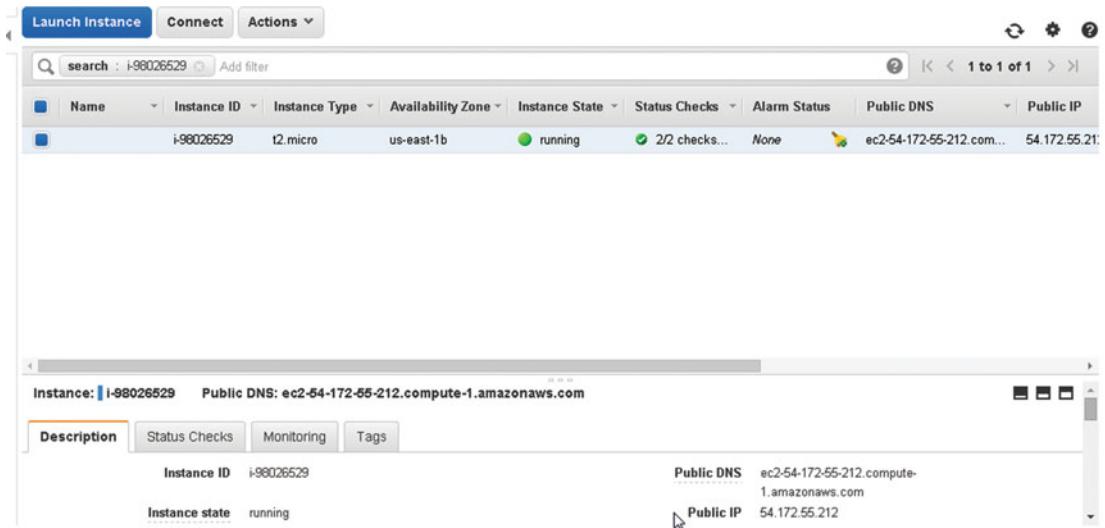
Creating a Couchbase Cluster Imperatively

## Setting the Environment

We have used an Ubuntu instance on Amazon EC2 created using the same AMI as used in the other chapters, the Ubuntu Server 14.04 LTS (HVM), SSD Volume Type - ami-d05e75b8. If an instance created from the AMI already exists the same may be used. The following software is required for this chapter.

- Docker Engine (latest version)
- Kubernetes (version 1.01)
- Kubectl (version 1.01)
- Docker image for Couchbase (latest version)

First, we need to log in to the Ubuntu instance. Obtain the Public IP Address of the Ubuntu instance from the Amazon EC2 instance console as shown in Figure 9-1.



**Figure 9-1.** Getting Public IP Address

Use the Public IP Address log in to the Ubuntu instance.

```
ssh -i "docker.pem" ubuntu@54.172.55.212
```

The Ubuntu instance gets logged into as shown in Figure 9-2.

```

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-8: ~
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
[root@localhost ~]# ssh -i "docker.pem" ubuntu@54.172.55.212
Welcome to Ubuntu 14.04.2 LTS (GNU/Linux 3.13.0-48-generic x86_64)

 * Documentation:  https://help.ubuntu.com/

 System information as of Sun Dec 27 19:18:21 UTC 2015

 System load:  0.0          Processes:      96
 Usage of /:   9.8% of 7.74GB  Users logged in:  0
 Memory usage: 5%           IP address for eth0: 172.30.1.8
 Swap usage:   0%

 Graph this data and manage this system at:
 https://landscape.canonical.com/

 Get cloud support with Ubuntu Advantage Cloud Guest:
 http://www.ubuntu.com/business/services/cloud

 0 packages can be updated.
 0 updates are security updates.

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-8:~$ 

```

**Figure 9-2.** Logging into Ubuntu Instance on Amazon EC2

Start the Docker Engine and verify its status.

```

sudo service docker start
sudo service docker status

```

Docker engine should be listed as running as shown in Figure 9-3.

```

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-8:~$ sudo service docker start
start: Job is already running: docker
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-8:~$ sudo service docker status
docker start/running, process 2697
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-8:~$ 

```

**Figure 9-3.** Starting Docker Engine

List the running services.

```
kubectl get services
```

The kubernetes service should be listed as running as shown in Figure 9-4.

NAME		LABELS	SELECTOR	IP(S)	PORT(S)
T(s)					
kubernetes	/TCP	component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes	<none>	10.0.0.1	443

**Figure 9-4.** Listing the “kubernetes” Service

List the nodes.

```
kubectl get nodes
```

The node should be listed with STATUS “Ready” as shown in Figure 9-5.

NAME		LABELS	STATUS
127.0.0.1		kubernetes.io/hostname=127.0.0.1	Ready

**Figure 9-5.** Listing the Single Node

## Creating a Couchbase Cluster Declaratively

In the following subsections we shall create a Couchbase Pod, a replication controller, and a service all using definition files.

### Creating a Pod

A Pod definition file is used to create a single Pod. A Pod could have 0 or more container configurations. Create a definition file couchbase.yaml. Add the following (Table 9-1) fields to the definition file.

**Table 9-1.** Pod Definition File Fields

Field	Description	Value
apiVersion		v1
kind	The kind of definition file.	Pod
metadata	The Pod metadata.	
metadata ->labels	The Pod labels. A service selector makes use of the labels to select the Pods to manage.	app: couchbaseApp
metadata ->name	The Pod name.	couchbase
spec	The Pod specification.	
spec ->containers	The containers in the Pod.	
spec ->containers ->image	A container image. For Couchbase server the image is “couchbase.”	couchbase
spec ->containers ->name	The container name.	couchbase
spec ->containers ->ports	The container ports.	
spec ->containers ->ports ->containerPort	A container port for Couchbase server.	8091

The couchbase.yaml definition file is listed.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  labels:
    app: couchbaseApp
    name: couchbase
spec:
  containers:
  -
    image: couchbase
    name: couchbase
    ports:
    -
      containerPort: 8091
```

The couchbase.yaml file could be created in the vi editor and saved with the :wq command as shown in Figure 9-6.

A screenshot of a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-8: ~". The window contains a vi editor session displaying a YAML configuration file named "couchbase.yaml". The file defines a Pod with the following specifications:

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: "couchbase"
  labels:
    app: "couchbaseApp"
spec:
  containers:
    - image: "couchbase"
      name: "couchbase"
      ports:
        - containerPort: 8091
```

The bottom left corner of the terminal window shows the command ":wq" indicating the user is about to save and exit the editor.

**Figure 9-6.** Pod Definition file couchbase.yaml in vi Editor

Run the following command to create a Pod from the definition file.

```
kubectl create -f couchbase.yaml
```

A Pod gets created as indicated by the “pods/couchbase” output in Figure 9-7.

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-8:~\$ kubectl create -f couchbase.yaml				
pods/couchbase				
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-8:~\$ kubectl get pods				
NAME	READY	STATUS	RESTARTS	AGE
couchbase	0/1	Image: couchbase is not ready on the node	0	18s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1	3/3	Running	0	9m

**Figure 9-7.** Creating a Pod from the Definition File

Subsequently list the Pods.

```
kubectl get pods
```

A Pod called “couchbase” gets listed as shown in Figure 9-7. Initially the STATUS could be different from “Running” and the READY column could be not ready; 1/1 is ready state and 0/1 is not ready.

Run the following command again after a few more seconds.

```
kubectl get pods
```

The couchbase Pod is listed as “Running” and READY->1/1 as shown in Figure 9-8.

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-8:~\$ kubectl get pods				
NAME	READY	STATUS	RESTARTS	AGE
couchbase	1/1	Running	0	1m
k8s-master-127.0.0.1	3/3	Running	0	9m
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-8:~\$ █				

**Figure 9-8.** Listing the couchbase Pod

## Creating a Service

In this section we shall create a service using a service definition file. Create a couchbase-service.yaml file and add the following (Table 9-2) fields to the file.

**Table 9-2.** Service Definition File couchbase-service.yaml

Field	Description	Value
apiVersion		v1
kind	The kind of definition file.	Service
metadata	The service metadata.	
metadata ->labels	The service labels.	app: couchbaseApp
metadata ->name	The service name.	couchbase
spec	The service specification.	
spec -> ports	The ports exposed by the service.	
spec -> ports -> port	A port exposed by the service.	8091
spec -> ports ->targetPort	The target port for the service, which could be a port number or the name of a port on the backend. The target port setting adds flexibility as the port number could be modified while the port name is kept fixed.	8091
spec -> selector	The Pod selector, which could be one or more label key:value expressions/labels. All of the key:value expressions in a selector must match with a Pod's labels for the Pod to be selected by the service. A Pod could have additional labels but must include labels in the selector to be selected by the service. Service routes traffic to the Pods with label/s matching the selector expression/s. Only a single selector expression is used in the example service definition file. If the selector is empty all Pods are selected. The app: couchbaseApp setting defaults to selector app=couchbaseApp.	app: couchbaseApp
spec -> selector -> type	The service type.	LoadBalancer

The couchbase-service.yaml is listed.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Service
metadata:
  labels:
    app: couchbaseApp
    name: couchbase
spec:
  ports:
  -
    port: 8091
    targetPort: 8091
  selector:
    app: couchbaseApp
  type: LoadBalancer
```

Create a service from the definition file with the following command.

```
kubectl create -f couchbase-service.yaml
```

Subsequently list the running services.

```
kubectl get services
```

An output of “services/couchbase” as shown in Figure 9-9 indicates that the couchbase service has been created. The “couchbase” service gets listed, also shown in Figure 9-9.

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-8:~\$ kubectl create -f couchbase-service.yaml services/couchbase			
NAME	LABELS	SELECTOR	IP(S)
PORT(S)			
couchbase	app=couchbaseApp	app=couchbaseApp	10.0.0.1
.212	8091/TCP		
kubernetes	component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes	<none>	10.0.0.1
.1	443/TCP		

**Figure 9-9.** Listing the couchbase Service

List the service endpoints with the following command.

```
kubectl get endpoints
```

The service endpoint for the couchbase service gets listed as shown in Figure 9-10.

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-8:~\$ kubectl get endpoints	
NAME	ENDPOINTS
couchbase	172.17.0.2:8091
kubernetes	172.30.1.8:6443

**Figure 9-10.** Listing the Endpoints

## Creating a Replication Controller

In this section we shall create a replication controller using a definition file. Create a couchbase-rc.yaml file and add the following (Table 9-3) fields to the file.

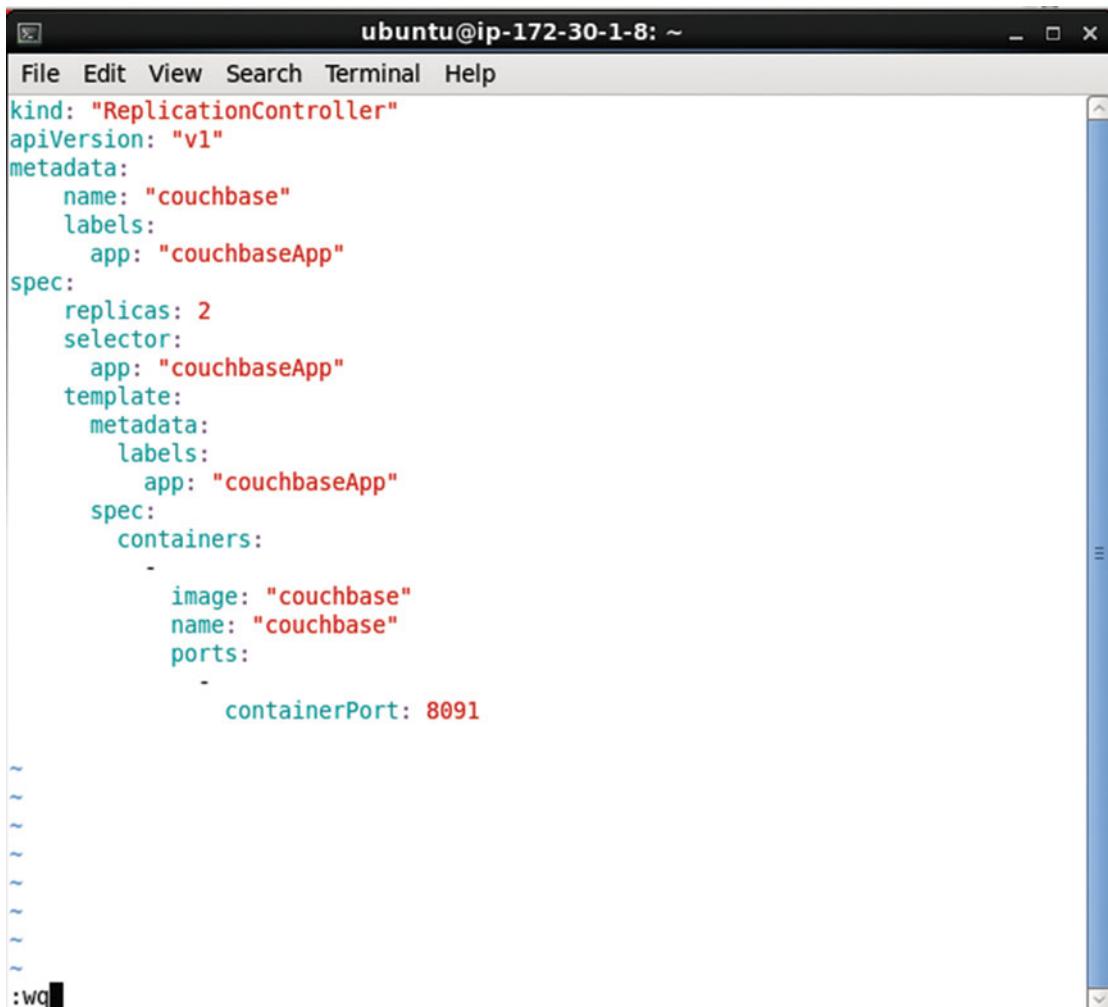
**Table 9-3.** Definition File for Replication Controller

Field	Description	Value	Required Field (includes default settings)
apiVersion		v1	yes
kind	The kind of definition file.	ReplicationController	yes
metadata	The replication controller metadata.		yes
metadata ->labels	The replication controller labels.	app: couchbaseApp	no
metadata ->name	The replication controller name.	couchbase	yes
spec	The replication controller specification.		yes
spec ->replicas	The number of Pod replicas. Defaults to 1 replica.	2	yes
spec ->selector	One or more key:value expressions for selecting the Pods to manage. Pods that include label/s with the same expression/s as the selector expression/s are managed by the replication controller. A Pod could include additional labels but must include the ones in the selector to be managed by the replication controller. The selector defaults to the spec ->template -> metadata -> labels key:value expression/s if not specified. A setting of app: couchbaseApp translates to selector app=couchbaseApp.	app: couchbaseApp	yes
spec ->template	The Pod template.		yes
spec ->template -> metadata	The Pod template metadata.		yes
spec ->template -> metadata -> labels	The Pod template labels.	app: couchbaseApp	yes
spec ->template -> spec	The Pod template specification.		yes
spec ->template -> spec -> containers	The containers configuration for the Pod template.		yes
spec ->template -> spec -> containers -> image	The Docker image.	couchbase	yes
spec ->template -> spec -> containers -> name	The container name.	couchbase	yes
spec ->template -> spec -> containers -> ports	The container ports.		no
spec ->template -> spec -> containers -> ports -> containerPort	A container port.	8091	no

The couchbase-rc.yaml is listed.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: ReplicationController
metadata:
  labels:
    app: couchbaseApp
    name: couchbase
spec:
  replicas: 2
  selector:
    app: couchbaseApp
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        app: couchbaseApp
    spec:
      containers:
        -
          image: couchbase
          name: couchbase
          ports:
            -
              containerPort: 8091
```

The couchbase-rc.yaml may be created in vi editor as shown in Figure 9-11.



```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-8: ~
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
kind: "ReplicationController"
apiVersion: "v1"
metadata:
  name: "couchbase"
  labels:
    app: "couchbaseApp"
spec:
  replicas: 2
  selector:
    app: "couchbaseApp"
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        app: "couchbaseApp"
    spec:
      containers:
        -
          image: "couchbase"
          name: "couchbase"
          ports:
            -
              containerPort: 8091

:wq
```

**Figure 9-11.** Replication Controller Definition File couchbase-rc.yaml in vi Editor

Create the replication controller with the following command.

```
kubectl create -f couchbase-rc.yaml
```

Subsequently, list the replication controllers.

```
kubectl get rc
```

An output of “replicationcontrollers/couchbase” as shown in Figure 9-12 indicates that the “couchbase” replication controller has been created. The “couchbase” replication controller gets listed with the second command. The REPLICAS is listed as 2, but it does not imply that the replication controller created two new replicas. The replication controller manages Pods based on selector expression matching a Pod label. If some other Pod with the matching label is already running it is counted toward the replicas setting.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-8:~$ kubectl create -f couchbase-rc.yaml
replicationcontrollers/couchbase
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-8:~$ kubectl get rc
CONTROLLER   CONTAINER(S)   IMAGE(S)   SELECTOR   REPLICAS
couchbase    couchbase     couchbase   app=couchbaseApp   2
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-8:~$
```

**Figure 9-12.** Creating and listing a Replication Controller from the Definition File

## Listing the Pods

To list the Pods run the following command.

```
kubectl get pods
```

Two Pods get listed as shown in Figure 9-13, and one of the Pods is the Pod created earlier using a Pod definition file. The label in the Pod definition file was app: “couchbaseApp,” which is also the selector expression for the replication controller. The expression app: “couchbaseApp” translates to app= couchbaseApp. As a result only one new Pod gets created when the replication controller with replicas set to 2 is created.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-8:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME        READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
couchbase   1/1     Running   0          3m
couchbase-0hglx   1/1     Running   0          40s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3     Running   0          12m
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-8:~$
```

**Figure 9-13.** Listing the Pods for Couchbase Server

## Listing the Logs

To list the logs for a Pod run the kubectl logs command. The pod name may be copied from the preceding listing of Pods.

```
kubectl logs couchbase-0hglx
```

The output is shown in Figure 9-14. The output indicates that the WEB UI is available at <http://<ip>:8091>.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-8:~$ kubectl logs couchbase-0hglx
Starting Couchbase Server -- Web UI available at http://<ip>:8091
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-8:~$
```

**Figure 9-14.** Listing Pod Logs

## Describing the Service

To describe the couchbase service run the following command.

```
kubectl describe svc couchbase
```

The service name, namespace, labels, selector, type, IP, Port, NodePort, and endpoints get listed as shown in Figure 9-15. The selector is listed as app=couchbaseApp.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-8:~$ kubectl describe svc couchbase
Name:           couchbase
Namespace:      default
Labels:         app=couchbaseApp
Selector:       app=couchbaseApp
Type:          LoadBalancer
IP:            10.0.0.212
Port:          <unnamed>    8091/TCP
NodePort:       <unnamed>    32123/TCP
Endpoints:     172.17.0.2:8091,172.17.0.3:8091
Session Affinity: None
No events.

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-8:~$ █
```

**Figure 9-15.** Describing the Service for Couchbase

## Listing the Endpoints

List the endpoints again.

```
kubectl get endpoints
```

When the endpoints were listed earlier only one endpoint was listed because only one Pod was running. With two Pods running two endpoints get listed as shown in Figure 9-16.

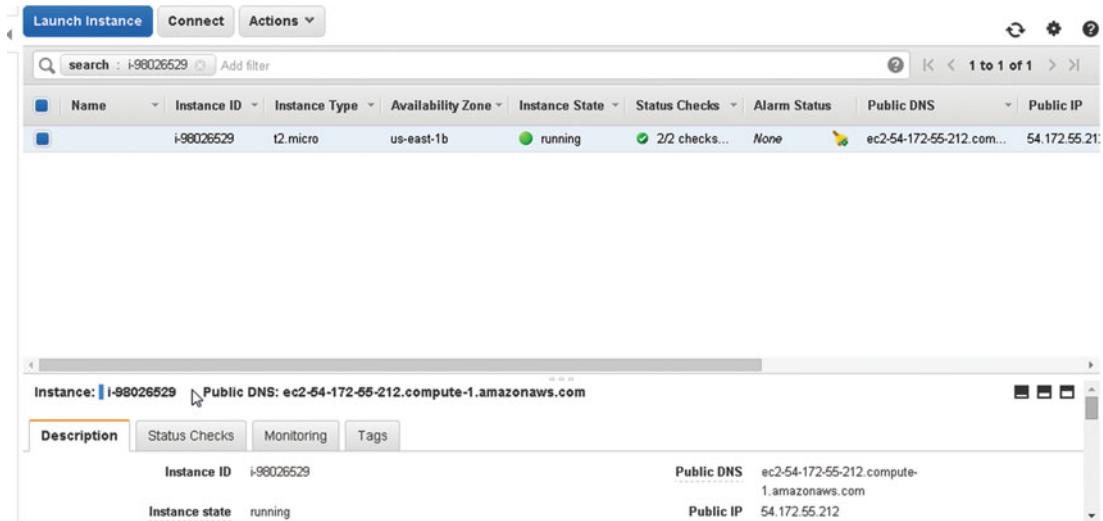
```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-8:~$ kubectl get endpoints
NAME      ENDPOINTS
couchbase  172.17.0.2:8091,172.17.0.3:8091
kubernetes 172.30.1.8:6443
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-8:~$ █
```

**Figure 9-16.** Listing the Endpoints for Couchbase

## Setting Port Forwarding

When we listed the logs for a Couchbase Pod the URL to invoke the web console was listed as `http://<ip>:8091`. The < ip > is the service endpoint of the Pod. The previous section listed two service endpoints. Invoking either of these on a host browser, for example, `http://172.17.0.2:8091` would open the web console. An Amazon EC2 Ubuntu instance does not install a web browser by default. Alternatively, we shall set port forwarding to a local machine and open the web console from a browser on a local machine,

which is required to have a browser available. To set port forwarding we need to know the Public DNS of the Amazon EC2 instance running Kubernetes. The Public DNS may be obtained from the Amazon EC2 console as shown in Figure 9-17.



**Figure 9-17.** Obtaining the Public DNS

The ports to forward to on the local machine must be open and not already bound. As an example, bind one of the endpoints to port 8093 on localhost and the other to port 8094 on the localhost with the following commands.

```
ssh -i "docker.pem" -f -nNT -L 8093:172.17.0.3:8091 ubuntu@ec2-54-172-55-212.compute-1.amazonaws.com
ssh -i "docker.pem" -f -nNT -L 8094:172.17.0.2:8091 ubuntu@ec2-54-172-55-212.compute-1.amazonaws.com
```

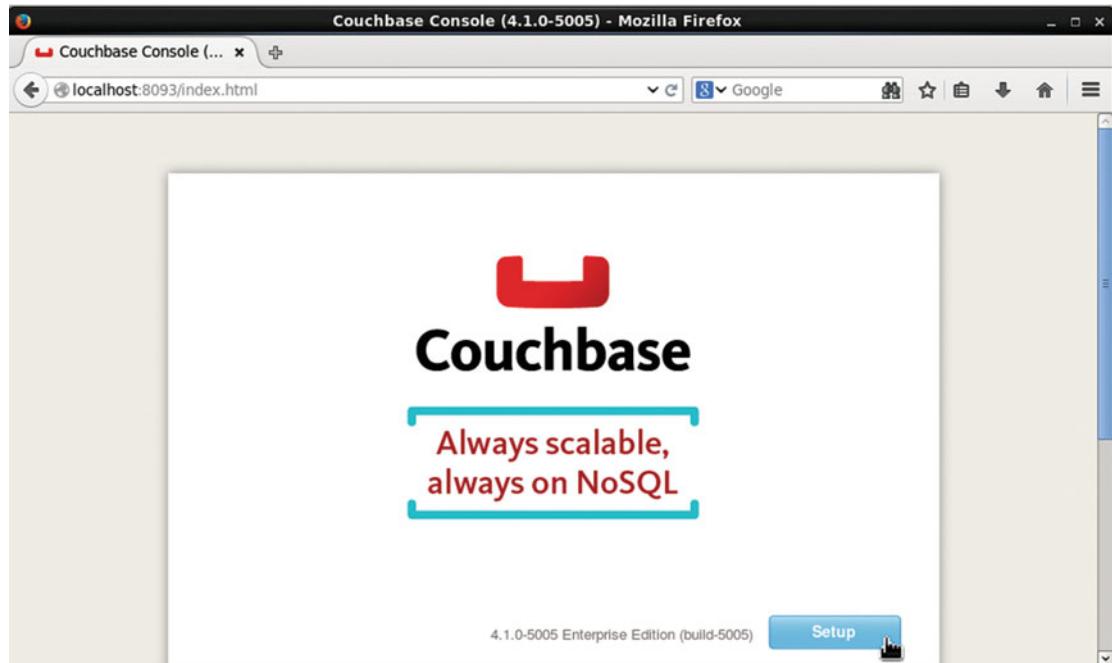
The port forwarding from the service endpoints to localhost ports gets set as shown in Figure 9-18.

```
[root@localhost ~]# ssh -i "docker.pem" -f -nNT -L 8093:172.17.0.3:8091 ubuntu@ec2-54-172-55-212.compute-1.amazonaws.com
[root@localhost ~]# ssh -i "docker.pem" -f -nNT -L 8094:172.17.0.2:8091 ubuntu@ec2-54-172-55-212.compute-1.amazonaws.com
[root@localhost ~]# █
```

**Figure 9-18.** Setting Port Forwarding to localhost:8093 and localhost:8094

## Logging into Couchbase Web Console

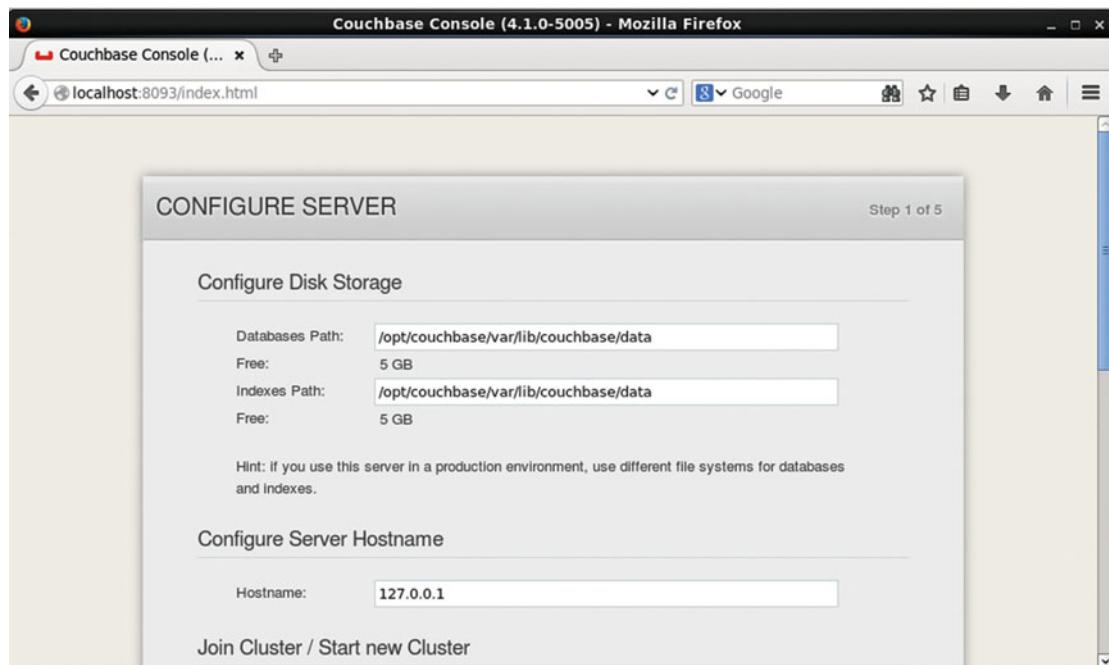
Two ports are available on the local machine to open the Couchbase web console, 8093 and 8094. Either or both of these could be used to open a Couchbase web console. For example, open the URL <http://localhost:8093> in a web browser. The Couchbase Console gets opened as shown in Figure 9-19. Click on Setup to set up the Couchbase server.



**Figure 9-19.** Setting Up Couchbase Server

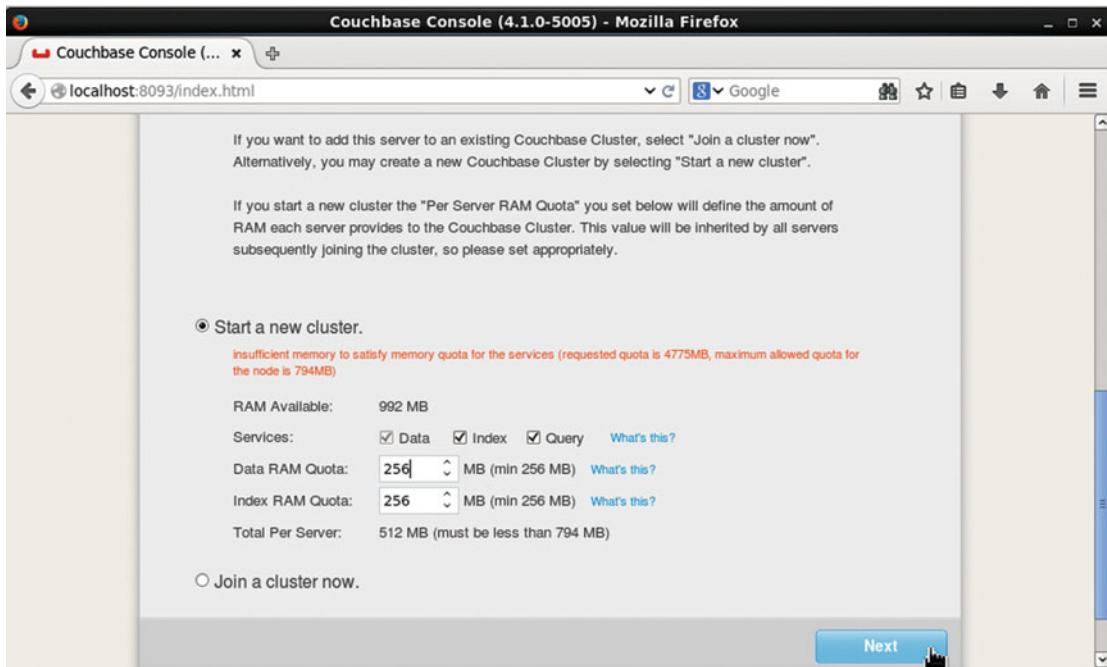
## Configuring Couchbase Server

In this section we shall configure the Couchbase server, which is not directly related to using Kubernetes but is discussed for completeness. When the Setup button is clicked the CONFIGURE SERVER window gets displayed as shown in Figure 9-20.



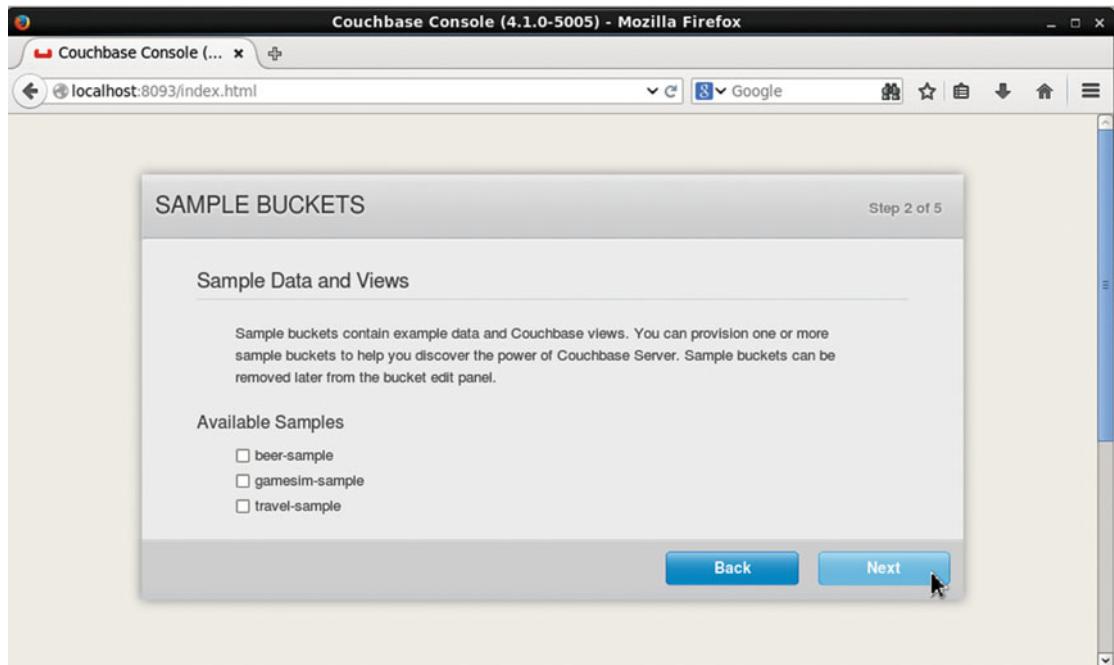
**Figure 9-20.** Configuring Server Disk Storage, Hostname

Keep the default settings and scroll down to select Start a new cluster. The RAM settings may have to be reduced if sufficient RAM is not available. Click on Next as shown in Figure 9-21.



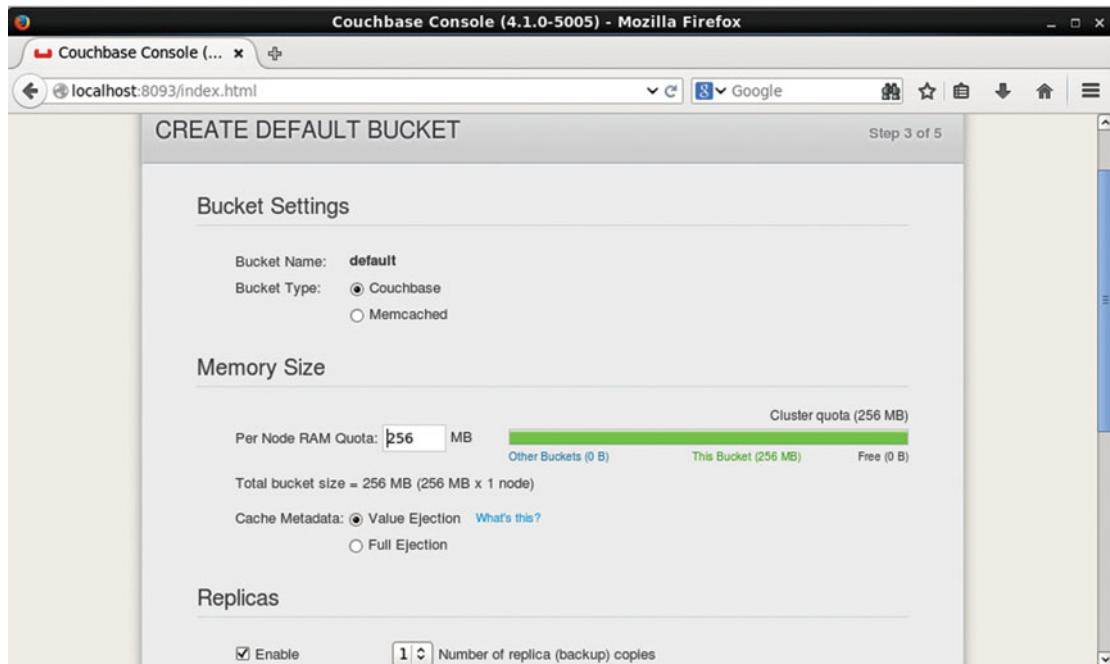
**Figure 9-21.** Starting New Cluster

Some sample buckets get listed but a sample bucket is not required to be selected. Click on Next as shown in Figure 9-22.



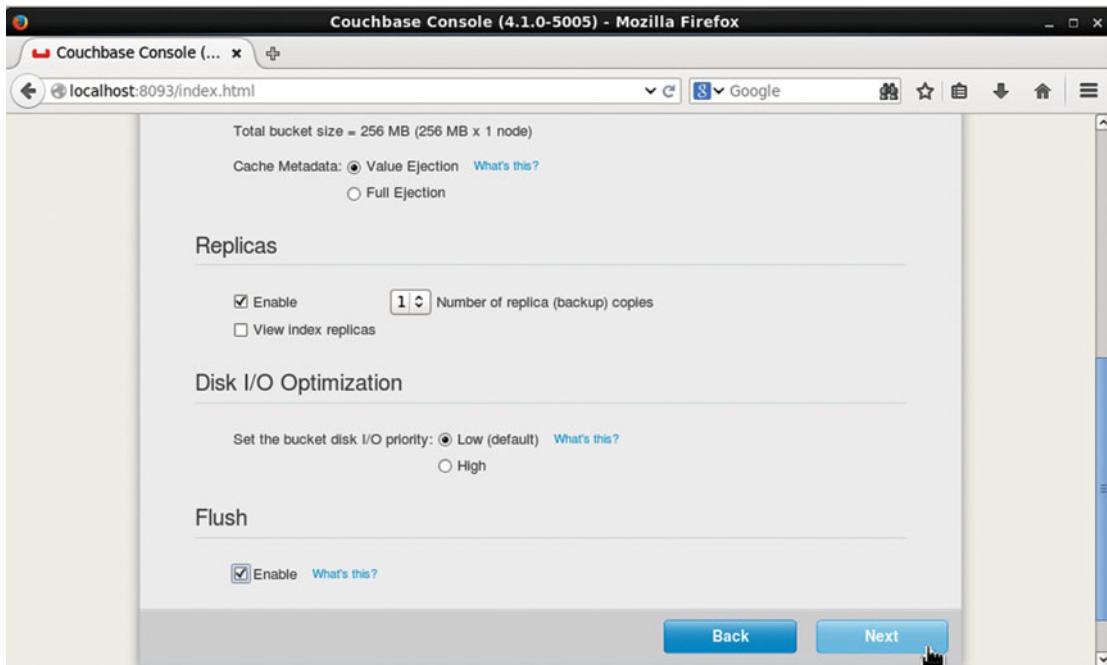
**Figure 9-22.** Sample Buckets are not required to be selected

The Create Default Bucket settings include the Bucket Type, which should be Couchbase as shown in Figure 9-23. Replicas should be enabled with the “Enable” check box.



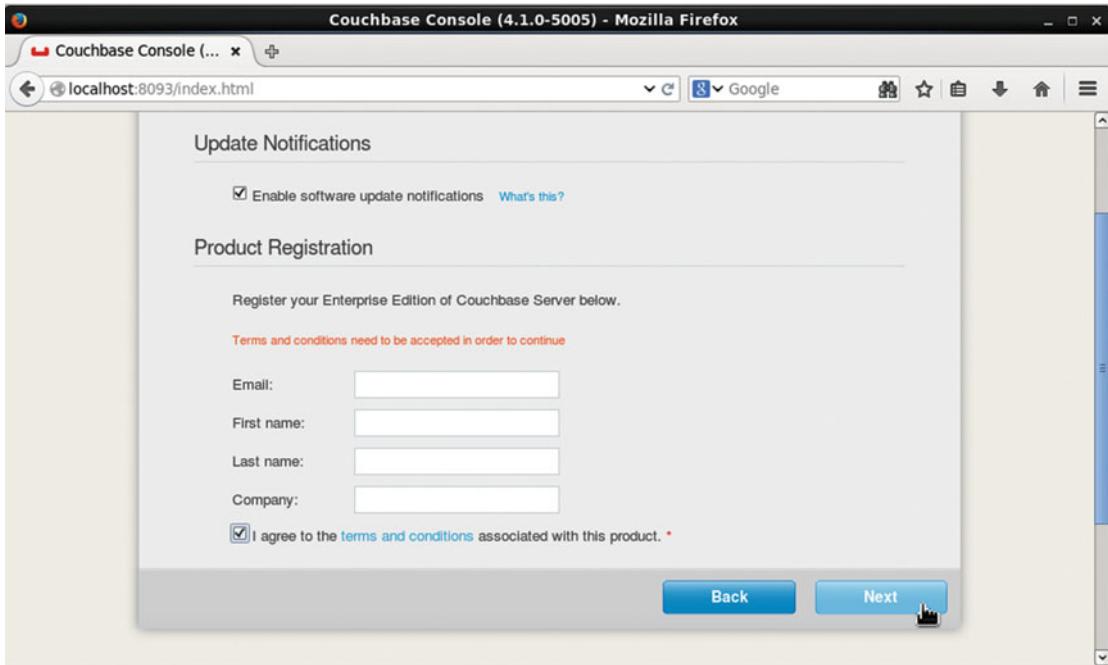
**Figure 9-23.** Configuring Default Bucket

Scroll down to enable the Flush mode with the “Enable” check box. Click on Next as shown in Figure 9-24.



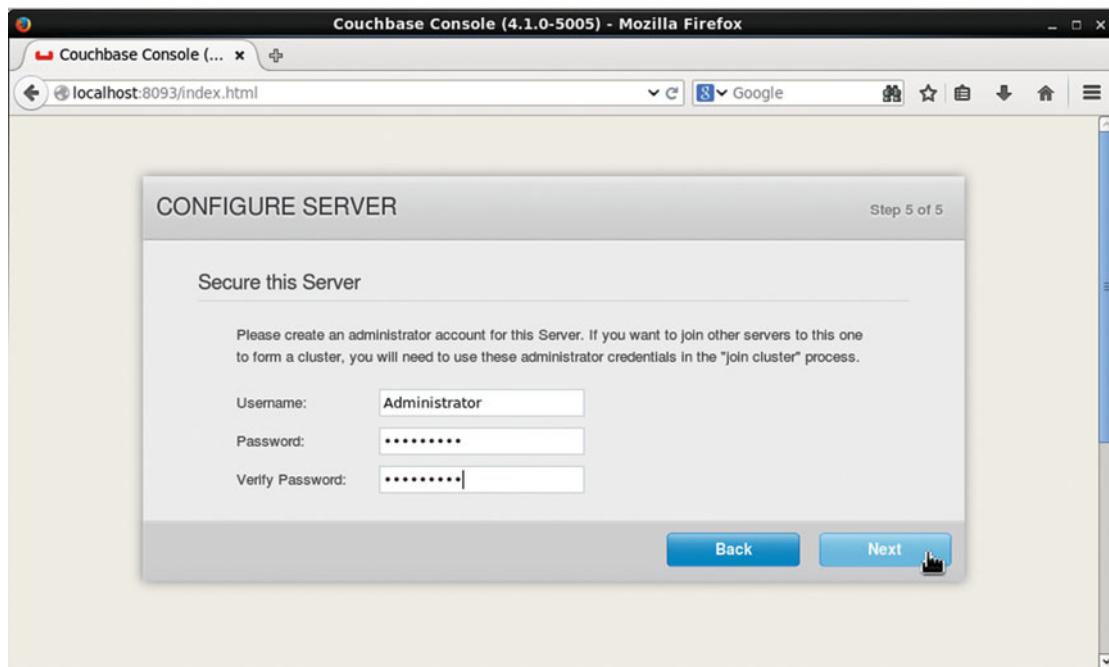
**Figure 9-24.** Enabling Flush Mode and completing Server Configuration

Next, accept the terms and conditions as shown in Figure 9-25 and click on Next.



**Figure 9-25.** Accepting Terms and Conditions

To secure the server specify a Password and specify the same password in the Verify Password field as shown in Figure 9-26.



**Figure 9-26.** Securing the Server with Username and Password

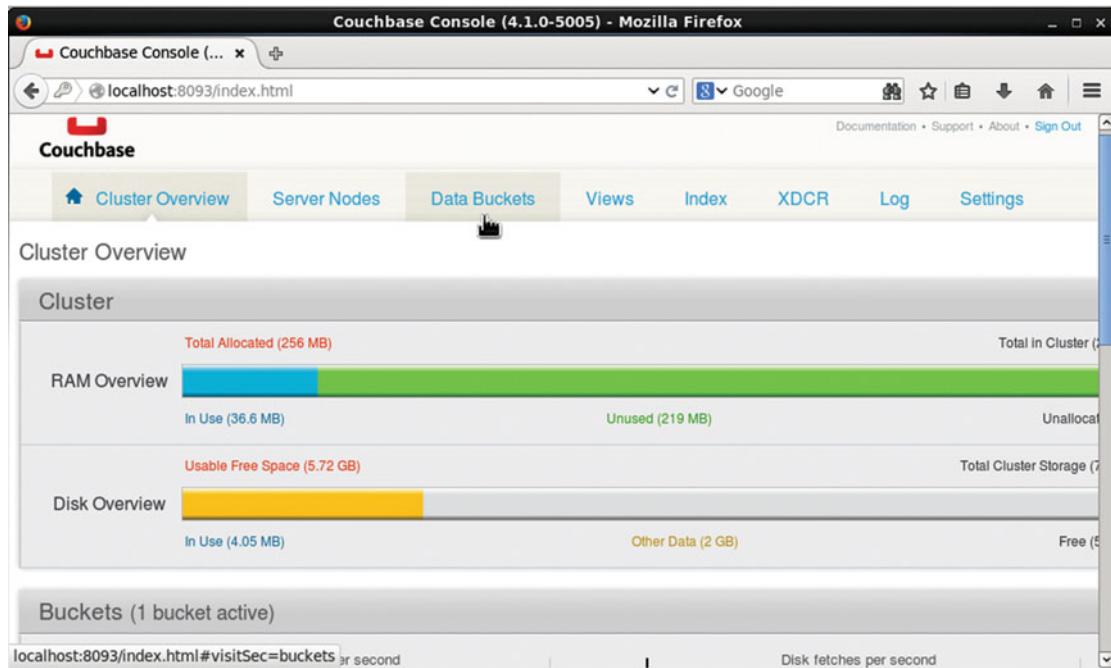
The Couchbase server gets configured. Select the Server Nodes tab and the Server Node Name is listed as shown in Figure 9-27. The Server Node Name is one of the service endpoints.

The screenshot shows the Couchbase Console interface in Mozilla Firefox. The title bar reads "Couchbase Console (4.1.0-5005) - Mozilla Firefox". The address bar shows the URL "localhost:8093/index.html#sec=documents&viewsBucket=default&documentsPageNumber=1". The main navigation menu at the top includes Cluster Overview, Server Nodes (which is selected and highlighted in blue), Data Buckets, Views, Index, XDCR, Log, and Settings. Below the menu, a sub-menu titled "Servers" is displayed, containing a warning message: "⚠ Fail Over Warning: At least two servers with the data service are required to provide replication!". A table lists the active servers. The first row shows the node "172.17.0.3" which is marked as "Up" with a green icon. It belongs to "Group 1" and is performing "Data Index Query". Its resource usage is shown as: RAM Usage 82.7%, Swap Usage N/A, CPU Usage 7.92%, and Data/Disk Usage 4.06MB / 4.07MB. The status also indicates 2/0 items (Active / Replica). There are buttons for "Rebalance", "Add Server", "Server Groups", "Fail Over", and "Remove". The bottom of the browser window shows the URL "localhost:8093/index.html#visitSec=servers".

**Figure 9-27.** Server Node Name is the same as a Service Endpoint

## Adding Documents

Next, we shall add some documents to the Couchbase server. Select the Data Buckets tab as shown in Figure 9-28.



**Figure 9-28.** Selecting Data Buckets Tab

The default bucket gets listed as shown in Figure 9-29. Click on Documents.

The screenshot shows the Couchbase Console interface in Mozilla Firefox. The title bar reads "Couchbase Console (4.1.0-5005) - Mozilla Firefox". The address bar shows "localhost:8093/index.html#sec=buckets". The main navigation menu includes Cluster Overview, Server Nodes, Data Buckets (which is selected and highlighted in grey), Views, Index, XDCR, Log, and Settings. Below the menu, a sub-header "Data Buckets" is displayed. A table titled "Couchbase Buckets" lists one entry: "default". The table columns are Bucket Name, Data Nodes, Item Count, Ops/sec, Disk Fetches/sec, RAM/Quota Usage, and Data/Disk Usage. The "default" row shows 1 data node, 0 items, 0 ops/sec, 0 disk fetches/sec, 36.6MB / 256MB RAM usage, and 4.04MB / 4.05MB data/disk usage. To the right of the table is a button labeled "Documents" with a document icon. At the bottom of the page, there is a copyright notice: "Copyright © 2015 Couchbase, Inc. All rights reserved." and the URL "localhost:8093/index.html#sec=documents&viewsBucket=default&documentsPageNumber=0".

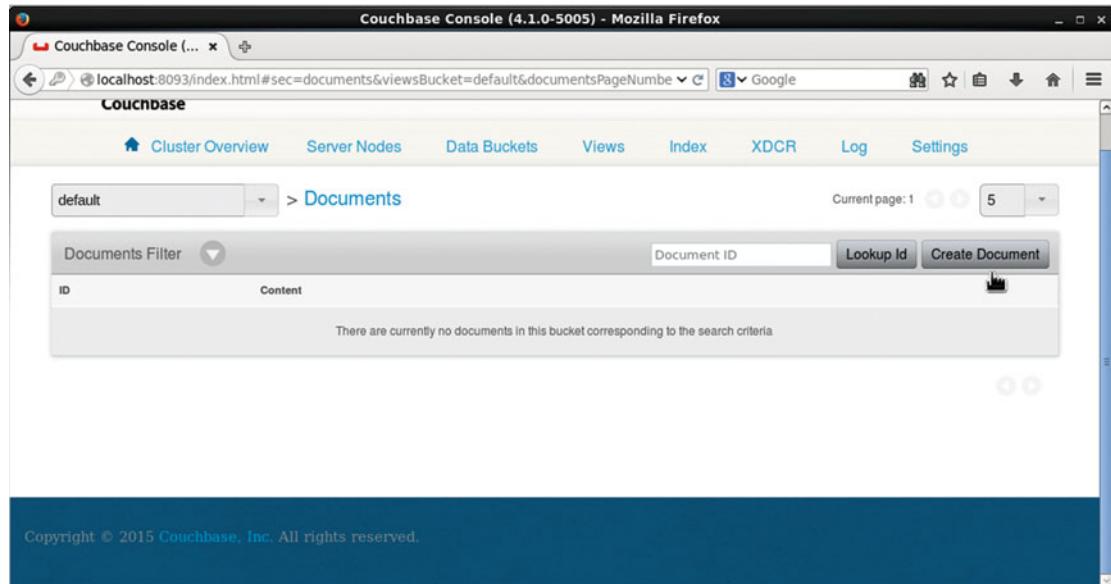
**Figure 9-29.** Clicking on Documents Button for the default Bucket

Initially the “default” bucket is empty as shown in Figure 9-30.

The screenshot shows the Couchbase Console interface in Mozilla Firefox. The title bar reads "Couchbase Console (4.1.0-5005) - Mozilla Firefox". The address bar shows the URL "localhost:8093/index.html#sec=documents&viewsBucket=default&docum...". The main navigation menu includes Cluster Overview, Server Nodes, Data Buckets, Views, Index, XDCR, Log, and Settings. Below the menu, a dropdown shows "default" selected. The current page is "Documents". A message at the top right says "Current page: 1" with a page number "5" next to it. A "Documents Filter" dropdown is open. On the right, there are buttons for "Document ID", "Lookup Id", and "Create Doc". A table below has columns "ID" and "Content". A message in the table area states, "There are currently no documents in this bucket corresponding to the search criteria". At the bottom left, a copyright notice reads "Copyright © 2015 Couchbase, Inc. All rights reserved."

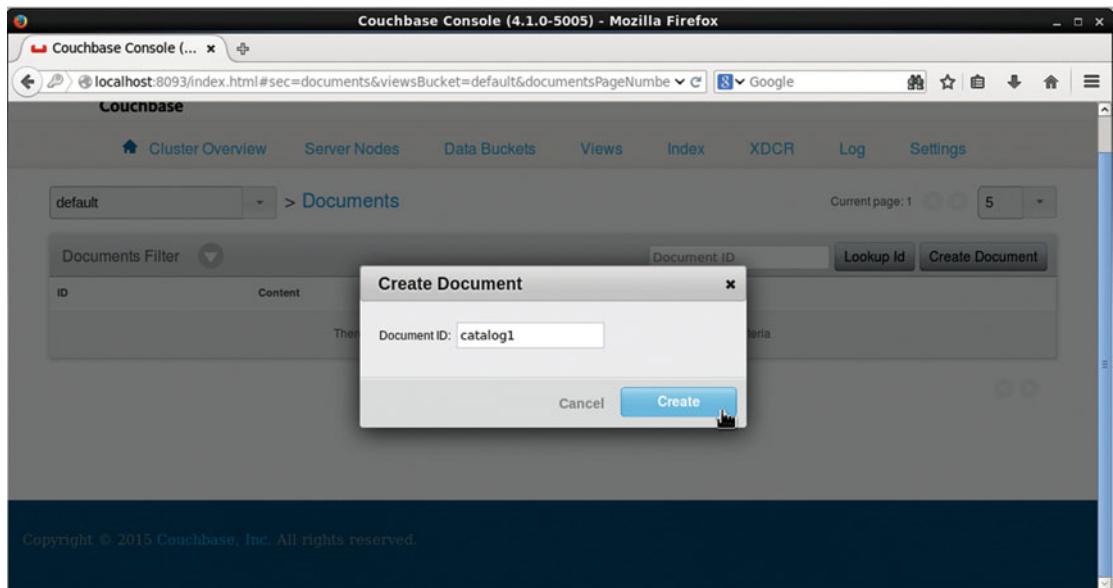
**Figure 9-30.** Initially no Documents are present in the default Data Bucket

Click on Create Document to add a document as shown in Figure 9-31.



**Figure 9-31.** Clicking on Create Document

In the Create Document dialog specify a Document Id and click on Create as shown in Figure 9-32.



**Figure 9-32.** Specifying Document ID

A new JSON document with default fields gets added as shown in Figure 9-33.

The screenshot shows the Couchbase Console interface in Mozilla Firefox. The URL is localhost:8093/index.html#sec=documents&viewsBucket=default&documentsPageNumber=1. The navigation bar includes Cluster Overview, Server Nodes, Data Buckets, Views, Index, XDCR, Log, and Settings. Below the navigation is a breadcrumb trail: default > Documents. A modal window titled "catalog1" displays the following JSON code:

```
1 { "click": "to edit",
2   "new in 2.0": "there are no reserved field names"
3 }
4 }
```

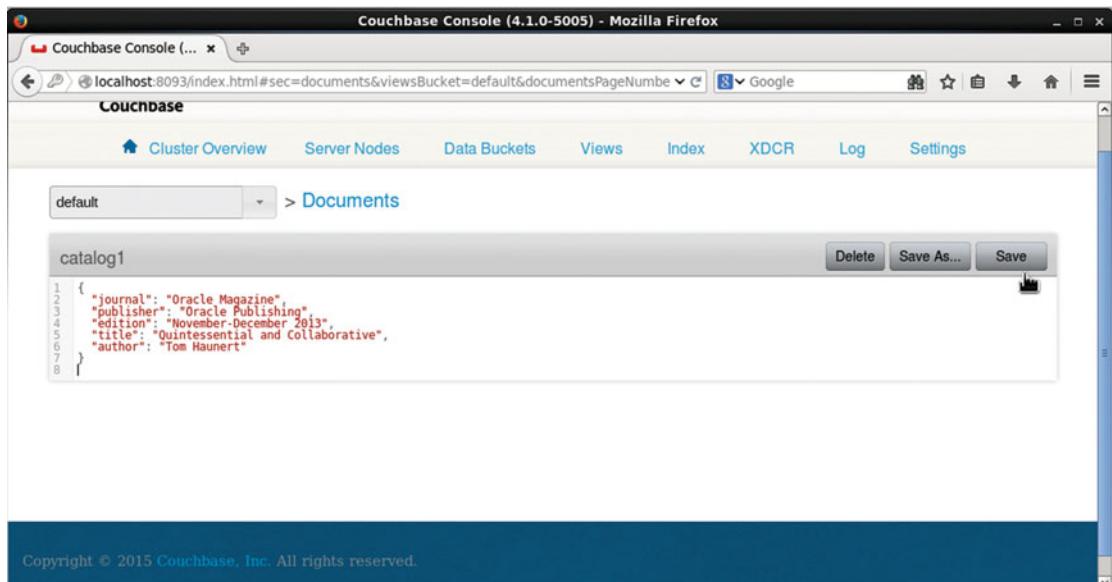
Buttons for Delete, Save As..., and Save are visible at the top right of the modal. At the bottom left of the main page, there is a copyright notice: "Copyright © 2015 Couchbase, Inc. All rights reserved."

**Figure 9-33.** The catalog1 Document gets created with Default Fields

Copy and paste the following JSON document into the catalog1 document.

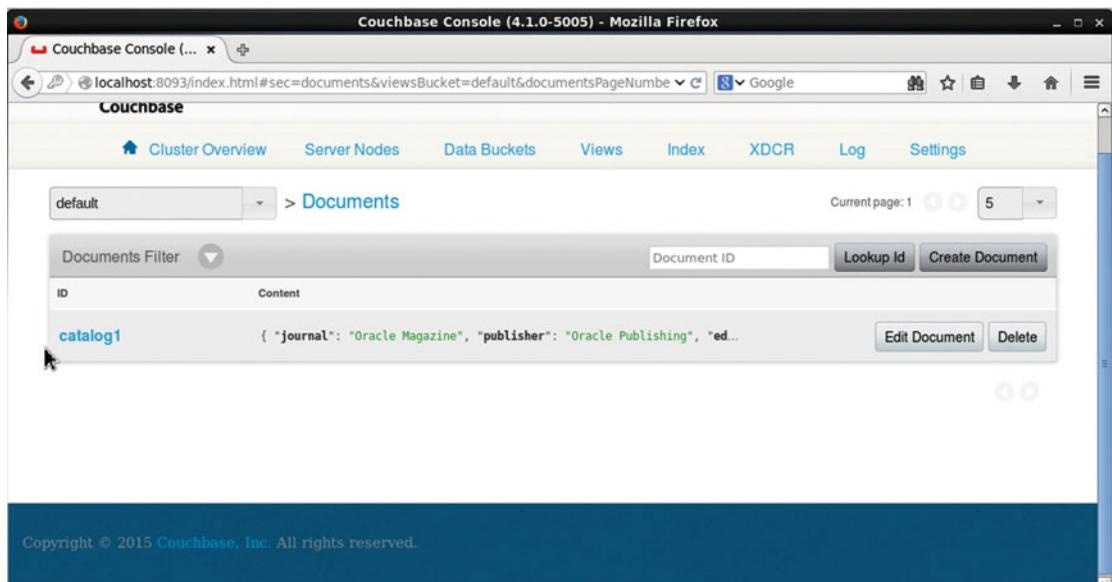
```
{
  "journal": "Oracle Magazine",
  "publisher": "Oracle Publishing",
  "edition": "November-December 2013",
  "title": "Quintessential and Collaborative",
  "author": "Tom Haunert"
}
```

Click on Save to update the catalog1 document as shown in Figure 9-34.



**Figure 9-34.** Saving a JSON Document

The catalog1 document gets saved and gets listed when the Documents link for the “default” bucket is selected as shown in Figure 9-35.

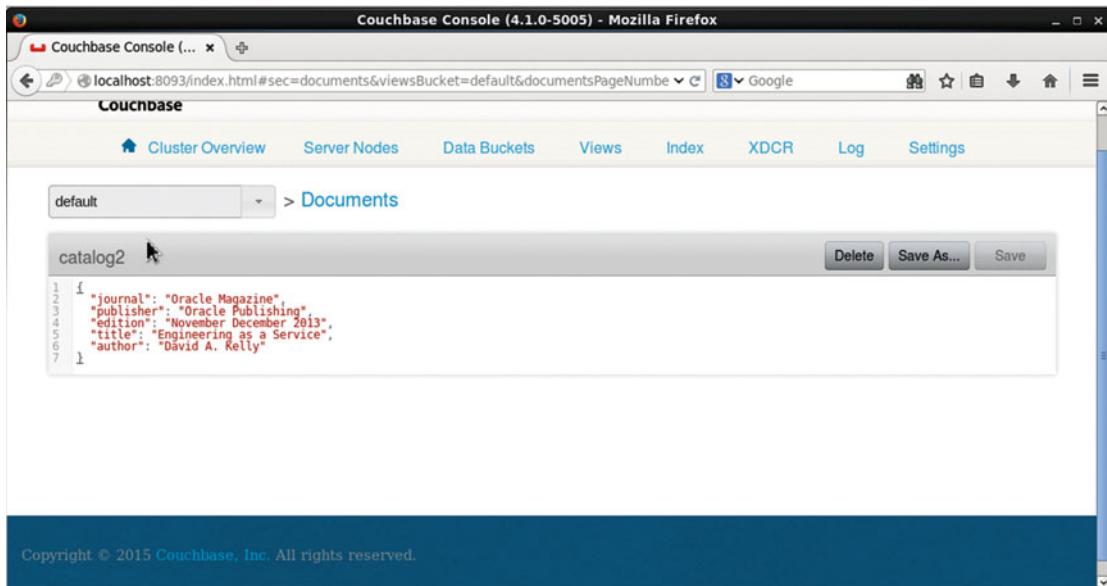


**Figure 9-35.** The catalog1 Document in default Bucket

Similarly add another document with Document ID as catalog2 and copy and paste the following listing to the document.

```
{  
  "journal": "Oracle Magazine",  
  "publisher": "Oracle Publishing",  
  "edition": "November December 2013",  
  "title": "Engineering as a Service",  
  "author": "David A. Kelly",  
}
```

The catalog2 document is shown in Figure 9-36.



**Figure 9-36.** Adding another Document catalog2

The Documents link for the “default” bucket links the two documents added as shown in Figure 9-37.

The screenshot shows the Couchbase Console interface in Mozilla Firefox. The title bar reads "Couchbase Console (4.1.0-5005) - Mozilla Firefox". The address bar shows the URL "localhost:8093/index.html#sec=documents&viewsBucket=default&documentsPageNumber=1". The main navigation menu includes Cluster Overview, Server Nodes, Data Buckets, Views, Index, XDCR, Log, and Settings. Below the menu, a dropdown shows "default" and a breadcrumb trail indicates the current location is "Documents". A "Documents Filter" dropdown is open. On the right, there are buttons for Document ID, Lookup Id, and Create Document. The main content area displays two document entries:

ID	Content	Edit Document	Delete
catalog1	{ "journal": "Oracle Magazine", "publisher": "Oracle Publishing", "ed...	Edit Document	Delete
catalog2	{ "journal": "Oracle Magazine", "publisher": "Oracle Publishing", "ed...	Edit Document	Delete

**Figure 9-37.** Listing the two Documents in the default Bucket

## Starting an Interactive Shell

Next, we shall start an interactive bash shell to access Couchbase server from the command line. Obtain the container id for one of the Docker containers based on the Docker image “couchbase” as shown in Figure 9-38.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-8:~$ sudo docker ps
CONTAINER ID        IMAGE               CREATED             STATUS              PORTS          NAMES
e1b2fe2f24bd        couchbase          21 minutes ago   Up 21 minutes           "/entrypoint.sh
couch"              21 minutes ago   Up 21 minutes           k8s_couchba
se.f5b1eeab_couchbase_0hglx_default_6ed4ce7e-acd1-11e5-ab84-122a6515798d_ae8fe51
f
3b56efa8ab4a        gcr.io/google_containers/pause:0.8.0    21 minutes ago   Up 21 minutes           "/pause"
                                                 k8s_POD.3e8
9e8bb_couchbase_0hglx_default_6ed4ce7e-acd1-11e5-ab84-122a6515798d_53af882b
12f63b043e53        couchbase          24 minutes ago   Up 24 minutes           "/entrypoint.sh
couch"              24 minutes ago   Up 24 minutes           k8s_couchba
se.f5b1eeab_couchbase_default_040029e7-acd1-11e5-ab84-122a6515798d_dd2b9803
0f14ad70fb81        gcr.io/google_containers/pause:0.8.0    24 minutes ago   Up 24 minutes           "/pause"
                                                 k8s_POD.3e8
9e8bb_couchbase_default_040029e7-acd1-11e5-ab84-122a6515798d_ab56c560
4b9ad3d3f90f        gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1   "/hyperkube prox
y --m"              32 minutes ago   Up 32 minutes           determined_
galileo
f0f48eb1b91d        gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1   "/hyperkube apis
erver"              33 minutes ago   Up 33 minutes           k8s_apiserv
er.cfb70250_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c4a_573273
63
ebd8bec6dcab        gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1   "/hyperkube cont
rolle"              33 minutes ago   Up 33 minutes           k8s_control
ler-manager.1598ee5c_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c
4a_e7934968
6d70a9a0797a        gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1   "/hyperkube sche
duler"              33 minutes ago   Up 33 minutes           k8s_schedul
er.2744e742_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c4a_8bbc
aa_3c
5d8dcfa2378c        gcr.io/google_containers/pause:0.8.0      "/pause"
```

**Figure 9-38.** Obtaining the Container Id

Using the container id, start an interactive shell.

```
sudo docker exec -it e1b2fe2f24bd bash
```

An interactive shell gets started as shown in Figure 9-39.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-8:~$ sudo docker exec -it e1b2fe2f24bd bash
root@couchbase-0hglx:/#
```

**Figure 9-39.** Starting an Interactive Shell

## Using the cbtransfer Tool

From the interactive shell command-line tools may be run to access the Couchbase server. As an example run the cbtransfer tool, which is used to transfer data between clusters and to/from files, to output the documents in the default bucket at server `http://172.17.0.3:8091` to stdout.

```
cbtransfer http://172.17.0.3:8091/ stdout:
```

The two documents added from the web console get output as shown in Figure 9-40.

```
root@couchbase-0hglx:/# cbtransfer http://172.17.0.3:8091/ stdout:
set catalog2 0 0 157
>{"journal":"Oracle Magazine","publisher":"Oracle Publishing","edition":"November
 December 2013","title":"Engineering as a Service","author":"David A. Kelly"}
set catalog1 0 0 162
>{"journal":"Oracle Magazine","publisher":"Oracle Publishing","edition":"November
-December 2013","title":"Quintessential and Collaborative","author":"Tom Haunert
"}
[########################################] 100.0% (2/estimated 2 msgs)
bucket: default, msgs transferred...
      :          total |     last |   per sec
  byte :            319 |       319 |    449.0
done
root@couchbase-0hglx:/#
```

**Figure 9-40.** Using the cbtransfer Tool

In the next section we shall create a Couchbase cluster imperatively using Kubernetes on the command line. As we shall be using the same replication controller name and service name, delete the replication controller “couchbase” and also delete the service called “couchbase.”

```
kubectl delete rc couchbase
kubectl delete svc couchbase
```

# Creating a Couchbase Cluster Imperatively

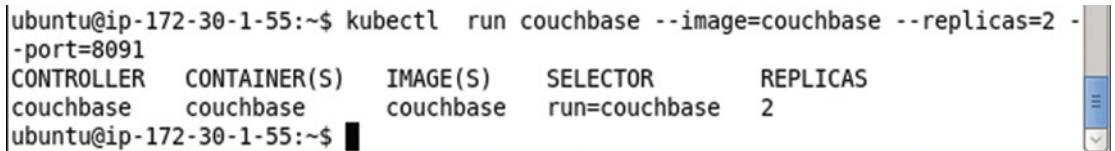
In the following subsections we shall create a Couchbase cluster on the command line.

## Creating a Replication Controller

Create a replication controller called “couchbase” using the Docker image “couchbase” with two replicas and container port as 8091 with the following command.

```
kubectl run couchbase --image=couchbase --replicas=2 --port=8091
```

The replication controller gets created as shown in Figure 9-41. The default selector is “run=couchbase,” which implies that pods with the label “run=couchbase” shall be managed by the replication controller. The Pod labels get set to “run=couchbase”.



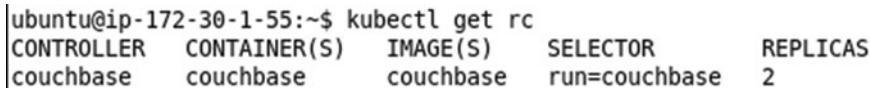
```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-55:~$ kubectl run couchbase --image=couchbase --replicas=2 --port=8091
CONTROLLER   CONTAINER(S)   IMAGE(S)   SELECTOR   REPLICAS
couchbase    couchbase     couchbase   run=couchbase 2
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-55:~$
```

**Figure 9-41.** Creating a Replication Controller Imperatively

List the replication controllers with the following command.

```
kubectl get rc
```

The couchbase replication controller gets listed as shown in Figure 9-42.



```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-55:~$ kubectl get rc
CONTROLLER   CONTAINER(S)   IMAGE(S)   SELECTOR   REPLICAS
couchbase    couchbase     couchbase   run=couchbase 2
```

**Figure 9-42.** Listing the Replication Controllers

## Listing the Pods

To list the Pods run the following command.

```
kubectl get pods
```

The two pods get listed as shown in Figure 9-43.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-55:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME          READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
couchbase-rd440   1/1     Running   0          31s
couchbase-x4cyu   1/1     Running   0          31s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1   3/3     Running   0          1m
```

**Figure 9-43.** Listing the Pods

To describe any particular Pod run the `kubectl describe pod` command, for example, the Pod `couchbase-rd440` is described with the following command.

```
kubectl describe pod couchbase-rd440
```

The Pod detail gets output as shown in Figure 9-44. The Pod label is listed as `run=couchbase`.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-55:~$ kubectl describe pod couchbase-rd440
Name:           couchbase-rd440
Namespace:      default
Image(s):       couchbase
Node:          127.0.0.1/127.0.0.1
Labels:         run=couchbase
Status:        Running
Reason:        
Message:      
IP:            172.17.0.3
Replication Controllers: couchbase (1/1 replicas created)
Containers:
  couchbase:
    Image:        couchbase
    State:        Running
    Started:     Sun, 27 Dec 2015 20:44:00 +0000
    Ready:        True
    Restart Count: 0
Conditions:
  Type  Status
  Ready  True
Events:
FirstSeen     LastSeen   SubobjectPath   Reason   Count F
Sun, 27 Dec 2015 20:43:39 +0000  Sun, 27 Dec 2015 20:43:39 +0000  1 { 
kubelet 127.0.0.1} implicitly required container POD pulled P
od container image "gcr.io/google_containers/pause:0.8.0" already present on mac hine
Sun, 27 Dec 2015 20:43:39 +0000  Sun, 27 Dec 2015 20:43:39 +0000  1 { 
scheduler } scheduled S
```

**Figure 9-44.** Describing a Pod

## Creating a Service

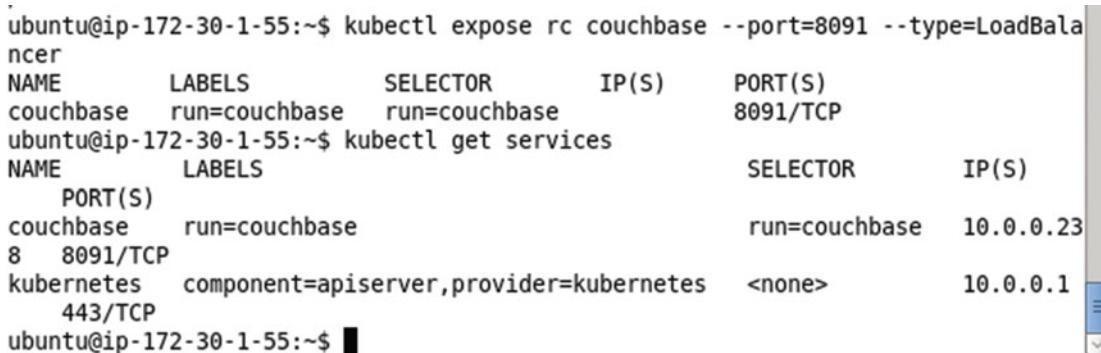
To create a service from the replication controller exposed at port 8091, run the following command, which also specified the service type.

```
kubectl expose rc couchbase --port=8091 --type=LoadBalancer
```

Subsequently list the services.

```
kubectl get services
```

The couchbase service gets created and listed as shown in Figure 9-45.



```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-55:~$ kubectl expose rc couchbase --port=8091 --type=LoadBalancer
NAME      LABELS      SELECTOR      IP(S)      PORT(S)
couchbase  run=couchbase  run=couchbase  8091/TCP
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-55:~$ kubectl get services
NAME      LABELS      SELECTOR      IP(S)
          PORT(S)
couchbase  run=couchbase  run=couchbase  10.0.0.23
8  8091/TCP
kubernetes  component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes  <none>    10.0.0.1
  443/TCP
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-55:~$
```

**Figure 9-45.** Creating a Service for Couchbase Imperatively

To describe the couchbase service run the following command.

```
kubectl describe svc couchbase
```

The service name, namespace, labels, selector, type, Ip, port, node port, and endpoints get listed as shown in Figure 9-46. Two endpoints are listed because the service manages two pods.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-55:~$ kubectl describe svc couchbase
Name:           couchbase
Namespace:      default
Labels:          run=couchbase
Selector:        run=couchbase
Type:           LoadBalancer
IP:             10.0.0.238
Port:          <unnamed>     8091/TCP
NodePort:       <unnamed>     32218/TCP
Endpoints:     172.17.0.2:8091,172.17.0.3:8091
Session Affinity: None
No events.

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-55:~$ █
```

**Figure 9-46.** Describing a Service

## Scaling the Cluster

A Couchbase cluster may be scaled up or down using the Kubernetes cluster manager. For example, to scale down the replication controller called “couchbase” to 1 replica, run the following `kubectl scale` command.

```
kubectl scale rc couchbase --replicas=1
```

An output of “scaled” indicates that the rc has been scaled. But the “scaled” output does not always imply that the scaled number of replicas are running and ready. Run the following command to list the Pods.

```
kubectl get pods
```

A single Couchbase Pod gets listed as shown in Figure 9-47.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-55:~$ kubectl scale rc couchbase --replicas=1
scaled
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-55:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME        READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
couchbase-rd440   1/1     Running   0          1m
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3     Running   0          2m
```

**Figure 9-47.** Scaling Down the Couchbase Cluster to a Single Pod

Run the following command to list the replication controllers and the couchbase rc is listed with replicas as 1 as shown in Figure 9-48.

```
kubectl get rc
```

To scale the rc back to 2 Pods run the following command.

```
kubectl scale rc couchbase --replicas=2
```

Subsequently list the Pods.

```
kubectl get pods
```

Initially the new Pod to be added could be not running or not ready but after a few seconds two Pods get listed as running and ready as shown in Figure 9-48.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-55:~$ kubectl get rc
CONTROLLER CONTAINER(S) IMAGE(S) SELECTOR      REPLICAS
couchbase   couchbase   couchbase run=couchbase 1
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-55:~$ kubectl scale rc couchbase --replicas=2
scaled
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-55:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS
RESTARTS   AGE
couchbase-h1xm3   0/1     Image: couchbase is ready, container is creatin
g   0          10s
couchbase-rd44o    1/1     Running
          0          3m
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3     Running
          0          4m
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-55:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS   RESTARTS   AGE
couchbase-h1xm3   1/1     Running   0          22s
couchbase-rd44o    1/1     Running   0          3m
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3     Running   0          4m
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-55:~$
```

**Figure 9-48.** Scaling Up the Couchbase Cluster

## Keeping the Replication Level

The main purpose of a replication controller is to keep the number of replicas to the configured level. With 2 replicas configured in the couchbase rc the number of Pods is maintained at 2. As an example, delete one of the Pods.

```
kubectl delete pod couchbase-4z3hx
```

One pod gets deleted, but it takes the total number of pods to 1, which is below the number of configured replicas. As a result the replication controller starts a new replica. Subsequently list the pods.

```
kubectl get pods
```

Initially the new Pod could be not running and/or not ready but after a few seconds two pods are running and ready as shown in Figure 9-49.

The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-55: ~". The user runs several commands to manage a Couchbase service and observe its deployment progress:

```

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-55:~$ kubectl run couchbase --image=couchbase --replicas=2 -port=8091
CONTROLLER  CONTAINER(S)  IMAGE(S)  SELECTOR  REPLICAS
couchbase   couchbase    couchbase  run=couchbase  2

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-55:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME        READY  STATUS  RESTARTS  AGE
couchbase-4z3hx  1/1   Running  0          26s
couchbase-zwqxc  1/1   Running  0          26s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3   Running  0          11m

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-55:~$ kubectl delete pod couchbase-4z3hx
pods/couchbase-4z3hx

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-55:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME        READY  STATUS
RESTARTS  AGE
couchbase-43kb4  0/1   Image: couchbase is ready, container is creating
g  0          9s
couchbase-zwqxc  1/1   Running
  0          50s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3   Running
  0          12m

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-55:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME        READY  STATUS  RESTARTS  AGE
couchbase-43kb4  0/1   Running  0          20s
couchbase-zwqxc  1/1   Running  0          1m
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3   Running  0          12m

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-55:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME        READY  STATUS  RESTARTS  AGE
couchbase-43kb4  1/1   Running  0          26s
couchbase-zwqxc  1/1   Running  0          1m
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3   Running  0          12m
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-55:~$ █

```

**Figure 9-49.** Running the `kubectl get pods` Command Multiple Times until all Pods are Running and Ready

Describe the couchbase service.

`kubectl describe svc couchbase`

Two endpoints get listed as shown in Figure 9-50.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-55:~$ kubectl describe svc couchbase
Name:           couchbase
Namespace:      default
Labels:         run=couchbase
Selector:       run=couchbase
Type:          LoadBalancer
IP:            10.0.0.238
Port:          <unnamed>    8091/TCP
NodePort:       <unnamed>    32218/TCP
Endpoints:     172.17.0.2:8091,172.17.0.3:8091
Session Affinity: None
No events.
```

**Figure 9-50.** Describing the couchbase Service

## Setting Port Forwarding

Set port forwarding of a service endpoint to a localhost port, for example, port 8095, as discussed earlier.

```
ssh -i "docker.pem" -f -nNT -L 8095:172.17.0.2:8091 ubuntu@ec2-52-91-80-177.compute-1.amazonaws.com
```

The preceding command does not generate any output as shown in Figure 9-51.

```
[root@localhost ~]# ssh -i "docker.pem" -f -nNT -L 8095:172.17.0.2:8091 ubuntu@ec2-52-91-80-177.compute-1.amazonaws.com
[root@localhost ~]#
```

**Figure 9-51.** Setting Port Forwarding

## Logging in to Couchbase Admin Console

Login to the Couchbase Web Console using the forwarded port on localhost.

```
http://localhost:8095/index.html
```

The Couchbase Web Console gets displayed as shown in Figure 9-52.



**Figure 9-52.** Displaying the Couchbase Console

## Summary

In this chapter we used Kubernetes cluster manager to create a Couchbase cluster. We discussed both the declarative and imperative approaches. The declarative approach makes use of definition files and the imperative approach makes use of command-line configuration parameters. We demonstrated accessing the Couchbase Web Console from a localhost browser using port forwarding. We also used the cbtransfer tool in an interactive shell for a Docker container running Couchbase server. Docker image “couchbase” is used to create a Couchbase server. In the next chapter we shall discuss using Kubernetes cluster manager for an Apache Hadoop cluster.

## PART IV



# Apache Hadoop Ecosystem

## CHAPTER 10



# Using Apache Hadoop Ecosystem

Apache Hadoop has evolved to be the de facto framework for processing large quantities of data. Apache Hadoop ecosystem consists of several projects including Apache Hive and Apache HBase. The Docker image “svds/cdh” is based on the latest CDH release and includes all the main frameworks in the Apache Hadoop ecosystem. All the frameworks such as Apache Hadoop, Apache Hive, and Apache HBase are installed in the same Docker image as a result facilitating development of applications that make use of multiple frameworks from the Apache Hadoop ecosystem. In this chapter we shall discuss using Kubernetes cluster manager to manage a cluster of Pods based on the svds/cdh image.

Setting the Environment

Creating an Apache Hadoop Cluster Declaratively

Creating an Apache Hadoop Cluster Imperatively

## Setting the Environment

The following software is required to be installed for this chapter, which is the same as the software used in other chapters except for the Docker image.

- Docker Engine (latest version)
- Kubernetes Cluster Manager (version 1.01)
- Kubectl (version 1.01)
- Docker image svds/cdh (latest version)

Install the software as discussed in [chapter 1](#) on an Ubuntu instance on Amazon EC2. SSH Login to the Ubuntu instance.

```
ssh -i "docker.pem" ubuntu@54.86.45.173
```

Start the Docker engine with the following command.

```
sudo service docker start
```

Subsequently run the following command to verify the status of Docker.

```
sudo service docker status
```

As shown in Figure 10-1, Docker should be listed as “running.”

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-45:~$ sudo service docker status
docker start/running, process 3296
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-45:~$
```

**Figure 10-1.** Starting Docker

List the services with the following command.

```
kubectl get services
```

The kubernetes service should be listed as running as shown in Figure 10-2.

NAME	LABELS	SELECTOR	IP(S)	PORT(S)
T(S)				
kubernetes	component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes	<none>	10.0.0.1	443
/TCP				

**Figure 10-2.** Listing the “kubernetes” Service

List the Pods with the following command.

```
kubectl get pods
```

List the nodes with the following command.

```
kubectl get nodes
```

The only Pod that gets listed is for Kubernetes as shown in Figure 10-3. The node 127.0.0.1 also gets listed.

NAME	READY	STATUS	RESTARTS	AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1	3/3	Running	0	19m

NAME	LABELS	STATUS
127.0.0.1	kubernetes.io/hostname=127.0.0.1	Ready

**Figure 10-3.** Listing the Pod and Node for Kubernetes

## Creating an Apache Hadoop Cluster Declaratively

In the following subsections we shall create a Kubernetes service and a Kubernetes replication controller declaratively using definition files. A service is the external interface for Pods and routes client requests to one of the Pods. A replication controller manages the replication level of the Pods and maintains the number of replicas to the specified value in the definition file. The replication controller is also used to scale the cluster of Pods.

## Creating a Service

To run a service for the CDH Pods create a service definition file `cdh-service.yaml` and add the following (Table 10-1) fields to the definition file.

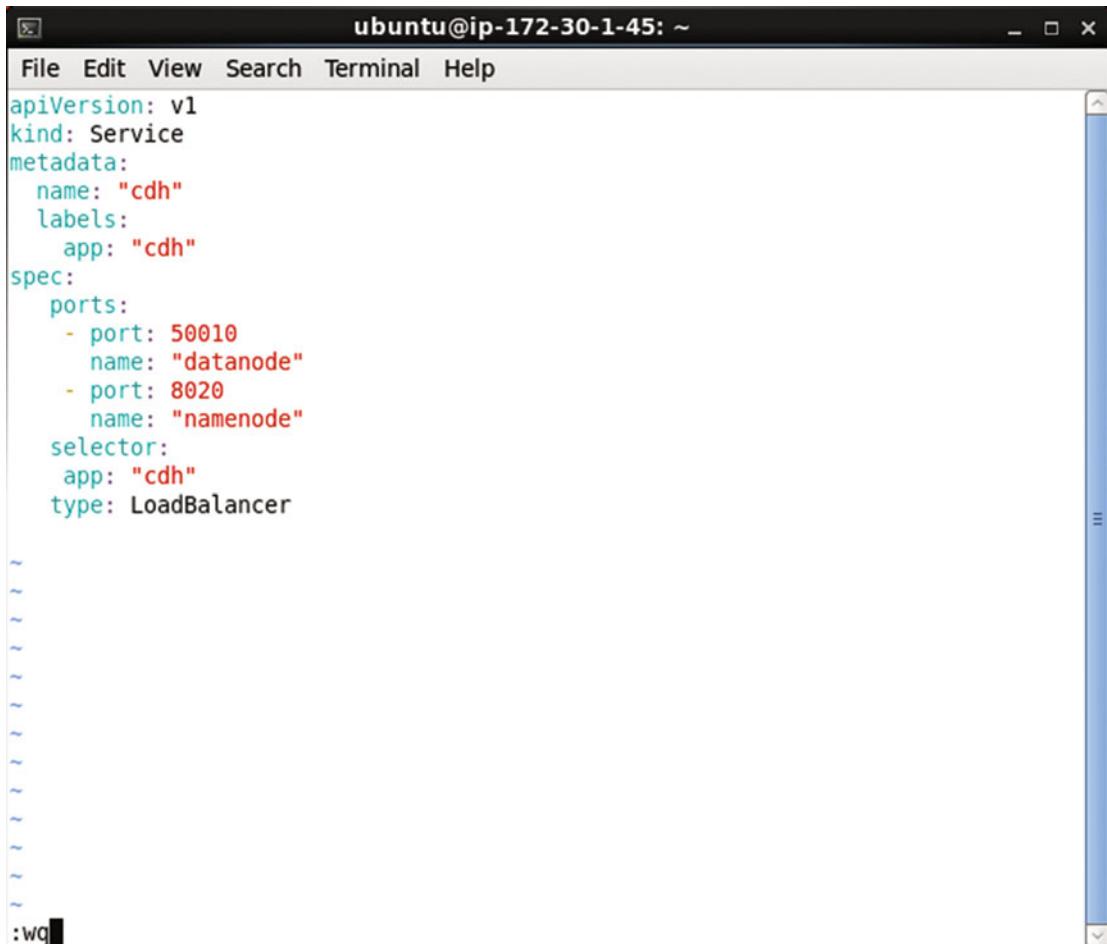
**Table 10-1.** Service Definition File Fields

Field	Description	Value	Required Field (including defaults)
apiVersion		v1	yes
kind	The kind of definition file.	Service	yes
metadata	The service metadata.		yes
metadata -> labels	The service labels.	app: cdh	no
metadata -> name	The service name.	cdh	yes
spec	The service specification.		yes
spec -> ports	The ports exposed by the service.		yes
spec -> ports -> port	A port exposed by the service. The 50010 port is for the DataNode.	50010	
spec -> ports -> port	Another port exposed by the service. The 8020 port is for the NameNode.	8020	
spec -> selector	The Pod selector. Service routes traffic to the Pods with a label matching the selector expression.	app: cdh	yes
spec -> selector -> type	The service type.	LoadBalancer	no

The service definition file `cdh-service.yaml` is listed:

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Service
metadata:
  labels:
    app: cdh
    name: cdh
spec:
  ports:
  -
    port: 50010
  -
    port: 8020
  selector:
    app: cdh
  type: LoadBalancer
```

The service definition file may be created and saved in the vi editor as shown in Figure 10-4.



A screenshot of a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-45: ~". The window contains a service definition file named "cdh-service.yaml" in the vi editor. The file content is as follows:

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Service
metadata:
  name: "cdh"
  labels:
    app: "cdh"
spec:
  ports:
    - port: 50010
      name: "datanode"
    - port: 8020
      name: "namenode"
  selector:
    app: "cdh"
  type: LoadBalancer
```

The bottom status bar shows the command ":wq" indicating the file has been saved and the session is ready to exit.

**Figure 10-4.** Service Definition File in vi Editor

Create a service from the definition file with the following command.

```
kubectl create -f cdh-service.yaml
```

Subsequently list the services.

```
kubectl get services
```

An output of "services/cdh" from the first command indicates that the service has been created as shown in Figure 10-5. The second command lists the service called "cdh." The service selector is listed as app=cdh in the SELECTOR column.

NAME	LABELS	SELECTOR	IP(S)	P
cdh	app=cdh	app=cdh	10.0.0.109	5
43/TCP				8
kubernetes	component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes	<none>	10.0.0.1	4
80/TCP				

**Figure 10-5.** Creating a Service from a Definition File

## Creating a Replication Controller

In this section we shall create a replication controller using a definition file. Create a cdh-rc.yaml file and add the following (Table 10-2) fields to the file.

**Table 10-2.** Replication Controller Definition File Fields

Field	Description	Value
apiVersion		v1
kind	The kind of definition file.	ReplicationController
metadata	The replication controller metadata.	
metadata -> labels	The replication controller labels.	app: cdh
metadata -> name	The replication controller name.	cdh-rc
spec	The replication controller specification.	
spec -> replicas	The number of Pod replicas.	2
spec -> selector	Selector key:value expression/s for selecting the Pods to manage. Pods with label/s the same as the selector expression/s are managed by the replication controller. For a single selector expression the selector expression must be the same as a spec -> template -> metadata -> labels label. The selector defaults to the spec -> template -> metadata -> labels if not specified.	Not set. Defaults to the same value as the key:value pairs in spec -> template -> metadata -> labels.
spec -> template	The Pod template.	
spec -> template-> metadata	The Pod template metadata.	
spec -> template-> labels	The Pod template labels.	app: cdh name: cdh
spec -> template -> spec	The Pod template specification	

(continued)

**Table 10-2.** (continued)

Field	Description	Value
spec ->template	The containers configuration for the Pod template	
->spec- > containers		
spec ->template	The Docker image	svds/cdh
->spec- > containers ->image		
spec ->template -> spec ->	The container name	cdh
containers ->name		

The definition file for the replication controller, `cdh-rc.yaml`, is listed.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: ReplicationController
metadata:
  labels:
    app: cdh
    name: cdh-rc
spec:
  replicas: 2
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        app: cdh
        name: cdh
    spec:
      containers:
        image: svds/cdh
        name: cdh
```

Run the following command to create a replication controller from the definition file.

```
kubectl create -f cdh-rc.yaml
```

List the replication controllers.

```
kubectl get rc
```

The first command outputs “replicationcontrollers/cdh,” which implies that an rc has been created successfully. The second command lists the replication controllers. The replication controller “cdh” gets listed as shown in Figure 10-6. The SELECTOR was not specified in the replication controller file and is listed as the same two key:value pairs, `app=cdh`, `name=cdh`, as the template labels. A Pod managed by the replication controller must include both of these labels, and may include additional labels. The number of replicas is set to 2.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-45:~$ kubectl create -f cdh-rc.yaml
replicationcontrollers/cdh
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-45:~$ kubectl get rc
CONTROLLER   CONTAINER(S)   IMAGE(S)   SELECTOR   REPLICAS
cdh          cdh           svds/cdh   app=cdh, name=cdh   2
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-45:~$
```

**Figure 10-6.** Creating a Replication Controller from a Definition File

## Listing the Pods

To list the Pods run the following command.

```
kubectl get pods
```

Two Pods get listed as shown in Figure 10-7. Initially the Pods could be listed as not running or/and not ready. A not ready pod is indicated by the 0/1 value in the READY column, which implies that 0 of 1 containers in the Pod are ready.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-45:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME      READY   STATUS             AGE
ARTS      0/1     Image: svds/cdh is not ready on the node   0
cdh-6l2pr 38s
          0/1     Image: svds/cdh is not ready on the node   0
cdh-xka62 38s
          0/1     Image: svds/cdh is not ready on the node   0
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3    Running            26m
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-45:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME      READY   STATUS             AGE
ARTS      0/1     Image: svds/cdh is not ready on the node   0
cdh-6l2pr 42s
          0/1     Image: svds/cdh is not ready on the node   0
cdh-xka62 42s
          0/1     Image: svds/cdh is not ready on the node   0
```

**Figure 10-7.** Listing the Pods for CDH, created but not Ready

Run the same command again to list the Pods.

```
kubectl get pods
```

The two Pods should get listed as STATUS->Running and READY->1/1 as shown in Figure 10-8.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-45:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME          READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
cdh-6l2pr     1/1     Running   0          2m
cdh-xka62     1/1     Running   0          2m
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3     Running   0          27m
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-45:~$
```

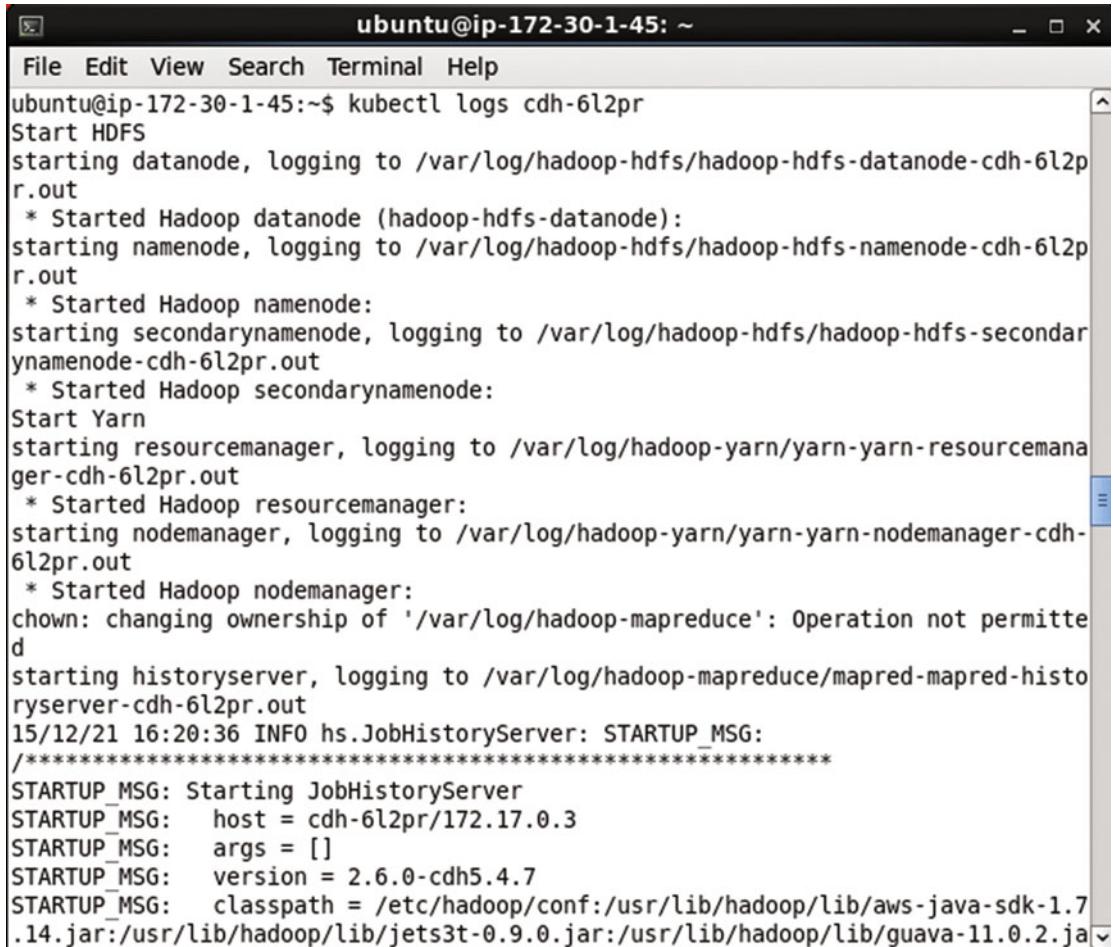
**Figure 10-8.** Listing the Pods as Ready

## Listing Logs

To list the logs for a particular Pod, for example, the cdh-6l2pr Pod, run the following command.

```
kubectl logs cdh-6l2pr
```

The output from the command lists the logs, which indicate that the Hadoop datanode, namenode, secondarynamenode, resourcemanager, and nodemanager have been started as shown in Figure 10-9.



```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-45: ~
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-45:~$ kubectl logs cdh-6l2pr
Start HDFS
starting datanode, logging to /var/log/hadoop-hdfs/hadoop-hdfs-datanode-cdh-6l2pr.out
* Started Hadoop datanode (hadoop-hdfs-datanode):
starting namenode, logging to /var/log/hadoop-hdfs/hadoop-hdfs-namenode-cdh-6l2pr.out
* Started Hadoop namenode:
starting secondarynamenode, logging to /var/log/hadoop-hdfs/hadoop-hdfs-secondarynamenode-cdh-6l2pr.out
* Started Hadoop secondarynamenode:
Start Yarn
starting resourcemanager, logging to /var/log/hadoop-yarn/yarn-yarn-resourcemanager-cdh-6l2pr.out
* Started Hadoop resourcemanager:
starting nodemanager, logging to /var/log/hadoop-yarn/yarn-yarn-nodemanager-cdh-6l2pr.out
* Started Hadoop nodemanager:
chown: changing ownership of '/var/log/hadoop-mapreduce': Operation not permitted
starting historyserver, logging to /var/log/hadoop-mapreduce/mapred-mapred-historyserver-cdh-6l2pr.out
15/12/21 16:20:36 INFO hs.JobHistoryServer: STARTUP_MSG
*****
STARTUP_MSG: Starting JobHistoryServer
STARTUP_MSG: host = cdh-6l2pr/172.17.0.3
STARTUP_MSG: args = []
STARTUP_MSG: version = 2.6.0-cdh5.4.7
STARTUP_MSG: classpath = /etc/hadoop/conf:/usr/lib/hadoop/lib/aws-java-sdk-1.7.14.jar:/usr/lib/hadoop/lib/jets3t-0.9.0.jar:/usr/lib/hadoop/lib/guava-11.0.2.jar
```

**Figure 10-9.** Listing Pod Logs

Other components such as HBase are also started.

## Scaling a Cluster

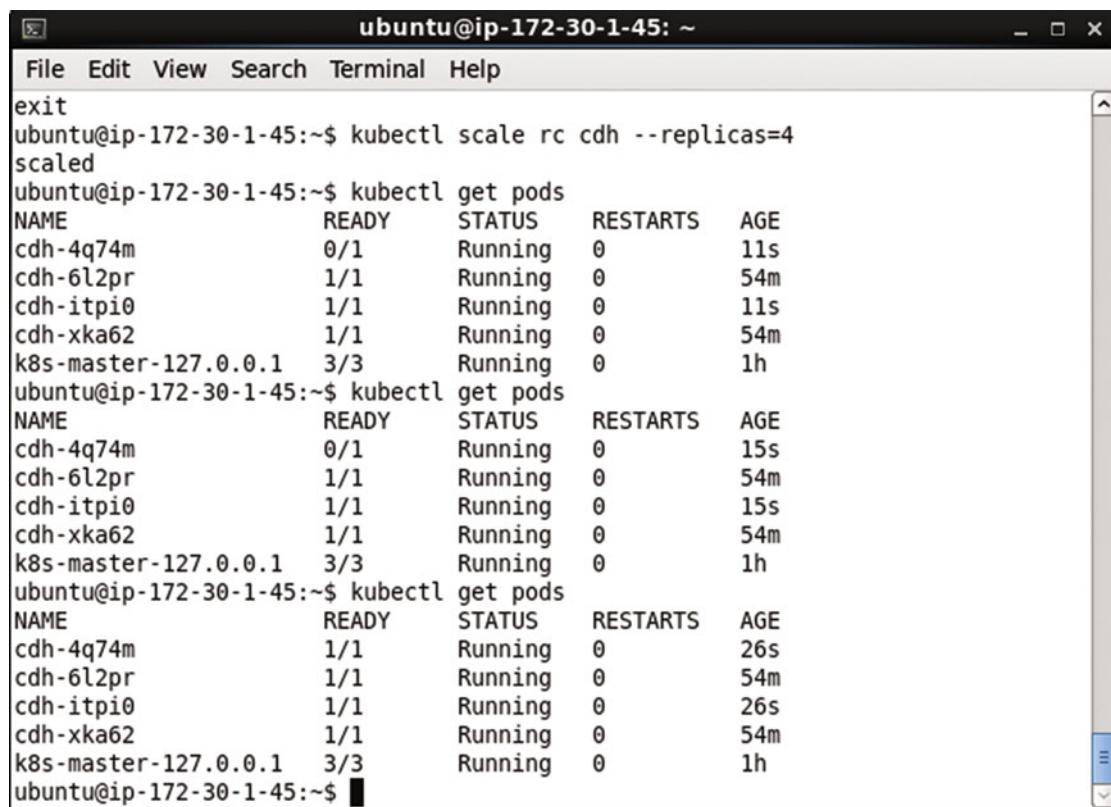
Initially the CDH cluster has 2 replicas. To scale the replicas to 4 run the following command.

```
kubectl scale rc cdh --replicas=4
```

Subsequently list the Pods in the cluster.

```
kubectl get pods
```

After scaling up the cluster 4 Pods get listed instead of the 2 listed initially. Some of the Pods could be listed as not running or not ready. Run the preceding command after a few seconds periodically, and all the pods should get started as shown in Figure 10-10.



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-45: ~". The user runs three commands: "kubectl scale rc cdh --replicas=4", "kubectl get pods", and "kubectl get pods" again. The first "kubectl get pods" command shows four pods: cdh-4q74m, cdh-6l2pr, cdh-itpi0, and cdh-xka62, all in a "Running" state. The second "kubectl get pods" command shows the same four pods, but with "READY" status instead of "Running". The third "kubectl get pods" command shows the same four pods again, now all in a "Running" state. This demonstrates that the scaling command has been successful.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-45:~$ kubectl scale rc cdh --replicas=4
scaled
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-45:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
cdh-4q74m     0/1     Running   0          11s
cdh-6l2pr      1/1     Running   0          54m
cdh-itpi0      1/1     Running   0          11s
cdh-xka62      1/1     Running   0          54m
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3     Running   0          1h
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-45:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
cdh-4q74m     0/1     Running   0          15s
cdh-6l2pr      1/1     Running   0          54m
cdh-itpi0      1/1     Running   0          15s
cdh-xka62      1/1     Running   0          54m
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3     Running   0          1h
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-45:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
cdh-4q74m     1/1     Running   0          26s
cdh-6l2pr      1/1     Running   0          54m
cdh-itpi0      1/1     Running   0          26s
cdh-xka62      1/1     Running   0          54m
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3     Running   0          1h
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-45:~$
```

**Figure 10-10.** Scaling the Pod Cluster

## Starting an Interactive Shell

As the “svds/cdh” Docker image is based on the Linux “ubuntu” Docker image an interactive bash shell may be started to access Docker containers based on the svds/cdh Docker image. To start an interactive bash shell for the cdh software we need to obtain the container id for a Docker container running the “cdh” image as shown in Figure 10-11.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-45:~$ sudo docker ps
CONTAINER ID        IMAGE               CREATED             STATUS              PORTS          NAMES
f1efdb5937c6        svds/cdh          3 minutes ago     Up 3 minutes       "cdh_startup_scr
ipt.s"              3 minutes ago     Up 3 minutes       "cdh_startup_scr
3098c_cdh-6l2pr_default_6647a31b-a7fe-11e5-92b4-1231ba1833a5_abcec13b
ba1186db567e        svds/cdh          3 minutes ago     Up 3 minutes       "cdh_startup_scr
ipt.s"              3 minutes ago     Up 3 minutes       "cdh_startup_scr
3098c_cdh-xka62_default_66479250-a7fe-11e5-92b4-1231ba1833a5_f578b8c3
0e5728bf2383        gcr.io/google_containers/pause:0.8.0   "/pause"
                  5 minutes ago     Up 5 minutes       k8s_POD.384
2ebfa_cdh-6l2pr_default_6647a31b-a7fe-11e5-92b4-1231ba1833a5_ceeaf109
6f17dce60221        gcr.io/google_containers/pause:0.8.0   "/pause"
                  5 minutes ago     Up 5 minutes       k8s_POD.384
2ebfa_cdh-xka62_default_66479250-a7fe-11e5-92b4-1231ba1833a5_23dff13d
b8c49933729e        gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1   "/hyperkube sche
duler"              30 minutes ago    Up 30 minutes      k8s_schedul
er.2744e742_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c4a_f9ed1f
88
0d14a825a63e        gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1   "/hyperkube apis
erver"              30 minutes ago    Up 30 minutes      k8s_apiserv
er.cfb70250_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c4a_87d021
c9
95a7a95092da        gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1   "/hyperkube cont
rolle"              30 minutes ago    Up 30 minutes      k8s_control
ler-manager.1598ee5c_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c
4a_9dbcc981
c3ca9998d138        gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1   "/hyperkube prox
y --m"              30 minutes ago    Up 30 minutes      naughty_lum
iere
```

**Figure 10-11.** Copying the Docker Container Id

Subsequently start the interactive shell using the container id.

```
sudo docker exec -it f1efdb5937c6 bash
```

The interactive shell gets started as shown in Figure 10-12.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-45:~$ sudo docker exec -it f1efdb5937c6 bash
root@cdh-6l2pr:/#
```

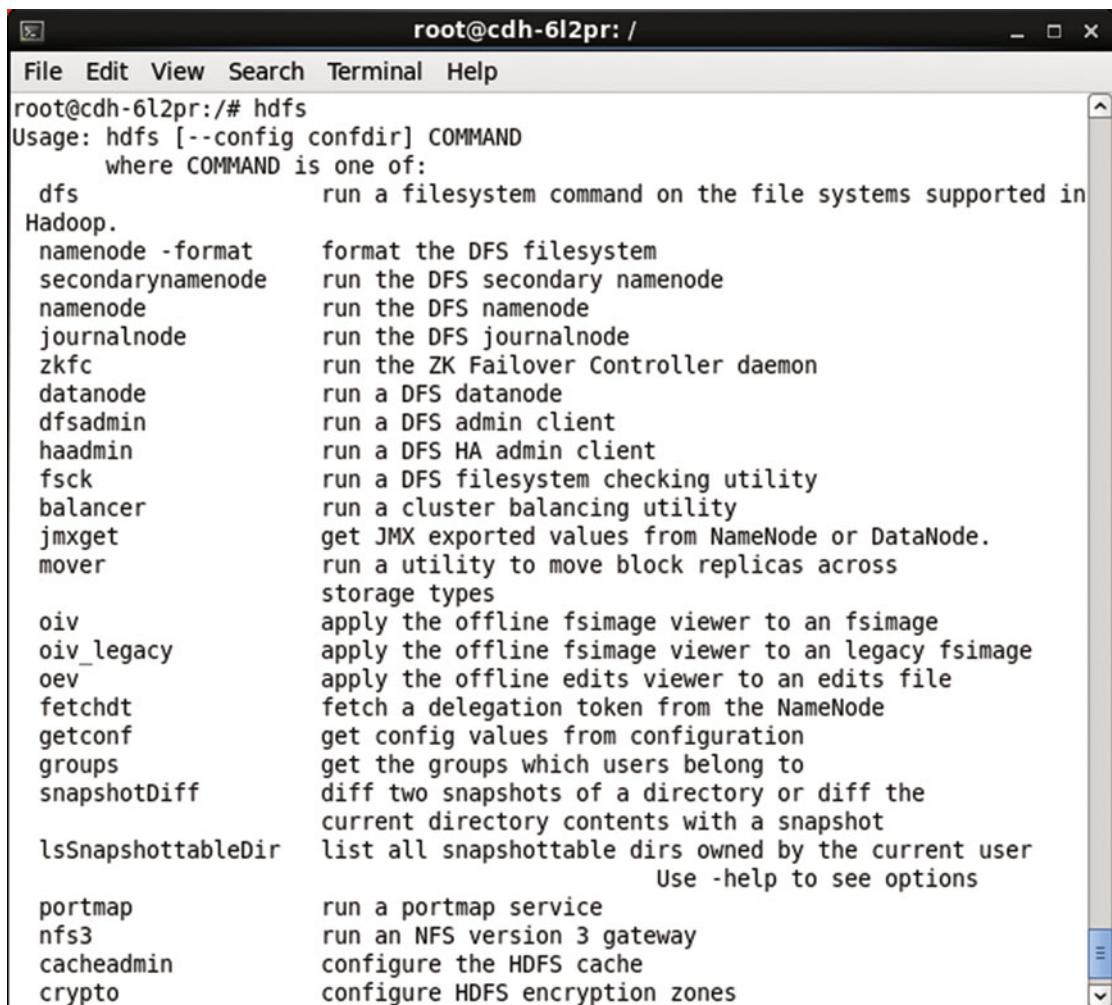
**Figure 10-12.** Starting an Interactive Shell

## Running a MapReduce Application

In this section we shall run an example MapReduce application in the interactive shell. The hdfs command is used to run a MapReduce application. Invoke the hdfs command in the interactive shell.

```
hdfs
```

The command usage should get displayed as shown in Figure 10-13.



```
root@cdh-6l2pr:/# hdfs
Usage: hdfs [--config confdir] COMMAND
where COMMAND is one of:
  dfs          run a filesystem command on the file systems supported in
               Hadoop.
  namenode -format      format the DFS filesystem
  secondarynamenode    run the DFS secondary namenode
  namenode            run the DFS namenode
  journalnode         run the DFS journalnode
  zkfc                run the ZK Failover Controller daemon
  datanode            run a DFS datanode
  dfsadmin            run a DFS admin client
  haadmin              run a DFS HA admin client
  fsck                run a DFS filesystem checking utility
  balancer            run a cluster balancing utility
  jmxget              get JMX exported values from NameNode or DataNode.
  mover                run a utility to move block replicas across
                       storage types
  oiv                 apply the offline fsimage viewer to an fsimage
  oiv_legacy           apply the offline fsimage viewer to an legacy fsimage
  oev                 apply the offline edits viewer to an edits file
  fetchdt              fetch a delegation token from the NameNode
  getconf              get config values from configuration
  groups               get the groups which users belong to
  snapshotDiff         diff two snapshots of a directory or diff the
                       current directory contents with a snapshot
  lsSnapshottableDir   list all snapshottable dirs owned by the current user
                       Use -help to see options
  portmap              run a portmap service
  nfs3                 run an NFS version 3 gateway
  cacheadmin           configure the HDFS cache
  crypto               configure HDFS encryption zones
```

**Figure 10-13.** Command Usage for hdfs Command

To change user to “hdfs” run the following command.

```
su -l hdfs
```

The user becomes “hdfs” as shown in Figure 10-14.

```
root@cdh-6l2pr:/# su -l hdfs
hdfs@cdh-6l2pr:~$ █
```

**Figure 10-14.** Setting User as hdfs

Next, we shall run a wordcount application. We shall get input from the /input directory files and output in the /output directory. Create the /input directory and set its permissions to global (777).

```
hdfs dfs -mkdir /input
hdfs dfs -chmod -R 777 /input
```

The /input directory gets created and its permissions get set to global as shown in Figure 10-15.

```
root@cdh-6l2pr:/# su -l hdfs
hdfs@cdh-6l2pr:~$ hdfs dfs -mkdir /input
hdfs@cdh-6l2pr:~$ hdfs dfs -chmod -R 777 /input
hdfs@cdh-6l2pr:~$ █
```

**Figure 10-15.** Creating the Input Directory

Create an input file `input1.txt` in the vi editor.

```
sudo vi input1.txt
```

Add the following text to `input1.txt`.

```
Hello World Application for Apache Hadoop
Hello World and Hello Apache Hadoop
```

The `input1.txt` is shown in the vi editor in Figure 10-16.

A screenshot of a terminal window titled "root@cdh-6l2pr: /". The window has a menu bar with "File", "Edit", "View", "Search", "Terminal", and "Help". The main area displays the command "Hello World Application for Apache Hadoop" followed by "Hello World and Hello Apache Hadoop". On the left, there is a vertical scroll bar with many small blue arrows pointing up. At the bottom, the command ":wq" is typed, indicating the user is saving and exiting the editor.

**Figure 10-16.** Creating an Input Text File

Put the `input1.txt` in the HDFS directory `/input` with the following command, which should be run with `sudo -u hdfs` if run as root user. If the user is already set to “`hdfs`” omit the “`sudo -u hdfs`” from the command.

```
sudo -u hdfs hdfs dfs -put input1.txt /input
```

The `input1.txt` file gets added to the `/input` directory and no output is generated from the command as shown in Figure 10-17.

```
root@cdh-6l2pr:/# sudo vi input1.txt
root@cdh-6l2pr:/# sudo -u hdfs hdfs dfs -put input1.txt /input
root@cdh-6l2pr:/#
```

**Figure 10-17.** Putting the Input Text File in HDFS

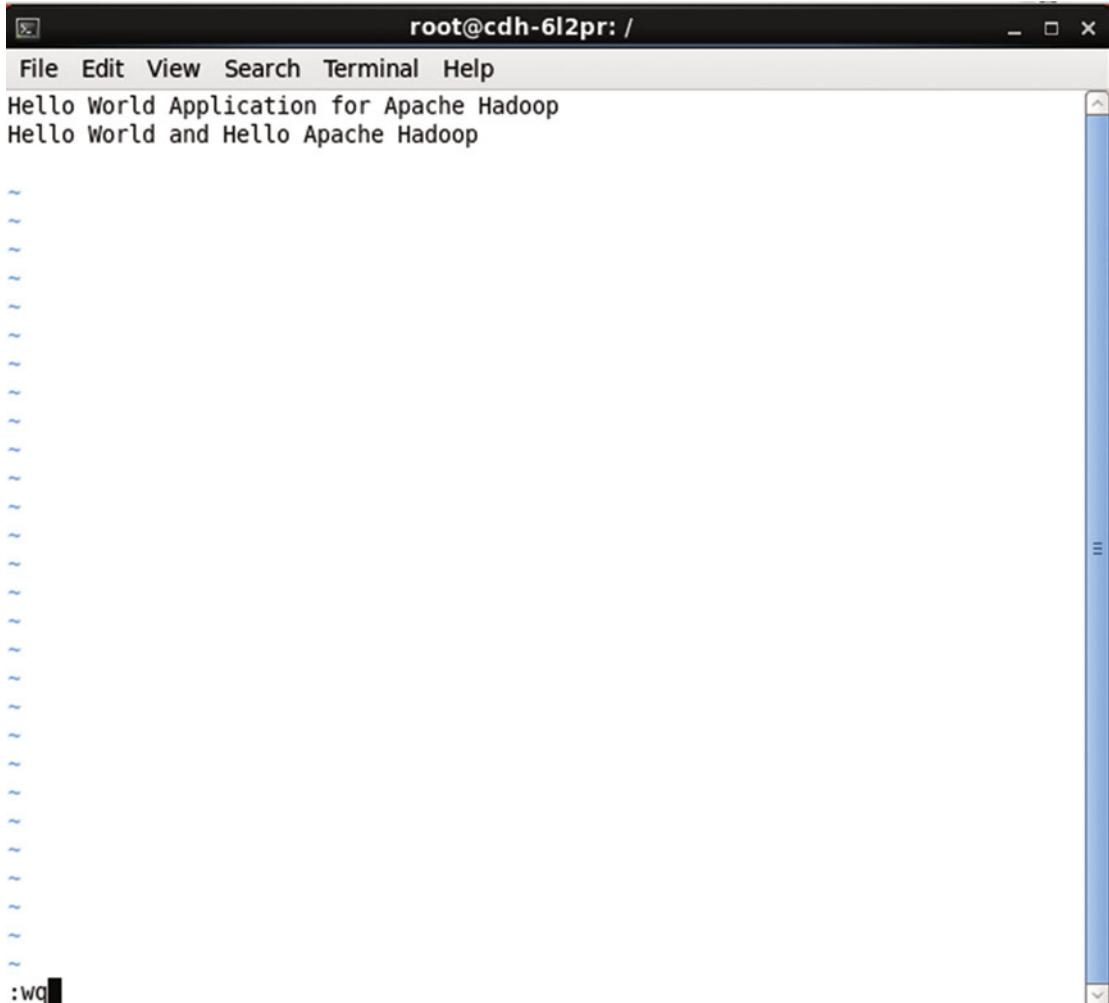
Similarly create another file input2.txt.

```
sudo vi input2.txt
```

Add the following text to input2.txt.

```
Hello World  
Hello Apache Hadoop
```

Save the input2.txt with the :wq command in the vi editor as shown in Figure 10-18.



**Figure 10-18.** Creating another Text File input2.txt

Put the `input2.txt` into the `/input` directory.

```
sudo -u hdfs hdfs dfs -put input2.txt /input
```

The `input2.txt` also gets added to the `/input` directory as shown in Figure 10-19.

```
root@cdh-6l2pr:/# sudo vi input1.txt
root@cdh-6l2pr:/# sudo -u hdfs hdfs dfs -put input1.txt /input
root@cdh-6l2pr:/# sudo vi input2.txt
root@cdh-6l2pr:/# sudo -u hdfs hdfs dfs -put input2.txt /input
```

**Figure 10-19.** Putting the `input2.txt` File into HDFS

The files in the `/input` directory in the HDFS may be listed with the following command.

```
hdfs dfs -ls /input
```

The two files added `input1.txt` and `input2.txt` get listed as shown in Figure 10-20.

```
root@cdh-6l2pr:/# hdfs dfs -ls /input
Found 2 items
-rw-r--r--    1 hdfs supergroup          79 2015-12-21 16:35 /input/input1.txt
-rw-r--r--    1 hdfs supergroup          32 2015-12-21 16:36 /input/input2.txt
```

**Figure 10-20.** Listing the Files in HDFS

Next, run the `wordcount` example application with the following command in which the jar file containing the example application is specified with the `jar` parameter and the `/input` and `/output` directories are set as the last two command parameters for the input directory and the output directory respectively.

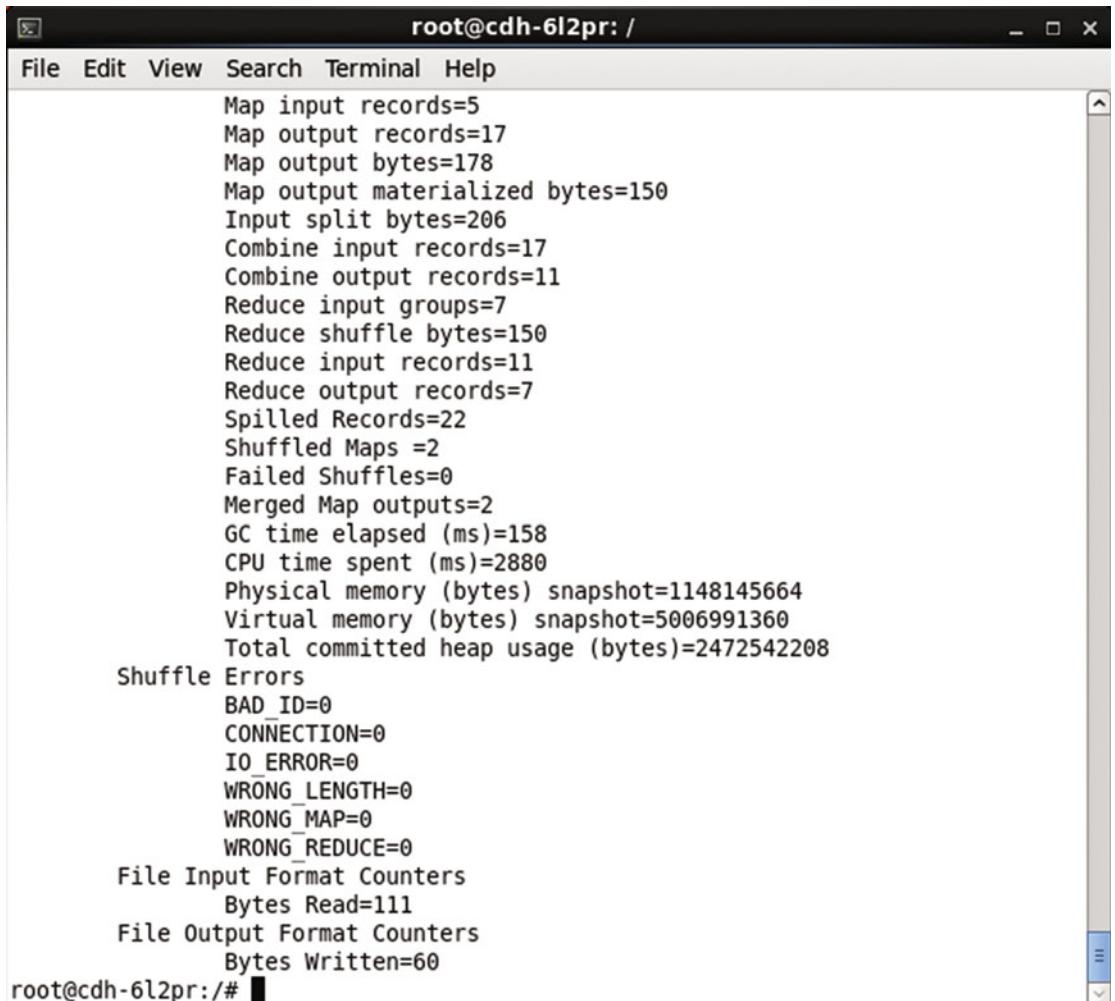
```
sudo -u hdfs hadoop jar /usr/lib/hadoop-mapreduce/hadoop-mapreduce-examples-2.6.0-
cdh5.4.7.jar wordcount /input /output
```

A MapReduce job gets started as shown in Figure 10-21.

```
root@cdh-6l2pr:/# sudo -u hdfs hadoop jar /usr/lib/hadoop-mapreduce/hadoop-mapreduce-examples-2.6.0-cdh5.4.7.jar wordcount /input /output
15/12/21 16:39:52 INFO client.RMProxy: Connecting to ResourceManager at /0.0.0.0:8032
15/12/21 16:39:53 INFO input.FileInputFormat: Total input paths to process : 2
15/12/21 16:39:53 INFO mapreduce.JobSubmitter: number of splits:2
15/12/21 16:39:53 INFO mapreduce.JobSubmitter: Submitting tokens for job: job_1450714825612_0002
15/12/21 16:39:53 INFO impl.YarnClientImpl: Submitted application application_1450714825612_0002
15/12/21 16:39:53 INFO mapreduce.Job: The url to track the job: http://cdh-6l2pr:8088/proxy/application_1450714825612_0002/
15/12/21 16:39:53 INFO mapreduce.Job: Running job: job_1450714825612_0002
15/12/21 16:39:59 INFO mapreduce.Job: Job job_1450714825612_0002 running in uber mode : false
15/12/21 16:39:59 INFO mapreduce.Job: map 0% reduce 0%
```

**Figure 10-21.** Starting a YARN Application for Word Count Example

The MapReduce job completes to run the wordcount application. The output from the wordcount MapReduce job, not the word count result, is shown in Figure 10-22.



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "root@cdh-6l2pr: /". The window displays the output of a MapReduce job, which includes various counters and error statistics. The output is as follows:

```

root@cdh-6l2pr: / 
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
Map input records=5
Map output records=17
Map output bytes=178
Map output materialized bytes=150
Input split bytes=206
Combine input records=17
Combine output records=11
Reduce input groups=7
Reduce shuffle bytes=150
Reduce input records=11
Reduce output records=7
Spilled Records=22
Shuffled Maps =2
Failed Shuffles=0
Merged Map outputs=2
GC time elapsed (ms)=158
CPU time spent (ms)=2880
Physical memory (bytes) snapshot=1148145664
Virtual memory (bytes) snapshot=5006991360
Total committed heap usage (bytes)=2472542208
Shuffle Errors
BAD_ID=0
CONNECTION=0
IO_ERROR=0
WRONG_LENGTH=0
WRONG_MAP=0
WRONG_REDUCE=0
File Input Format Counters
Bytes Read=111
File Output Format Counters
Bytes Written=60
root@cdh-6l2pr:/# 

```

**Figure 10-22.** Output from the MapReduce Job

A more detailed output from the MapReduce application is listed:

```

root@cdh-6l2pr:/# sudo -u hdfs hadoop jar /usr/lib/hadoop-mapreduce/hadoop-mapreduce-
examples-2.6.0-cdh5.4.7.jar wordcount /input /output
15/12/21 16:39:52 INFO client.RMProxy: Connecting to ResourceManager at /0.0.0.0:8032
15/12/21 16:39:53 INFO input.FileInputFormat: Total input paths to process : 2
15/12/21 16:39:53 INFO mapreduce.JobSubmitter: number of splits:2
15/12/21 16:39:53 INFO mapreduce.JobSubmitter: Submitting tokens for job:
job_1450714825612_0002
15/12/21 16:39:53 INFO impl.YarnClientImpl: Submitted application
application_1450714825612_0002
15/12/21 16:39:53 INFO mapreduce.Job: The url to track the job: http://cdh-6l2pr:8088/proxy/
application_1450714825612_0002/
15/12/21 16:39:53 INFO mapreduce.Job: Running job: job_1450714825612_0002

```

```

15/12/21 16:39:59 INFO mapreduce.Job: Job job_1450714825612_0002 running in uber mode : false
15/12/21 16:39:59 INFO mapreduce.Job: map 0% reduce 0%
15/12/21 16:40:04 INFO mapreduce.Job: map 100% reduce 0%
15/12/21 16:40:10 INFO mapreduce.Job: map 100% reduce 100%
15/12/21 16:40:10 INFO mapreduce.Job: Job job_1450714825612_0002 completed successfully
15/12/21 16:40:10 INFO mapreduce.Job: Counters: 49
    File System Counters
        FILE: Number of bytes read=144
        FILE: Number of bytes written=332672
        FILE: Number of read operations=0
        FILE: Number of large read operations=0
        FILE: Number of write operations=0
        HDFS: Number of bytes read=317
        HDFS: Number of bytes written=60
        HDFS: Number of read operations=9
        HDFS: Number of large read operations=0
        HDFS: Number of write operations=2
    Job Counters
        Launched map tasks=2
        Launched reduce tasks=1
        Data-local map tasks=2
        Total time spent by all maps in occupied slots (ms)=4939
        Total time spent by all reduces in occupied slots (ms)=2615
        Total time spent by all map tasks (ms)=4939
        Total time spent by all reduce tasks (ms)=2615
        Total vcore-seconds taken by all map tasks=4939
        Total vcore-seconds taken by all reduce tasks=2615
        Total megabyte-seconds taken by all map tasks=5057536
        Total megabyte-seconds taken by all reduce tasks=2677760
    Map-Reduce Framework
        Map input records=5
        Map output records=17
        Map output bytes=178
        Map output materialized bytes=150
        Input split bytes=206
        Combine input records=17
        Combine output records=11
        Reduce input groups=7
        Reduce shuffle bytes=150
        Reduce input records=11
        Reduce output records=7
        Spilled Records=22
        Shuffled Maps =2
        Failed Shuffles=0
        Merged Map outputs=2
        GC time elapsed (ms)=158
        CPU time spent (ms)=2880
        Physical memory (bytes) snapshot=1148145664
        Virtual memory (bytes) snapshot=5006991360
        Total committed heap usage (bytes)=2472542208

```

```

Shuffle Errors
  BAD_ID=0
  CONNECTION=0
  IO_ERROR=0
  WRONG_LENGTH=0
  WRONG_MAP=0
  WRONG_REDUCE=0
File Input Format Counters
  Bytes Read=111
File Output Format Counters
  Bytes Written=60
root@cdh-6l2pr:/#

```

Subsequently, list the files in the /output directory.

```
bin/hdfs dfs -ls /output
```

Two files get listed: \_SUCCESS and part-r-00000 as shown in Figure 10-23. The \_SUCCESS file is to indicate that the MapReduce command completed successfully and the part-r-00000 command contains the result of the word count.

```

root@cdh-6l2pr:/# hdfs dfs -ls /output
Found 2 items
-rw-r--r-- 1 hdfs supergroup          0 2015-12-21 16:40 /output/_SUCCESS
-rw-r--r-- 1 hdfs supergroup      60 2015-12-21 16:40 /output/part-r-00000
root@cdh-6l2pr:/#

```

**Figure 10-23.** Listing the Files generated by the MapReduce Job

To list the result of the wordcount application run the following command.

```
hdfs dfs -cat /output/part-r-00000
```

The word count for each of the words in the input gets listed as shown in Figure 10-24.

```

root@cdh-6l2pr:/# sudo -u hdfs hdfs dfs -cat /output/part-r-00000
Apache 3
Application 1
Hadoop 3
Hello 5
World 3
and 1
for 1
root@cdh-6l2pr:/#

```

**Figure 10-24.** The Word Count for the Input Files

## Running Hive

Apache Hive is a data warehouse framework for storing, managing, and querying large data sets in HDFS. As mentioned before all/most of the components of CDH get installed when the svds/cdh image is run. In this section we shall test the Apache Hive framework. The Hive configuration directory is in the Hive conf directory, in the /etc/hive directory. Change directory (cd) to the /etc/hive directory.

```
cd /etc/hive
```

The conf directory gets listed as shown in Figure 10-25.

```
root@cdh-6l2pr:/# cd /etc/hive
root@cdh-6l2pr:/etc/hive# ls -l
total 4
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root 27 Oct 23 15:46 conf -> /etc/alternatives/hive-conf
drwxr-xr-x 2 root root 4096 Oct 23 15:46 conf.dist
```

**Figure 10-25.** Listing the Files and Directories in the Hive Root Directory

The Hive metastore is kept in the /var/lib/hive directory. Cd to the /var/lib/hive directory.

```
cd /var/lib/hive
```

The metastore directory gets listed as shown in Figure 10-26.

```
root@cdh-6l2pr:/# cd /var/lib/hive
root@cdh-6l2pr:/var/lib/hive# ls -l
total 4
drwxrwxrwt 3 hive hive 4096 Dec 21 16:20 metastore
root@cdh-6l2pr:/var/lib/hive# █
```

**Figure 10-26.** Listing the Hive Metastore Directory

The Hive home directory is /usr/lib/hive. Cd to the /usr/lib/hive directory. Subsequently list the files and directories.

```
cd /usr/lib/hive
ls -l
```

The bin, conf, and lib directories for Apache Hive get listed as shown in Figure 10-27. The bin directory contains the executables, the conf directory the configuration files, and the lib directory the jar files.

```
root@cdh-6l2pr:/var/lib/hive# cd /usr/lib/hive
root@cdh-6l2pr:/usr/lib/hive# ls -l
total 56
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 23169 Sep 17 09:00 LICENSE
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 397 Sep 17 09:00 NOTICE
drwxr-xr-x 3 root root 4096 Oct 23 15:46 bin
drwxr-xr-x 2 root root 4096 Oct 23 15:46 cloudera
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root 14 Sep 17 09:19 conf -> /etc/hive/conf
drwxr-xr-x 4 root root 12288 Oct 23 15:46 lib
drwxr-xr-x 3 root root 4096 Oct 23 15:46 scripts
drwxr-xr-x 3 root root 4096 Oct 23 15:46 sentry
root@cdh-6l2pr:/usr/lib/hive#
```

**Figure 10-27.** The Hive Home Directory

All the environment variables are preconfigured. Run the following command to start the Beeline CLI.

```
beeline
```

Beeline version 1.1.0-cdh5.4.7 gets started as shown in Figure 10-28.

```
root@cdh-6l2pr:/# beeline
Beeline version 1.1.0-cdh5.4.7 by Apache Hive
beeline>
```

**Figure 10-28.** Starting Beeline CLI

Initially no connection to the Apache Hive server is available. To demonstrate, run the following commands to set the database as default and show the tables.

```
use default;
show tables;
```

The message “No current connection” is displayed as shown in Figure 10-29.

```
root@cdh-6l2pr:/# beeline
Beeline version 1.1.0-cdh5.4.7 by Apache Hive
beeline> use default;
No current connection
beeline> show tables;
No current connection
beeline>
```

**Figure 10-29.** No Current Connection

Connect with Hive2 server using the default settings for the driver, username, and password as indicated by the three empty “”.

```
!connect jdbc:hive2://localhost:10000/default "" "" ""
```

Apache Hive2 server gets connected to using the Apache Hive JDBC driver as shown in Figure 10-30.

```
beeline> !connect jdbc:hive2://localhost:10000/default "" "" ""
scan complete in 3ms
Connecting to jdbc:hive2://localhost:10000/default
Connected to: Apache Hive (version 1.1.0-cdh5.4.7)
Driver: Hive JDBC (version 1.1.0-cdh5.4.7)
Transaction isolation: TRANSACTION_REPEATABLE_READ
0: jdbc:hive2://localhost:10000/default> █
```

**Figure 10-30.** Connecting with Hive Server

Run the commands to set the database to default and show the tables.

```
use default;
show tables;
```

The database connected to is already default, and the first command essentially is redundant but what is to be noted is the error generated earlier is not generated. The second command lists the table and because initially the default database does not have any tables, none get listed. The output from the preceding commands is shown in Figure 10-31.

```
0: jdbc:hive2://localhost:10000/default> use default
0: jdbc:hive2://localhost:10000/default> show tables
0: jdbc:hive2://localhost:10000/default> █
```

**Figure 10-31.** Setting the database to Use and the listing to the Hive Tables

Before creating a Hive table we need to set the permissions for the /user/hive/warehouse directory to global (777).

```
sudo -u hdfs hdfs dfs -chmod -R 777 /user/hive/warehouse
```

Permissions for the Hive warehouse directory get set as shown in Figure 10-32.

```
0: jdbc:hive2://localhost:10000/default> root@cdh-6l2pr:/# sudo -u hdfs hdfs dfs
 -chmod -R 777 /user/hive/warehouse
root@cdh-6l2pr:/# █
```

**Figure 10-32.** Setting Permissions on the Hive Warehouse Directory

Create a table called wlslog with the following HiveQL command.

```
CREATE TABLE wlslog(time_stamp STRING,category STRING,type STRING,servername STRING,code
STRING,msg STRING) ROW FORMAT DELIMITED FIELDS TERMINATED BY ',' LINES TERMINATED BY '\n';
```

The wlslog table gets created in the default database as shown in Figure 10-33.

```
0: jdbc:hive2://localhost:10000/default> CREATE TABLE wlslog(time_stamp STRING,c
ategory STRING,type STRING,servername STRING,code STRING,msg STRING)ROW FORMAT D
ELIMITED FIELDS TERMINATED BY ',' LINES TERMINATED BY '\n';
No rows affected (0.301 seconds)
```

**Figure 10-33.** Creating a Hive Table called wlslog

Describe the wlslog table with the following command.

```
desc wlslog;
```

The table columns (name and data type) get listed as shown in Figure 10-34.

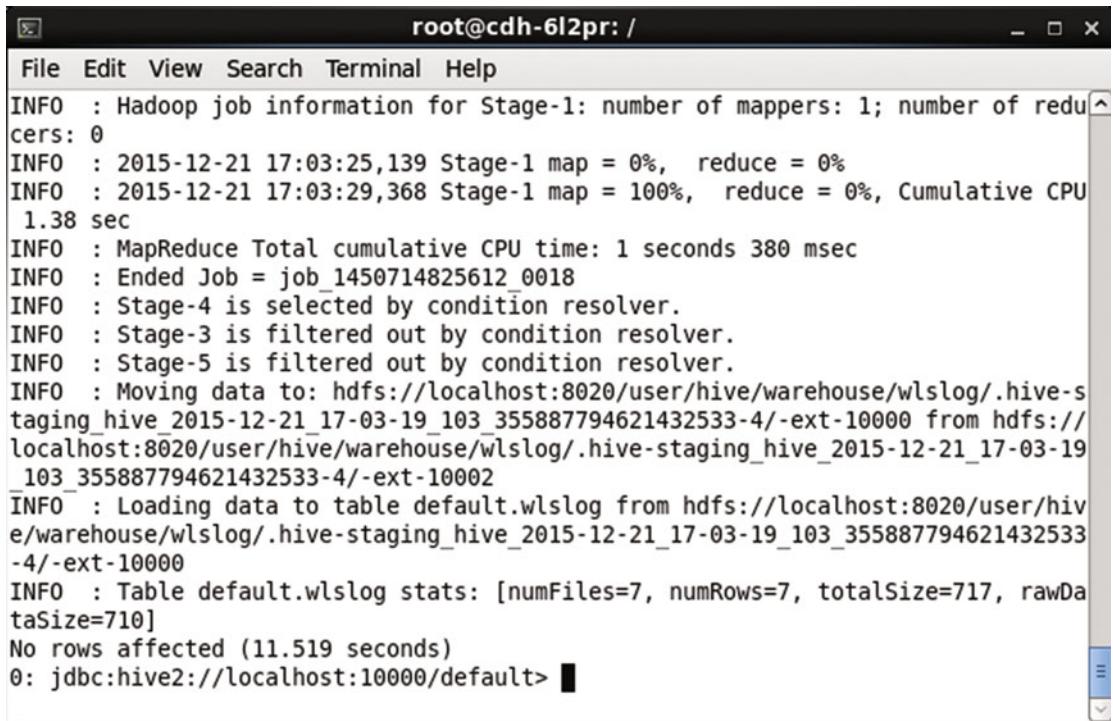
```
0: jdbc:hive2://localhost:10000/default> desc wlslog;
+-----+-----+-----+
| col_name | data_type | comment |
+-----+-----+-----+
| time_stamp | string |
| category | string |
| type | string |
| servername | string |
| code | string |
| msg | string |
+-----+-----+-----+
6 rows selected (0.473 seconds)
0: jdbc:hive2://localhost:10000/default> ■
```

**Figure 10-34.** Describing the Hive Table wlslog

Add 7 rows of data to the wlslog table.

```
INSERT INTO TABLE wlslog VALUES ('Apr-8-2014-7:06:16-PM-PDT','Notice','WebLogicServer',
'AdminServer,BEA-000365','Server state changed to STANDBY');
INSERT INTO TABLE wlslog VALUES ('Apr-8-2014-7:06:17-PM-PDT','Notice','WebLogicServer',
'AdminServer','BEA-000365','Server state changed to STARTING');
INSERT INTO TABLE wlslog VALUES ('Apr-8-2014-7:06:18-PM-PDT','Notice','WebLogicServer',
'AdminServer','BEA-000365','Server state changed to ADMIN');
INSERT INTO TABLE wlslog VALUES ('Apr-8-2014-7:06:19-PM-PDT','Notice','WebLogicServer',
'AdminServer','BEA-000365','Server state changed to RESUMING');
INSERT INTO TABLE wlslog VALUES ('Apr-8-2014-7:06:20-PM-PDT','Notice','WebLogicServer',
'AdminServer','BEA-000331','Started WebLogic AdminServer');
INSERT INTO TABLE wlslog VALUES ('Apr-8-2014-7:06:21-PM-PDT','Notice','WebLogicServer',
'AdminServer','BEA-000365','Server state changed to RUNNING');
INSERT INTO TABLE wlslog VALUES ('Apr-8-2014-7:06:22-PM-PDT','Notice','WebLogicServer',
'AdminServer','BEA-000360','Server started in RUNNING mode');
```

A MapReduce job runs for each INSERT statement to add the data to Hive table wlslog as shown in Figure 10-35.



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "root@cdh-6l2pr: /". The window contains the following text:

```
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
INFO : Hadoop job information for Stage-1: number of mappers: 1; number of reducers: 0
INFO : 2015-12-21 17:03:25,139 Stage-1 map = 0%, reduce = 0%
INFO : 2015-12-21 17:03:29,368 Stage-1 map = 100%, reduce = 0%, Cumulative CPU 1.38 sec
INFO : MapReduce Total cumulative CPU time: 1 seconds 380 msec
INFO : Ended Job = job_1450714825612_0018
INFO : Stage-4 is selected by condition resolver.
INFO : Stage-3 is filtered out by condition resolver.
INFO : Stage-5 is filtered out by condition resolver.
INFO : Moving data to: hdfs://localhost:8020/user/hive/warehouse/wlslog/.hive-staging_hive_2015-12-21_17-03-19_103_355887794621432533-4/-ext-10000 from hdfs://localhost:8020/user/hive/warehouse/wlslog/.hive-staging_hive_2015-12-21_17-03-19_103_355887794621432533-4/-ext-10000
INFO : Loading data to table default.wlslog from hdfs://localhost:8020/user/hive/warehouse/wlslog/.hive-staging_hive_2015-12-21_17-03-19_103_355887794621432533-4/-ext-10000
INFO : Table default.wlslog stats: [numFiles=7, numRows=7, totalSize=717, rawDataSize=710]
No rows affected (11.519 seconds)
0: jdbc:hive2://localhost:10000/default>
```

**Figure 10-35.** Adding Data to Hive Table wlslog

Subsequently query the wlslog table.

```
select * from wlslog;
```

The 7 rows of data added get listed as shown in Figure 10-36.

```

root@cdh-6l2pr: /
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
0: jdbc:hive2://localhost:10000/default> select * from wlslog;
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| wlslog.time_stamp | wlslog.category | wlslog.type | wlslog.servername |
| wlslog.code       |               | wlslog.msg   | 
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Apr-8-2014-7:06:16-PM-PDT | Notice      | WebLogicServer | AdminServer
| BEA-000365    | Server state changed to STANDBY | 
| Apr-8-2014-7:06:17-PM-PDT | Notice      | WebLogicServer | AdminServer
| BEA-000365    | Server state changed to STARTING | 
| Apr-8-2014-7:06:18-PM-PDT | Notice      | WebLogicServer | AdminServer
| BEA-000365    | Server state changed to ADMIN | 
| Apr-8-2014-7:06:19-PM-PDT | Notice      | WebLogicServer | AdminServer
| BEA-000365    | Server state changed to RESUMING | 
| Apr-8-2014-7:06:20-PM-PDT | Notice      | WebLogicServer | AdminServer
| BEA-000331    | Started WebLogic AdminServer | 
| Apr-8-2014-7:06:21-PM-PDT | Notice      | WebLogicServer | AdminServer
| BEA-000365    | Server state changed to RUNNING | 
| Apr-8-2014-7:06:22-PM-PDT | Notice      | WebLogicServer | AdminServer
| BEA-000360    | Server started in RUNNING mode | 
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
7 rows selected (0.123 seconds)
0: jdbc:hive2://localhost:10000/default> 

```

**Figure 10-36.** Querying the Hive Table

To quit the Beeline CLI run the following command.

```
!q
```

As shown in Figure 10-37 the Hive Beeline CLI gets exited. The interactive shell command prompt gets displayed.

```

0: jdbc:hive2://localhost:10000/default> !q
Closing: 0: jdbc:hive2://localhost:10000/default
root@cdh-6l2pr:#

```

**Figure 10-37.** Exiting the Beeline CLI

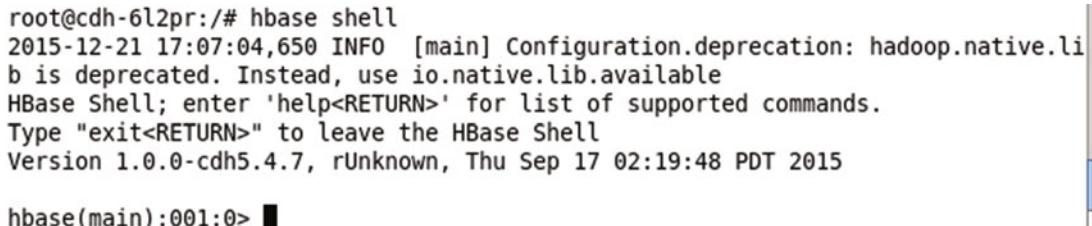
From the interactive shell any of the frameworks in CDH may be run. Next, we shall run Apache HBase.

## Running HBase

Apache HBase is the Apache Hadoop database, which also stores data in HDFS by default. To start the HBase shell run the following command from a bash shell for a Docker container based on the svds/cdh Docker image.

```
hbase shell
```

HBase shell gets started as shown in Figure 10-38.

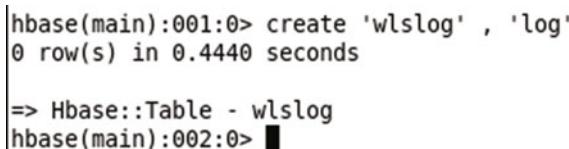


```
root@cdh-6l2pr:/# hbase shell
2015-12-21 17:07:04,650 INFO [main] Configuration.deprecation: hadoop.native.lib is deprecated. Instead, use io.native.lib.available
HBase Shell; enter 'help<RETURN>' for list of supported commands.
Type "exit<RETURN>" to leave the HBase Shell
Version 1.0.0-cdh5.4.7, rUnknown, Thu Sep 17 02:19:48 PDT 2015
hbase(main):001:0> ■
```

**Figure 10-38.** Starting HBase Shell

Create a table called 'wlslog' with column family 'log'  
`create 'wlslog' , 'log'`

The wlslog table gets created as shown in Figure 10-39.



```
hbase(main):001:0> create 'wlslog' , 'log'
0 row(s) in 0.4440 seconds
=> Hbase::Table - wlslog
hbase(main):002:0> ■
```

**Figure 10-39.** Creating a HBase Table

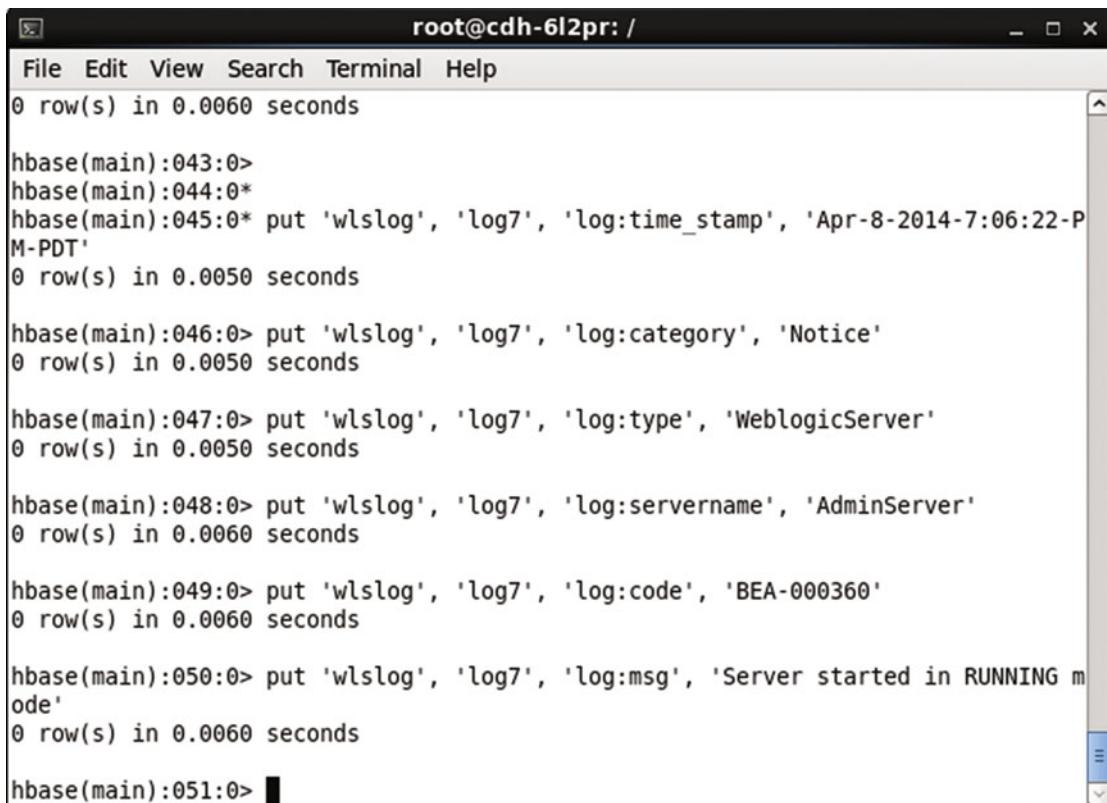
Put 7 rows of data into the wlslog table.

```
put 'wlslog', 'log1', 'log:time_stamp', 'Apr-8-2014-7:06:16-PM-PDT'
put 'wlslog', 'log1', 'log:category', 'Notice'
put 'wlslog', 'log1', 'log:type', 'WeblogicServer'
put 'wlslog', 'log1', 'log:servername', 'AdminServer'
put 'wlslog', 'log1', 'log:code', 'BEA-000365'
put 'wlslog', 'log1', 'log:msg', 'Server state changed to STANDBY'

put 'wlslog', 'log2', 'log:time_stamp', 'Apr-8-2014-7:06:17-PM-PDT'
put 'wlslog', 'log2', 'log:category', 'Notice'
put 'wlslog', 'log2', 'log:type', 'WeblogicServer'
put 'wlslog', 'log2', 'log:servername', 'AdminServer'
put 'wlslog', 'log2', 'log:code', 'BEA-000365'
put 'wlslog', 'log2', 'log:msg', 'Server state changed to STARTING'
put 'wlslog', 'log3', 'log:time_stamp', 'Apr-8-2014-7:06:18-PM-PDT'
put 'wlslog', 'log3', 'log:category', 'Notice'
```

```
put 'wlslog', 'log3', 'log:type', 'WeblogicServer'  
put 'wlslog', 'log3', 'log:servername', 'AdminServer'  
put 'wlslog', 'log3', 'log:code', 'BEA-000365'  
put 'wlslog', 'log3', 'log:msg', 'Server state changed to ADMIN'  
put 'wlslog', 'log4', 'log:time_stamp', 'Apr-8-2014-7:06:19-PM-PDT'  
put 'wlslog', 'log4', 'log:category', 'Notice'  
put 'wlslog', 'log4', 'log:type', 'WeblogicServer'  
put 'wlslog', 'log4', 'log:servername', 'AdminServer'  
put 'wlslog', 'log4', 'log:code', 'BEA-000365'  
put 'wlslog', 'log4', 'log:msg', 'Server state changed to RESUMING'  
put 'wlslog', 'log5', 'log:time_stamp', 'Apr-8-2014-7:06:20-PM-PDT'  
put 'wlslog', 'log5', 'log:category', 'Notice'  
put 'wlslog', 'log5', 'log:type', 'WeblogicServer'  
put 'wlslog', 'log5', 'log:servername', 'AdminServer'  
put 'wlslog', 'log5', 'log:code', 'BEA-000331'  
put 'wlslog', 'log5', 'log:msg', 'Started Weblogic AdminServer'  
put 'wlslog', 'log6', 'log:time_stamp', 'Apr-8-2014-7:06:21-PM-PDT'  
put 'wlslog', 'log6', 'log:category', 'Notice'  
put 'wlslog', 'log6', 'log:type', 'WeblogicServer'  
put 'wlslog', 'log6', 'log:servername', 'AdminServer'  
put 'wlslog', 'log6', 'log:code', 'BEA-000365'  
put 'wlslog', 'log6', 'log:msg', 'Server state changed to RUNNING'  
put 'wlslog', 'log7', 'log:time_stamp', 'Apr-8-2014-7:06:22-PM-PDT'  
put 'wlslog', 'log7', 'log:category', 'Notice'  
put 'wlslog', 'log7', 'log:type', 'WeblogicServer'  
put 'wlslog', 'log7', 'log:servername', 'AdminServer'  
put 'wlslog', 'log7', 'log:code', 'BEA-000360'  
put 'wlslog', 'log7', 'log:msg', 'Server started in RUNNING mode'
```

The output from the put commands is shown in Figure 10-40.



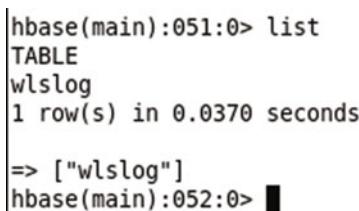
```
root@cdh-6l2pr: /  
File Edit View Search Terminal Help  
0 row(s) in 0.0060 seconds  
  
hbase(main):043:0>  
hbase(main):044:0*  
hbase(main):045:0* put 'wlslog', 'log7', 'log:time_stamp', 'Apr-8-2014-7:06:22-P  
M-PDT'  
0 row(s) in 0.0050 seconds  
  
hbase(main):046:0> put 'wlslog', 'log7', 'log:category', 'Notice'  
0 row(s) in 0.0050 seconds  
  
hbase(main):047:0> put 'wlslog', 'log7', 'log:type', 'WeblogicServer'  
0 row(s) in 0.0050 seconds  
  
hbase(main):048:0> put 'wlslog', 'log7', 'log:servername', 'AdminServer'  
0 row(s) in 0.0060 seconds  
  
hbase(main):049:0> put 'wlslog', 'log7', 'log:code', 'BEA-000360'  
0 row(s) in 0.0060 seconds  
  
hbase(main):050:0> put 'wlslog', 'log7', 'log:msg', 'Server started in RUNNING m  
ode'  
0 row(s) in 0.0060 seconds  
  
hbase(main):051:0> ■
```

**Figure 10-40.** Putting Data into HBase Table

To list the tables run the following command.

```
list
```

The wlslog table gets listed as shown in Figure 10-41.



```
hbase(main):051:0> list  
TABLE  
wlslog  
1 row(s) in 0.0370 seconds  
  
=> ["wlslog"]  
hbase(main):052:0> ■
```

**Figure 10-41.** Listing HBase Tables

To get the data in row with row key 'log1' run the following command.

```
get 'wlslog', 'log1'
```

A single row of data gets listed as shown in Figure 10-42.

```
hbase(main):052:0> get 'wlslog', 'log1'
COLUMN          CELL
log:category   timestamp=1450717691754, value=Notice
log:code        timestamp=1450717691891, value=BEA-000365
log:msg         timestamp=1450717691927, value=Server state changed to STA
                NDBY
log:servername timestamp=1450717691853, value=AdminServer
log:time_stamp  timestamp=1450717691690, value=Apr-8-2014-7:06:16-PM-PDT
log:type        timestamp=1450717691803, value=WeblogicServer
6 row(s) in 0.0330 seconds
```

```
hbase(main):053:0> █
```

**Figure 10-42.** Getting a Single Row of Data

Get the data in a single column, the log.msg column from row with row key log7. A column is specified with column family:column format.

```
get 'wlslog', 'log7', {COLUMNS=>['log:msg']}
```

The single column data gets output as shown in Figure 10-43.

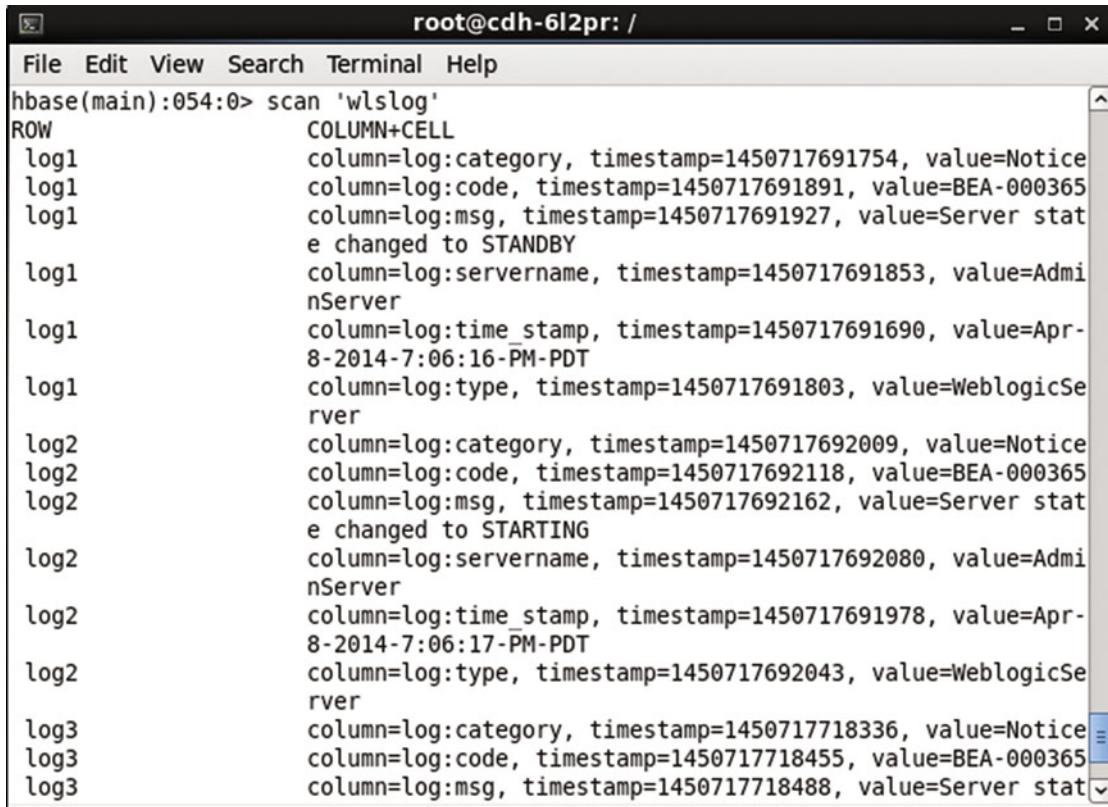
```
hbase(main):053:0> get 'wlslog', 'log7', {COLUMNS=>['log:msg']}
COLUMN          CELL
log:msg         timestamp=1450717746343, value=Server started in RUNNING m
ode
1 row(s) in 0.0170 seconds
```

**Figure 10-43.** Getting a Single Column Value in a Row

Scan the wlslog table with the scan command.

```
scan 'wlslog'
```

The scan command is shown in Figure 10-44.



root@cdh-6l2pr: /

```
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
hbase(main):054:0> scan 'wlslog'
ROW          COLUMN+CELL
log1        column=log:category, timestamp=1450717691754, value=Notice
log1        column=log:code, timestamp=1450717691891, value=BEA-000365
log1        column=log:msg, timestamp=1450717691927, value=Server stat
e changed to STANDBY
log1        column=log:servername, timestamp=1450717691853, value=Admi
nServer
log1        column=log:time_stamp, timestamp=1450717691690, value=Apr-
8-2014-7:06:16-PM-PDT
log1        column=log:type, timestamp=1450717691803, value=WeblogicSe
rver
log2        column=log:category, timestamp=1450717692009, value=Notice
log2        column=log:code, timestamp=1450717692118, value=BEA-000365
log2        column=log:msg, timestamp=1450717692162, value=Server stat
e changed to STARTING
log2        column=log:servername, timestamp=1450717692080, value=Admi
nServer
log2        column=log:time_stamp, timestamp=1450717691978, value=Apr-
8-2014-7:06:17-PM-PDT
log2        column=log:type, timestamp=1450717692043, value=WeblogicSe
rver
log3        column=log:category, timestamp=1450717718336, value=Notice
log3        column=log:code, timestamp=1450717718455, value=BEA-000365
log3        column=log:msg, timestamp=1450717718488, value=Server stat
```

**Figure 10-44.** Scanning a HBase Table

All the data from the wlslog table gets listed as shown in Figure 10-45.

```

root@cdh-6l2pr: / 
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
log5          column=log:type, timestamp=1450717718827, value=WeblogicSe
rver
log6          column=log:category, timestamp=1450717746009, value=Notice
log6          column=log:code, timestamp=1450717746104, value=BEA-000365
log6          column=log:msg, timestamp=1450717746137, value=Server stat
e changed to RUNNING
log6          column=log:servername, timestamp=1450717746073, value=Admi
nServer
log6          column=log:time_stamp, timestamp=1450717745967, value=Apr-
8-2014-7:06:21-PM-PDT
log6          column=log:type, timestamp=1450717746043, value=WeblogicSe
rver
log7          column=log:category, timestamp=1450717746216, value=Notice
log7          column=log:code, timestamp=1450717746305, value=BEA-000360
log7          column=log:msg, timestamp=1450717746343, value=Server star
ted in RUNNING mode
log7          column=log:servername, timestamp=1450717746274, value=Admi
nServer
log7          column=log:time_stamp, timestamp=1450717746189, value=Apr-
8-2014-7:06:22-PM-PDT
log7          column=log:type, timestamp=1450717746246, value=WeblogicSe
rver
7 row(s) in 0.0870 seconds

hbase(main):055:0> 

```

**Figure 10-45.** The scan Command outputs 7 Rows of Data

## Deleting the Replication Controller and Service

In the next section we shall create a cluster for the svds/cdh image imperatively on the command line. Delete the replication controller and the service created declaratively.

```
kubectl delete rc cdh
kubectl delete service cdh
```

## Creating an Apache Hadoop Cluster Imperatively

In the following subsections we shall create a CDH cluster from the svds/cdh Docker image on the command line. First, we shall create a replication controller.

### Creating a Replication Controller

Run the following command to create a replication controller called cdh with 2 replicas.

```
kubectl run cdh --image=svds/cdh --replicas=2
```

The cdh controller gets created as shown in Figure 10-46. The selector is set to run=cdh by default.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-45:~$ kubectl run cdh --image=svds/cdh --replicas=2
CONTROLLER CONTAINER(S) IMAGE(S) SELECTOR REPLICAS
cdh        cdh          svds/cdh  run=cdh    2
```

**Figure 10-46.** Creating a Replication Controller Imperatively

List the replication controllers.

```
kubectl get rc
```

The cdh replication controller gets listed as shown in Figure 10-47.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-45:~$ kubectl get rc
CONTROLLER CONTAINER(S) IMAGE(S) SELECTOR REPLICAS
cdh        cdh          svds/cdh  run=cdh    2
```

**Figure 10-47.** Getting the Replication Controller

## Listing the Pods

To list the Pods in the cluster run the following command.

```
kubectl get pods
```

The two Pods get listed. Initially some or all of the Pods could be not “Running” or not in the READY state 1/1 as shown in Figure 10-48.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-45:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME      READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
cdh-5hhqg 0/1     Running   0          13s
cdh-fi83b  1/1     Running   0          13s
```

**Figure 10-48.** Listing the Pods with some Pod/s not READY yet

Run the preceding command again after a few seconds.

```
kubectl get pods
```

All the pods should be listed with STATUS “Running” and READY state 1/1 as shown in Figure 10-49.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-45:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME      READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
cdh-5hhqg 1/1     Running   0          27s
cdh-fi83b  1/1     Running   0          27s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3     Running   0          1h
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-45:~$ █
```

**Figure 10-49.** Listing all Pods as Running and Ready

## Scaling a Cluster

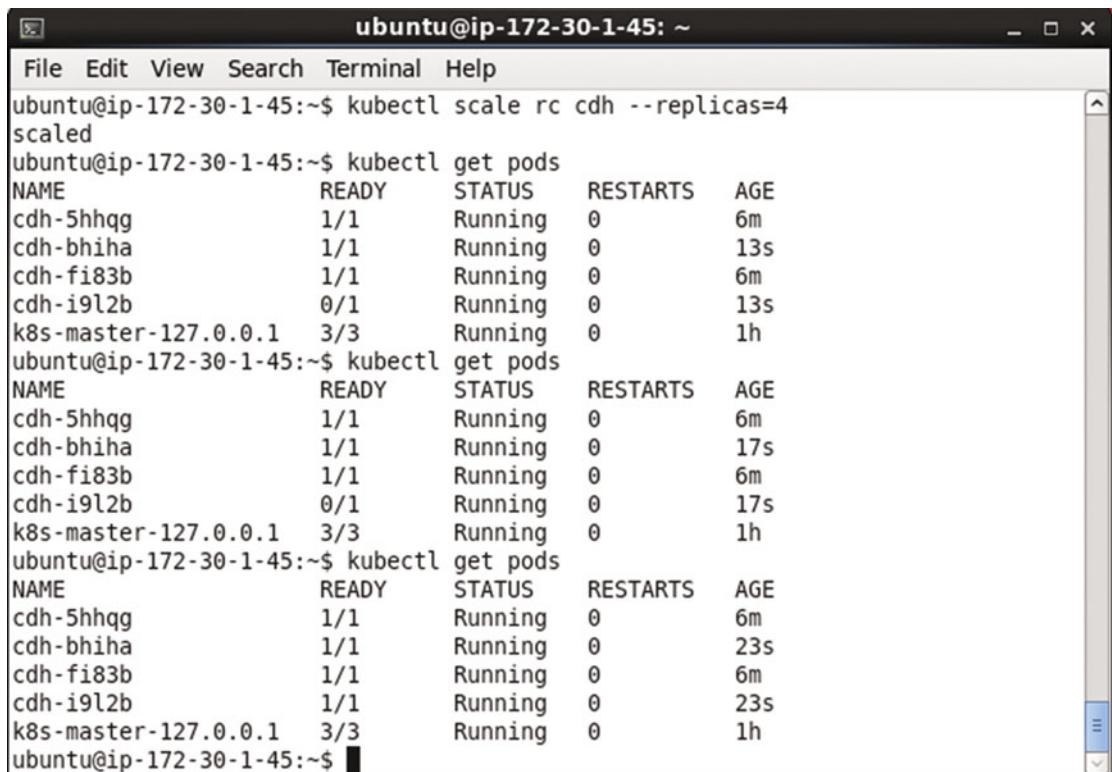
To scale the cluster to 4 replicas run the following command.

```
kubectl scale rc cdh --replicas=4
```

Subsequently list the Pods.

```
kubectl get pods
```

An output of “scaled” from the first command indicates that the cluster got scaled. The second command lists 4 Pods instead of the 2 created initially as shown in Figure 10-50. The second command may have to be run multiple times to list all Pods with STATUS “Running” and READY state 1/1.



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-45: ~". The terminal session starts with the user running the command "kubectl scale rc cdh --replicas=4", which results in the output "scaled". Subsequently, the user runs "kubectl get pods" three times to show the progression of pod creation. The first "get pods" command shows 4 pods: cdh-5hhqg, cdh-bhiha, cdh-fi83b, and cdh-i9l2b, all in a "Running" status with 0 restarts and an age of 6m. The second "get pods" command shows the same four pods, but their ages have increased to 13s. The third "get pods" command shows the same four pods again, with their ages now at 1h. This demonstrates that the cluster has been scaled to 4 replicas.

NAME	READY	STATUS	RESTARTS	AGE
cdh-5hhqg	1/1	Running	0	6m
cdh-bhiha	1/1	Running	0	13s
cdh-fi83b	1/1	Running	0	6m
cdh-i9l2b	0/1	Running	0	13s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1	3/3	Running	0	1h

NAME	READY	STATUS	RESTARTS	AGE
cdh-5hhqg	1/1	Running	0	6m
cdh-bhiha	1/1	Running	0	17s
cdh-fi83b	1/1	Running	0	6m
cdh-i9l2b	0/1	Running	0	17s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1	3/3	Running	0	1h

NAME	READY	STATUS	RESTARTS	AGE
cdh-5hhqg	1/1	Running	0	6m
cdh-bhiha	1/1	Running	0	23s
cdh-fi83b	1/1	Running	0	6m
cdh-i9l2b	1/1	Running	0	23s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1	3/3	Running	0	1h

**Figure 10-50.** Scaling the CDH Cluster

## Creating a Service

A service exposes the Pods managed by the replication controller at service endpoints, which are just host:port settings at which external clients may invoke the application. Run the following command to create a service.

```
kubectl expose rc cdh --type=LoadBalancer
```

Subsequently list the services.

```
kubectl get services
```

The “cdh” service gets listed with default settings for SELECTOR and PORT as shown in Figure 10-51. The default service selector is run=cdh, which has the default format run=<servicename>. The default port is 8020.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-45:~$ kubectl expose rc cdh --port=8020 --type=LoadBalancer
NAME      LABELS      SELECTOR    IP(S)      PORT(S)
cdh       run=cdh    run=cdh     8020/TCP
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-45:~$ kubectl get services
NAME      LABELS                           SELECTOR    IP(S)      PORT(S)
RT(S)
cdh       run=cdh                         run=cdh     10.0.0.24   80
20/TCP
kubernetes  component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes <none>     10.0.0.1    443/TCP
3/TCP
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-45:~$
```

**Figure 10-51.** Creating a Service

## Starting an Interactive Shell

The interactive shell may be started just as for a CDH cluster started declaratively. Copy the container id for a Docker container running the CDH image and run the following command, which includes the container id, to start an interactive bash shell.

```
sudo docker exec -it 42f2d8f40f17 bash
```

The interactive shell gets started as shown in Figure 10-52.

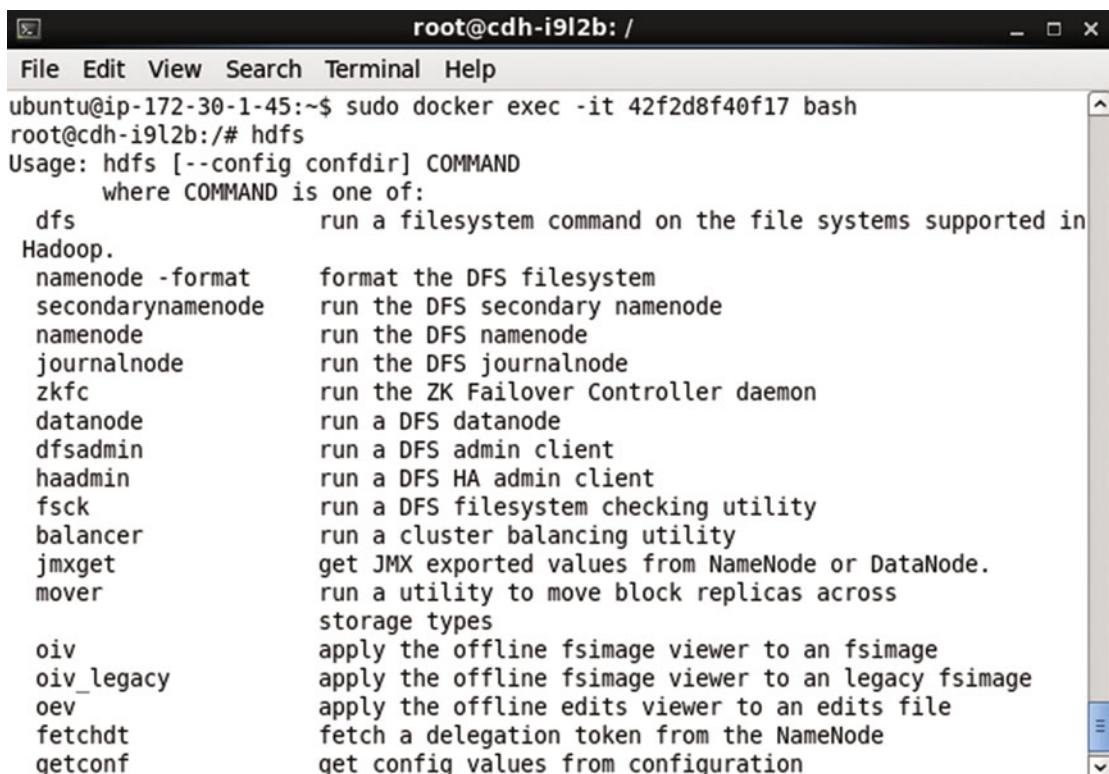
```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-45:~$ sudo docker exec -it 42f2d8f40f17 bash
root@cdh-i9l2b:/#
```

**Figure 10-52.** Starting an Interactive Shell

Run the hdfs command.

```
hdfs
```

The hdfs command usage gets output as shown in Figure 10-53.



```

root@cdh-i9l2b: / 
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-45:~$ sudo docker exec -it 42f2d8f40f17 bash
root@cdh-i9l2b:/# hdfs
Usage: hdfs [--config confdir] COMMAND
        where COMMAND is one of:
          dfs                  run a filesystem command on the file systems supported in
                               Hadoop.
          namenode -format      format the DFS filesystem
          secondarynamenode    run the DFS secondary namenode
          namenode              run the DFS namenode
          journalnode           run the DFS journalnode
          zkfc                 run the ZK Failover Controller daemon
          datanode              run a DFS datanode
          dfsadmin              run a DFS admin client
          haadmin               run a DFS HA admin client
          fsck                 run a DFS filesystem checking utility
          balancer              run a cluster balancing utility
          jmxget                get JMX exported values from NameNode or DataNode.
          mover                 run a utility to move block replicas across
                               storage types
          oiv                  apply the offline fsimage viewer to an fsimage
          oiv_legacy            apply the offline fsimage viewer to an legacy fsimage
          oev                  apply the offline edits viewer to an edits file
          fetchhtt              fetch a delegation token from the NameNode
          getconf               get config values from configuration

```

**Figure 10-53.** Command Usage for hdfs Command

## Summary

In this chapter we used the Kubernetes cluster manager to create a cluster of Pods based on the Docker image svds/cdh. We used both the declarative and imperative approaches to create the cluster. We scaled the cluster using the kubectl scale command. We also demonstrated using some of the Apache Hadoop frameworks packaged in the cdh image. We ran a MapReduce wordcount example application. We also ran the Apache Hive and Apache HBase tools. In the next chapter we shall discuss using Kubernetes with the indexing and storage framework Apache Solr.

## CHAPTER 11



# Using Apache Solr

Apache Solr is an Apache Lucene-based enterprise search platform providing features such as full-text search, near real-time indexing, and database integration. Apache Solr runs as a full-text search server within a servlet container, the default being Jetty, which is included with the Solr installation. In this chapter we shall discuss using Kubernetes cluster manager with Apache Solr. We shall be using only the declarative approach, which makes use of definition files, for creating and managing a Solr cluster. This chapter has the following sections.

- Setting the Environment
- Creating a Service
- Listing Service Endpoints
- Describing the Service
- Creating a Replication Controller
- Listing the Pods
- Describing a Pod
- Listing the Logs
- Starting an Interactive Shell
- Creating a Solr Core
- Adding Documents
- Accessing Solr on Command Line with a REST Client
- Setting Port Forwarding
- Accessing Solr in Admin Console
- Scaling the Cluster

## Setting the Environment

The following software is required for this chapter.

- Docker Engine (latest version)
- Kubernetes (version 1.01)
- Kubectl (version 1.01)
- Docker image for Apache Solr (latest version)

We have used the same Amazon EC2 instance AMI as in the other chapters. SSH login to the Ubuntu instance from a local machine.

```
ssh -i "docker.pem" ubuntu@54.152.82.142
```

Install the required software as discussed in chapter 1. Start Docker and verify its status.

```
sudo service docker start
sudo service docker status
```

As shown in Figure 11-1 Docker should be running.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$ sudo service docker start
start: Job is already running: docker
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$ sudo service docker status
docker start/running, process 2697
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$ █
```

**Figure 11-1.** Starting Docker and Verifying Status

List the services.

```
kubectl get services
```

As shown in Figure 11-2 Kubernetes service should be running.

NAME	LABELS	SELECTOR	IP(S)	PORT(S)
T(S) kubernetes /TCP	component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes	<none>	10.0.0.1	443

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$ kubectl get services
NAME      LABELS
T(S)
kubernetes  component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes
/TCP
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$ █
```

**Figure 11-2.** Listing the “kubernetes” Service

To list the nodes run the following command.

```
kubectl get nodes
```

The 127.0.0.1 node gets listed as shown in Figure 11-3.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$ kubectl get nodes
NAME      LABELS
127.0.0.1  kubernetes.io/hostname=127.0.0.1
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$ █
```

**Figure 11-3.** Listing a Single Node

List the endpoints with the following command.

```
kubectl get endpoints
```

Initially only the endpoint for kubernetes is listed as shown in Figure 11-4.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-34:~$ kubectl get endpoints
NAME      ENDPOINTS
kubernetes  172.30.1.34:6443
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-34:~$ █
```

**Figure 11-4.** Listing “kubernetes” Endpoint

## Creating a Service

Create a definition file `solr-service.yaml` and add the following (Table 11-1) fields to the definition file.

**Table 11-1.** Service Definition File for Apache Solr

Field	Description	Value
apiVersion		v1
kind	The kind of definition file.	Service
metadata	The service metadata.	
metadata -> labels	The service labels. Not required.	app: solrApp
metadata -> name	The service name. Required.	solr-service
spec	The service specification.	
spec -> ports	The ports exposed by the service.	
spec -> ports -> port	A port exposed by the service.	8983
spec -> ports -> targetPort	The target port.	8983
spec -> selector	The Pod selector. Service routes traffic to the Pods with a label matching the selector expression.	app: solrApp

The solr-service.yaml is listed.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Service
metadata:
  labels:
    app: solrApp
    name: solr-service
spec:
  ports:
  -
    port: 8983
    targetPort: 8983
  selector:
    app: solrApp
```

The solr-service.yaml may be edited in the vi editor and saved with :wq as shown in Figure 11-5.

A screenshot of a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163: ~". The window shows the YAML configuration for a Kubernetes service named "solr-service". The file includes metadata labels for "app: solrApp" and "name: solr-service", and a specification for a port mapping where port 8983 maps to targetPort 8983. The "selector" field also specifies "app: solrApp". The bottom of the screen shows the vi editor's command-line interface with the text ":wq" entered, indicating the user is about to save and exit the file.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Service
metadata:
  name: "solr-service"
  labels:
    app: "solrApp"
spec:
  ports:
  -
    port: 8983
    targetPort: 8983
  selector:
    app: "solrApp"
```

**Figure 11-5.** Service Definition File in vi Editor

Create a service from the definition file with the following command.

```
kubectl create -f solr-service.yaml
```

Subsequently list the services.

```
kubectl get services
```

An output of “services/solr-service” as shown in Figure 11-6 indicates that the service has been created. Subsequently the solr-service gets listed. The service has label app=solrApp and selector app=solrApp.

NAME	LABELS	SELECTOR	IP(S)
PORT(S)			
kubernetes	component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes	<none>	10.0.0.1
443/TCP			
solr-service	app=solrApp	app=solrApp	10.0.0.24
3 8983/TCP			

**Figure 11-6.** Creating a Service from Definition File

## Listing Service Endpoints

To list the endpoints run the following command.

```
kubectl get endpoints
```

As the solr-service is not managing any Pods initially, no endpoint gets listed as shown in Figure 11-7.

NAME	ENDPOINTS
kubernetes	172.30.1.163:6443
solr-service	<none>

**Figure 11-7.** Listing the Endpoint for the Solr Service

## Describing the Service

To describe the solr-service run the following command.

```
kubectl describe service solr-service
```

The service name, namespace, labels, selector, type, IP, Port, endpoints, and events get listed as shown in Figure 11-8.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$ kubectl describe service solr-service
Name:           solr-service
Namespace:      default
Labels:         app=solrApp
Selector:       app=solrApp
Type:          ClusterIP
IP:            10.0.0.243
Port:          <unnamed>     8983/TCP
Endpoints:     <none>
Session Affinity: None
No events.

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$ █
```

**Figure 11-8.** Describing the Apache Solr Service

## Creating a Replication Controller

Create a definition file `solr-rc.yaml` for the replication controller and add the following (Table 11-2) fields to the definition file.

**Table 11-2.** Replication Controller Definition File Fields

Field	Description	Value
apiVersion		v1
kind	The kind of definition file.	Replication Controller
metadata	The replication controller metadata.	
metadata -> labels	The replication controller labels.	app: solrApp
metadata -> name	The replication controller name.	solr-rc
spec	The replication controller specification.	
spec -> replicas	The number of Pod replicas.	2
spec -> selector	A key: value expression for selecting the Pods to manage. Pods with a label the same as the selector expression are managed by the replication controller. For a single label/ selector expression Pod/Replication Controller combination the selector expression must be the same as the spec -> template -> metadata -> labels expression. The selector defaults to the spec -> template -> metadata -> labels not specified. The app: solrApp setting translates to app=solrApp.	app: solrApp
spec -> template	The Pod template.	
spec -> template -> metadata	The Pod template metadata.	

(continued)

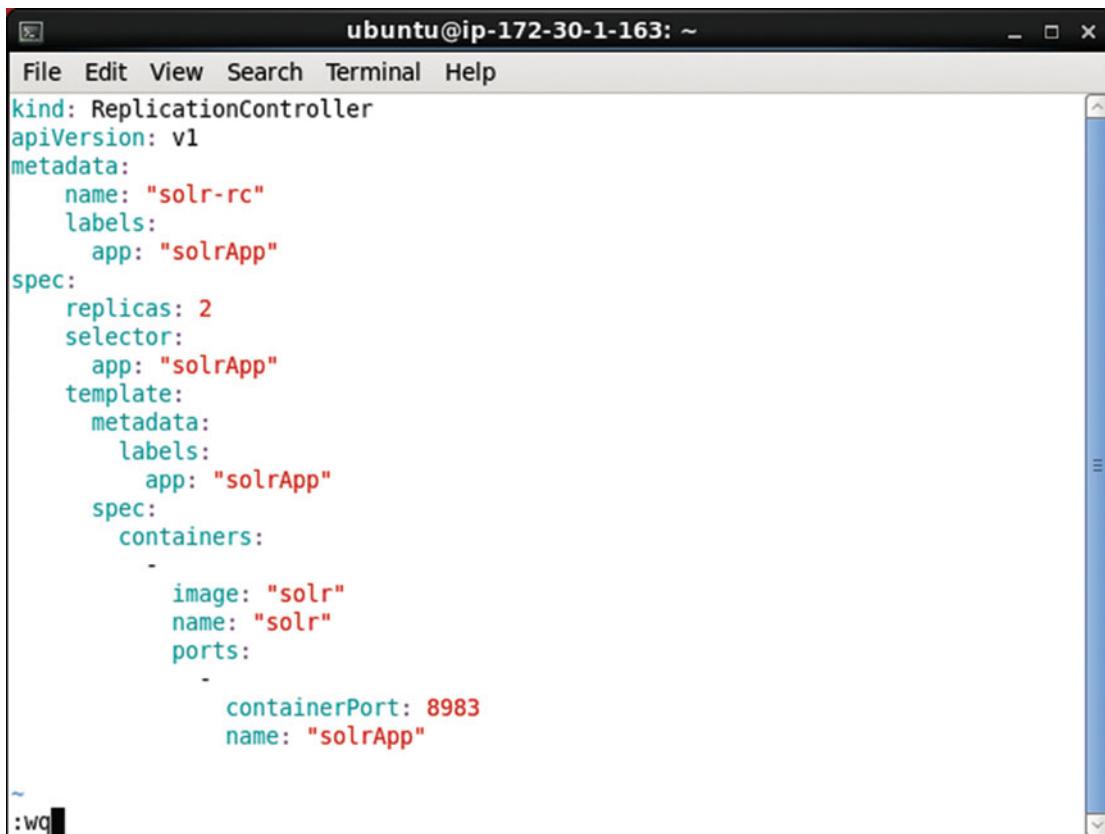
**Table 11-2.** (continued)

Field	Description	Value
spec -> template -> metadata -> labels	The Pod template labels.	app: solrApp
spec -> template -> spec	The Pod template specification.	
spec -> template -> spec -> containers	The containers configuration for the Pod template.	
spec -> template -> spec -> containers -> image	The Docker image.	solr
spec -> template -> spec -> containers -> name	The container name.	solr
spec -> template -> spec -> containers -> ports	Container ports.	
spec -> template -> spec -> containers -> ports -> containerPort	Container port for Solr server.	8983
spec -> template -> spec -> containers -> ports -> name	Solr port name.	solrApp

The `solr-rc.yaml` is listed.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: ReplicationController
metadata:
  labels:
    app: solrApp
    name: solr-rc
spec:
  replicas: 2
  selector:
    app: solrApp
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        app: solrApp
    spec:
      containers:
        -
          image: solr
          name: solr
          ports:
            -
              containerPort: 8983
              name: solrApp
```

The `solr-rc.yaml` definition file may be created and saved in vi editor as shown in Figure 11-9.



```

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163: ~
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
kind: ReplicationController
apiVersion: v1
metadata:
  name: "solr-rc"
  labels:
    app: "solrApp"
spec:
  replicas: 2
  selector:
    app: "solrApp"
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        app: "solrApp"
    spec:
      containers:
        -
          image: "solr"
          name: "solr"
          ports:
            -
              containerPort: 8983
              name: "solrApp"

:wq

```

**Figure 11-9.** Replication Controller Definition File in vi Editor

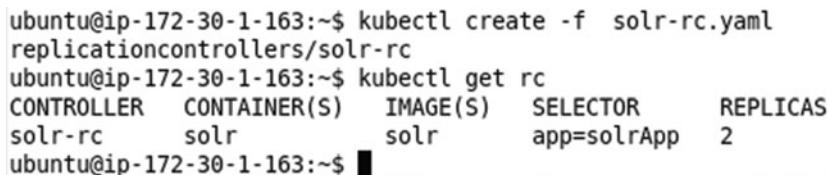
Run the following command to create a replication controller from the definition file.

```
kubectl create -f solr-rc.yaml
```

The solr-rc replication controller gets created as shown in Figure 11-10. Subsequently list the replication controllers.

```
kubectl get rc
```

The solr-rc replication controller gets listed as shown in Figure 11-10.



```

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$ kubectl create -f solr-rc.yaml
replicationcontrollers/solr-rc
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$ kubectl get rc
CONTROLLER   CONTAINER(S)   IMAGE(S)   SELECTOR   REPLICAS
solr-rc       solr          solr        app=solrApp   2
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$ 

```

**Figure 11-10.** Creating a Replication Controller from Definition File

## Listing the Pods

List the Pods with the following command.

```
kubectl get pods
```

The two Pods created by the replication controller get listed as shown in Figure 11-11. Initially some of the Pods could be not running and not ready.

NAME	READY	STATUS	RESTARTS
AGE			
k8s-master-127.0.0.1	3/3	Running	0
11m			
solr-rc-s82ip	0/1	Image: solr is not ready on the node	0
38s			
solr-rc-ui66u	0/1	Image: solr is not ready on the node	0
38s			

**Figure 11-11.** Listing the Pods, all of them not yet Ready

Run the same command again after a few seconds to list the Pods again.

```
kubectl get pods
```

The Pods should get listed with STATUS “Running” and READY state 1/1 as shown in Figure 11-12.

NAME	READY	STATUS	RESTARTS	AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1	3/3	Running	0	11m
solr-rc-s82ip	1/1	Running	0	46s
solr-rc-ui66u	1/1	Running	0	46s

**Figure 11-12.** Listing the Pods as Ready

To describe the solr-service run the following command.

```
kubectl describe svc solr-service
```

The service description gets listed as shown in Figure 11-13. The service endpoints for the two Pods are also listed. A service is accessed at its endpoints. When described previously, before creating the replication controller, no service endpoints got listed as shown in Figure 11-8.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:/var/lib$ kubectl describe svc solr-service
Name:           solr-service
Namespace:      default
Labels:         app=solrApp
Selector:       app=solrApp
Type:          ClusterIP
IP:            10.0.0.243
Port:          <unnamed>     8983/TCP
Endpoints:     172.17.0.2:8983,172.17.0.3:8983
Session Affinity: None
No events.
```

**Figure 11-13.** Describing the Solr Service including the Service Endpoints

The endpoints may also be listed separately.

```
kubectl get endpoints
```

The endpoints get listed as shown in Figure 11-14.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-34:~$ kubectl get endpoints
NAME      ENDPOINTS
kubernetes  172.30.1.34:6443
solr-service  172.17.0.2:8983,172.17.0.3:8983
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-34:~$ █
```

**Figure 11-14.** Listing the Endpoints for Solr Service

## Describing a Replication Controller

To describe the replication controller `solr-rc` run the following command.

```
kubectl describe rc solr-rc
```

The replication controller description gets listed as shown in Figure 11-15.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$ kubectl describe rc solr-rc
Name:           solr-rc
Namespace:      default
Image(s):       solr
Selector:       app=solrApp
Labels:         app=solrApp
Replicas:       2 current / 2 desired
Pods Status:   2 Running / 0 Waiting / 0 Succeeded / 0 Failed
Events:
  FirstSeen          LastSeen          Count F
  rom               SubobjectPath    Reason Message
  Thu, 31 Dec 2015 18:50:41 +0000   Thu, 31 Dec 2015 18:50:41 +0000 1  {
replication-controller }           successfulCreate   Created
pod: solr-rc-ui66u
  Thu, 31 Dec 2015 18:50:41 +0000   Thu, 31 Dec 2015 18:50:41 +0000 1  {
replication-controller }           successfulCreate   Created
pod: solr-rc-s82ip

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$ █
```

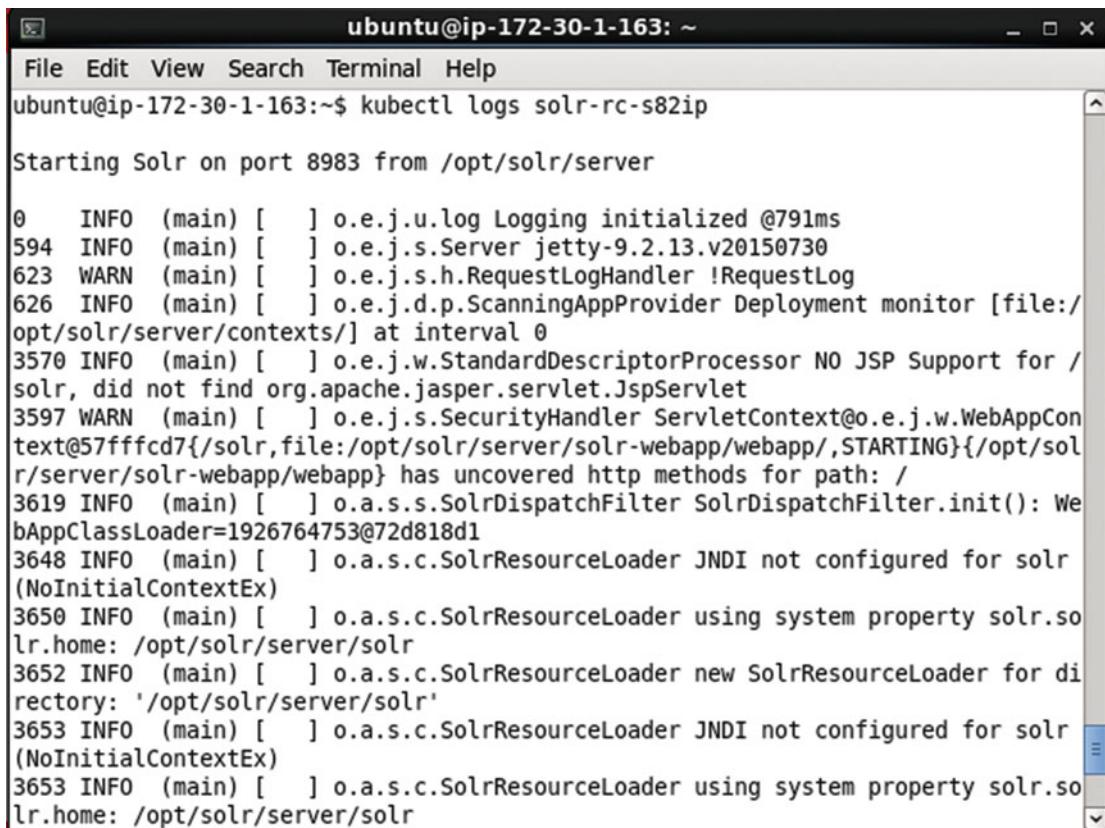
**Figure 11-15.** Describing the Replication Controller

## Listing the Logs

To list the logs for a particular command run the `kubectl logs` command. For example, logs for the `solr-rc-s82ip` Pod are listed with the following command.

```
kubectl logs solr-rc-s82ip
```

In the log output the Solr server is starting as shown in Figure 11-16.

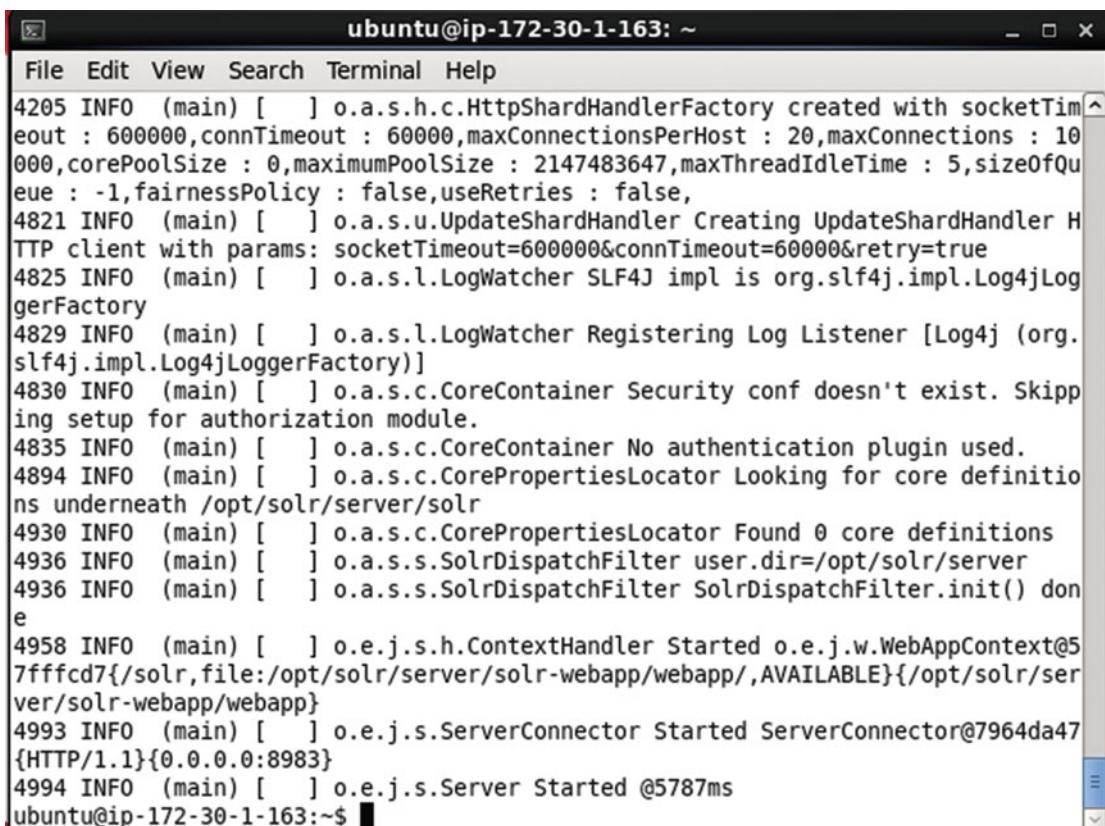


The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163: ~". The window contains the following log output:

```
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$ kubectl logs solr-rc-s82ip
Starting Solr on port 8983 from /opt/solr/server
0 INFO (main) [    ] o.e.j.u.log Logging initialized @791ms
594 INFO (main) [    ] o.e.j.s.Server jetty-9.2.13.v20150730
623 WARN (main) [    ] o.e.j.s.h.RequestLogHandler !RequestLog
626 INFO (main) [    ] o.e.j.d.p.ScanningAppProvider Deployment monitor [file:/opt/solr/servercontexts/] at interval 0
3570 INFO (main) [    ] o.e.j.w.StandardDescriptorProcessor NO JSP Support for /solr, did not find org.apache.jasper.servlet.JspServlet
3597 WARN (main) [    ] o.e.j.s.SecurityHandler ServletContext@o.e.j.w.WebAppContext@57fffc7{/solr,file:/opt/solr/server/solr-webapp/webapp/,STARTING}{/opt/solr/server/solr-webapp/webapp} has uncovered http methods for path: /
3619 INFO (main) [    ] o.a.s.s.SolrDispatchFilter SolrDispatchFilter.init(): WebAppClassLoader=1926764753@72d818d1
3648 INFO (main) [    ] o.a.s.c.SolrResourceLoader JNDI not configured for solr (NoInitialContextEx)
3650 INFO (main) [    ] o.a.s.c.SolrResourceLoader using system property solr.solr.home: /opt/solr/server/solr
3652 INFO (main) [    ] o.a.s.c.SolrResourceLoader new SolrResourceLoader for directory: '/opt/solr/server/solr'
3653 INFO (main) [    ] o.a.s.c.SolrResourceLoader JNDI not configured for solr (NoInitialContextEx)
3653 INFO (main) [    ] o.a.s.c.SolrResourceLoader using system property solr.solr.home: /opt/solr/server/solr
```

**Figure 11-16.** Listing Logs for the Pod

After the server has started the output “Server Started” gets output as shown in Figure 11-17.



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163: ~". The window displays a series of log messages from the Apache Solr application. The logs include various INFO-level messages about the creation of HttpShardHandlerFactories, the creation of UpdateShardHandlers, and the registration of Log Watchers. It also mentions the absence of security configuration and the use of no authentication plugin. The logs conclude with the start of the o.e.j.s.h.ContextHandler and the o.e.j.s.ServerConnector, followed by the o.e.j.s.Server starting at 5787ms.

```

4205 INFO (main) [ ] o.a.s.h.c.HttpShardHandlerFactory created with socketTim
eout : 600000,connTimeout : 60000,maxConnectionsPerHost : 20,maxConnections : 10
000,corePoolSize : 0,maximumPoolSize : 2147483647,maxThreadIdleTime : 5,sizeOfQu
eue : -1,fairnessPolicy : false,useRetries : false,
4821 INFO (main) [ ] o.a.s.u.UpdateShardHandler Creating UpdateShardHandler H
TTP client with params: socketTimeout=600000&connTimeout=60000&retry=true
4825 INFO (main) [ ] o.a.s.l.LogWatcher SLF4J impl is org.slf4j.impl.Log4jLog
gerFactory
4829 INFO (main) [ ] o.a.s.l.LogWatcher Registering Log Listener [Log4j (org.
slf4j.impl.Log4jLoggerFactory)]
4830 INFO (main) [ ] o.a.s.c.CoreContainer Security conf doesn't exist. Skipp
ing setup for authorization module.
4835 INFO (main) [ ] o.a.s.c.CoreContainer No authentication plugin used.
4894 INFO (main) [ ] o.a.s.c.CorePropertiesLocator Looking for core definitio
ns underneath /opt/solr/server/solr
4930 INFO (main) [ ] o.a.s.c.CorePropertiesLocator Found 0 core definitions
4936 INFO (main) [ ] o.a.s.s.SolrDispatchFilter user.dir=/opt/solr/server
4936 INFO (main) [ ] o.a.s.s.SolrDispatchFilter SolrDispatchFilter.init() don
e
4958 INFO (main) [ ] o.e.j.s.h.ContextHandler Started o.e.j.w.WebAppContext@5
7fffcd7{/solr,file:/opt/solr/server/solr-webapp/webapp/,AVAILABLE}{/opt/solr/ser
ver/solr-webapp/webapp}
4993 INFO (main) [ ] o.e.j.s.ServerConnector Started ServerConnector@7964da47
{HTTP/1.1}{0.0.0.0:8983}
4994 INFO (main) [ ] o.e.j.s.Server Started @5787ms
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$ 

```

**Figure 11-17.** Listing the Solr Server as started

## Starting an Interactive Shell

As the “solr” Docker image inherits from the “java:openjdk-8-jre” Docker image, which further inherits from the “buildpack-deps:jessie-curl” image, which inherits from Docker image “debian” for Linux an interactive bash shell may be started to access a Docker container based on the “solr” Docker image. To access the Solr software we need to start an interactive bash shell for a Docker container running Solr. Obtain the container id for a Docker container running Solr with the following command.

```
sudo docker ps
```

The Docker containers get listed as shown in Figure 11-18.

CONTAINER ID	IMAGE	CREATED	STATUS	COM PORTS
MAND	NAMES			
8abfbdead3c7	solr			"/o
pt/solr/bin/solr -"	" k8s_solr.3998eadb_solr-rc-pfpiu_default_4986f704-a909-11e5-94ce-1296bf55971f_65cde259	8 minutes ago	Up 8 minutes	
134edae973ba	gcr.io/google_containers/pause:0.8.0			"/p
ause"		8 minutes ago	Up 8 minutes	
	k8s_POD.4ee4e8c5_solr-rc-pfpiu_default_4986f704-a909-11e5-94ce-1296bf55971f_325b86a5			
2d4d7d02c05f	solr			"/o
pt/solr/bin/solr -"	" About an hour ago	Up About an hour		
	k8s_solr.3998eadb_solr_default_6fb3ef93-a8fb-11e5-94ce-1296bf55971f_a5d6bc71			
a64ce026fe58	gcr.io/google_containers/pause:0.8.0			"/p
ause"		About an hour ago	Up About an hour	
	k8s_POD.4ee4e8c5_solr_default_6fb3ef93-a8fb-11e5-94ce-1296bf55971f_fb72a3c8			
eb358dc3e2b0	gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1			"/h
yperkube proxy --m"	" About an hour ago	Up About an hour		
	cocky_leaky			
ab27389cdf62	gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1			"/h
yperkube scheduler"	" About an hour ago	Up About an hour		
	k8s_scheduler.2744e742_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c4a_b9fd94ee			
f26b84120226	gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1			"/h
yperkube apiserver"	" About an hour ago	Up About an hour		
	k8s_apiserver.cfb70250_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c4a_da559699			
18aa70eee943	gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1			"/h

**Figure 11-18.** Listing the Docker Container for Apache Solr

Copy the container id and start an interactive shell.

```
sudo docker exec -it 2d4d7d02c05f bash
```

The interactive shell gets started as shown in Figure 11-19. To list the status of the Solr server run the following command.

```
bin/solr status
```

One Solr node is found as shown in Figure 11-19.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-34:~$ sudo docker exec -it 2d4d7d02c05f bash
solr@solr:/opt/solr$ bin/solr status

Found 1 Solr nodes:

Solr process 1 running on port 8983
{
  "solr_home":"/opt/solr/server/solr",
  "version":"5.4.0 1718046 - upayavira - 2015-12-04 23:16:46",
  "startTime":"2015-12-22T22:30:04.132Z",
  "uptime":"0 days, 1 hours, 48 minutes, 59 seconds",
  "memory":"42.4 MB (%8.6) of 490.7 MB"}
```

**Figure 11-19.** Listing the Solr Status in an Interactive Shell for the Docker Container

Solr 5.x introduce *configsets*. The configsets directory consists of example configurations that may be used as a base to create new Solr cores or collections. The configsets replace the collection1 example core configuration in Solr 4.x. Cd (change directory) to the configsets directory.

```
cd /opt/solr/server/solr/configsets
```

List the files and directories in the configsets directory.

```
ls -l
```

Three example configurations get listed as shown in Figure 11-20.

```
solr@solr:/opt/solr/server/solr/configsets$ ls -l
total 12
drwxr-xr-x 3 solr solr 4096 Dec  3 09:03 basic_configs
drwxr-xr-x 3 solr solr 4096 Dec  3 09:03 data_driven_schema_configs
drwxr-xr-x 3 solr solr 4096 Dec  3 09:03 sample_techproducts_config
s
solr@solr:/opt/solr/server/solr/configsets$ █
```

**Figure 11-20.** Listing the Example Configurations

When we create a Solr core later in the chapter we shall be using the basic\_configs configuration. List the files in the //configsets/ basic\_configs/conf directory.

```
cd conf
ls -l
```

The configuration files for basic\_configs example get listed and include the schema.xml and solrconfig.xml as shown in Figure 11-21.

```
<rver/solr/configsets/basic_configs/conf$ ls -l
total 80
-rw-r--r-- 1 solr solr    33 Dec  3 09:03 _rest_managed.json
-rw-r--r-- 1 solr solr  3974 Dec  3 09:03 currency.xml
drwxr-xr-x 2 solr solr  4096 Dec 16 01:02 lang
-rw-r--r-- 1 solr solr   873 Dec  3 09:03 protwords.txt
-rw-r--r-- 1 solr solr 29225 Dec  3 09:03 schema.xml
-rw-r--r-- 1 solr solr 22555 Dec  3 09:03 solrconfig.xml
-rw-r--r-- 1 solr solr   781 Dec  3 09:03 stopwords.txt
-rw-r--r-- 1 solr solr  1119 Dec  3 09:03 synonyms.txt
solr@solr:/opt/solr/server/solr/configsets/basic_configs/conf$ █
```

**Figure 11-21.** Listing the Configuration Files in the basic\_configs Example Configuration

## Creating a Solr Core

A new Solr core may also be created from the command line. The solr create command is used to create a new core or a collection. As an example, create a core called wlslog with the solr create\_core command. Use the configset basic\_configs with the -d option. The default config set used if none is specified (with the -d option) is data\_driven\_schema\_configs. Cd to the /opt/solr directory and run the following command.

```
bin/solr create_core -c wlslog -d /opt/solr/server/solr/configsets/basic_configs
```

A Solr core called wlslog gets created as shown in Figure 11-22.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-163:~$ sudo docker exec -it 23f48c21cf91 bash
< wlslog -d /opt/solr/server/solr/configsets/basic_configs

Copying configuration to new core instance directory:
/opt/solr/server/solr/wlslog

Creating new core 'wlslog' using command:
http://localhost:8983/solr/admin/cores?action=CREATE&name=wlslog&instanceDir=wls
log

{
  "responseHeader": {
    "status": 0,
    "QTime": 1216,
    "core": "wlslog"
  }

solr@solr-rc-s82ip:/opt/solr$ █
```

**Figure 11-22.** Creating a Solr Core called wlslog

## Indexing Documents

Apache Solr provides the `post` tool for indexing documents from the command line. The `post` tool supports different input file formats such as XML, CSV and JSON. We shall index an XML format document Save the following XML document to the `wlslog.xml` file.

```
<add>
<doc>
<field name="id">wlslog1</field>
  <field name="time_stamp_s">Apr-8-2014-7:06:16-PM-PDT</field>
  <field name="category_s">Notice</field>
  <field name="type_s">WebLogicServer</field>
  <field name="servername_s">AdminServer</field>
  <field name="code_s">BEA-000365</field>
  <field name="msg_s">Server state changed to STANDBY</field>

</doc>

<doc>
<field name="id">wlslog2</field>

  <field name="time_stamp_s">Apr-8-2014-7:06:17-PM-PDT</field>
  <field name="category_s">Notice</field>
  <field name="type_s">WebLogicServer</field>

  <field name="servername_s">AdminServer</field>
  <field name="code">BEA-000365</field>
  <field name="msg_s">Server state changed to STARTING</field>

</doc>

<doc>
<field name="id">wlslog3</field>

  <field name="time_stamp_s">Apr-8-2014-7:06:18-PM-PDT</field>
  <field name="category_s">Notice</field>
  <field name="type_s">WebLogicServer</field>

  <field name="servername_s">AdminServer</field>
  <field name="code">BEA-000365</field>
  <field name="msg_s">Server state changed to ADMIN</field>

</doc>
<doc>
<field name="id">wlslog4</field>
  <field name="time_stamp_s">Apr-8-2014-7:06:19-PM-PDT</field>
  <field name="category_s">Notice</field>
  <field name="type_s">WebLogicServer</field>
```

```
<field name="servername_s">AdminServer</field>
<field name="code">BEA-000365</field>
<field name="msg_s">Server state changed to RESUMING</field>

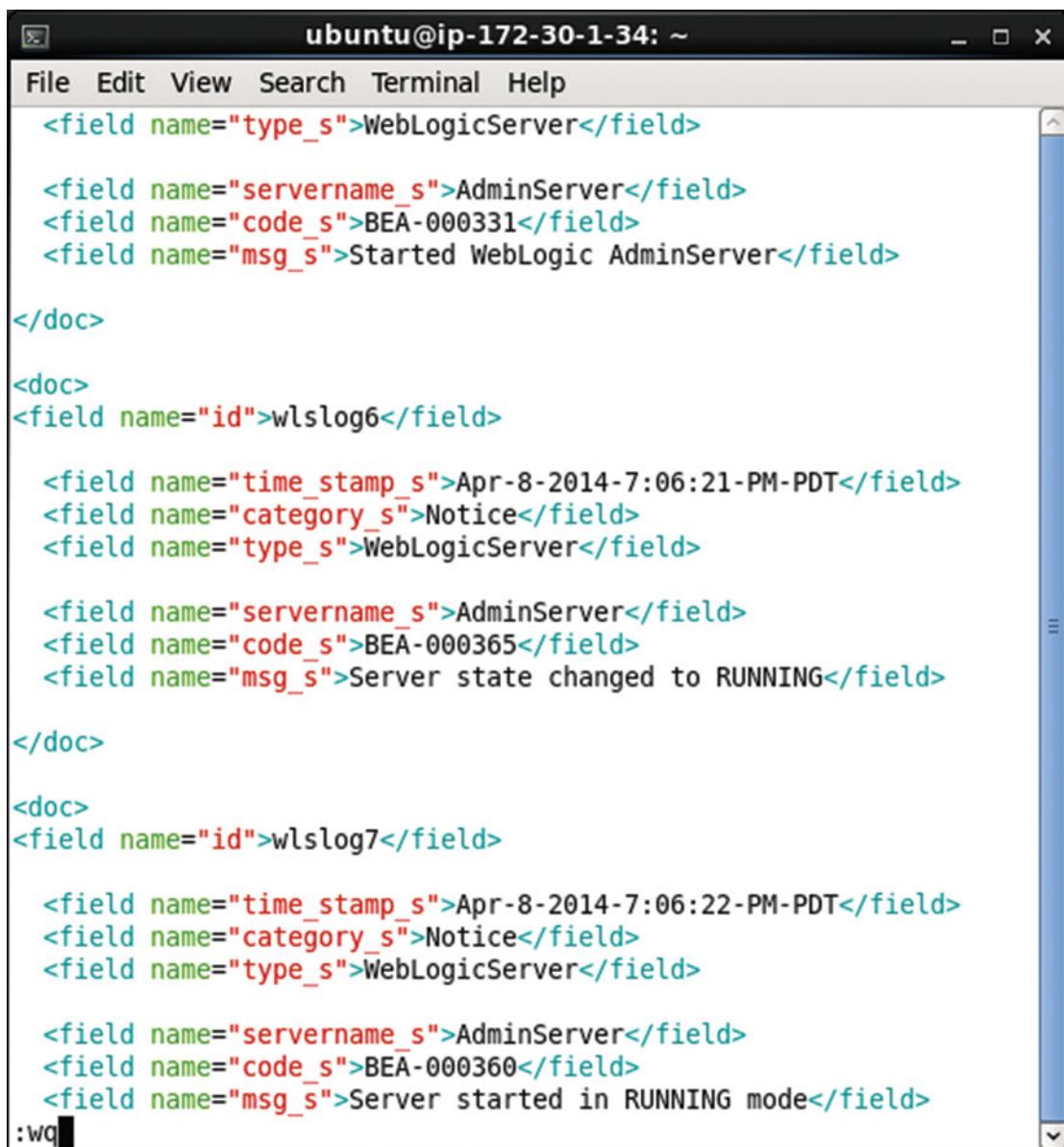
</doc>

<doc>
<field name="id">wlslog5</field>

<field name="time_stamp_s">Apr-8-2014-7:06:20-PM-PDT</field>
<field name="category_s">Notice</field>
<field name="type_s">WebLogicServer</field>
<field name="servername_s">AdminServer</field>
<field name="code">BEA-000331</field>
<field name="msg_s">Started WebLogic AdminServer</field>
</doc>
<doc>
<field name="id">wlslog6</field>

<field name="time_stamp_s">Apr-8-2014-7:06:21-PM-PDT</field>
<field name="category_s">Notice</field>
<field name="type_s">WebLogicServer</field>
<field name="servername_s">AdminServer</field>
<field name="code">BEA-000365</field>
<field name="msg_s">Server state changed to RUNNING</field>
</doc>
<doc>
<field name="id">wlslog7</field>
<field name="time_stamp_s">Apr-8-2014-7:06:22-PM-PDT</field>
<field name="category_s">Notice</field>
<field name="type_s">WebLogicServer</field>
<field name="servername_s">AdminServer</field>
<field name="code">BEA-000360</field>
<field name="msg_s">Server started in RUNNING mode</field>
</doc>
</add>
```

The `wlslog.xml` file may be created in the vi editor and saved with the `:wq` command as shown in Figure 11-23.



```

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-34: ~
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
<field name="type_s">WebLogicServer</field>
<field name="servername_s">AdminServer</field>
<field name="code_s">BEA-000331</field>
<field name="msg_s">Started WebLogic AdminServer</field>
</doc>
<doc>
<field name="id">wlslog6</field>
<field name="time_stamp_s">Apr-8-2014-7:06:21-PM-PDT</field>
<field name="category_s">Notice</field>
<field name="type_s">WebLogicServer</field>
<field name="servername_s">AdminServer</field>
<field name="code_s">BEA-000365</field>
<field name="msg_s">Server state changed to RUNNING</field>
</doc>
<doc>
<field name="id">wlslog7</field>
<field name="time_stamp_s">Apr-8-2014-7:06:22-PM-PDT</field>
<field name="category_s">Notice</field>
<field name="type_s">WebLogicServer</field>
<field name="servername_s">AdminServer</field>
<field name="code_s">BEA-000360</field>
<field name="msg_s">Server started in RUNNING mode</field>
:wq

```

**Figure 11-23.** The wlslog.xml File

Cd to the /opt/solr directory and run the post tool to add the documents in the wlslog.xml file to Solr server.

```
bin/post -c wlslog ./wlslog.xml
```

One file gets indexed as shown in Figure 11-24.

```
solr@solr:/opt/solr$ bin/post -c wlslog ./wlslog.xml
java -classpath /opt/solr/dist/solr-core-5.4.0.jar -Dauto=yes -Dc=w
lslog -Ddata=files org.apache.solr.util.SimplePostTool ./wlslog.xml
SimplePostTool version 5.0.0
Posting files to [base] url http://localhost:8983/solr/wlslog/updat
e...
Entering auto mode. File endings considered are xml,json,csv,pdf,do
c,docx,ppt,pptx,xls,xlsx,odt,odp,ods,ott,otp,ots,rtf,htm,html,txt,l
og
POSTing file wlslog.xml (application/xml) to [base]
1 files indexed.
COMMITting Solr index changes to http://localhost:8983/solr/wlslog/
update...
Time spent: 0:00:00.104
solr@solr:/opt/solr$ █
```

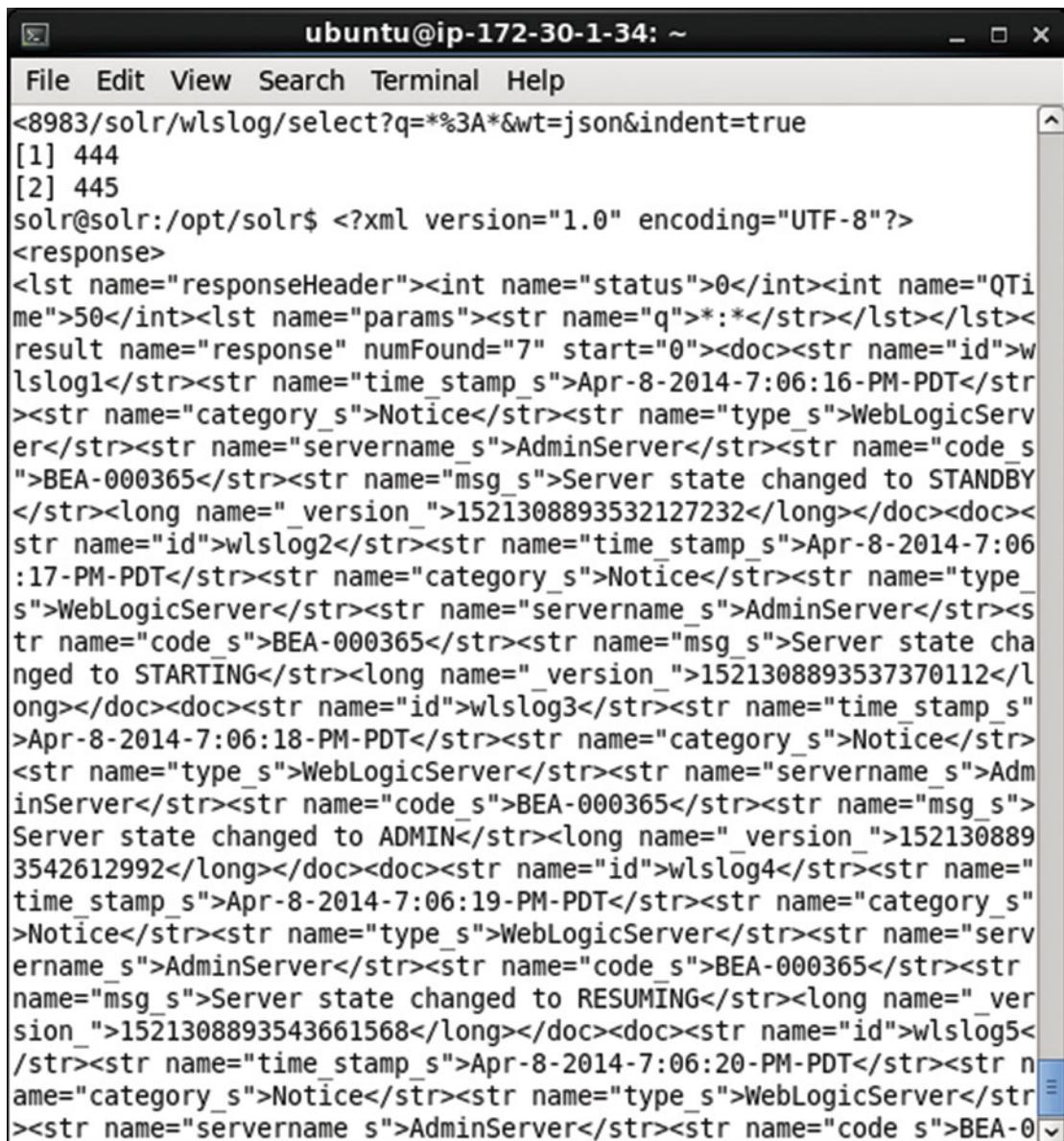
**Figure 11-24.** Posting the *wlslog.xml* File to the Solr Index

## Accessing Solr on Command Line with a REST Client

Solr request handler commands such as /update, /select may be run using a REST client such as curl and wget. In this section we shall use the curl tool to run some of the /select request handler commands. For example, query all documents using the following curl command.

```
curl http://localhost:8983/solr/wlslog/select?q=*%3A*&wt=json&indent=true
```

The curl command is shown in Figure 11-25.



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-34: ~". The window displays the output of a curl command sent to a Solr server at the URL <8983/solr/wlslog/select?q=%3A&wt=json&indent=true. The response is in JSON format, showing 7 documents. The first two documents are simple integer responses [1] 444 and [2] 445. The remaining 5 documents are XML snippets representing log entries. Each entry includes fields like id, time\_stamp\_s, category\_s, type\_s, servername\_s, code\_s, msg\_s, and version\_. The log entries describe state changes for a WebLogicServer AdminServer, including transitions from STANDBY to STANDBY, then to STARTING, then to ADMIN, and finally to RESUMING. The log entries also mention the server being changed to ADMIN.

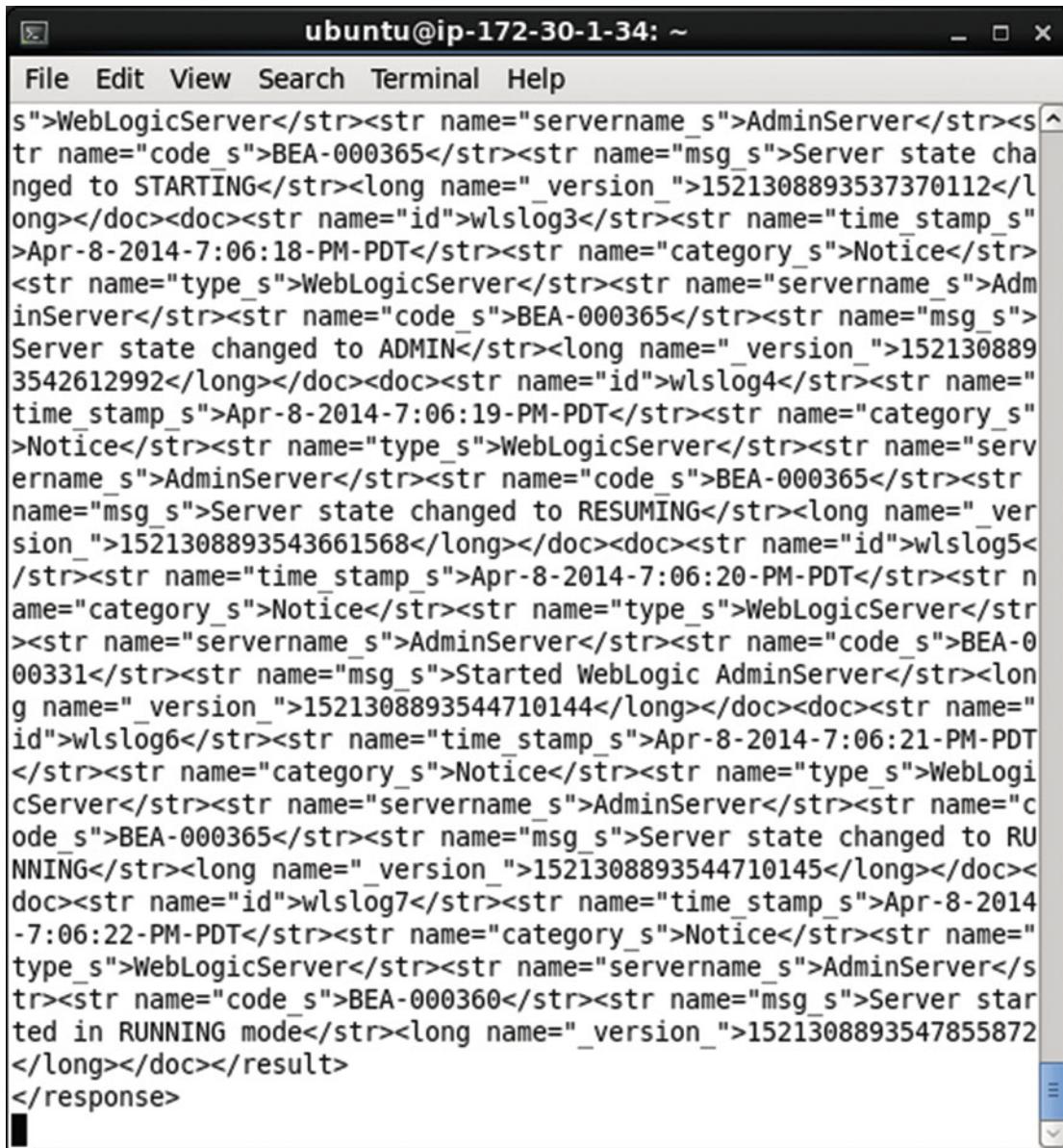
```

<8983/solr/wlslog/select?q=%3A&wt=json&indent=true
[1] 444
[2] 445
solr@solr:/opt/solr$ <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<response>
<lst name="responseHeader"><int name="status">0</int><int name="QTime">50</int><lst name="params"><str name="q">*:*</str></lst></lst><result name="response" numFound="7" start="0"><doc><str name="id">wlslog1</str><str name="time_stamp_s">Apr-8-2014-7:06:16-PM-PDT</str><str name="category_s">Notice</str><str name="type_s">WebLogicServer</str><str name="servername_s">AdminServer</str><str name="code_s">BEA-000365</str><str name="msg_s">Server state changed to STANDBY</str><long name="_version_">1521308893532127232</long></doc><doc><str name="id">wlslog2</str><str name="time_stamp_s">Apr-8-2014-7:06:17-PM-PDT</str><str name="category_s">Notice</str><str name="type_s">WebLogicServer</str><str name="servername_s">AdminServer</str><str name="code_s">BEA-000365</str><str name="msg_s">Server state changed to STARTING</str><long name="_version_">1521308893537370112</long></doc><doc><str name="id">wlslog3</str><str name="time_stamp_s">Apr-8-2014-7:06:18-PM-PDT</str><str name="category_s">Notice</str><str name="type_s">WebLogicServer</str><str name="servername_s">AdminServer</str><str name="code_s">BEA-000365</str><str name="msg_s">Server state changed to ADMIN</str><long name="_version_">1521308893542612992</long></doc><doc><str name="id">wlslog4</str><str name="time_stamp_s">Apr-8-2014-7:06:19-PM-PDT</str><str name="category_s">Notice</str><str name="type_s">WebLogicServer</str><str name="servername_s">AdminServer</str><str name="code_s">BEA-000365</str><str name="msg_s">Server state changed to RESUMING</str><long name="_version_">1521308893543661568</long></doc><doc><str name="id">wlslog5</str><str name="time_stamp_s">Apr-8-2014-7:06:20-PM-PDT</str><str name="category_s">Notice</str><str name="type_s">WebLogicServer</str><str name="servername_s">AdminServer</str><str name="code_s">BEA-0

```

**Figure 11-25.** Using curl to send a Request to Solr Server with Request Handler /select

The 7 documents added get listed as shown in Figure 11-26.



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-34: ~". The window displays the XML response from an Apache Solr /select request. The response contains multiple log entries (docs) from a WebLogic server. Each entry includes fields like id, category, type, timestamp, and server details. The log entries show the server transitioning from starting to running mode.

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<response>
<docs>
<doc>
<str name="id">wlslog3</str>
<str name="category_s">Notice</str>
<str name="type_s">WebLogicServer</str>
<str name="servername_s">AdminServer</str>
<str name="code_s">BEA-000365</str>
<str name="msg_s">Server state changed to STARTING</str>
<long name="_version_>1521308893537370112</long>
<str name="time_stamp_s">Apr-8-2014-7:06:18-PM-PDT</str>
<str name="category_s">Notice</str>
<str name="type_s">WebLogicServer</str>
<str name="servername_s">AdminServer</str>
<str name="code_s">BEA-000365</str>
<str name="msg_s">Server state changed to ADMIN</str>
<long name="_version_>1521308893542612992</long>
<str name="category_s">Notice</str>
<str name="type_s">WebLogicServer</str>
<str name="servername_s">AdminServer</str>
<str name="code_s">BEA-000365</str>
<str name="msg_s">Server state changed to RESUMING</str>
<long name="_version_>1521308893543661568</long>
<str name="category_s">Notice</str>
<str name="type_s">WebLogicServer</str>
<str name="servername_s">AdminServer</str>
<str name="code_s">BEA-000331</str>
<str name="msg_s">Started WebLogic AdminServer</str>
<long name="_version_>1521308893544710144</long>
<str name="id">wlslog5</str>
<str name="category_s">Notice</str>
<str name="type_s">WebLogicServer</str>
<str name="servername_s">AdminServer</str>
<str name="code_s">BEA-000365</str>
<str name="msg_s">Server state changed to RUNNING</str>
<long name="_version_>1521308893544710145</long>
<str name="id">wlslog6</str>
<str name="category_s">Notice</str>
<str name="type_s">WebLogicServer</str>
<str name="servername_s">AdminServer</str>
<str name="code_s">BEA-000360</str>
<str name="msg_s">Server started in RUNNING mode</str>
<long name="_version_>1521308893547855872</long>
</doc>
</docs>
</response>

```

**Figure 11-26.** Listing the Documents returned by the /select Request Handler

As another example run the /select request handler to query for the document with id wlslog7.

```
curl http://localhost:8983/solr/wlslog/select?q=id:wlslog7&wt=json&indent=true
```

The document for id wlslog7 gets listed as shown in Figure 11-27.

```
<8983/solr/wlslog/select?q=id:wlslog7&wt=json&indent=true
[1] 456
[2] 457
solr@solr:/opt/solr$ <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<response>
<lst name="responseHeader"><int name="status">0</int><int name="QTime">1</int><lst name="params"><str name="q">id:wlslog7</str></lst></lst><result name="response" numFound="1" start="0"><doc><str name="id">wlslog7</str><str name="time_stamp_s">Apr-8-2014-7:06:22-PM-PDT</str><str name="category_s">Notice</str><str name="type_s">WebLogicServer</str><str name="servername_s">AdminServer</str><str name="code_s">BEA-000360</str><str name="msg_s">Server started in RUNNING mode</str><long name="_version_">1521308893547855872</long></doc></result>
</response>
```

**Figure 11-27.** Querying for a Single Document with id wlslog7 using /select Request Handler and curl

Documents may be deleted with the post tool. For example, delete a document with id wlslog1 using the following command.

```
bin/post -c wlslog -d "<delete><id>wlslog1</id></delete>"
```

The document with id wlslog1 gets deleted as shown in Figure 11-28.

```
<in/post -c wlslog -d "<delete><id>wlslog1</id></delete>">
java -classpath /opt/solr/dist/solr-core-5.4.0.jar -Dauto=yes -Dc=wlslog -Ddata=args org.apache.solr.util.SimplePostTool <delete><id>wlslog1</id></delete>
SimplePostTool version 5.0.0
POSTing args to http://localhost:8983/solr/wlslog/update...
COMMITting Solr index changes to http://localhost:8983/solr/wlslog/
update...
Time spent: 0:00:00.050
solr@solr:/opt/solr$
```

**Figure 11-28.** Deleting a Document using post Tool

Subsequently run the following curl command to list the documents in the wlslog index.

```
curl http://localhost:8983/solr/wlslog/select?q=%3A&wt=json&indent=true
```

The document with id wlslog1 does not get listed as shown in Figure 11-29.

```

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-34: ~
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
<8983/solr/wlslog/select?q=%3A*&wt=json&indent=true
[1] 483
[2] 484
solr@solr:/opt/solr$ <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<response>
<lst name="responseHeader"><int name="status">0</int><int name="QTime">0</int><lst name="params"><str name="q">*:*</str></lst></lst><result name="response" numFound="6" start="0"><doc><str name="id">wl
slog2</str><str name="time_stamp_s">Apr-8-2014-7:06:17-PM-PDT</str>
<str name="category_s">Notice</str><str name="type_s">WebLogicServe
r</str><str name="servername_s">AdminServer</str><str name="code_s"
>BEA-000365</str><str name="msg_s">Server state changed to STARTING
</str><long name="_version_">1521308893537370112</long></doc><doc><
str name="id">wl
slog3</str><str name="time_stamp_s">Apr-8-2014-7:06
:18-PM-PDT</str><str name="category_s">Notice</str><str name="type_
s">WebLogicServer</str><str name="servername_s">AdminServer</str><s
tr name="code_s">BEA-000365</str><str name="msg_s">Server state cha
nged to ADMIN</str><long name="_version_">1521308893542612992</long
></doc><doc><str name="id">wl
slog4</str><str name="time_stamp_s">Ap
r-8-2014-7:06:19-PM-PDT</str><str name="category_s">Notice</str><st
r name="type_s">WebLogicServer</str><str name="servername_s">AdminS
erver</str><str name="code_s">BEA-000365</str><str name="msg_s">Ser
ver state changed to RESUMING</str><long name="_version_">152130889
3543661568</long></doc><doc><str name="id">wl
slog5</str><str name="time_stamp_s">Apr-8-2014-7:06:20-PM-PDT</str><str name="category_s"
>Notice</str><str name="type_s">WebLogicServer</str><str name="serv
ername_s">AdminServer</str><str name="code_s">BEA-000331</str><str
name="msg_s">Started WebLogic AdminServer</str><long name="_version_
">1521308893544710144</long></doc><doc><str name="id">wl
slog6</str><str name="time_stamp_s">Apr-8-2014-7:06:21-PM-PDT</str><str name=
"category_s">Notice</str><str name="type_s">WebLogicServer</str><st
r name="servername_s">AdminServer</str><str name="code_s">BEA-00036

```

**Figure 11-29.** Querying after Deleting a Document

The /update request handler may be used to delete documents as in the following curl command, which deletes all documents in the wlslog core.

```
curl http://localhost:8983/solr/wlslog/update --data '<delete><query>*:*</query></delete>' -H 'Content-type:text/xml; charset=utf-8'
```

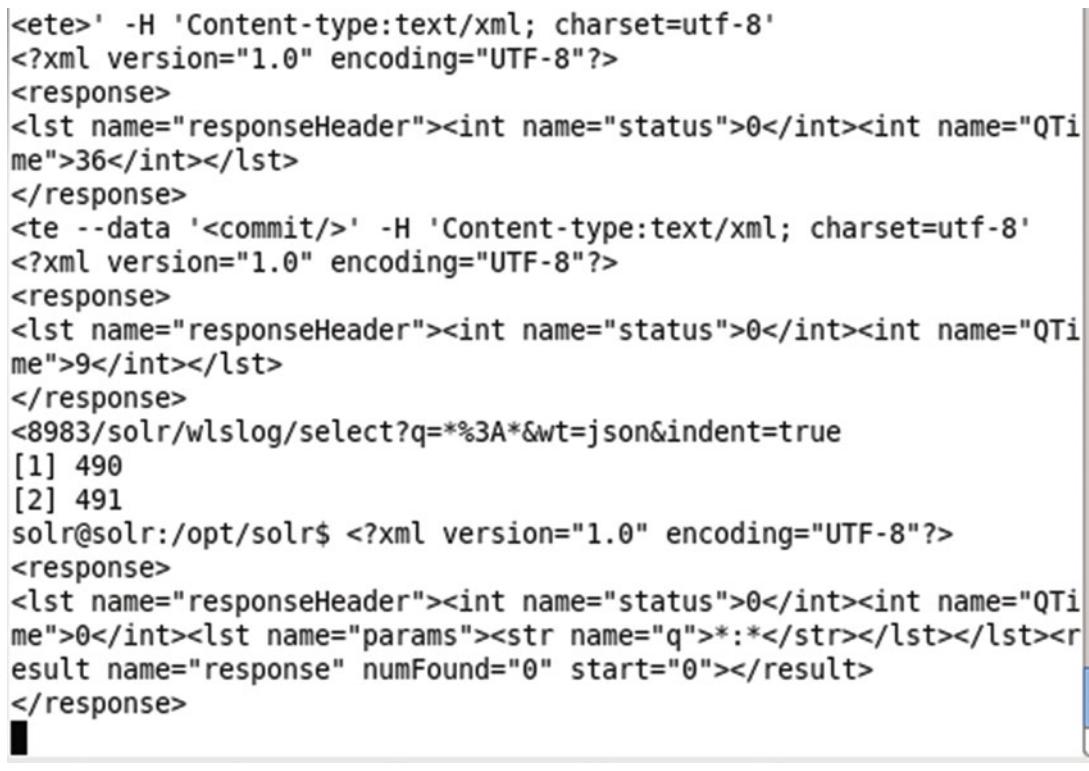
If auto commit has not been configured the following curl command must be run to commit the changes.

```
curl http://localhost:8983/solr/wlslog/update --data '<commit/>' -H 'Content-type:text/xml; charset=utf-8'
```

Subsequently run the curl command to invoke the /select request handler.

```
curl http://localhost:8983/solr/wlslog/select?q=%3A*&wt=json&indent=true
```

No document gets listed as all have been deleted as shown in Figure 11-30.



The screenshot shows a terminal window with the following content:

```
<ete>' -H 'Content-type:text/xml; charset=utf-8'
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<response>
<lst name="responseHeader"><int name="status">0</int><int name="QTime">36</int></lst>
</response>
<te --data '<commit/>' -H 'Content-type:text/xml; charset=utf-8'
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<response>
<lst name="responseHeader"><int name="status">0</int><int name="QTime">9</int></lst>
</response>
<8983/solr/wlslog/select?q=%3A*&wt=json&indent=true
[1] 490
[2] 491
solr@solr:/opt/solr$ <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<response>
<lst name="responseHeader"><int name="status">0</int><int name="QTime">0</int><lst name="params"><str name="q">*:*</str></lst></lst><result name="response" numFound="0" start="0"></result>
</response>
```

**Figure 11-30.** Deleting all Documents in Solr Index with /update

## Setting Port Forwarding

If we were running Kubernetes on a local machine we could have opened the Solr Admin Console with url <http://localhost:8983> but because we are using Amazon EC2 instance we need to set port forwarding on a local machine with a web browser from localhost:8983 to 172.17.0.2:8983. Set port forwarding from localhost port 8983 with the following command run from a local machine.

```
ssh -i key-pair-file -f -nNT -L 8983:172.17.0.2:8983 ubuntu@ec2-54-152-82-142.compute-1.amazonaws.com
```

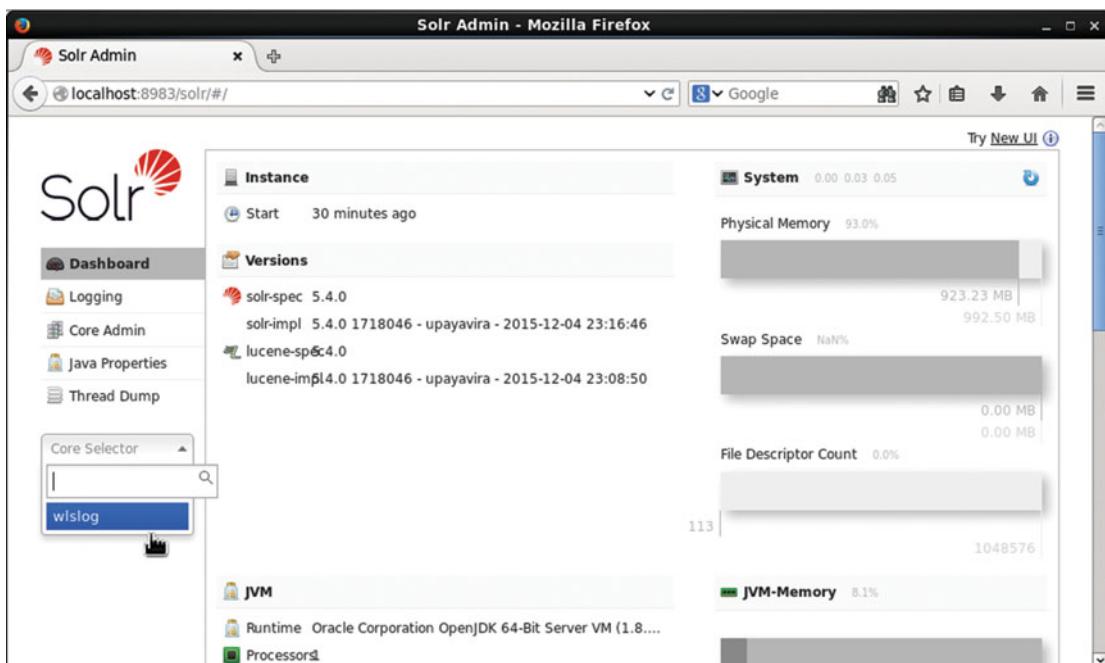
The preceding command forwards the localhost:8983 URL to endpoint 172.17.0.2:8983 as shown in Figure 11-31.

```
[root@localhost ~]# ssh -i docker.pem -f -nNT -L 8983:172.17.0.2:8983 ubuntu@ec2-54-152-82-142.compute-1.amazonaws.com
[root@localhost ~]#
```

**Figure 11-31.** Setting Port Forwarding to localhost

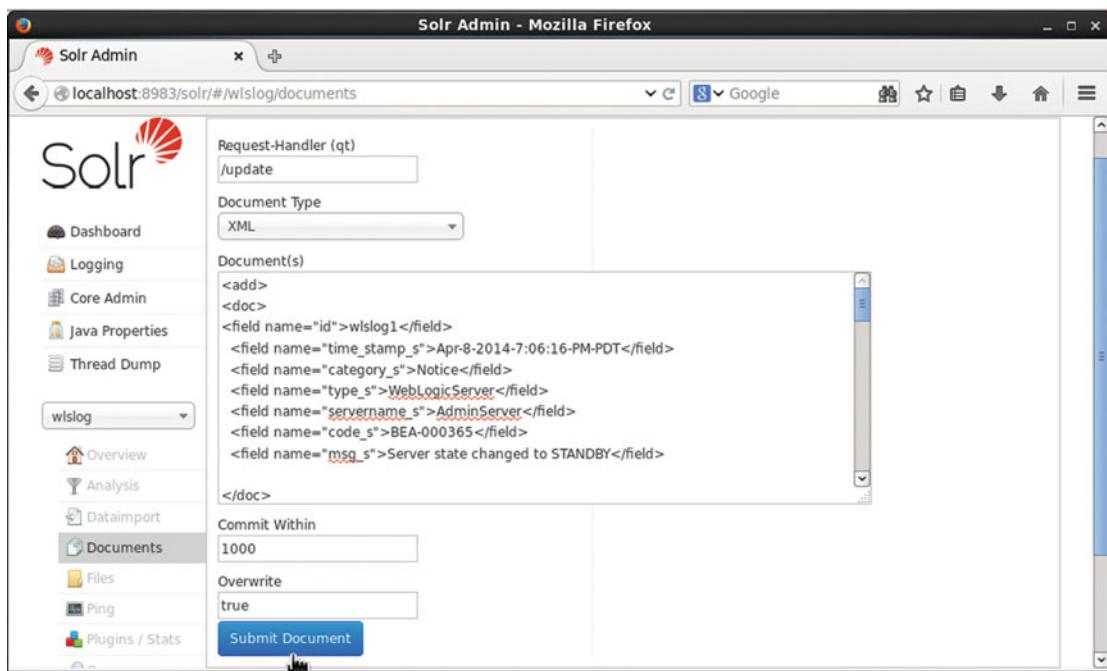
## Accessing Solr in Admin Console

After port forwarding the Solr Admin Console may be accessed from the local machine using the url <http://localhost:8983> as shown in Figure 11-32. Select the wlslog core in the Core Selector as shown in Figure 11-32.



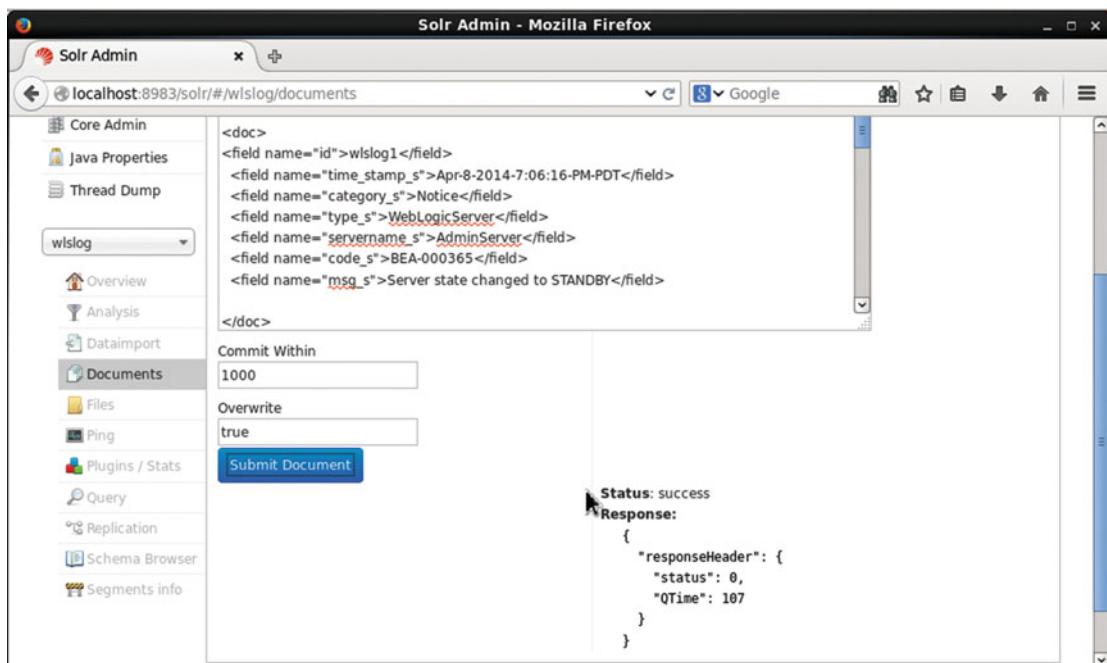
**Figure 11-32.** Displaying the Solr Admin Console

Select the Documents tab and set Document Type as XML for the /update Request handler as shown in Figure 11-33. Copy and paste the XML document wlslog.xml listed earlier in the Document(s) field and click on Submit Document.



**Figure 11-33.** Adding Document to the wlslog Core

An output of “success” as shown in Figure 11-34 indicates that the documents got indexed.



**Figure 11-34.** Response from adding Documents

Next, we shall query the wlslog index. Select the Query tab as shown in Figure 11-35.

The screenshot shows the Solr Admin interface in Mozilla Firefox. The URL is `localhost:8983/solr/#/wlslog/documents`. The left sidebar has a tree view with nodes: Core Admin, Java Properties, Thread Dump, wlslog (selected), Overview, Analysis, Dataimport, Documents (selected), Files, Ping, Plugins / Stats, Query (selected), Replic, Schema Browser, Segments info. The main content area shows XML code for a document being submitted:

```
<doc>
<field name="id">wlslog1</field>
<field name="time_stamp_s">Apr-8-2014-7:06:16-PM-PDT</field>
<field name="category_s">Notice</field>
<field name="type_s">WebLogicServer</field>
<field name="servername_s">AdminServer</field>
<field name="code_s">BEA-000365</field>
<field name="msg_s">Server state changed to STANDBY</field>
</doc>
```

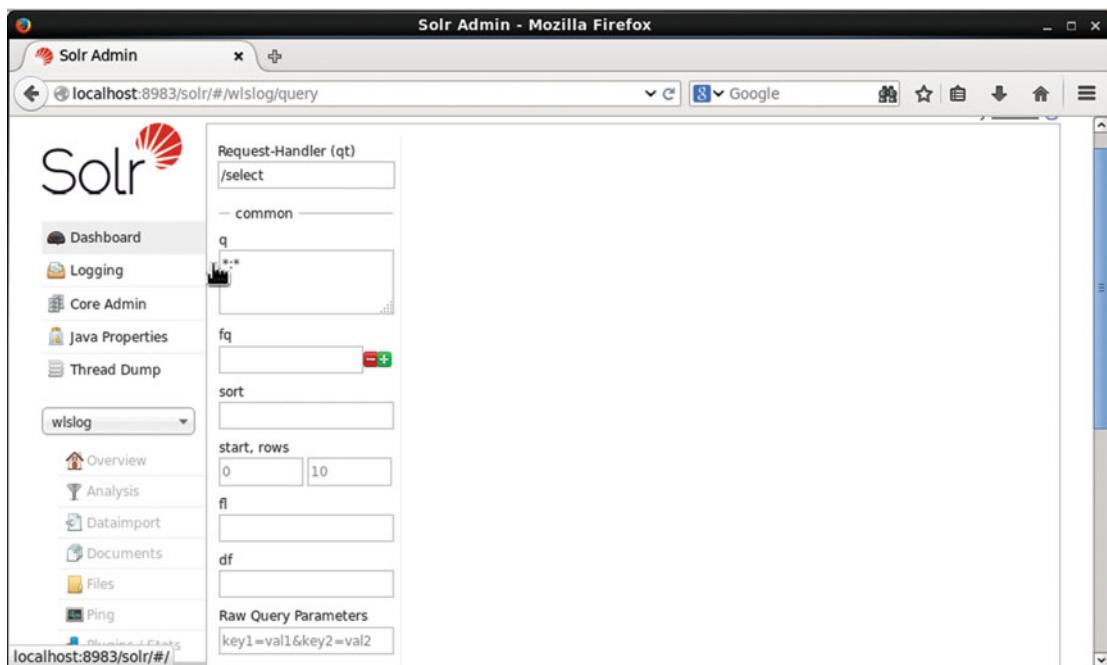
Below the XML, there are input fields for Commit Within (1000) and Overwrite (true), and a **Submit Document** button. To the right, the response is displayed:

Status: success  
Response:

```
{
  "responseHeader": {
    "status": 0,
    "QTime": 107
  }
}
```

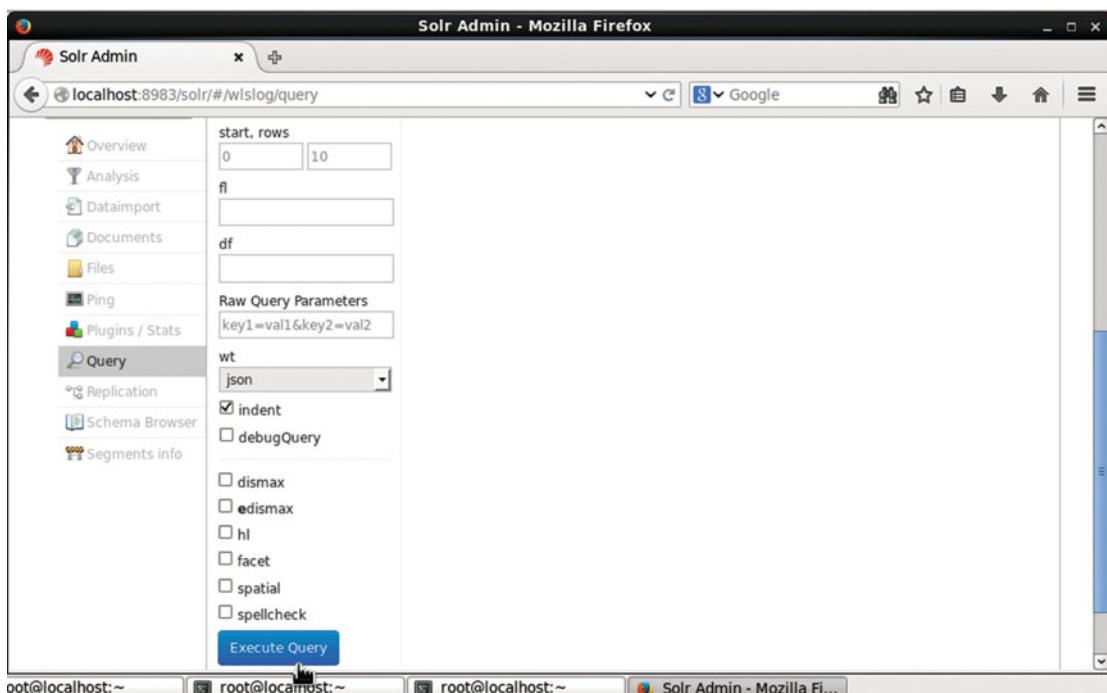
**Figure 11-35.** Selecting the Query Tab

With the Request Handler as `/select` the query is “`*:*`” by default as shown in Figure 11-36.



**Figure 11-36.** Using the Request Handler /select to Query Solr index wlslog

Click on Execute Query as shown in Figure 11-37.



**Figure 11-37.** Submitting a Query to select all Documents in the wlslog Index

Because we have not set auto commit the documents added have not yet been indexed. As a result no document gets listed as shown in Figure 11-38.

The screenshot shows the Solr Admin interface in Mozilla Firefox. The URL is `localhost:8983/solr/#/wlslog/query`. On the left, there's a sidebar with links like Dashboard, Logging, Core Admin, Java Properties, Thread Dump, and wlslog (which is selected). The main area has a form for a Request-Handler (qt) with '/select' selected. It includes fields for q (set to '\*:\*'), fq, sort, start, rows (set to 0, 10), fl, df, and Raw Query Parameters (set to key1=val1&key2=val2). To the right, the browser's address bar shows the same URL. The page content displays a JSON response:

```
{  
  "responseHeader": {  
    "status": 0,  
    "QTime": 23,  
    "params": {  
      "q": "*:*",  
      "indent": "true",  
      "wt": "json",  
      "_": "1451590107528"  
    }  
  },  
  "response": {  
    "numFound": 0,  
    "start": 0,  
    "docs": []  
  }  
}
```

**Figure 11-38.** Response from the Query

We need to reload the core for the added documents to get indexed. Alternatively we could restart the Solr server but reloading the core is a quicker option. Select Core Admin and click on Reload as shown in Figure 11-39.

Solr Admin - Mozilla Firefox  
localhost:8983/solr/#/cores/wlslog

**wlslog**

**Core**

- startTime: 2015-12-31T19:30:10.101Z
- instanceDir: /opt/solr/server/solr/wlslog
- dataDir: /opt/solr/server/solr/wlslog/data/

**Index**

- lastModified: 2015-12-31T19:26:34.857Z
- version: 6
- numDocs: 7
- maxDoc: 7
- deletedDocs: -
- optimized: ✓
- current: ✓
- directory: org.apache.lucene.store.NRTCachingDirectory:NRTCachingDirectory(MMapDirectory@/opt/solr/server/solr/wlslog/data/index  
lockFactory=org.apache.lucene.store.NativeFSLockFactory@b9e278e;  
maxCacheMB=48.0 maxMergeSizeMB=4.0)

Add Core    Unload    Rename    Swap    Reload    Optimize

**Figure 11-39.** Reloading the Core

Run the query again and as shown in Figure 11-40 the 7 documents added get listed.

Solr Admin - Mozilla Firefox  
localhost:8983/solr/#/wlslog/query

**wlslog**

**common**

q: \*:  
fq:  
sort:  
start, rows: 0, 10  
fl:  
df:  
Raw Query Parameters: key1=val1&key2=val2  
wt: json  
indent

```

"responseHeader": {
  "status": 0,
  "QTime": 3,
  "params": {
    "q": "*:*",
    "indent": "true",
    "wt": "json",
    "_": "1451590243048"
  }
},
"response": {
  "numFound": 7,
  "start": 0,
  "docs": [
    {
      "id": "wlslog1",
      "time_stamp_s": "Apr-8-2014-7:06:16-PM-PDT",
      "category_s": "Notice",
      "type_s": "WebLogicServer",
      "servername_s": "AdminServer",
      "code_s": "BEA-000365",
      "msg_s": "Server state changed to STANDBY",
      "_version_": 1522102414664007700
    },
    {
      "id": "wlslog2",
      ...
    }
  ]
}

```

**Figure 11-40.** Query Response with 7 Documents

The `_version_` field has been added to each document automatically by the Solr server as shown in Figure 11-41.



```

{
  "response": [
    {
      "_id": "wlslog5",
      "_version_": 1522102414723776500,
      "msg_s": "Started WebLogic AdminServer",
      "time_stamp_s": "Apr-8-2014-7:06:21-PM-PDT",
      "category_s": "Notice",
      "type_s": "WebLogicServer",
      "servername_s": "AdminServer",
      "code_s": "BEA-000365",
      "msg_s": "Server state changed to RUNNING",
      "_version_": 1522102414724825000
    },
    {
      "_id": "wlslog6",
      "_version_": 1522102414724825000,
      "msg_s": "Started WebLogic AdminServer",
      "time_stamp_s": "Apr-8-2014-7:06:21-PM-PDT",
      "category_s": "Notice",
      "type_s": "WebLogicServer",
      "servername_s": "AdminServer",
      "code_s": "BEA-000365",
      "msg_s": "Server state changed to RUNNING",
      "_version_": 1522102414724825000
    },
    {
      "_id": "wlslog7",
      "_version_": 1522102414725873700,
      "msg_s": "Server started in RUNNING mode",
      "time_stamp_s": "Apr-8-2014-7:06:22-PM-PDT",
      "category_s": "Notice",
      "type_s": "WebLogicServer",
      "servername_s": "AdminServer",
      "code_s": "BEA-000360"
    }
  ]
}

```

**Figure 11-41.** The `_version_` Field is added to each Document stored in Solr Index Automatically by the Solr Server

## Scaling the Cluster

To scale the Solr pod cluster run the `kubectl scale` command. For example, to scale to 4 Pods set replicas as 4.

```
kubectl scale rc solr-rc --replicas=4
```

An output of “scaled” indicates that the Solr cluster has been scaled. Subsequently run the following command to list the Pods.

```
kubectl get pods
```

The number of Pods listed is 4 instead of the 2 to start with as shown in Figure 11-42. Some of the Pods could be not running or not ready initially.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-34:~$ kubectl scale rc solr-rc --replicas=4
scaled
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-34:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME          READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   0          3h
solr          1/1     Running   0          2h
solr-rc-pfpiu  1/1     Running   0          1h
solr-rc-rwquj  0/1     Running   0          11s
solr-rc-voe3o  1/1     Running   0          11s
```

*Figure 11-42. Scaling the Apache Solr Cluster to 4 Pods*

## Summary

Apache Solr is an indexing and search engine that makes use of the local filesystem to store data. In this chapter we used Docker image “solr” with Kubernetes cluster manage to create and manage a cluster of Solr instances. We demonstrated accessing a Solr instance from an interactive shell for a Docker container and also using the Admin Console. In the next chapter we shall use Kubernetes with Apache Kafka.

## CHAPTER 12



# Using Apache Kafka

Apache Kafka is publish-subscribe, high throughput, distributed messaging system. A single broker in Kafka could handle 100s MB (Terabytes)/sec of reads & writes from multiple clients. Messages are replicated across the cluster and persisted to disk. Kafka could be used for stream processing, web site activity tracking, metrics collection, and monitoring and log aggregation.

The main components of Kafka architecture are Producer, Broker, Topic, and Consumer. Kafka keeps feeds of messages in topics. Producers send (or write) messages to topics and Consumers consume (or read) messages from topics. Messages are byte arrays of data and could be in any format with String, JSON, and Avro being the most common. Messages are retained for a specified amount of time. A Zookeeper coordinates the Kafka cluster. In a single producer-consumer architecture, a single Producer sends messages to a Topic and a single Consumer consumes messages from the topic.

Kafka is similar to Flume in that it streams messages, but Kafka is designed for a different purpose. While Flume is designed to stream messages to a sink such as HDFS or HBase, Kafka is designed for messages to be consumed by multiple applications.

In this chapter we shall discuss using Kubernetes cluster manager with Apache Kafka.

Setting the Environment

Modifying the Docker Image

Creating a Service

Creating a Replication Controller

Listing the Pods

Describing a Pod

Starting an Interactive Shell

Starting the Kafka Server

Creating a Topic

Starting a Kafka Producer

Starting a Kafka Consumer

Producing and Consuming Messages

Scaling the Cluster

Deleting Replication Controller and Service

## Setting the Environment

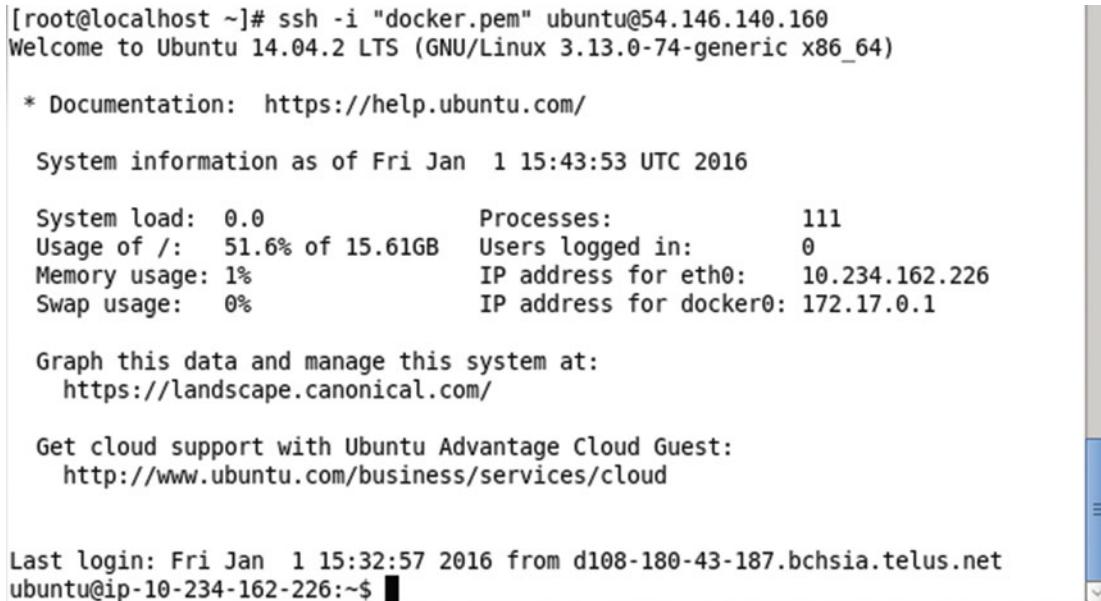
We have used an Amazon EC2 instance created from AMI Ubuntu Server 14.04 LTS (HVM), SSD Volume Type - ami-d05e75b8. The following software is required for this chapter.

- Docker Engine (latest version)
- Kubernetes Cluster Manager (version 1.01)
- Kubectl (version 1.01)
- Docker image dockerkafka/kafka (latest version)

We have used the Docker image dockerkafka/kafka in this chapter. The default settings of the dockerkafka/kafka image Dockerfile are not suitable for orchestration with Kubernetes. In the next section we have modified and rebuilt the default Docker image. First, connect with the Ubuntu instance using the Public IP Address for the Amazon EC2 instance.

```
ssh -i "docker.pem" ubuntu@54.146.140.160
```

The Ubuntu instance gets connected to as shown in Figure 12-1.



```
[root@localhost ~]# ssh -i "docker.pem" ubuntu@54.146.140.160
Welcome to Ubuntu 14.04.2 LTS (GNU/Linux 3.13.0-74-generic x86_64)

 * Documentation:  https://help.ubuntu.com/

 System information as of Fri Jan  1 15:43:53 UTC 2016

 System load:  0.0          Processes:           111
 Usage of /:   51.6% of 15.61GB  Users logged in:     0
 Memory usage: 1%          IP address for eth0:   10.234.162.226
 Swap usage:   0%          IP address for docker0: 172.17.0.1

 Graph this data and manage this system at:
  https://landscape.canonical.com/

 Get cloud support with Ubuntu Advantage Cloud Guest:
  http://www.ubuntu.com/business/services/cloud

Last login: Fri Jan  1 15:32:57 2016 from d108-180-43-187.bchsia.telus.net
ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226:~$ █
```

**Figure 12-1.** Connecting to an Ubuntu Instance on Amazon EC2

Install the required software as discussed in chapter 1. Start the Docker service and find its status.

```
sudo service docker start
sudo service docker status
```

Docker should be listed as running as shown in Figure 12-2.

```
ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226:~$ sudo service docker start
start: Job is already running: docker
ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226:~$ sudo service docker status
docker start/running, process 861
ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226:~$ █
```

**Figure 12-2.** Starting Docker

List the Kubernetes services.

```
kubectl get services
```

The “kubernetes” service should be listed as shown in Figure 12-3.

NAME	LABELS	SELECTOR	IP(S)	PORT(S)
T(S) kubernetes /TCP	component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes	<none>	10.0.0.1	443

```
ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226:~$ kubectl get services
NAME      LABELS
T(S)
kubernetes  component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes
/TCP
ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226:~$ █
```

**Figure 12-3.** Listing the “kubernetes” Service

## Modifying the Docker Image

The procedure to start Apache Kafka involves the following sequence.

1. Start Zookeeper Server
2. Start Apache Kafka Server

The Apache Kafka Server has a dependency on Zookeeper server and as a result requires the Zookeeper server to be running before the Kafka server may be started. The Kafka server makes use of the `server.properties` configuration file when started. The default settings in the `server.properties` file are not suitable for the Kafka server to start based on a Zookeeper server running at `localhost:2181`. We need to modify the connect url for Zookeeper in the `server.properties` file.

In this section we shall download the `dockerkafka/kafka` image, modify the `server.properties` and rebuild the Docker image. Download the source code for the `dockerkafka/kafka` image with the following command.

```
git clone https://github.com/DockerKafka/kafka-docker.git
```

The source code for the `dockerkafka/kafka` image gets downloaded as shown in Figure 12-4.

```
ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226:~$ git clone https://github.com/DockerKafka/kafka-docker.git
Cloning into 'kafka-docker'...
remote: Counting objects: 318, done.
remote: Total 318 (delta 0), reused 0 (delta 0), pack-reused 318
Receiving objects: 100% (318/318), 98.02 KiB | 0 bytes/s, done.
Resolving deltas: 100% (139/139), done.
Checking connectivity... done.
```

**Figure 12-4.** Downloading the kafka-docker Docker Image Source Code

Change directory (cd) to the kafka-docker directory and list the files/directories.

```
cd kafka-docker
ls -l
```

The files/directories in the Docker image get listed as shown in Figure 12-5.

```
ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226:~/kafka-docker$ ls -l
total 32
-rw-rw-r-- 1 ubuntu ubuntu   261 Jan  1 15:34 docker-compose.yml
-rwxrwxr-x 1 ubuntu ubuntu   229 Jan  1 15:34 docker-entrypoint.sh
-rw-rw-r-- 1 ubuntu ubuntu   462 Jan  1 15:34 Dockerfile
drwxrwxr-x 3 ubuntu ubuntu  4096 Jan  1 15:34 image
-rw-rw-r-- 1 ubuntu ubuntu 11325 Jan  1 15:34 LICENSE
-rw-rw-r-- 1 ubuntu ubuntu   2022 Jan  1 15:34 README.md
ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226:~/kafka-docker$
```

**Figure 12-5.** Listing the Dockerfile and Image Directory for the kafka-source Docker Image

We need to modify the settings in the server.properties file, which is in the image/conf directory. Cd to the image/conf directory and list the directory's file/directories.

```
cd image/conf
ls -l
```

The server.properties file gets listed as shown in Figure 12-6.

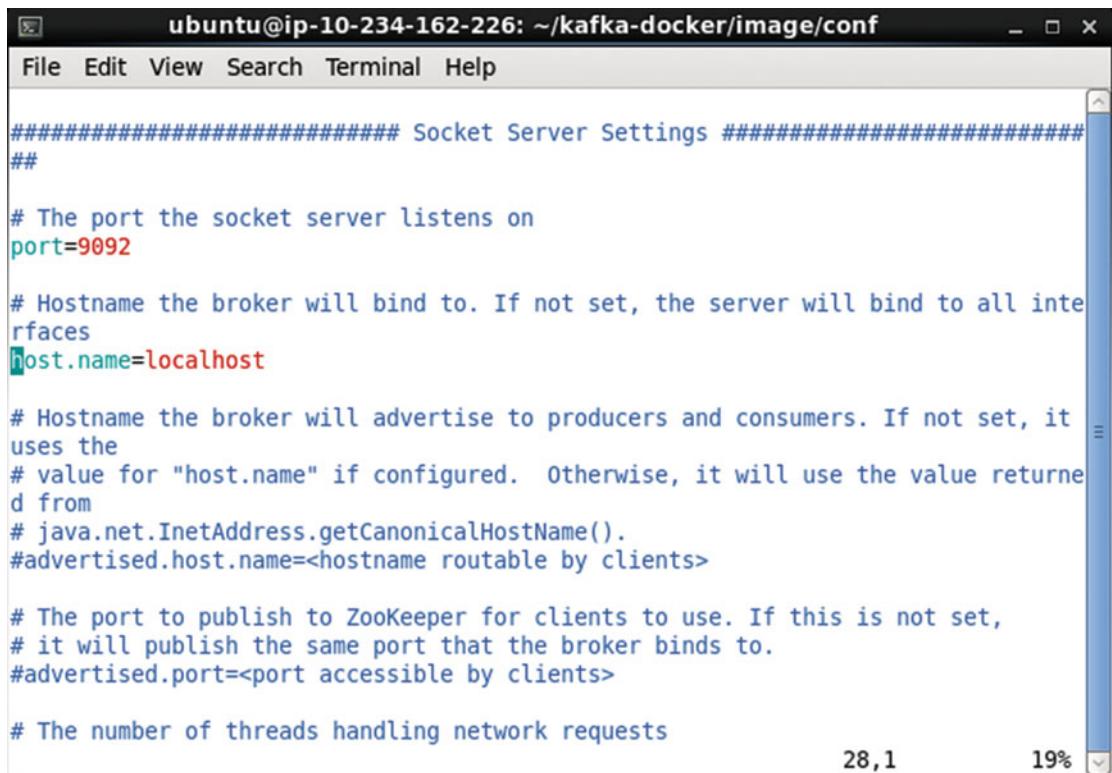
```
ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226:~/kafka-docker/image/conf$ ls -l
total 32
-rw-rw-r-- 1 ubuntu ubuntu 1199 Jan  1 15:34 consumer.properties
-rw-rw-r-- 1 ubuntu ubuntu 3846 Jan  1 15:34 log4j.properties
-rw-rw-r-- 1 ubuntu ubuntu 2228 Jan  1 15:34 producer.properties
-rw-rw-r-- 1 ubuntu ubuntu 5559 Jan  1 15:34 server.properties
-rw-rw-r-- 1 ubuntu ubuntu 3325 Jan  1 15:34 test-log4j.properties
-rw-rw-r-- 1 ubuntu ubuntu  993 Jan  1 15:34 tools-log4j.properties
-rw-rw-r-- 1 ubuntu ubuntu 1023 Jan  1 15:34 zookeeper.properties
ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226:~/kafka-docker/image/conf$
```

**Figure 12-6.** Listing the Configuration Files for the Docker Image

Open the server.properties file in a vi editor.

```
sudo vi server.properties
```

The server.properties file is shown in Figure 12-7. Uncomment the line with the host.name=localhost setting.



```
ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226: ~/kafka-docker/image/conf
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
#####
# Socket Server Settings #####
##
# The port the socket server listens on
port=9092

# Hostname the broker will bind to. If not set, the server will bind to all interfaces
host.name=localhost

# Hostname the broker will advertise to producers and consumers. If not set, it uses the
# value for "host.name" if configured. Otherwise, it will use the value returned from
# java.net.InetAddress.getCanonicalHostName().
#advertised.host.name=<hostname routable by clients>

# The port to publish to ZooKeeper for clients to use. If this is not set,
# it will publish the same port that the broker binds to.
#advertised.port=<port accessible by clients>

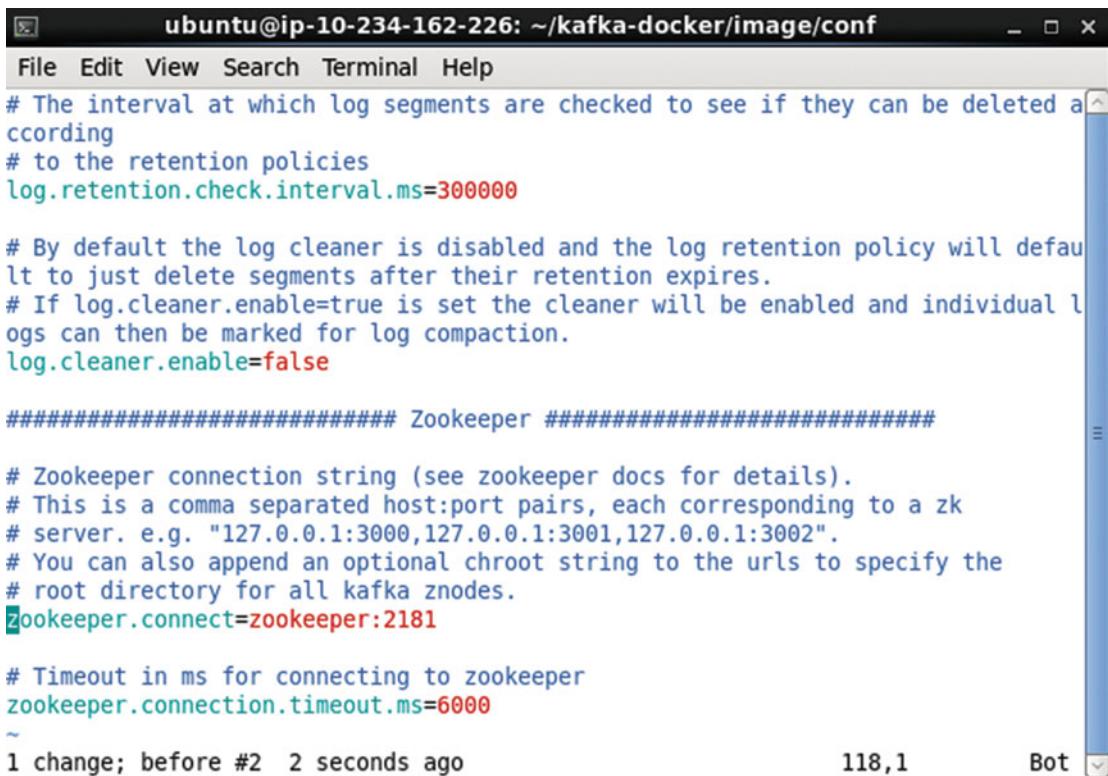
# The number of threads handling network requests
```

28,1

19%

**Figure 12-7.** Uncommenting the host.name Property

As shown in Figure 12-8 the default setting for the zookeeper.connect is zookeeper:2181.



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226: ~/kafka-docker/image/conf". The window contains a configuration file with the following content:

```
# The interval at which log segments are checked to see if they can be deleted according
# to the retention policies
log.retention.check.interval.ms=300000

# By default the log cleaner is disabled and the log retention policy will default to just delete segments after their retention expires.
# If log.cleaner.enable=true is set the cleaner will be enabled and individual logs can then be marked for log compaction.
log.cleaner.enable=false

#####
# Zookeeper #####
# Zookeeper connection string (see zookeeper docs for details).
# This is a comma separated host:port pairs, each corresponding to a zk
# server. e.g. "127.0.0.1:3000,127.0.0.1:3001,127.0.0.1:3002".
# You can also append an optional chroot string to the urls to specify the
# root directory for all kafka znodes.
zookeeper.connect=zookeeper:2181

# Timeout in ms for connecting to zookeeper
zookeeper.connection.timeout.ms=6000
```

At the bottom of the terminal window, there is a status bar with the text "1 change; before #2 2 seconds ago" on the left, "118,1" in the center, and "Bot" on the right.

**Figure 12-8.** The default setting for the `zookeeper.connect` Property

Modify the `zookeeper.connect` setting to `localhost:2181` as shown in Figure 12-9. Save the modified file with `:wq`. We need to modify the setting because no such host as “zookeeper” exists by default.

```

ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226: ~/kafka-docker/image/conf
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
# The interval at which log segments are checked to see if they can be deleted according
# to the retention policies
log.retention.check.interval.ms=300000

# By default the log cleaner is disabled and the log retention policy will default to just delete segments after their retention expires.
# If log.cleaner.enable=true is set the cleaner will be enabled and individual logs can then be marked for log compaction.
log.cleaner.enable=false

#####
# Zookeeper connection string (see zookeeper docs for details).
# This is a comma separated host:port pairs, each corresponding to a zk
# server. e.g. "127.0.0.1:3000,127.0.0.1:3001,127.0.0.1:3002".
# You can also append an optional chroot string to the urls to specify the
# root directory for all kafka znodes.
zookeeper.connect=localhost:2181

# Timeout in ms for connecting to zookeeper
zookeeper.connection.timeout.ms=6000
~
:wq

```

**Figure 12-9.** Setting `zookeeper.connect` to `localhost: 2181`

Subsequently cd back to the root directory for the Docker image, the `kafka-docker` directory, and run the following command to rebuild the Docker image.

```
sudo docker build -t dockerkafka/kafka:v2.
```

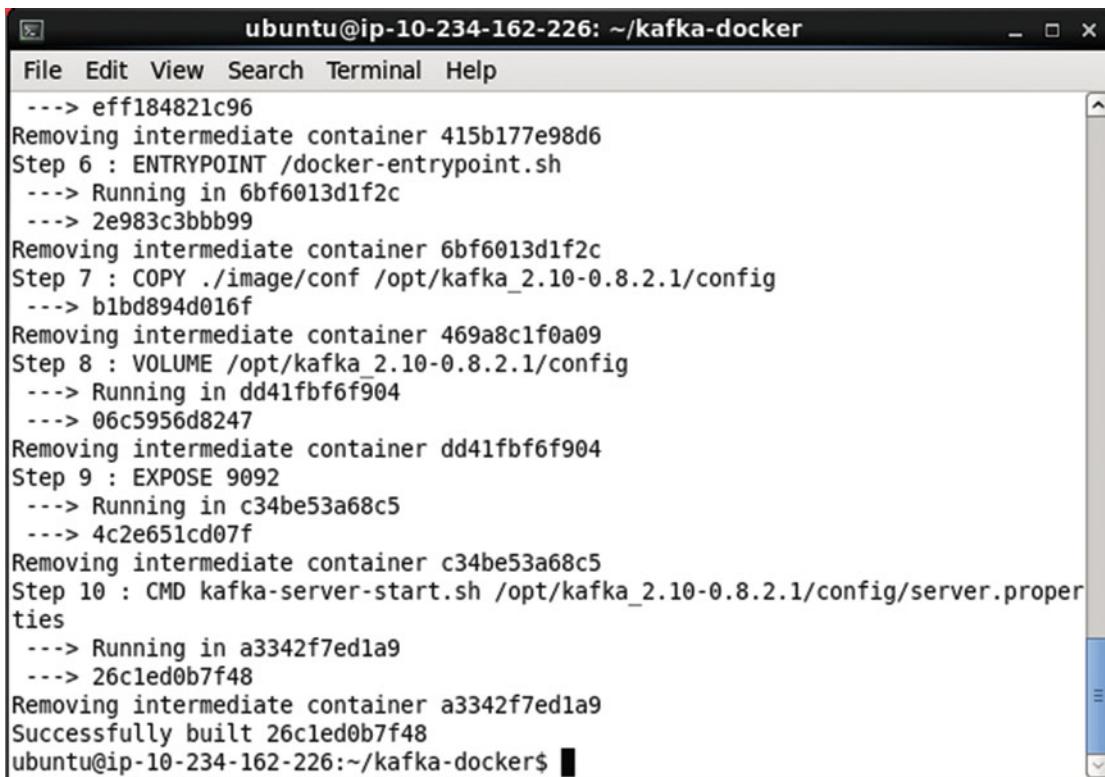
The output from the command is shown in Figure 12-10.

The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226: ~/kafka-docker". The terminal is displaying the output of a "sudo docker build" command. The output shows the steps taken to build the Docker image, including pulling Java dependencies and extracting the Kafka distribution. The terminal window has a standard Linux-style interface with a title bar, menu bar, and scroll bars.

```
ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226:~/kafka-docker$ sudo docker build -t docker kafka/kafka:v2 .
Sending build context to Docker daemon 198.7 kB
Step 1 : FROM java:8-jre
8-jre: Pulling from library/java
5e5f21412e19: Pull complete
0a769fec47c8: Pull complete
f2f2db51695f: Pull complete
e028e5cf8d99: Pull complete
d9cd78bd89ff: Pull complete
5555497d559b: Pull complete
e0d4b742b7a8: Pull complete
3f99f333ef6d: Pull complete
504924f188c0: Pull complete
2f5e20e831ff: Pull complete
Digest: sha256:82918e45463e2b9ac87c0b4350954ea593c51cde7e943334d5e54b6ca5658eb8
Status: Downloaded newer image for java:8-jre
--> 2f5e20e831ff
Step 2 : MAINTAINER PalSzak
--> Running in bf473480de33
--> 99870a951fab
Removing intermediate container bf473480de33
Step 3 : RUN wget -q -O - http://www.eu.apache.org/dist/kafka/0.8.2.1/kafka_2.10-0.8.2.1.tgz | tar -xzf - -C /opt
--> Running in a4911c40ac86
--> e075a33ef8f6
Removing intermediate container a4911c40ac86
Step 4 : ENV PATH /opt/kafka_2.10-0.8.2.1/bin:$PATH
--> Running in c778e9bace13
--> 9ab1d9e43e2f
Removing intermediate container c778e9bace13
Step 5 : COPY docker-entrypoint.sh /docker-entrypoint.sh
```

**Figure 12-10.** Rebuilding the Docker Image for Kafka

Docker image gets rebuilt as shown in Figure 12-11.



```
ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226: ~/kafka-docker
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
--> eff184821c96
Removing intermediate container 415b177e98d6
Step 6 : ENTRYPOINT /docker-entrypoint.sh
--> Running in 6bf6013d1f2c
--> 2e983c3bbb99
Removing intermediate container 6bf6013d1f2c
Step 7 : COPY ./image/conf /opt/kafka_2.10-0.8.2.1/config
--> b1bd894d016f
Removing intermediate container 469a8c1f0a09
Step 8 : VOLUME /opt/kafka_2.10-0.8.2.1/config
--> Running in dd41fbf6f904
--> 06c5956d8247
Removing intermediate container dd41fbf6f904
Step 9 : EXPOSE 9092
--> Running in c34be53a68c5
--> 4c2e651cd07f
Removing intermediate container c34be53a68c5
Step 10 : CMD kafka-server-start.sh /opt/kafka_2.10-0.8.2.1/config/server.properties
--> Running in a3342f7ed1a9
--> 26c1ed0b7f48
Removing intermediate container a3342f7ed1a9
Successfully built 26c1ed0b7f48
ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226:~/kafka-docker$
```

**Figure 12-11.** Completing the Rebuild of the Docker Image

The Docker image we shall use subsequently is not docker kafka/kafka but is docker kafka/kafka:v2.

## Creating a Service

Create a service definition file called kafka-service.yaml and add the following (Table 12-1) fields to the file.

**Table 12-1.** The Fields in the Service Definition File

Field	Description	Value
apiVersion		v1
kind	The kind of definition file.	Service
metadata	The service metadata.	
metadata ->labels	The service labels. Not required.	app: kafkaApp
metadata ->name	The service name. Required.	kafka
spec	The service specification.	
spec -> ports	The ports exposed by the service.	
spec -> ports->port	A port exposed by the service. The 9092 port is used for the Kafka server.	port: 9092 targetPort: 9092
spec -> ports->port	Another port exposed by the service. The 2181 port is for the Zookeeper.	port: 2181 targetPort: 2181
spec -> selector	The Pod selector. Service routes traffic to the Pods with label matching the selector expression.	app: kafkaApp
spec -> selector->type	The service type.	LoadBalancer

The `kafka-service.yaml` is listed.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Service
metadata:
  labels:
    app: kafkaApp
    name: kafka
spec:
  ports:
  -
    port: 9092
    targetPort: 9092
  -
    port: 2181
    targetPort: 2181
  selector:
    app: kafkaApp
  type: LoadBalancer
```

The `kafka-service.yaml` may be created in vi editor and saved with :wq as shown in Figure 12-12.

```
ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226: ~
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
---
apiVersion: v1
kind: Service
metadata:
  labels:
    app: kafkaApp
    name: kafka
spec:
  ports:
    -
      port: 9092
      name: "kafka"
      targetPort: 9092
    -
      port: 2181
      name: "zookeeper"
      targetPort: 2181
  selector:
    app: kafkaApp
  type: LoadBalancer
~
```

**Figure 12-12.** Service Definition File in vi Editor

Create the service from the definition file.

```
kubectl create -f kafka-service.yaml
```

Subsequently list the services.

```
kubectl get services
```

The “kafka” service gets listed as shown in Figure 12-13. The service selector is app=kafkaApp.

```
ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226:~$ kubectl create -f kafka-service.yaml
services/kafka
ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226:~$ kubectl get services
NAME      LABELS          SELECTOR      IP(S)
PORT(S)
kafka     app=kafkaApp   app=kafkaApp  10.0.0.90
9092/TCP
2181/TCP
kubernetes component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes <none>    10.0.0.1
443/TCP
```

**Figure 12-13.** Creating a Service from the Definition File

## Creating a Replication Controller

Create a definition file called `kafka-rc.yaml` for the replication controller and add the following (Table 12-2) fields.

**Table 12-2.** Fields in the Replication Controller Definition File

Field	Description	Value
apiVersion		v1
kind	The kind of definition file.	ReplicationController
metadata	The replication controller metadata.	
metadata -> labels	The replication controller labels.	app: kafkaApp name: kafka-rc
spec	The replication controller specification.	
spec -> replicas	The number of Pod replicas.	2
spec -> selector	A key:value expression for selecting the Pods to manage. Pods with a label the same as the selector expression are managed by the replication controller. The selector expression must be the same as the spec->template->metadata->labels expression. The selector defaults to the spec->template->metadata->labels key:value expression if not specified.	app: kafkaApp
spec -> template	The Pod template.	
spec -> template-> metadata	The Pod template metadata.	
spec -> template -> metadata -> labels	The Pod template labels.	app: kafkaApp
spec -> template -> spec	The Pod template specification.	
spec -> template -> spec -> containers	The containers configuration for the Pod template.	

(continued)

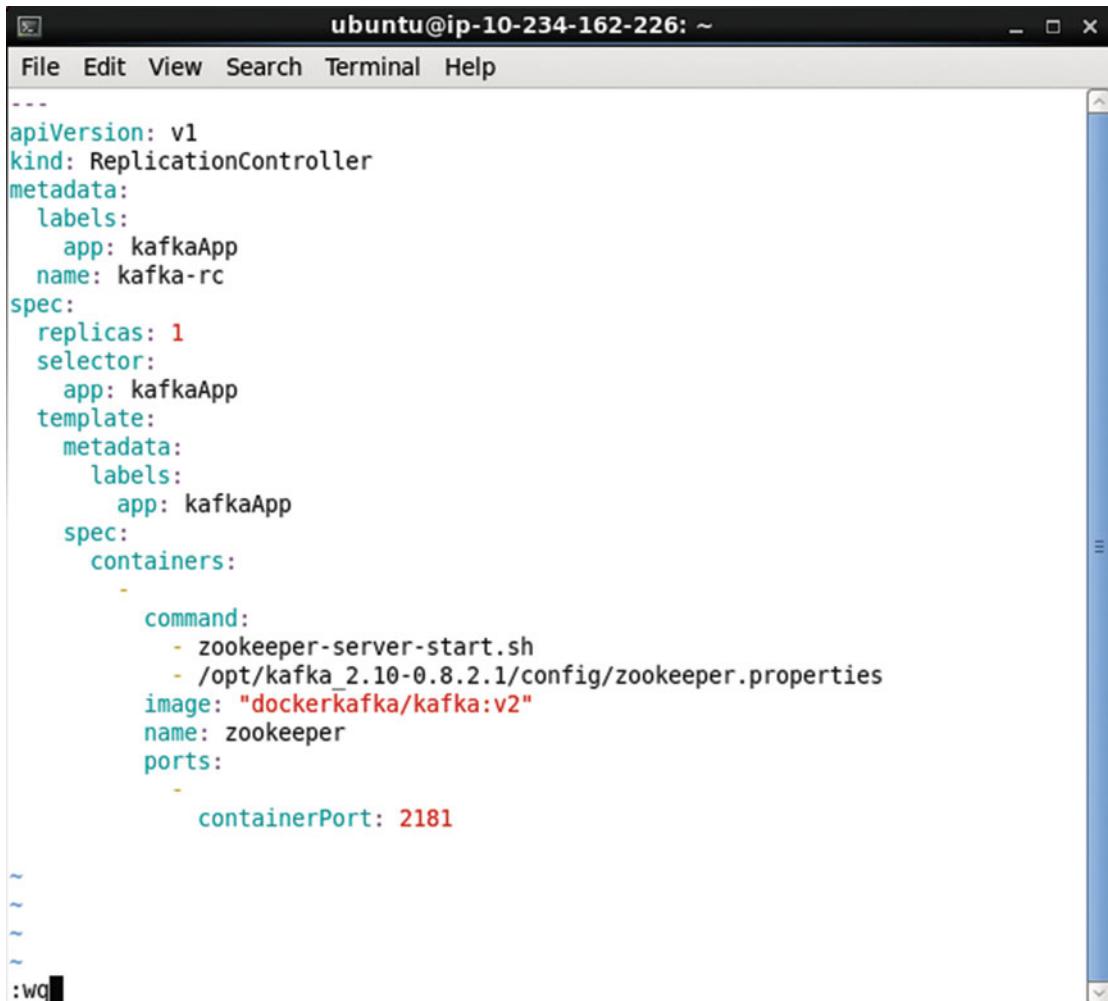
**Table 12-2.** (continued)

Field	Description	Value
spec -> template -> spec -> containers -> command	The command/s to run for the Docker image. The default command in the Dockerfile is CMD [“kafka-server-start.sh”, “/opt/kafka_2.10-0.8.2.1/config/server.properties”]. The default command starts the Kafka server, but we want the Zookeeper server before the Kafka server as the Kafka server won’t start unless the Zookeeper server is running. The modified command starts only the Zookeeper server. We shall start the Kafka server separately.	- zookeeper-server-start.sh - /opt/kafka_2.10-0.8.2.1/config/zookeeper.properties
spec -> template -> spec -> containers -> image	The Docker image.	dockerkafka/kafka:v2
spec -> template -> spec -> containers -> name	The container name.	zookeeper
ports	Specifies the container port/s.	containerPort: 2181

The kafka-rc.yaml is listed.

```
---
apiVersion: v1
kind: ReplicationController
metadata:
  labels:
    app: kafkaApp
    name: kafka-rc
spec:
  replicas: 1
  selector:
    app: kafkaApp
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        app: kafkaApp
    spec:
      containers:
        -
          command:
            - zookeeper-server-start.sh
            - /opt/kafka_2.10-0.8.2.1/config/zookeeper.properties
          image: "dockerkafka/kafka:v2"
          name: zookeeper
          ports:
            -
              containerPort: 2181
```

The kafka-rc.yaml file may be created and saved in the vi editor as shown in Figure 12-14.



A screenshot of a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226: ~". The window contains the YAML configuration for a ReplicationController named "kafka-rc". The configuration specifies one replica, selects pods with "app: kafkaApp", and runs a container named "zookeeper" with port 2181. The file is currently being edited in vi, as indicated by the status bar at the bottom which shows ":wq".

```
---
apiVersion: v1
kind: ReplicationController
metadata:
  labels:
    app: kafkaApp
    name: kafka-rc
spec:
  replicas: 1
  selector:
    app: kafkaApp
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        app: kafkaApp
    spec:
      containers:
        command:
          - zookeeper-server-start.sh
          - /opt/kafka_2.10-0.8.2.1/config/zookeeper.properties
        image: "dockerkafka/kafka:v2"
        name: zookeeper
        ports:
          - containerPort: 2181
```

**Figure 12-14.** Replication Controller Definition File in vi Editor

Create the replication controller from the definition file.

```
kubectl create -f kafka-rc.yaml
```

Subsequently list the replication controllers.

```
kubectl get rc
```

The replication controller gets created and listed as shown in Figure 12-15.

```
ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226:~$ kubectl create -f kafka-rc.yaml
replicationcontrollers/kafka-rc
ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226:~$ kubectl get rc
CONTROLLER   CONTAINER(S)   IMAGE(S)          SELECTOR      REPLICAS
kafka-rc     zookeeper     docker kafka/kafka:v2   app=kafkaApp   1
```

**Figure 12-15.** Creating the Replication Controller from the Definition File

To describe the kafka-rc run the following command.

```
kubectl describe rc kafka-rc
```

The replication controller description gets listed as shown in Figure 12-16.

```
ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226:~$ kubectl describe rc kafka-rc
Name:           kafka-rc
Namespace:      default
Image(s):       docker kafka/kafka:v2
Selector:       app=kafkaApp
Labels:         app=kafkaApp
Replicas:       1 current / 1 desired
Pods Status:    1 Running / 0 Waiting / 0 Succeeded / 0 Failed
Events:
  FirstSeen            LastSeen          Count  F
  from                 SubobjectPath    Reason        Message
  Fri, 01 Jan 2016 16:08:04 +0000   Fri, 01 Jan 2016 16:08:04 +0000 1  {
replication-controller }                                successfulCreate  Created
pod: kafka-rc-k8as1

ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226:~$
```

**Figure 12-16.** Describing the Replication Controller

## Listing the Pods

To list the Pods run the following command.

```
kubectl get pods
```

The Pods get listed as shown in Figure 12-17.

```
ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME        READY  STATUS  RESTARTS  AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3   Running  3          23m
kafka-rc-k8as1      1/1   Running  0          1m
ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226:~$
```

**Figure 12-17.** Listing the pods for Kafka

## Describing a Pod

Only a single Pod is created because the “replicas” setting in the definition file `kafka-rc.yaml` is 1. To describe the Pod run the following command.

```
kubectl describe pod kafka-rc-k8as1
```

The pod description gets listed as shown in Figure 12-18. The Pod label `app=kafkaApp` is the same as the service selector and the replication controller selector which makes the Pod manageable by the service and the replication controller.

```
ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226:~$ kubectl describe pod kafka-rc-k8as1
Name:           kafka-rc-k8as1
Namespace:      default
Image(s):       docker kafka/kafka:v2
Node:           127.0.0.1/127.0.0.1
Labels:         app=kafkaApp
Status:         Running
Reason:
Message:
IP:             172.17.0.2
Replication Controllers: kafka-rc (1/1 replicas created)
Containers:
  zookeeper:
    Image:      docker kafka/kafka:v2
    State:      Running
    Started:   Fri, 01 Jan 2016 16:08:14 +0000
    Ready:      True
    Restart Count: 0
Conditions:
  Type        Status
  Ready       True
Events:
FirstSeen     LastSeen          Count  Reason
from message  Fri, 01 Jan 2016 16:08:04 +0000 1 scheduled
scheduler }   successfully assigned kafka-rc-k8as1 to 127.0.0.1
```

**Figure 12-18.** Describing a pod for Kafka

When the Pod is created and started, the Zookeeper server gets started as the command for the modified Docker image is to start the Zookeeper server. Next we shall start the Kafka server from an interactive shell for the Docker container for the modified Docker image.

## Starting an Interactive Shell

To be able to start an interactive bash shell to access the Kafka software installed we need to know the container id for the Docker container running the modified Docker image. List the Docker containers with the following command.

```
sudo docker ps
```

The Docker containers get listed as shown in Figure 12-19.

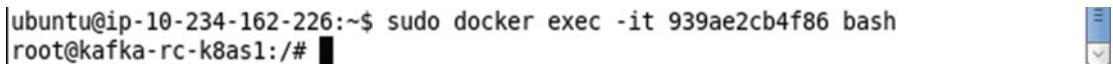
COLUMN	CONTAINER ID	IMAGE	STATUS	PORTS	NAMES
CREATED	939ae2cb4f86	dockerkafka/kafka:v2	2 minutes ago	Up 2 minutes	"zookeeper-server"
	r-sta"				k8s_zookeeper
	er.cd820d3e	kafka-rc-k8as1_default_d686f8e2-b0a1-11e5-9144-22000b40a6de			07a547f2
	90f7fd6b9e30	gcr.io/google_containers/pause:0.8.0	2 minutes ago	Up 2 minutes	"/pause"
	2e8b5_kafka-rc-k8as1_default_d686f8e2-b0a1-11e5-9144-22000b40a6de_a520d630				k8s_POD.34b
	ab4504107d11	gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1	24 minutes ago	Up 24 minutes	"/hyperkube scheduler"
	er.2744e742_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c4a_ad19501c				k8s_schedul
	158b61dac46d	gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1	24 minutes ago	Up 24 minutes	"/hyperkube apiserver"
	er.cfb70250_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c4a_c595e3ca				k8s_apiserv
	958da995b9f2	gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1	24 minutes ago	Up 24 minutes	"/hyperkube controller-manager.1598ee5c_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c4a_d972948a
	b44a20cccec3	gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1	24 minutes ago	Up 24 minutes	"/hyperkube proxy --m"
	78fe0d2ddebd	gcr.io/google_containers/pause:0.8.0	24 minutes ago	Up 24 minutes	"/pause"
	c795_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c4a_9c8ffc8f6b85b522c91d				k8s_POD.e4c
	6b85b522c91d	gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1	24 minutes ago	Up 24 minutes	"/hyperkube kubelet -"
	0c3adb353e74	gcr.io/google_containers/etcd:2.0.12	25 minutes ago	Up 25 minutes	"/usr/local/bin/_etcd "
					determined

**Figure 12-19.** Obtaining the Docker Container Id

Copy the container id and start the interactive bash shell.

```
sudo docker exec -it 939ae2cb4f86 bash
```

The interactive shell gets started as shown in Figure 12-20.



```
ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226:~$ sudo docker exec -it 939ae2cb4f86 bash
root@kafka-rc-k8as1:/#
```

A screenshot of a terminal window titled "Terminal". It shows a command-line interface with the prompt "root@kafka-rc-k8as1:/#". The background of the terminal window is light gray, and the text is black. There is a small blue icon in the top right corner of the terminal window.

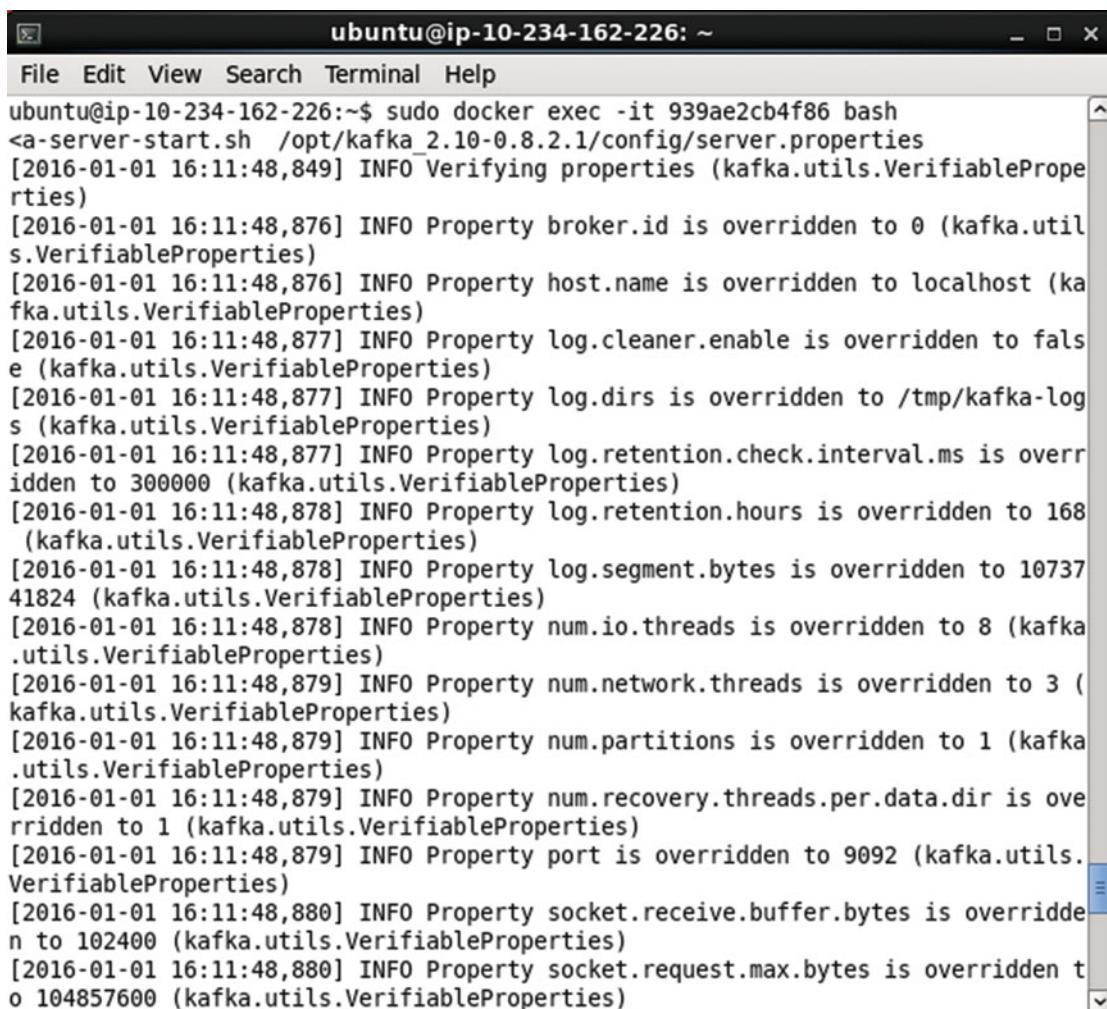
**Figure 12-20.** Starting the Interactive TTY for the Docker Container

## Starting the Kafka Server

The configuration properties for Kafka server are set in the config/server.properties file, which we modified when we rebuilt the Docker image. As the Zookeeper is already running, start the Kafka server with the following command.

```
kafka-server-start.sh /opt/kafka_2.10-0.8.2.1/config/server.properties
```

The preceding command is shown in Figure 12-21.

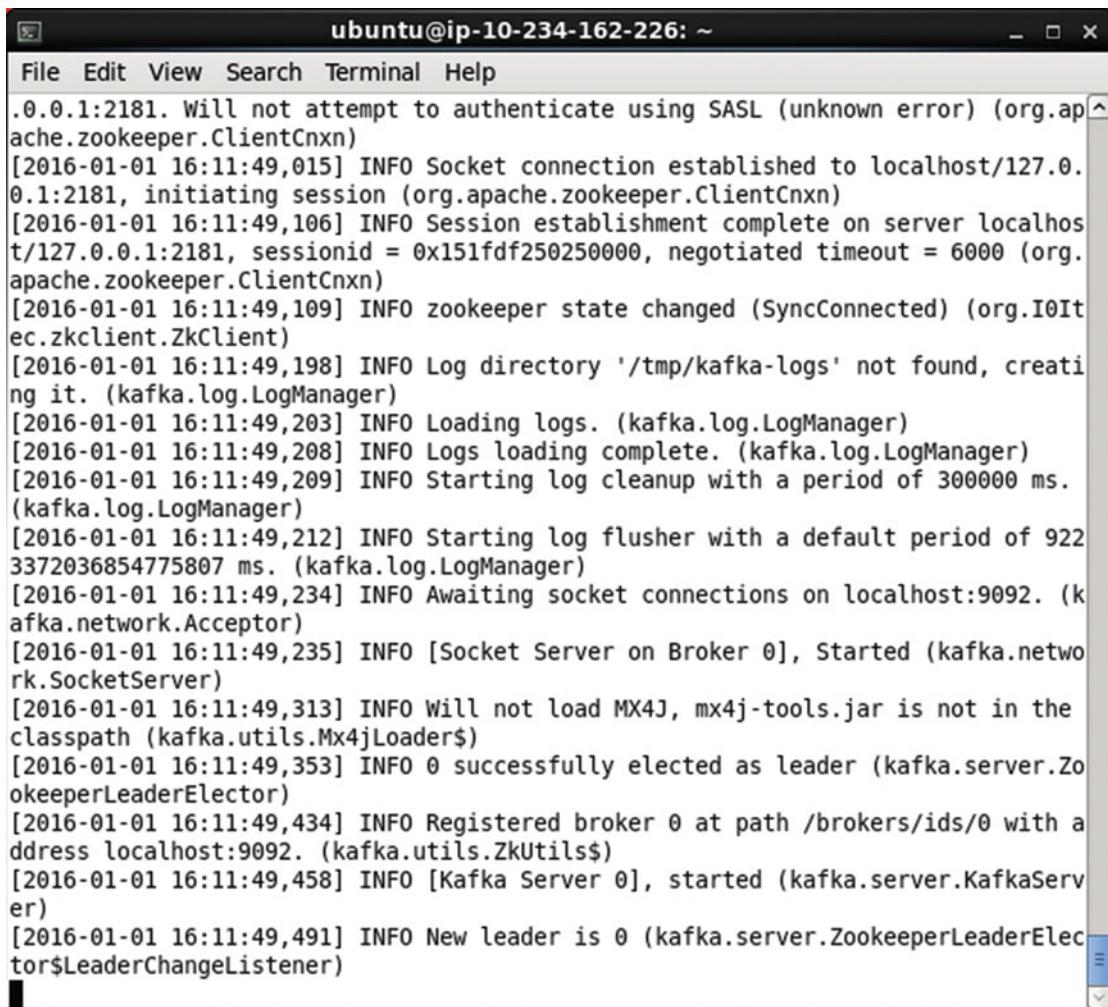


The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226: ~". The window contains a series of log messages from a Kafka server starting up. The messages are timestamped and show various properties being overridden. The log ends with two INFO messages about socket buffer sizes.

```
ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226:~$ sudo docker exec -it 939ae2cb4f86 bash
<a-server-start.sh /opt/kafka_2.10-0.8.2.1/config/server.properties
[2016-01-01 16:11:48,849] INFO Verifying properties (kafka.utils.VerifiableProperties)
[2016-01-01 16:11:48,876] INFO Property broker.id is overridden to 0 (kafka.utils.VerifiableProperties)
[2016-01-01 16:11:48,876] INFO Property host.name is overridden to localhost (kafka.utils.VerifiableProperties)
[2016-01-01 16:11:48,877] INFO Property log.cleaner.enable is overridden to false (kafka.utils.VerifiableProperties)
[2016-01-01 16:11:48,877] INFO Property log.dirs is overridden to /tmp/kafka-logs (kafka.utils.VerifiableProperties)
[2016-01-01 16:11:48,877] INFO Property log.retention.check.interval.ms is overridden to 300000 (kafka.utils.VerifiableProperties)
[2016-01-01 16:11:48,878] INFO Property log.retention.hours is overridden to 168 (kafka.utils.VerifiableProperties)
[2016-01-01 16:11:48,878] INFO Property log.segment.bytes is overridden to 1073741824 (kafka.utils.VerifiableProperties)
[2016-01-01 16:11:48,878] INFO Property num.io.threads is overridden to 8 (kafka.utils.VerifiableProperties)
[2016-01-01 16:11:48,879] INFO Property num.network.threads is overridden to 3 (kafka.utils.VerifiableProperties)
[2016-01-01 16:11:48,879] INFO Property num.partitions is overridden to 1 (kafka.utils.VerifiableProperties)
[2016-01-01 16:11:48,879] INFO Property num.recovery.threads.per.data.dir is overridden to 1 (kafka.utils.VerifiableProperties)
[2016-01-01 16:11:48,879] INFO Property port is overridden to 9092 (kafka.utils.VerifiableProperties)
[2016-01-01 16:11:48,880] INFO Property socket.receive.buffer.bytes is overridden to 102400 (kafka.utils.VerifiableProperties)
[2016-01-01 16:11:48,880] INFO Property socket.request.max.bytes is overridden to 104857600 (kafka.utils.VerifiableProperties)
```

**Figure 12-21.** Starting the Kafka Server

Kafka server gets started as shown in Figure 12-22.



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226: ~". The window displays a log of Kafka server startup messages. The log includes details about Zookeeper connection, log directory creation, log loading, log cleanup, log flusher start, socket connections, broker startup, and leader election.

```

ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226: ~
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
.0.0.1:2181. Will not attempt to authenticate using SASL (unknown error) (org.apache.zookeeper.ClientCnxn)
[2016-01-01 16:11:49,015] INFO Socket connection established to localhost/127.0.0.1:2181, initiating session (org.apache.zookeeper.ClientCnxn)
[2016-01-01 16:11:49,106] INFO Session establishment complete on server localhost/127.0.0.1:2181, sessionid = 0x151fdf250250000, negotiated timeout = 6000 (org.apache.zookeeper.ClientCnxn)
[2016-01-01 16:11:49,109] INFO zookeeper state changed (SyncConnected) (org.I0Itec.zkclient.ZkClient)
[2016-01-01 16:11:49,198] INFO Log directory '/tmp/kafka-logs' not found, creating it. (kafka.log.LogManager)
[2016-01-01 16:11:49,203] INFO Loading logs. (kafka.log.LogManager)
[2016-01-01 16:11:49,208] INFO Logs loading complete. (kafka.log.LogManager)
[2016-01-01 16:11:49,209] INFO Starting log cleanup with a period of 300000 ms. (kafka.log.LogManager)
[2016-01-01 16:11:49,212] INFO Starting log flusher with a default period of 9223372036854775807 ms. (kafka.log.LogManager)
[2016-01-01 16:11:49,234] INFO Awaiting socket connections on localhost:9092. (kafka.network.Acceptor)
[2016-01-01 16:11:49,235] INFO [Socket Server on Broker 0], Started (kafka.network.SocketServer)
[2016-01-01 16:11:49,313] INFO Will not load MX4J, mx4j-tools.jar is not in the classpath (kafka.utils.Mx4jLoader$)
[2016-01-01 16:11:49,353] INFO 0 successfully elected as leader (kafka.server.ZookeeperLeaderElector)
[2016-01-01 16:11:49,434] INFO Registered broker 0 at path /brokers/ids/0 with address localhost:9092. (kafka.utils.ZkUtils$)
[2016-01-01 16:11:49,458] INFO [Kafka Server 0], started (kafka.server.KafkaServer)
[2016-01-01 16:11:49,491] INFO New leader is 0 (kafka.server.ZookeeperLeaderElector$LeaderChangeListener)

```

**Figure 12-22.** Kafka Server started at localhost:9092

## Creating a Topic

Next, create a topic called 'kafka-on-kubernetes' with the following command. Set the number of partitions to 1 and replication factor to 1. The Zookeeper is set to localhost:2181.

```
kafka-topics.sh --create --topic kafka-on-kubernetes --zookeeper localhost:2181
--replication-factor 1 --partitions 1
```

As shown in Figure 12-23 the kafka-on-kubernetes topic gets created.

```
<zookeeper localhost:2181 --replication-factor 1 --partitions 1
Created topic "kafka-on-kubernetes".
root@kafka-rc-k8as1:/#
```

**Figure 12-23.** Creating a Kafka Topic

## Starting a Kafka Producer

A Kafka producer is used to produce messages. After starting the ZooKeeper and the Kafka server, start the Kafka producer. Specify the topic with the `-topic` option as 'kafka-on-kubernetes'. The `--broker-list` specifies the Kafka server as `localhost:9092`, which are the settings configured in `server.properties` file.

```
kafka-console-producer.sh --topic kafka-on-kubernetes --broker-list localhost:9092
```

As shown in Figure 12-24 the Kafka producer gets started.

```
<pic kafka-on-kubernetes --broker-list localhost:9092
[2016-01-01 16:28:13,680] WARN Property topic is not valid (kafka.utils.VerifiableProperties)
```

**Figure 12-24.** Starting a Kafka Producer

## Starting a Kafka Consumer

A Kafka consumer consumes messages. Start the Kafka consumer with the following command. Specify the topic with the `-topic` option as 'kafka-on-kubernetes'. The `--zookeeper` specifies the Zookeeper server as `localhost:2181`, which are the settings configured in `server.properties` file. The `--from-beginning` option specifies that messages from the beginning are to be consumed, not just the messages consumed after the consumer was started.

```
kafka-console-consumer.sh --topic kafka-on-kubernetes --from-beginning --zookeeper
localhost:2181
```

As shown in Figure 12-25 the Kafka producer gets started.

```
<pic kafka-on-kubernetes --from-beginning --zookeeper localhost:2181
```

**Figure 12-25.** Starting a Kafka Consumer

## Producing and Consuming Messages

Having started the Producer and the Consumer, we shall produce message/s at the Producer and consume message/s at the Consumer. At the Producer add a message, for example, "Message from Kafka Producer" as shown in Figure 12-26 and click on Enter button. The message gets sent.

```
<pic kafka-on-kubernetes --broker-list localhost:9092
[2016-01-01 16:28:13,680] WARN Property topic is not valid (kafka.utils.VerifiableProperties)
Message from Kafka Producer
```

**Figure 12-26.** Producing a Message at the Kafka Producer

At the Consumer the message gets consumed as shown in Figure 12-27.

```
<pic kafka-on-kubernetes --from-beginning --zookeeper localhost:2181
Message from Kafka Producer
```

**Figure 12-27.** Consuming a Message at the Kafka Consumer

Send more messages at the Producer as shown in Figure 12-28.

```
<pic kafka-on-kubernetes --broker-list localhost:9092
[2016-01-01 16:28:13,680] WARN Property topic is not valid (kafka.utils.VerifiableProperties)
Message from Kafka Producer
```

**Figure 12-28.** Producing More Messages at the Kafka Producer

And the messages get consumed at the Consumer as shown in Figure 12-29.

```
<pic kafka-on-kubernetes --from-beginning --zookeeper localhost:2181
Message from Kafka Producer
```

**Figure 12-29.** Consuming More Messages at the Kafka Consumer

## Scaling the Cluster

To scale the cluster to 4 Pods from 1 Pod run the following command.

```
kubectl scale rc kafka-rc --replicas=4
```

Subsequently list the Pods.

```
kubectl get pods
```

An output of “scaled” indicates that the cluster has been scaled as shown in Figure 12-30. Subsequently the Pods get listed, also shown in Figure 12-30.

```
ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226:~$ kubectl scale rc kafka-rc --replicas=4
scaled
ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   3          33m
kafka-rc-38bji      0/1     Running   0          16s
kafka-rc-idffn      1/1     Running   0          16s
kafka-rc-k8as1       1/1     Running   0          11m
kafka-rc-w1083       1/1     Running   0          16s
ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   3          33m
kafka-rc-38bji      1/1     Running   0          29s
kafka-rc-idffn      1/1     Running   0          29s
kafka-rc-k8as1       1/1     Running   0          11m
kafka-rc-w1083       1/1     Running   0          29s
ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226:~$ █
```

**Figure 12-30.** Scaling the Kafka Cluster

When the number of Pods are increased to 4, the service endpoints also increase to 4. Describe the service kafka.

```
kubectl describe svc kafka
```

As shown in Figure 12-31, 4 endpoints are listed for each of the two services, one for Zookeeper server and the other for the Kafka server.

```
ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226:~$ kubectl describe svc kafka
Name:           kafka
Namespace:      default
Labels:         app=kafkaApp
Selector:       app=kafkaApp
Type:          LoadBalancer
IP:            10.0.0.90
Port:          kafka   9092/TCP
NodePort:      kafka   31927/TCP
Endpoints:     172.17.0.2:9092,172.17.0.3:9092,172.17.0.4:9092 + 1 more
...
Port:          zookeeper   2181/TCP
NodePort:      zookeeper   32576/TCP
Endpoints:     172.17.0.2:2181,172.17.0.3:2181,172.17.0.4:2181 + 1 more
...
Session Affinity: None
No events.

ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226:~$
```

*Figure 12-31. Describing the Kafka Service with 4 Endpoints*

## Deleting Replication Controller and Service

To delete the replication controller and service run the following commands.

```
kubectl delete rc kafka-rc
kubectl delete service kafka
```

As shown in Figure 12-32 the replication controller and service get deleted.

```
ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226:~$ kubectl get rc
CONTROLLER  CONTAINER(S)  IMAGE(S)          SELECTOR          REPLICAS
kafka-rc    zookeeper    docker/kafka:kafka:v2  app=kafkaApp  4
ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226:~$ kubectl delete rc kafka-rc
replicationcontrollers/kafka-rc
ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226:~$ kubectl delete service kafka
services/kafka
ubuntu@ip-10-234-162-226:~$
```

*Figure 12-32. Deleting the Kafka Replication Controller and Service*

## Summary

Apache Kafka is a producer-consumer-based messaging system. In this chapter we discussed managing a Kafka cluster with Kubernetes. Managing the Kafka is different from some of the other applications as two servers have to be started: the Zookeeper server and the Kafka server. And the Kafka server has a dependency on the Zookeeper server, which implies that the Zookeeper must be started before the Kafka server. We needed to modify the default image docker kafka/kafka for the zookeeper connect url. In the replication controller definition file we used a custom command to run the modified Docker image to start the Zookeeper server, the default settings in the Docker image being to start the Kafka server. All the applications we have run as yet were based on a single container Pod. In the next chapter we shall develop a multi-container Pod.

**PART V**



## **Multi Containers and Nodes**

## CHAPTER 13



# Creating a Multi-Container Pod

A Pod is the atomic unit of an application managed by Kubernetes. A Pod has a single filesystem and IP Address; the containers in the Pod share the filesystem and networking IP. A Pod could consist of one or more containers. A Pod is defined in a definition file for a Pod or a replication controller using the specification for a Pod ([http://kubernetes.io/v1.1/docs/api-reference/v1/definitions.html#\\_v1\\_podspec](http://kubernetes.io/v1.1/docs/api-reference/v1/definitions.html#_v1_podspec)). A single container within a Pod is specified using the container specification ([http://kubernetes.io/v1.1/docs/api-reference/v1/definitions.html#\\_v1\\_container](http://kubernetes.io/v1.1/docs/api-reference/v1/definitions.html#_v1_container)). In all of the applications discussed as yet, in preceding chapters, a single container Pod was used. In this chapter we shall develop a multi-container Pod. We have used the tutum/hello-world and postgres Docker images for the multi-container Pod. Each of these images have been used in a single container Pods in preceding chapters. This chapter will cover the following topics.

- How to Find Number of Containers in a Pod?
- Type of applications Using a Multi-Container Pod
- Setting the Environment
- Creating a Service
- Describing a Service
- Creating a Replication Container
- Listing the Pods
- Listing the Docker Containers
- Describing the Service after Creating Replication Controller
- Invoking the Hello World Application on Command Line
- Starting the Interactive Shell
- Starting PostgreSQL Shell
- Setting Port Forwarding
- Opening the Hello World Application in a Browser
- Scaling the Cluster
- Describing the Service after Scaling
- Describing a Pod
- Setting Port Forwarding

- Opening the Hello World Applications in a Browser
- Invoking the Hello World Application from Command Line
- Deleting the Replication Controller
- Deleting the Service

## How to find Number of Containers in a Pod?

As discussed previously the Pods may be listed with the following command.

```
kubectl get pods
```

The Kubernetes Pod k8s-master-127.0.0.1 Pod has 3/3 in the READY column as shown in Figure 13-1. The 3/3 indicates that the Pod has 3 containers and all three containers are ready. The n/n in the READY column for any Pod indicates the number of containers ready out of the total number of containers. All the containers are running on a single node as indicated by the subsequent listing of nodes.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1   3/3     Running   0          3m
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ kubectl get nodes
NAME             LABELS
127.0.0.1   kubernetes.io/hostname=127.0.0.1   Ready
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-39:~$ █
```

**Figure 13-1.** Listing the Pods and the Number of Containers in the Pods

## Types of Applications Using a Multi-Container Pod

Various types of applications could make use of a multi-container Pod. Some of the examples are as follows:

- An Apache Sqoop application makes use of a CDH Docker image-based container and a MySQL database Docker image-based container for bulk transferring data from MySQL database into HDFS.
- An Apache Flume application makes use of a CDH Docker image-based container and a Kafka-based container for streaming data from a Kafka source into HDFS.
- An Apache Solr application makes use of a Oracle Database-based container and the Solr container for data import from Oracle Database into Solr.
- An Apache Hive application makes use a CDH container and a MongoDB container to create a Hive table using the MongoDB storage handler.
- An Apache Solr container and a CDH container are required to store Solr data in HDFS instead of the local filesystem.

## Setting the Environment

We have used an Amazon EC2 instance created from AMI Ubuntu Server 14.04 LTS (HVM), SSD Volume Type - ami-d05e75b8 to install the following required software.

- Docker Engine (latest version)
- Kubernetes (version 1.01)
- Kubectl (version 1.01)
- Docker image tutum/hello-world (latest version)
- Docker image postgres (latest version)

Install Docker, Kubernetes, and Kubectl as discussed in chapter 1. To log in to the Ubuntu instance the Public IP Address may be obtained from the Amazon EC2 console as shown in Figure 13-2.

Name	Instance ID	Instance Type	Availability Zone	Instance State	Status Checks	Alarm Status	Public DNS
i-777b10c6	t2.micro	us-east-1b	running	2/2 checks...	None		ec2-52-90-62-35.compu...

Instance ID: i-777b10c6	Public DNS: ec2-52-90-62-35.compute-1.amazonaws.com		
Description	Status Checks	Monitoring	Tags
Instance ID: i-777b10c6	Public DNS: ec2-52-90-62-35.compute-1.amazonaws.com		
Instance state: running	Public IP: 52.90.62.35		
Instance type: t2.micro	Elastic IP: -		

**Figure 13-2.** Obtaining the Public IP Address

SSH Login to the Ubuntu instance.

```
ssh -i "docker.pem" ubuntu@52.90.62.35
```

After having installed Docker start Docker and verify its status.

```
sudo service docker start
sudo service docker status
```

Docker should be listed as being “running” as shown in Figure 13-3.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-237:~$ sudo service docker start
start: Job is already running: docker
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-237:~$ sudo service docker status
docker start/running, process 2697
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-237:~$ █
```

**Figure 13-3.** Starting Docker

## Creating a Service

Create a service definition file `hello-postgres-service.yaml` to configure the service ports. We shall be configuring two service ports, one for the `hello-world` application and the other for the `postgres` application. The fields in the service definition file are discussed in Table 13-1.

**Table 13-1.** Fields in the Service Definition File

Field	Description	Value
apiVersion		v1
kind	The kind of definition file.	Service
metadata	The service metadata.	
metadata -> labels	The service labels. The setting translates to label <code>app=MultiContainerApp</code>	app: MultiContainerApp
metadata -> name	The service name.	hello-postgres
spec	The service specification.	
spec -> ports	The ports exposed by the service. Two ports are exposed, one for the <code>hello-world</code> application and the other for the <code>postgres</code> application.	name: hello-world port: 8080 name: postgres port: 5432
spec -> selector	The Pod selector. Service routes traffic to the Pods with label matching the selector expression. The setting translates to selector <code>app=MultiContainerApp</code>	app: MultiContainerApp
spec -> selector -> type	The service type.	LoadBalancer

The `hello-postgres-service.yaml` is listed:

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Service
metadata:
  labels:
    app: MultiContainerApp
    name: hello-postgres
```

```

spec:
  ports:
    -
      name: hello-world
      port: 8080
    -
      name: postgres
      port: 5432
  selector:
    app: MultiContainerApp
  type: LoadBalancer

```

Create a service from the definition file.

```
kubectl create -f hello-postgres-service.yaml
```

Subsequently list the services.

```
kubectl get services
```

The hello-postgres service gets created and listed as shown in Figure 13-4.

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-237:~\$ kubectl create -f hello-postgres-service.yaml		
services/hello-postgres		
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-237:~\$ kubectl get services		
NAME	LABELS	SELECTOR
IP(S)	PORT(S)	
hello-postgres	app=MultiContainerApp	app=MultiContainerApp
10.0.0.186	5432/TCP	
	8020/TCP	
kubernetes	component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes	<none>
10.0.0.1	443/TCP	

**Figure 13-4.** Creating a Service from the Definition File

## Describing a Service

The hello-postgres service may be described with the following command.

```
kubectl describe service hello-postgres
```

The service description includes the name, namespace, labels, selector, type, IP, ports, and endpoints as shown in Figure 13-5. Initially the service is not managing any pods and as a result no endpoints are listed.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-237:~$ kubectl describe svc hello-postgres
Name:           hello-postgres
Namespace:      default
Labels:         app=MultiContainerApp
Selector:       app=MultiContainerApp
Type:          LoadBalancer
IP:            10.0.0.186
Port:          postgres      5432/TCP
NodePort:      postgres      32065/TCP
Endpoints:    <none>
Port:          hello-world   8020/TCP
NodePort:      hello-world   32540/TCP
Endpoints:    <none>
Session Affinity: None
No events.

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-237:~$
```

**Figure 13-5.** Describing the Service

## Creating a Replication Container

Create a definition file `hello-postgres-rc.yaml` for a replication controller. Add the following (Table 13-2) fields to the definition file.

**Table 13-2.** Fields in the Replication Controller Definition File

Field	Description	Value
apiVersion		v1
kind	The kind of definition file.	ReplicationController
metadata	The replication controller metadata.	
metadata -> labels	The replication controller labels.	app: "MultiContainerApp"
metadata -> name	The replication controller name.	"hello-postgres"
spec	The replication controller specification.	
spec -> replicas	The number of Pod replicas.	1
spec -> selector	A key:value expression for selecting the Pods to manage. Pods with a label the same as the selector expression is managed by the replication controller. The selector expression must be the same as the spec -> template -> metadata -> labels expression. The selector defaults to the spec -> template -> metadata -> labels key: value expression if not specified.	app: "MultiContainerApp"

(continued)

**Table 13-2.** (continued)

Field	Description	Value
spec -> template	The Pod template.	
spec -> template -> metadata	The Pod template metadata.	
spec -> template -> metadata -> labels	The Pod template labels. The selector if not specified defaults to this setting. The service selector must be the same as one of the Pod template labels for the service to represent the Pod. The service selector does not default to the same value as the label and we already set the service selector to app: MultiContainerApp.	app: "MultiContainerApp"
spec -> template -> spec	The Pod template specification.	
spec -> template -> spec -> containers	The containers configuration for the Pod template.	
spec -> template -> spec -> containers -> image	The Docker image for the hello-world container.	tutum/hello-world
spec -> template -> spec -> containers -> name	The container name for the hello-world container.	hello-world
ports	Specifies the container port for the hello-world container.	containerPort: 8080
spec -> template -> spec -> containers -> image	The Docker image for the postgres container.	postgres
spec -> template -> spec -> containers -> name	The container name for the postgres container.	postgres
ports	Container port for postgres container.	containerPort: 5432

The `hello-postgres-rc.yaml` is listed:

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: ReplicationController
metadata:
  labels:
    app: "MultiContainerApp"
    name: "hello-postgres"
spec:
  replicas: 1
  selector:
    app: "MultiContainerApp"
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        app: "MultiContainerApp"
```

```

spec:
  containers:
    -
      image: "tutum/hello-world"
      name: "hello-world"
      ports:
        -
          containerPort: 8080
    -
      image: "postgres"
      name: "postgres"
      ports:
        -
          containerPort: 5432

```

Create a replication controller from the definition file.

```
kubectl create -f hello-postgres-rc.yaml
```

Subsequently list the replication controllers.

```
kubectl get rc
```

As shown in Figure 13-6 the hello-postgres replication controller gets created and listed.

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-237:~\$ kubectl create -f hello-postgres-rc.yaml				
replicationcontrollers/hello-postgres				
CONTROLLER	CONTAINER(S)	IMAGE(S)	SELECTOR	REPL
hello-postgres	postgres hello-world	postgres tutum/hello-world	app=MultiContainerApp	1

**Figure 13-6.** Creating a Replication Controller from the Definition File

## Listing the Pods

To list the Pods run the following command.

```
kubectl get pods
```

As replicas field is set to 1 in the replication controller only one Pod gets created as shown in Figure 13-7. The READY column lists 0/2, which indicates that 0 or none of the two containers in the pod are ready. Initially the container could be listed as not running and creating. Run the preceding command after a few seconds and the Pod STATUS should be “Running” and the READY state should be 2/2, implying that 2 of 2 containers are running.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-237:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS
RESTARTS      AGE
hello-postgres-29ypb  0/2     Image: tutum/hello-world is ready, container is
                            creating   0          18s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running
                            0          44m
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-237:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
hello-postgres-29ypb  2/2     Running   0          32s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   0          44m
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-237:~$ █
```

**Figure 13-7.** Listing the Pods

## Listing the Docker Containers

To list the Docker containers started, run the following command.

```
sudo docker ps
```

Two of the listed containers, the container based on the `postgres` image and the container based on the `tutum/hello-world` image, as shown in Figure 13-8, are started with the replication controller `hello-postgres`.

```

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-237:~$ sudo docker ps
CONTAINER ID        IMAGE               CREATED             STATUS              PORTS          NAMES
bf92387f8e34        tutum/hello-world   12 minutes ago    Up 12 minutes           "/bin/sh -c 'php
-fpm '              12 minutes ago    Up 12 minutes           "/bin/sh -c 'php
-orld.f631f289_hello-postgres-29ypb_default_7952338c-ae6e-11e5-8a7b-1223ff17e6cf_
87ffc2c1
2e351a609b5b        postgres            12 minutes ago    Up 12 minutes           "/docker-entrypo
int.s"              12 minutes ago    Up 12 minutes           "/docker-entrypo
s.caf5ee3b_hello-postgres-29ypb_default_7952338c-ae6e-11e5-8a7b-1223ff17e6cf_05f
a8f0c
68e6a11d5e43        gcr.io/google_containers/pause:0.8.0  13 minutes ago    Up 13 minutes           "/pause"
d0b09_hello-postgres-29ypb_default_7952338c-ae6e-11e5-8a7b-1223ff17e6cf_624dcba
25764c124c10        gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1  56 minutes ago   Up 56 minutes           "/hyperkube prox
y --m"              56 minutes ago   Up 56 minutes           "/hyperkube prox
6895776f8dec        gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1  56 minutes ago   Up 56 minutes           "/hyperkube sche
duler"              56 minutes ago   Up 56 minutes           "/hyperkube sche
der.2744e742_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c4a_bc5054
61
cea0190ba76b        gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1  56 minutes ago   Up 56 minutes           "/hyperkube apis
erver"              56 minutes ago   Up 56 minutes           "/hyperkube apis
er.2fb70250_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c4a_bf6ef8
f5
7c5c8d72529e        gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1  56 minutes ago   Up 56 minutes           "/hyperkube cont
rolle"              56 minutes ago   Up 56 minutes           "/hyperkube cont
ler-manager.1598ee5c_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c
4a_a3dda37c
20cab3234a43        gcr.io/google_containers/pause:0.8.0      57 minutes ago   Up 57 minutes           "/pause"
c795_k8s-master-127.0.0.1_default_f3ccbffbd75e3c5d2fb4ba69c8856c4a_1cd398bb
94b9e2bc86dd        gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1  57 minutes ago   Up 57 minutes           "/hyperkube kube

```

**Figure 13-8.** Listing the Docker Containers

## Describing the Service after Creating Replication Controller

Before we had created the replication controller the service `hello-postgres` was not associated with any endpoints. After creating the replication controller and the Pod/s, run the following command again to describe the service again.

```
kubectl describe service hello-postgres
```

An endpoint is listed for each of the ports exposed by the service as shown in Figure 13-9.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-237:~$ kubectl describe service hello-postgres
Name:           hello-postgres
Namespace:      default
Labels:         app=MultiContainerApp
Selector:       app=MultiContainerApp
Type:          LoadBalancer
IP:            10.0.0.186
Port:          postgres      5432/TCP
NodePort:       postgres      32065/TCP
Endpoints:     172.17.0.2:5432
Port:          hello-world   8020/TCP
NodePort:       hello-world   32540/TCP
Endpoints:     172.17.0.2:8020
Session Affinity: None
No events.
```

**Figure 13-9.** Describing the Service

## Invoking the Hello World Application on Command Line

Invoke the service endpoint 172.17.0.2 using curl as follows.

```
curl 172.17.0.2
```

The HTML generated by the application gets output as shown in Figure 13-10.

```

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-237:~$ curl 172.17.0.2
<html>
<head>
<title>Hello world!</title>
<link href='http://fonts.googleapis.com/css?family=Open+Sans:400,700' rel='stylesheet' type='text/css'>
<style>
body {
    background-color: white;
    text-align: center;
    padding: 50px;
    font-family: "Open Sans", "Helvetica Neue", Helvetica, Arial, sans-serif;
}
#logo {
    margin-bottom: 40px;
}
</style>
</head>
<body>

<h1>Hello world!</h1>
<h3>My hostname is hello-postgres-29ypb</h3>
<h3>Link found</h3>
<b>HELLO_POSTGRES</b> listening in 8020
available at tcp://10.0.0.186:8020<br />
<b>HELLO_POSTGRES</b> listening
in 5432 available at tcp://10.0.0.186:5432<br />
<b>KUBERNETES</b> listening in 443
available at tcp://10.0.0.1:443<br />
</body>

```

**Figure 13-10.** Invoking an Endpoint for the Service

## Starting the Interactive Shell

To start an interactive shell for the software installed, either of the Docker containers, listed previously in Figure 13-8, for the multi-container Pod may be used. Both the containers access the same filesystem and IP. Use the following command to start an interactive shell.

```
sudo docker exec -it 2e351a609b5b bash
```

An interactive shell gets started as shown in Figure 13-11.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-237:~$ sudo docker exec -it 2e351a609b5b bash
root@hello-postgres-29ypb:/#
```

**Figure 13-11.** Starting an Interactive Shell

## Starting PostgreSQL Shell

To start the PostgreSQL command shell called psql run the following command in the interactive shell.

```
psql postgres
```

The psql gets started and the postgres command prompt gets displayed as shown in Figure 13-12.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-237:~$ sudo docker exec -it 2e351a609b5b bash
root@hello-postgres-29ypb:/# su -l postgres
No directory, logging in with HOME=/
$ psql postgres
psql (9.4.5)
Type "help" for help.

postgres=#
```

**Figure 13-12.** Starting psql Shell

PostgreSQL with Kubernetes is discussed in chapter 5.

## Setting Port Forwarding

We had earlier invoked the service endpoint to output the HTML generated using curl on the command line, but HTML is best displayed in a browser. As an Amazon EC2 instance does not provide a browser by default, we need to set port forwarding to a local machine to be able to access the service endpoint in a browser. Set the port forwarding for 172.17.0.2:80 to localhost:80 with the following command.

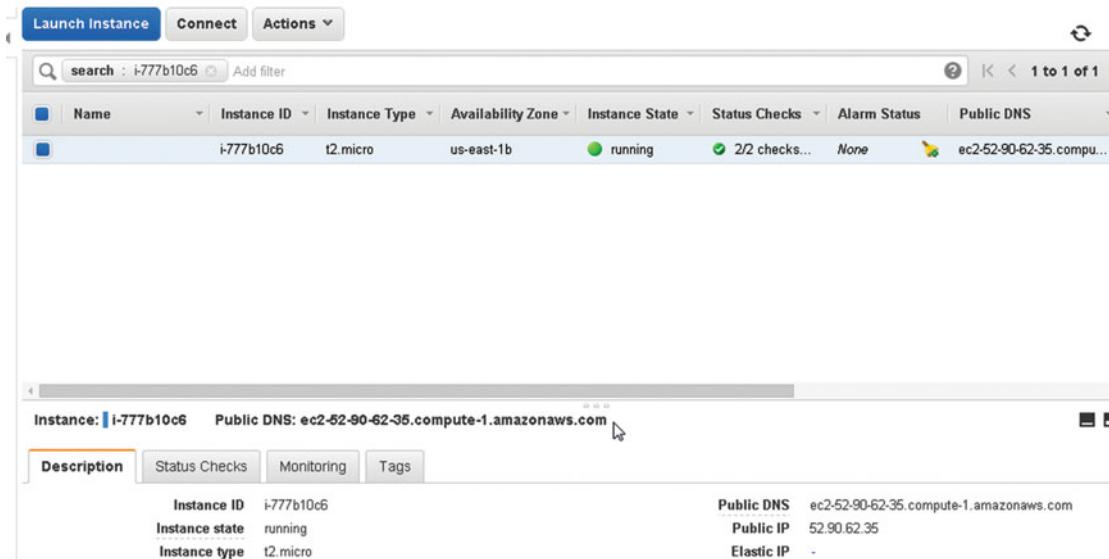
```
ssh -i "docker.pem" -f -nNT -L 80:172.17.0.2:80 ubuntu@ec2-52-90-62-35.compute-1.amazonaws.com
```

The port forwarding to localhost gets set as shown in Figure 13-13.

```
[root@localhost ~]# ssh -i "docker.pem" -f -nNT -L 80:172.17.0.2:80 ubuntu@ec2-52-90-62-35.compute-1.amazonaws.com
[root@localhost ~]#
```

**Figure 13-13.** Setting Port Forwarding

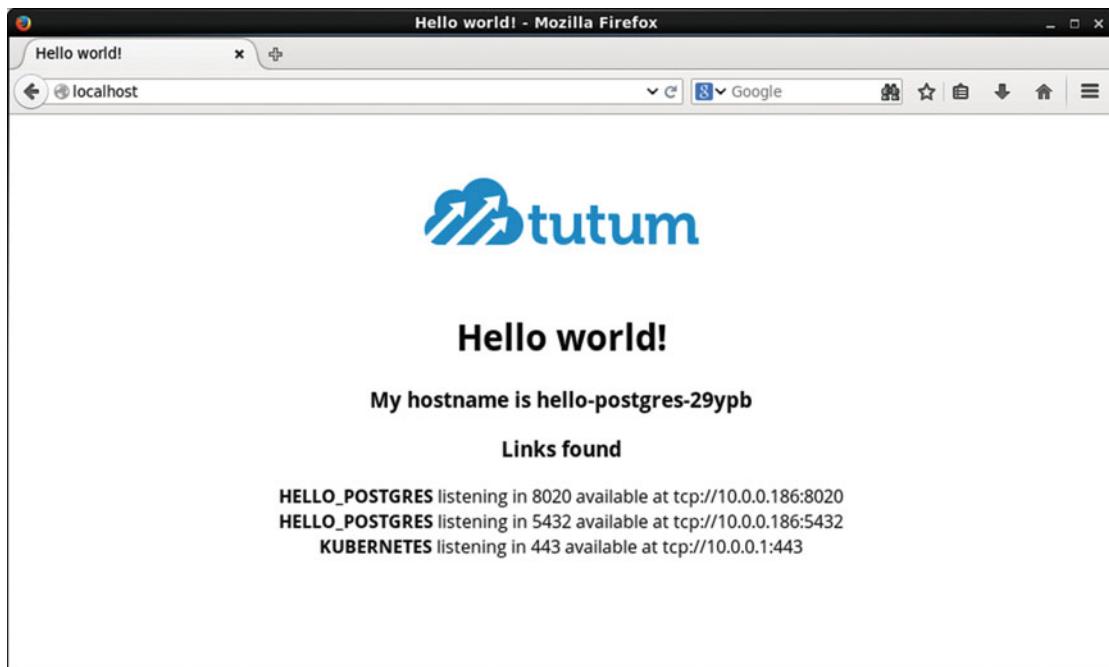
The Public DNS for the Amazon EC2 instance may be obtained from the Amazon EC2 console as shown in Figure 13-14.



**Figure 13-14.** Obtaining Public DNS

## Opening the Hello World Application in a Browser

Having set port forwarding the application may be opened in a browser on a local machine with url `http://localhost` as shown in Figure 13-15. In addition to the hostname the two ports at which the HELLO\_POSTGRES is listening at get listed.



**Figure 13-15.** Invoking the Service Endpoint in a Browser

## Scaling the Cluster

To scale the cluster to 3 replicas or Pods run the following command.

```
kubectl scale rc hello-postgres --replicas=3
```

Subsequently list the Pods.

```
kubectl get pods
```

Three Pods get listed as shown in Figure 13-16. Some of the Pods could be not running or not ready initially. Run the preceding command again after a few seconds to list all the Pods with STATUS as “Running” and READY state as 2/2.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-237:~$ kubectl scale rc hello-postgres --replicas=3
scaled
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-237:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
hello-postgres-29ypb  2/2     Running   0          23m
hello-postgres-jliem  2/2     Running   0          13s
hello-postgres-xb6b8  0/2     Running   0          13s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   0          1h
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-237:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
hello-postgres-29ypb  2/2     Running   0          23m
hello-postgres-jliem  2/2     Running   0          25s
hello-postgres-xb6b8  2/2     Running   0          25s
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   0          1h
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-237:~$
```

**Figure 13-16.** Scaling the Cluster to 3 Replicas

A Pod may be described using the `kubectl describe pod` command. For example, describe the `hello-postgres-jliem` pod with the following command.

```
kubectl describe pod hello-postgres-jliem
```

As shown in Figure 13-17 the Pod description gets listed.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-237:~$ kubectl describe pod hello-postgres-jliem
Name:                     hello-postgres-jliem
Namespace:                default
Image(s):                 postgres,tutum/hello-world
Node:                     127.0.0.1/127.0.0.1
Labels:                   app=MultiContainerApp
Status:                   Running
Reason:
Message:
IP:                       172.17.0.3
Replication Controllers:  hello-postgres (3/3 replicas created)
Containers:
  postgres:
    Image:      postgres
    State:      Running
    Started:   Tue, 29 Dec 2015 21:18:27 +0000
    Ready:      True
    Restart Count: 0
  hello-world:
    Image:      tutum/hello-world
    State:      Running
    Started:   Tue, 29 Dec 2015 21:18:27 +0000
    Ready:      True
    Restart Count: 0
Conditions:
  Type     Status

```

**Figure 13-17.** Describing a Pod

## Listing the Docker Containers

As each Pod consists of two containers, scaling up the cluster to 3 Pods or replicas starts four new containers, 2 containers for each of the two new Pods. After scaling up the cluster run the following command to list the running Docker containers again using the default output format.

```
sudo docker ps
```

A total of 3 containers based on the postgres image and 3 containers based on the tutum/hello-world image get listed as shown in Figure 13-18.

CONTAINER ID	IMAGE	CREATED	STATUS	PORTS	COMMAND	NAMES
72f610466562	tutum/hello-world	-fpm " 6 minutes ago	Up 6 minutes		"/bin/sh -c 'php-fpm'"	k8s_hello-world.f631f289_hello-postgres-xb6b8_default_b32d7de6-ae71-11e5-8a7b-1223ff17e6cf_df833892
02b68f8532bf	postgres	int.s" 6 minutes ago	Up 6 minutes		"/docker-entrypoint.s"	k8s_postgres.caf5ee3b_hello-postgres-xb6b8_default_b32d7de6-ae71-11e5-8a7b-1223ff17e6cf_0a9d2642
fd4a423f73ee	tutum/hello-world	-fpm " 6 minutes ago	Up 6 minutes		"/bin/sh -c 'php-fpm'"	k8s_hello-world.f631f289_hello-postgres-jliem_default_b32d6287-ae71-11e5-8a7b-1223ff17e6cf_0337b3e0
94ddb3160cdb	postgres	int.s" 6 minutes ago	Up 6 minutes		"/docker-entrypoint.s"	k8s_postgres.caf5ee3b_hello-postgres-jliem_default_b32d6287-ae71-11e5-8a7b-1223ff17e6cf_12491b18
4d74dfdff121	gcr.io/google_containers/pause:0.8.0	6 minutes ago	Up 6 minutes		"/pause"	k8s_POD.456d0b09_hello-postgres-xb6b8_default_b32d7de6-ae71-11e5-8a7b-1223ff17e6cf_fa4fd993
485aeeef65df7	gcr.io/google_containers/pause:0.8.0	6 minutes ago	Up 6 minutes		"/pause"	k8s_POD.456d0b09_hello-postgres-jliem_default_b32d6287-ae71-11e5-8a7b-1223ff17e6cf_4f3b4c27
bf92387f8e34	tutum/hello-world	-fpm " 29 minutes ago	Up 28 minutes		"/bin/sh -c 'php-fpm'"	k8s_hello-world.f631f289_hello-postgres-29ypb_default_7952338c-ae6e-11e5-8a7b-1223ff17e6cf_87ffc2c1
2e351a609b5b	postgres	int.s" 29 minutes ago	Up 28 minutes		"/docker-entrypoint.s"	k8s_postgres.caf5ee3b_hello-postgres-29ypb_default_7952338c-ae6e-11e5-8a7b-1223ff17e6cf_05f

**Figure 13-18.** Listing the Docker Containers

## Describing the Service after Scaling

Describe the service again after scaling up the cluster.

```
kubectl describe service hello-postgres
```

Each of the ports exposed by the service is associated with three endpoints because 3 Pods are running as shown in Figure 13-19.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-237:~$ kubectl describe service hello-postgres
Name:           hello-postgres
Namespace:      default
Labels:         app=MultiContainerApp
Selector:       app=MultiContainerApp
Type:          LoadBalancer
IP:            10.0.0.186
Port:          postgres      5432/TCP
NodePort:       postgres      32065/TCP
Endpoints:     172.17.0.2:5432,172.17.0.3:5432,172.17.0.4:5432
Port:          hello-world   8020/TCP
NodePort:       hello-world   32540/TCP
Endpoints:     172.17.0.2:8020,172.17.0.3:8020,172.17.0.4:8020
Session Affinity: None
No events.

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-237:~$
```

**Figure 13-19.** Describing the Service including the Service Endpoints

## Setting Port Forwarding

To be able to open the application in a browser we need to set port forwarding to localhost. Set the port forwarding to ports not previously bound. The localhost:80 bind address is already used up in the port forwarding of the single Pod created earlier. To set port forwarding for the two new Pods use ports 81 and 82 on localhost.

```
ssh -i "docker.pem" -f -nNT -L 81:172.17.0.3:80 ubuntu@ec2-52-90-62-35.compute-1.amazonaws.com
ssh -i "docker.pem" -f -nNT -L 82:172.17.0.4:80 ubuntu@ec2-52-90-62-35.compute-1.amazonaws.com
```

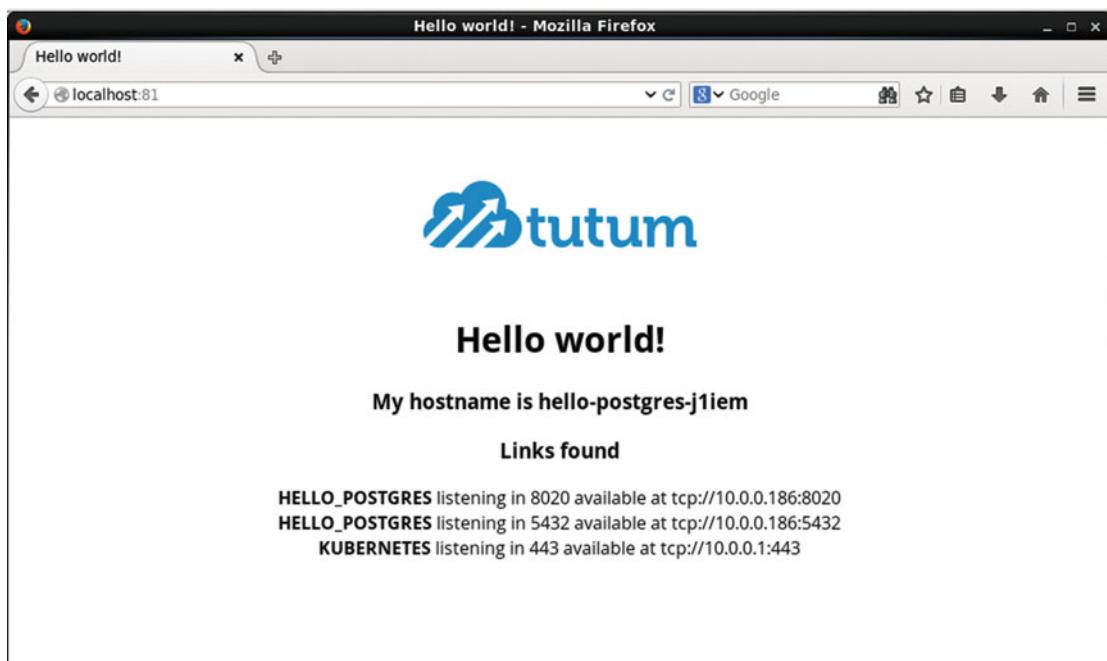
The preceding commands do not generate any output but the ports get forwarded to the localhost as shown in Figure 13-20.

```
[root@localhost ~]# ssh -i "docker.pem" -f -nNT -L 81:172.17.0.3:80 ubuntu@ec2-5
2-90-62-35.compute-1.amazonaws.com
[root@localhost ~]# ssh -i "docker.pem" -f -nNT -L 82:172.17.0.4:80 ubuntu@ec2-5
2-90-62-35.compute-1.amazonaws.com
[root@localhost ~]# █
```

**Figure 13-20.** Setting Port Forwarding

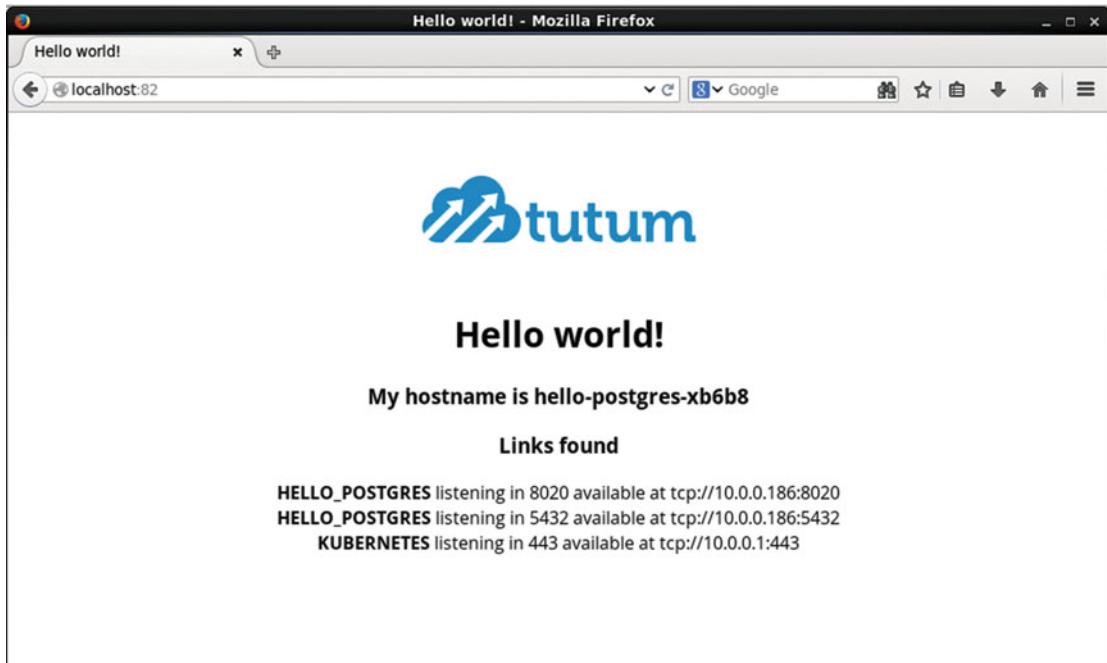
## Opening the Hello World Application in a Browser

The application may be opened in a browser at each of the forwarded ports; for example, open a browser at <http://localhost:81>. The application HTML gets displayed as shown in Figure 13-21. The HELLO\_POSTGRES service is listening at two ports 8020 and 5432.



**Figure 13-21.** Invoking a Service Endpoint in a Browser

Similarly open the other service endpoint in a browser with url <http://localhost:82>. Different hostnames listening on the same port are forwarded to different ports on the localhost. The service endpoint HTML gets output as shown in Figure 13-22.



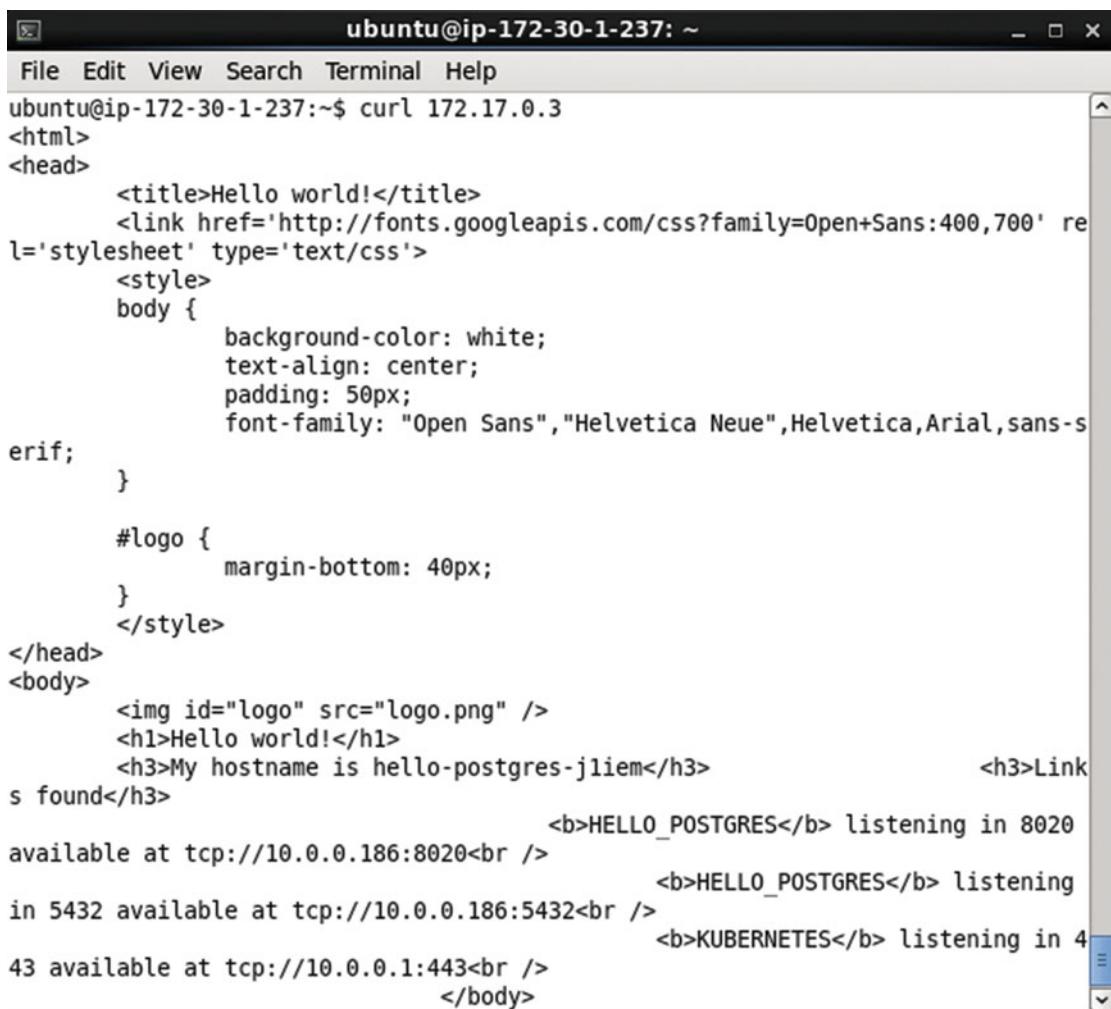
**Figure 13-22.** Invoking another Service Endpoint in a Browser

## Invoking the Hello World Application from Command Line

As for a single container Pod, each of the two new service endpoints may be invoked on the command line. For example, invoke the 172.17.0.3 endpoint with the following curl command.

```
curl 172.17.0.3
```

The HTML for the service endpoint gets output as shown in Figure 13-23.



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-237: ~". The command "curl 172.17.0.3" is run, resulting in the following HTML output:

```

<html>
<head>
    <title>Hello world!</title>
    <link href='http://fonts.googleapis.com/css?family=Open+Sans:400,700' rel='stylesheet' type='text/css'>
    <style>
        body {
            background-color: white;
            text-align: center;
            padding: 50px;
            font-family: "Open Sans", "Helvetica Neue", Helvetica, Arial, sans-serif;
        }
        #logo {
            margin-bottom: 40px;
        }
    </style>
</head>
<body>
    
    <h1>Hello world!</h1>
    <h3>My hostname is hello-postgres-jliem</h3>
    <h3>Link s found</h3>
    <b>HELLO_POSTGRES</b> listening in 8020
    available at tcp://10.0.0.186:8020<br />
    <b>HELLO_POSTGRES</b> listening
    in 5432 available at tcp://10.0.0.186:5432<br />
    <b>KUBERNETES</b> listening in 443
    available at tcp://10.0.0.1:443<br />
</body>

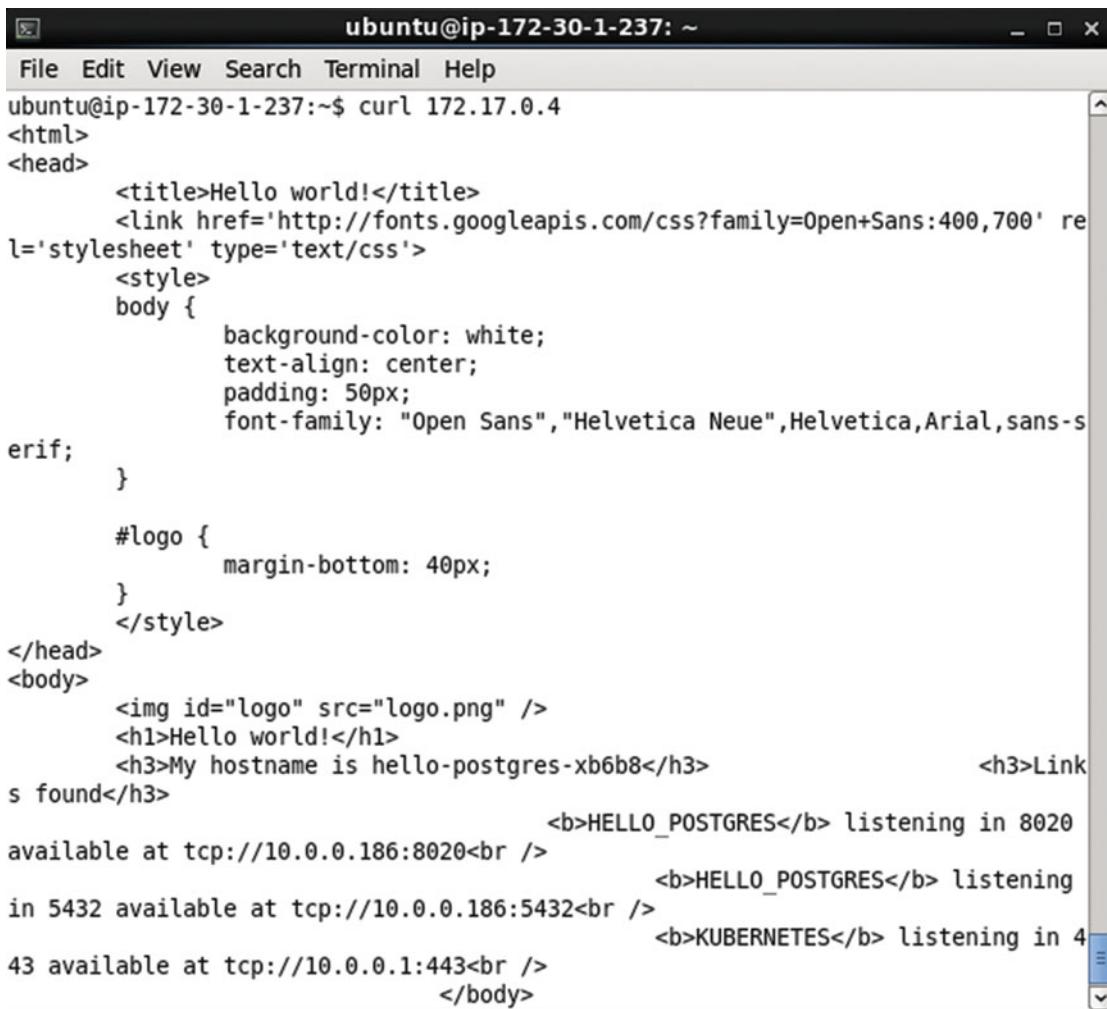
```

**Figure 13-23.** Invoking a Service Endpoint with curl

Invoke the 172.17.0.4 endpoint with the following curl command.

```
curl 172.17.0.4
```

The HTML for the service endpoint gets output as shown in Figure 13-24.



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-237: ~". The terminal displays the output of a curl command to a service endpoint. The response is an HTML document with a title "Hello world!", a logo image, and a message "Hello world!". It also includes some internal server details and a link to "KUBERNETES".

```

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-237:~$ curl 172.17.0.4
<html>
<head>
    <title>Hello world!</title>
    <link href='http://fonts.googleapis.com/css?family=Open+Sans:400,700' rel='stylesheet' type='text/css'>
        <style>
            body {
                background-color: white;
                text-align: center;
                padding: 50px;
                font-family: "Open Sans", "Helvetica Neue", Helvetica, Arial, sans-serif;
            }
            #logo {
                margin-bottom: 40px;
            }
        </style>
</head>
<body>
    
    <h1>Hello world!</h1>
    <h3>My hostname is hello-postgres-xb6b8</h3>
        <h3>Link found</h3>
        <b>HELLO_POSTGRES</b> listening in 8020
available at tcp://10.0.0.186:8020<br />
        <b>HELLO_POSTGRES</b> listening in 5432 available at tcp://10.0.0.186:5432<br />
        <b>KUBERNETES</b> listening in 443 available at tcp://10.0.0.1:443<br />
    </body>

```

**Figure 13-24.** Invoking another Service Endpoint with curl

## Deleting the Replication Controller

To delete the hello-postgres replication controller run the following command.

```
kubectl delete rc hello-postgres
```

Subsequently list the Pods with the following command.

```
kubectl get pods
```

The Pods for the hello-postgres replication controller are not listed as shown in Figure 13-25.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-237:~$ kubectl delete rc hello-postgres
replicationcontrollers/hello-postgres
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-237:~$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1   3/3     Running   0          1h
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-237:~$ █
```

**Figure 13-25.** Deleting the Replication Controller

## Deleting the Service

To delete the service `hello-postgres` run the following command.

```
kubectl delete service hello-postgres
```

Subsequently run the following command to list the services.

```
kubectl get services
```

The `hello-postgres` service is not listed as shown in Figure 13-26.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-237:~$ kubectl delete service hello-postgres
services/hello-postgres
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-237:~$ kubectl get services
NAME      LABELS                                     SELECTOR   IP(S)      PORT(S)
T(S)
kubernetes   component=apiserver,provider=kubernetes   <none>     10.0.0.1   443/TCP
/kubelet
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-237:~$ █
```

**Figure 13-26.** Deleting the Service

## Summary

In this chapter we discussed using multiple containers in a Pod. We discussed the use case for a multi-container Pod and used the `tutum/hello-world` and `postgres` Docker images to create a multi-container Pod. A multi-container pod starts multiple Docker containers for each Pod even though the Pod is the atomic unit. The multiple containers in a Pod share the same IP address and filesystem. When a multi-container Pod is scaled, multiple containers are started for each of the new Pods. In the next chapter we shall discuss installing Kubernetes on a multi-node cluster.

## CHAPTER 14



# Installing Kubernetes on a Multi-Node Cluster

In all of the preceding chapters in the book we have used a single-node cluster. For most small scale applications a single-node cluster should suffice. But, for relatively large scale, distributed applications a multi-node cluster is a more suitable option. In this chapter we shall install Kubernetes on a multi-node (2 nodes) cluster. This chapter has the following sections.

- Components of a Multi-Node Cluster
- Setting the Environment
- Installing the Master Node
- Setting Up Flanneld and etcd
- Starting the Kubernetes on Master Node
- Running the Service Proxy
- Testing the Master Node
- Adding a Worker Node
- Exporting the Master IP
- Setting Up Flanneld and etcd
- Starting Up Kubernetes on Worker Node
- Running the Service Proxy
- Testing the Kubernetes Cluster
- Running an Application on the Cluster
- Exposing the Application as a Service
- Testing the Application in a Browser
- Scaling the Application

## Components of a Multi-Node Cluster

A multi-node cluster consists of the following main and ancillary components.

- Kubernetes Master Node
- Kubernetes Worker Node/s
- Etcd
- Flannel
- Service Proxy
- Kubectl

etcd, kubernetes master, and service proxy were discussed in chapter 1. etcd as introduced in chapter 1 is a distributed, key-value store used by the Kubernetes cluster manager. We have installed etcd on the same node as the Kubernetes master but in a production environment etcd would typically be installed as separate cluster installed on nodes different than the Kubernetes master node. A commit to an etcd cluster is based on replication to a majority (quorum) of available nodes with provision for failure of one or more nodes. While the majority of a 1-node cluster is 1, the majority of a 3-node cluster is 2, majority of a 4-node cluster is 3, majority of a 5-node cluster is 3. A etcd cluster would typically have an odd number (>2) of nodes with tolerance for failure. For example, a 5-node etcd cluster could loose up to 2 nodes resulting in a 3-node cluster in which the majority is still determinable. A 3-node cluster has a failure tolerance for one more node. A 2-node etcd cluster does not have any failure tolerance and the majority of a 2-node cluster is considered as 2. The recommended etcd cluster size in production is 3,5, or 7.

Flannel is a network fabric for containers. Flannel provides a subnet to each host that is used by containers at runtime. Actually, Flannel runs an agent called flanneld on each host that allocates subnets. Flannel sets up and manages the network that interconnects all the Docker containers created by Kubernetes. Flannel is etcd backed and uses etcd to store the network configuration, allocated subnets, and auxiliary data such as the IP Address of the host.

## Setting the Environment

We have used Amazon EC2 instances created from Ubuntu Server 14-04 LTS (HVM), SSD Volume Type - ami-d05e75b8 AMI for this chapter. The following software is required to be installed for this chapter.

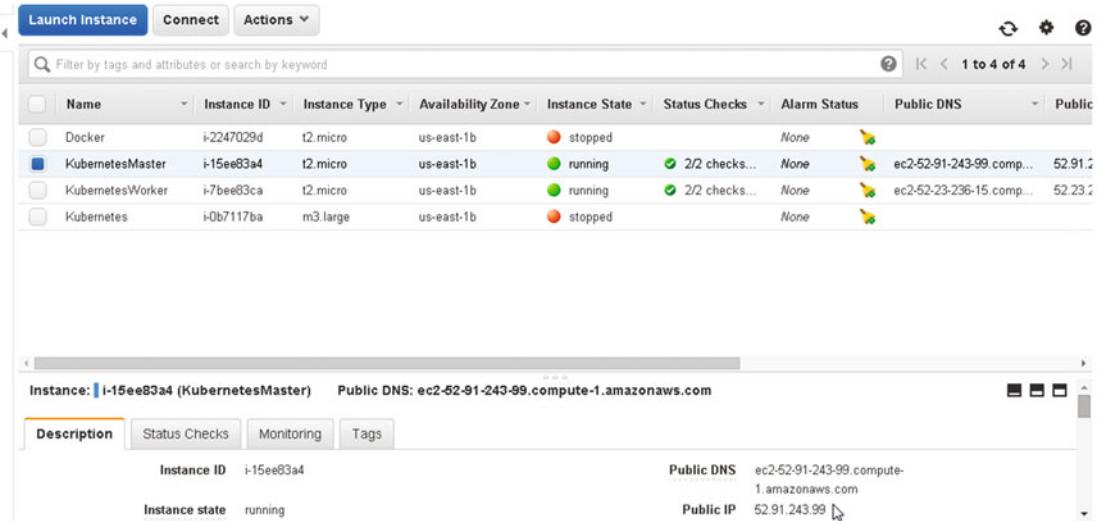
- Docker Engine (latest version)
- Kubernetes on Master Node (version 1.01)
- Kubernetes on Worker Node (version 1.01)
- Kubectl (version 1.01)

Because we are creating a multi-node cluster we need to create multiple Amazon EC2 instances. For a two-node cluster create two Amazon EC2 instances – KubernetesMaster and KubernetesWorker – as shown in Figure 14-1.



**Figure 14-1.** Creating two Ubuntu Instances for Kubernetes Master and Worker Nodes

SSH Login to each node separately. The Public IP Address for the Master Node may be obtained from the Amazon EC2 console as shown in Figure 14-2.



**Figure 14-2.** Obtaining the Public IP Address for a Ubuntu Instance

Log in to the Ubuntu instance for the Master node.

```
ssh -i "docker.pem" ubuntu@52.91.243.99
```

Similarly, obtain the Public IP Address for the Ubuntu instance for the Worker node and log in to the Ubuntu instance for the Worker node.

```
ssh -i "docker.pem" ubuntu@52.23.236.15
```

Install Docker and Kubectl on each node as discussed in chapter 1. Do not install Kubernetes just as chapter 1 because a multi-node configuration for Kubernetes is different than a single-node configuration.

Start the Docker Engine and verify its status.

```
sudo service docker start
sudo service docker status
```

Docker engine should be listed as “running” as shown in Figure 14-3.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:~$ sudo service docker start
start: Job is already running: docker
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:~$ sudo service docker status
docker start/running, process 2701
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:~$ █
```



**Figure 14-3.** Starting Docker

## Installing the Master Node

The Master node hosts the API server and assigns work to worker node/s. We need to run two Docker daemons, a main Docker instance and a bootstrap Docker instance. The main Docker instance is used by the Kubernetes and the bootstrap Docker instance is used by flannel, an etcd. The flannel daemon sets up and manages the network that interconnects all the Docker containers created by Kubernetes.

### Setting Up Flanneld and etcd

Setting Up Flanneld and etcd involves setting up a bootstrap instance for Docker, starting etcd for flannel and the API server, and setting up flannel on the master node.

### Setting up Bootstrap Instance of Docker

Flannel, which sets up networking between Docker containers; and etcd on which flannel relies, run inside Docker containers themselves. A separate bootstrap Docker is used because flannel is used for networking between Docker containers created by Kubernetes; and running flannel and Kubernetes in the same Docker engine could be problematic and is not recommended. Create a separate bootstrap instance of Docker for flannel and etcd.

```
sudo sh -c 'docker daemon -H unix:///var/run/docker-bootstrap.sock -p /var/run/docker-
bootstrap.pid --iptables=false --ip-masq=false --bridge=none --graph=/var/lib/docker-
bootstrap 2> /var/log/docker-bootstrap.log 1> /dev/null &'
```

The bootstrap Docker daemon gets started and the output from the preceding command is shown in Figure 14-4.

```
root@ip-172-30-1-62:~# sudo sh -c 'docker daemon -H unix:///var/run/docker-bootstrap.sock -p /var/run/docker-bootstrap.pid --iptables=false --ip-masq=false --bridge=none --graph=/var/lib/docker-bootstrap 2> /var/log/docker-bootstrap.log 1> /dev/null &'
```

**Figure 14-4.** Starting the Bootstrap Daemon on the Master Node

The ‘–d’ option is completely removed in Docker 1.10 and replaced with ‘daemon’. If using the Docker version prior to Docker 1.10, for example Docker 1.9.1, replace ‘daemon’ with ‘-d’ in the preceding command to run the command as follows:

```
sudo sh -c 'docker -d -H unix:///var/run/docker-bootstrap.sock -p /var/run/docker-bootstrap.pid --iptables=false --ip-masq=false --bridge=none --graph=/var/lib/docker-bootstrap 2> /var/log/docker-bootstrap.log 1> /dev/null &'
```

## Setting Up etcd

Set up etcd for the flannel and the API server with the following command.

```
sudo docker -H unix:///var/run/docker-bootstrap.sock run --net=host -d gcr.io/google_containers/etcd:2.0.12 /usr/local/bin/etcd --addr=127.0.0.1:4001 --bind-addr=0.0.0.0:4001 --data-dir=/var/etcd/data
```

The container for etcd gets downloaded and etcd gets installed as shown in Figure 14-5.

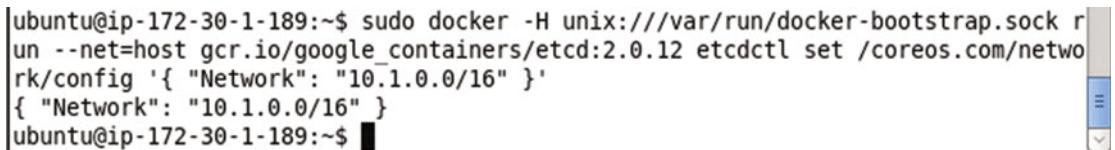
```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:~$ sudo docker -H unix:///var/run/docker-bootstrap.sock run --net=host -d gcr.io/google_containers/etcd:2.0.12 /usr/local/bin/etcd --addr=127.0.0.1:4001 --bind-addr=0.0.0.0:4001 --data-dir=/var/etcd/data
Unable to find image 'gcr.io/google_containers/etcd:2.0.12' locally
Pulling repository gcr.io/google_containers/etcd
fafe47352699: Download complete
cf2616975b4a: Download complete
6ce2e90b0bc7: Download complete
8c2e06607696: Download complete
25b7f6392583: Download complete
b4b56c254ad5: Download complete
Status: Downloaded newer image for gcr.io/google_containers/etcd:2.0.12
gcr.io/google_containers/etcd: this image was pulled from a legacy registry. Important: This registry version will not be supported in future versions of docker.
32dd85f0479ab974c907e1be84b9517dfe4563a389e1714bd01b539bdaf9b17a
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:~$ █
```

**Figure 14-5.** Setting up etcd on the Master Node

Set up a Classless Inter-Domain Routing (CIDR), which is an IP Addressing scheme that reduces the size of routing tables and makes more addresses available, range for flannel.

```
sudo docker -H unix:///var/run/docker-bootstrap.sock run --net=host gcr.io/google_
containers/etcfd:2.0.12 etcdctl set /coreos.com/network/config '{ "Network": "10.1.0.0/16" }'
```

The preceding command does not generate any output as shown in Figure 14-6.



```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:~$ sudo docker -H unix:///var/run/docker-bootstrap.sock r
un --net=host gcr.io/google_containers/etcfd:2.0.12 etcdctl set /coreos.com/netwo
rk/config '{ "Network": "10.1.0.0/16" }'
{ "Network": "10.1.0.0/16" }
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:~$
```

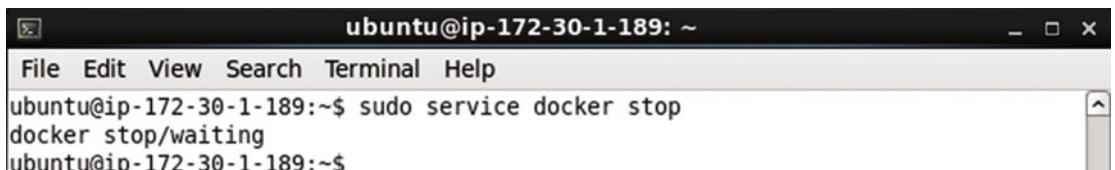
**Figure 14-6.** Setting Up CIDR on the Master Node

## Setting Up Flannel

By default Docker does provide a networking between containers and Pods but the networking provided by Flannel is much more simplified. We shall be using Flannel for networking. First, we need to stop Docker.

```
sudo service docker stop
```

Docker gets stopped as shown in Figure 14-7.



```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189: ~
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:~$ sudo service docker stop
docker stop/waiting
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:~$
```

**Figure 14-7.** Stopping Docker Temporarily

Run flannel with the following command.

```
sudo docker -H unix:///var/run/docker-bootstrap.sock run -d --net=host --privileged -v /dev/
net:/dev/net quay.io/coreos/flannel:0.5.0
```

Flannel gets installed as shown in Figure 14-8.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:~$ sudo docker -H unix:///var/run/docker-bootstrap.sock run -d --net=host --privileged -v /dev/net:/dev/net quay.io/coreos/flannel:0.5.0
Unable to find image 'quay.io/coreos/flannel:0.5.0' locally
0.5.0: Pulling from coreos/flannel
9bed7aeb7782: Pull complete
52ad3964bb99: Pull complete
a1559bfac5ad: Pull complete
68044461bbdb: Pull complete
c447f3b3ac87: Pull complete
Digest: sha256:315ed9675123aa9368eed2fc5f48494fc1b8874e433e6de8e3ad16460a0dc0
Status: Downloaded newer image for quay.io/coreos/flannel:0.5.0
56610d2aa8077865d6c1b426fadbb07ee481363e94d260439162e509cea7a948
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:~$ █
```

**Figure 14-8.** Installing Flannel

Flannel generates a hash as shown in Figure 14-9. Copy the Hash.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:~$ sudo docker -H unix:///var/run/docker-bootstrap.sock run -d --net=host --privileged -v /dev/net:/dev/net quay.io/coreos/flannel:0.5.0
Unable to find image 'quay.io/coreos/flannel:0.5.0' locally
0.5.0: Pulling from coreos/flannel
9bed7aeb7782: Pull complete
52ad3964bb99: Pull complete
a1559bfac5ad: Pull complete
68044461bbdb: Pull complete
c447f3b3ac87: Pull complete
Digest: sha256:315ed9675123aa9368eed2fc5f48494fc1b8874e433e6de8e3ad16460a0dc0
Status: Downloaded newer image for quay.io/coreos/flannel:0.5.0
56610d2aa8077865d6c1b426fadbb07ee481363e94d260439162e509cea7a948
```

**Figure 14-9.** Obtaining the Hash Generated by Flannel

Copy and paste the hash into the following command, and run the command to obtain the subnet settings.

```
sudo docker -H unix:///var/run/docker-bootstrap.sock exec <really-long-hash-from-above-here>
cat /run/flannel/subnet.env
```

The subnet settings get listed as shown in Figure 14-10.

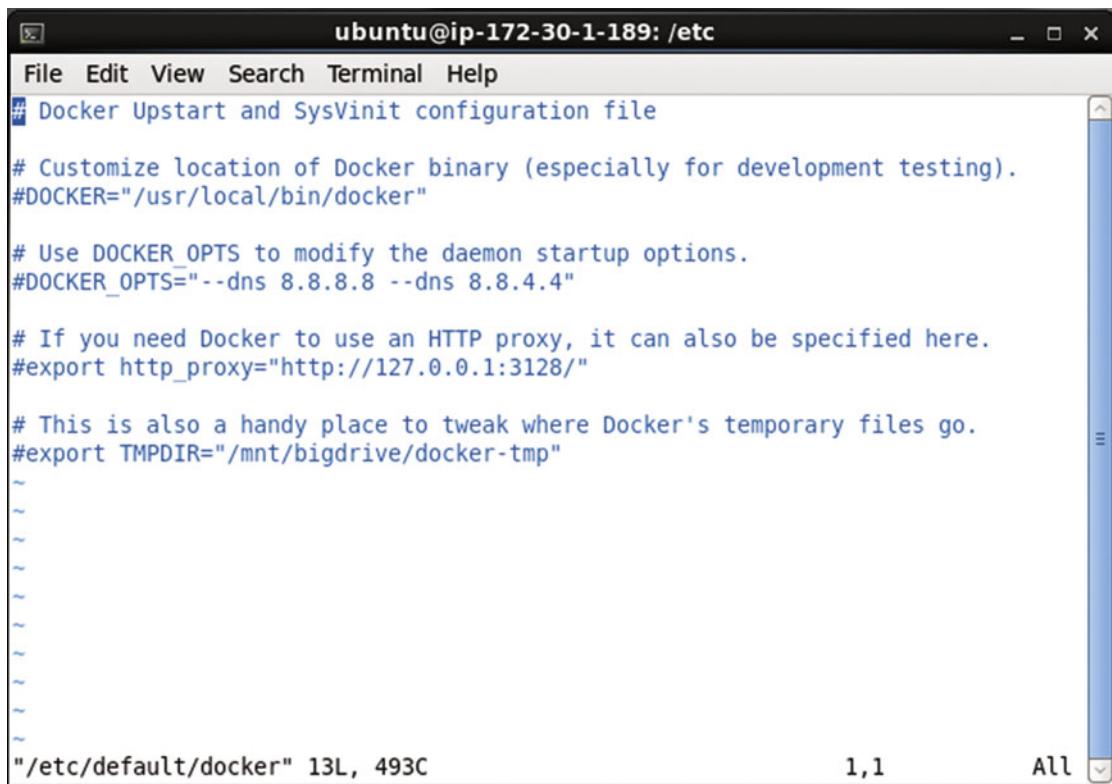
```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:~$ sudo docker -H unix:///var/run/docker-bootstrap.sock e
xec <really-long-hash-from-above-here> cat /run/flannel/subnet.env
-bash: really-long-hash-from-above-here: No such file or directory
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:~$ sudo docker -H unix:///var/run/docker-bootstrap.sock e
xec 56610d2aa8077865d6c1b426fadbb07ee481363e94d260439162e509cea7a948 cat /run/fl
annel/subnet.env
FLANNEL_SUBNET=10.1.35.1/24
FLANNEL_MTU=8973
FLANNEL_IPMASQ=false
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:~$ █
```

**Figure 14-10.** Listing the Subnet Settings

Make a note of the FLANNEL\_SUBNET and FLANNEL\_MTU values as we shall need these to edit the Docker configuration. Open the Docker configuration file in a vi editor.

```
sudo vi /etc/default/docker
```

The default settings in the docker configuration file are shown in Figure 14-11.



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189: /etc". The window contains the contents of the Docker configuration file, which includes settings for the Docker binary location, daemon startup options, and temporary file storage. The file path is "/etc/default/docker". The terminal interface includes a menu bar with File, Edit, View, Search, Terminal, Help, and a status bar indicating the file path and line count.

```
# Docker Upstart and SysVinit configuration file

# Customize location of Docker binary (especially for development testing).
#DOCKER="/usr/local/bin/docker"

# Use DOCKER_OPTS to modify the daemon startup options.
#DOCKER_OPTS="--dns 8.8.8.8 --dns 8.8.4.4"

# If you need Docker to use an HTTP proxy, it can also be specified here.
#export http_proxy="http://127.0.0.1:3128/"

# This is also a handy place to tweak where Docker's temporary files go.
#export TMPDIR="/mnt/bigdrive/docker-tmp"

"/etc/default/docker" 13L, 493C          1,1      All
```

**Figure 14-11.** Docker Configuration File Default Settings

To the DOCKER\_OPTS setting append the following parameters whose values are obtained from the output in Figure 14-10.

```
--bip=${FLANNEL_SUBNET} --mtu=${FLANNEL_MTU}
```

The modified docker configuration file is shown in Figure 14-12.

**Figure 14-12.** Modified Docker Configuration File

As mentioned before Docker provides its own networking with a Docker bridge called `docker0`. As we won't be using the default Docker bridge remove the default Docker bridge. For the `brctl` binaries first install the `bridge-utils` package.

```
sudo /sbin/ifconfig docker0 down  
sudo apt-get install bridge-utils  
sudo brctl delbr dockero
```

The output from installing the bridge-utils package and removing the docker0 bridge is shown in Figure 14-13.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:/$ sudo apt-get install bridge-utils
Reading package lists... Done
Building dependency tree
Reading state information... Done
The following NEW packages will be installed:
  bridge-utils
0 upgraded, 1 newly installed, 0 to remove and 139 not upgraded.
Need to get 29.2 kB of archives.
After this operation, 146 kB of additional disk space will be used.
Get:1 http://us-east-1.ec2.archive.ubuntu.com/ubuntu/ trusty/main bridge-utils a
md64 1.5-6ubuntu2 [29.2 kB]
Fetched 29.2 kB in 0s (0 B/s)
Selecting previously unselected package bridge-utils.
(Reading database ... 57916 files and directories currently installed.)
Preparing to unpack .../bridge-utils_1.5-6ubuntu2_amd64.deb ...
Unpacking bridge-utils (1.5-6ubuntu2) ...
Processing triggers for man-db (2.6.7.1-1ubuntu1) ...
Setting up bridge-utils (1.5-6ubuntu2) ...
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:/$ sudo brctl delbr docker0
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:/$ █
```

**Figure 14-13.** Removing docker0 bridge

Restart Docker.

```
sudo service docker start
```

Docker gets restarted as shown in Figure 14-14.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:/$ sudo service docker start
docker start/running, process 5461
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:/$ █
```

**Figure 14-14.** Restarting Docker

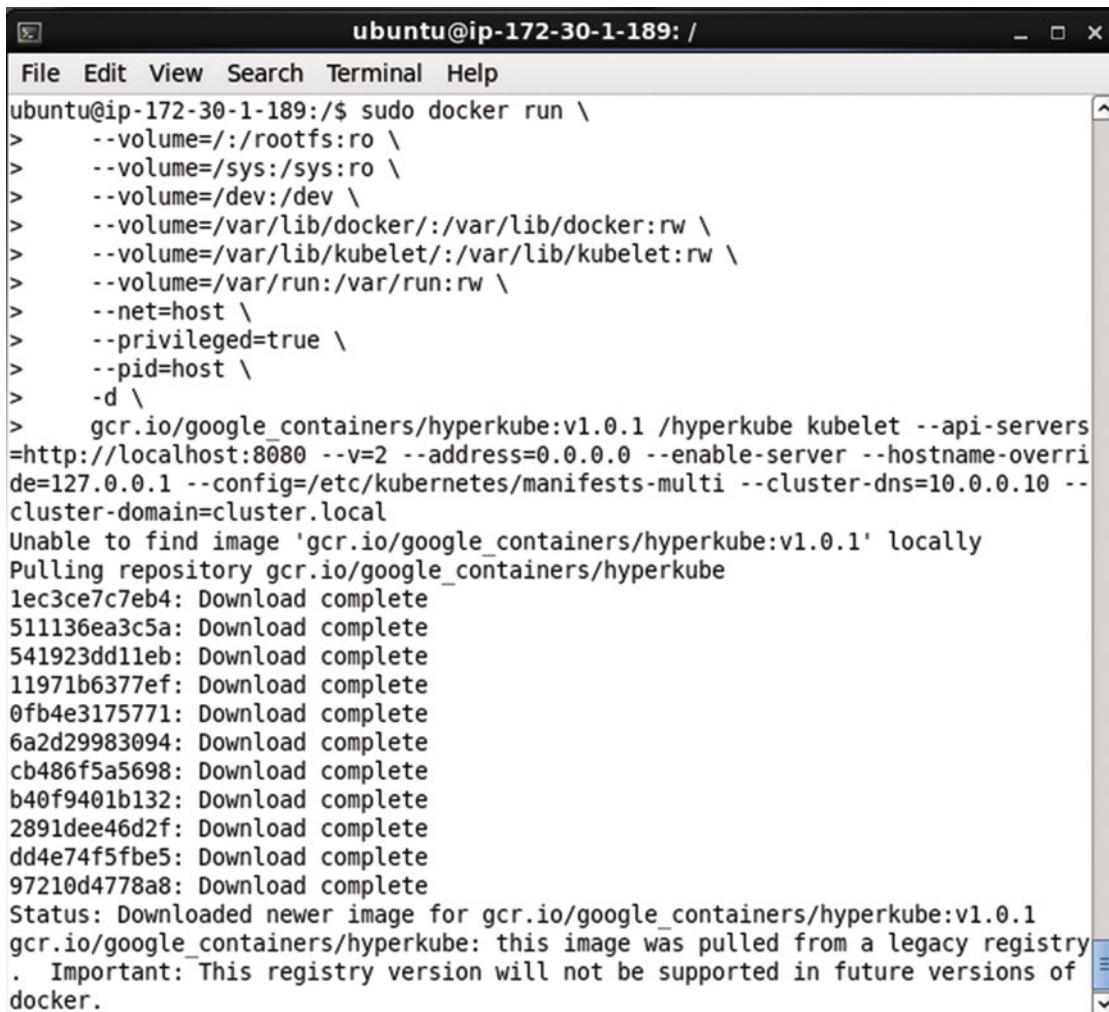
## Starting the Kubernetes Master

Setting up flannel networking is the main difference between setting up a single-node cluster and a multi-node cluster. Start the Kubernetes master with the same command as used for a single-node cluster.

```
sudo docker run \
  --volume=/:/rootfs:ro \
  --volume=/sys:/sys:ro \
  --volume=/dev:/dev \
  --volume=/var/lib/docker/:/var/lib/docker:rw \
  --volume=/var/lib/kubelet/:/var/lib/kubelet:rw \
```

```
--volume=/var/run:/var/run:rw \
--net=host \
--privileged=true \
--pid=host \
-d \
gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1 /hyperkube kubelet --api-servers=
http://localhost:8080 --v=2 --address=0.0.0.0 --enable-server --hostname-override=127.0.0.1 --config=/etc/kubernetes/manifests-multi --cluster-dns=10.0.0.10 --cluster-domain=cluster.local
```

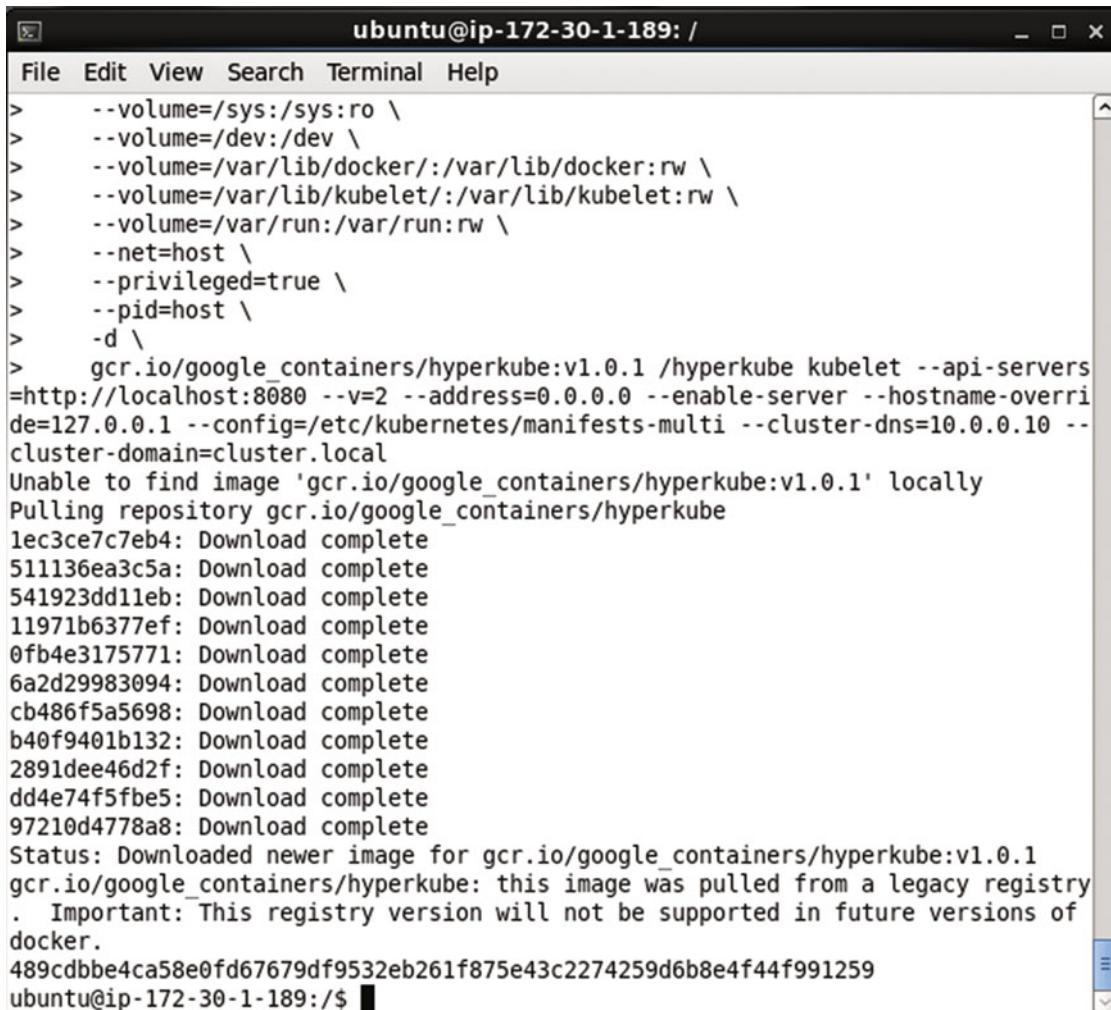
The preceding command is run from the Master Node as shown in Figure 14-15.



```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:/$ sudo docker run \
>   --volume=/:/rootfs:ro \
>   --volume=/sys:/sys:ro \
>   --volume=/dev:/dev \
>   --volume=/var/lib/docker/:/var/lib/docker:rw \
>   --volume=/var/lib/kubelet/:/var/lib/kubelet:rw \
>   --volume=/var/run:/var/run:rw \
>   --net=host \
>   --privileged=true \
>   --pid=host \
>   -d \
>   gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1 /hyperkube kubelet --api-servers=
=http://localhost:8080 --v=2 --address=0.0.0.0 --enable-server --hostname-overri
de=127.0.0.1 --config=/etc/kubernetes/manifests-multi --cluster-dns=10.0.0.10 --
cluster-domain=cluster.local
Unable to find image 'gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1' locally
Pulling repository gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube
1ec3ce7c7eb4: Download complete
511136ea3c5a: Download complete
541923dd11eb: Download complete
11971b6377ef: Download complete
0fb4e3175771: Download complete
6a2d29983094: Download complete
cb486f5a5698: Download complete
b40f9401b132: Download complete
2891dee46d2f: Download complete
dd4e74f5fbe5: Download complete
97210d4778a8: Download complete
Status: Downloaded newer image for gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1
gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube: this image was pulled from a legacy registry
. Important: This registry version will not be supported in future versions of
docker.
```

**Figure 14-15.** Starting Kubernetes on the Master Node

Kubernetes gets installed on the master node as shown in Figure 14-16.



```

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189: / 
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
> --volume=/sys:/sys:ro \
> --volume=/dev:/dev \
> --volume=/var/lib/docker:/var/lib/docker:rw \
> --volume=/var/lib/kubelet:/var/lib/kubelet:rw \
> --volume=/var/run:/var/run:rw \
> --net=host \
> --privileged=true \
> --pid=host \
> -d \
>     gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1 /hyperkube kubelet --api-servers
=http://localhost:8080 --v=2 --address=0.0.0.0 --enable-server --hostname-overri
de=127.0.0.1 --config=/etc/kubernetes/manifests-multi --cluster-dns=10.0.0.10 --
cluster-domain=cluster.local
Unable to find image 'gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1' locally
Pulling repository gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube
1ec3ce7c7eb4: Download complete
511136ea3c5a: Download complete
541923dd11eb: Download complete
11971b6377ef: Download complete
0fb4e3175771: Download complete
6a2d29983094: Download complete
cb486f5a5698: Download complete
b40f9401b132: Download complete
2891dee46d2f: Download complete
dd4e74f5fbe5: Download complete
97210d4778a8: Download complete
Status: Downloaded newer image for gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1
gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube: this image was pulled from a legacy registry
. Important: This registry version will not be supported in future versions of
docker.
489cdbbe4ca58e0fd67679df9532eb261f875e43c2274259d6b8e4f44f991259
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:/$ █

```

**Figure 14-16.** Kubernetes Started on Master Node

## Running the Service Proxy

Run the service proxy also using the same command as used for a single-node cluster.

```
sudo docker run -d --net=host --privileged gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1 /
hyperkube proxy --master=http://127.0.0.1:8080 --v=2
```

Service proxy gets installed as shown in Figure 14-17.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:/ $ sudo docker run -d --net=host --privileged gcr.io/google-containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1 /hyperkube proxy --master=http://127.0.0.1:8080 -v=2  
cedaab35100f9128be52eef7d40d347605b169e8562e3f741007cdad605c3e22  
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:/ $
```

**Figure 14-17.** Starting Service proxy on Master Node

## Testing the One-Node Cluster

To test the master node run the following command, which lists the nodes in the cluster.

```
kubectl get nodes
```

The single node gets listed as shown in Figure 14-18.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:/ $ kubectl get nodes  
NAME      LABELS           STATUS  
127.0.0.1  kubernetes.io/hostname=127.0.0.1  Ready  
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:/ $
```

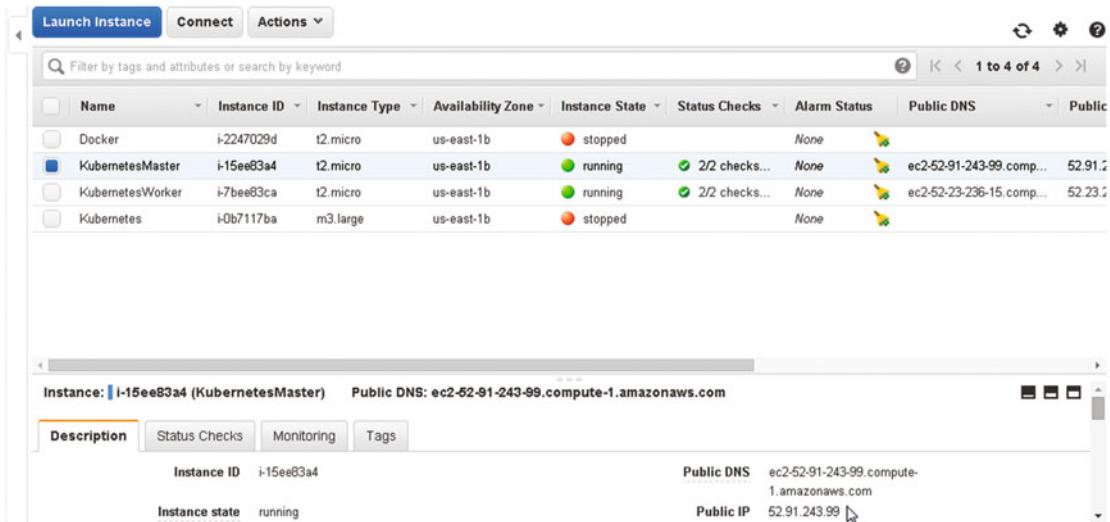
**Figure 14-18.** Listing the Nodes, only the Master Node to start with

## Adding a Worker Node

Setting up a worker node is very similar to setting up the master node. Next, we shall set up a worker node. SSH login to the Ubuntu instance for the worker node.

### Exporting the Master IP

First, we need to set the environment variable `MASTER_IP`. Obtain the Public IP Address for the Ubuntu instance running the master node as shown in Figure 14-19.



**Figure 14-19.** Obtaining the Master Node's IP Address

Export the environment variable `MASTER_IP` using the Public IP Address.

```
export MASTER_IP=52.91.243.99
```

Echo the `MASTER_IP` environment variable.

```
echo $MASTER_IP
```

The output from the preceding command is shown in Figure 14-20.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-66:~$ export MASTER_IP=52.91.243.99
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-66:~$ echo $MASTER_IP
52.91.243.99
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-66:~$
```

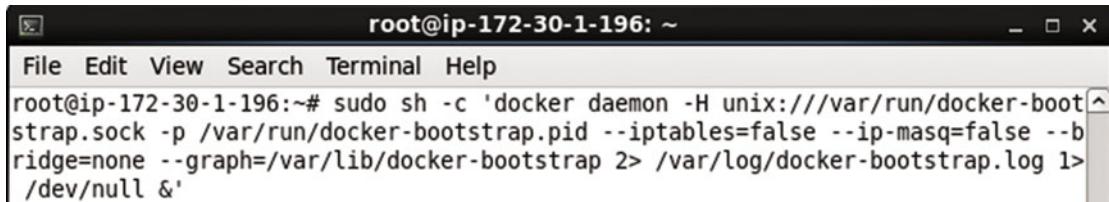
**Figure 14-20.** Exporting the `MASTER_IP` Environment Variable on a Worker Node

## Setting Up Flanneld

Start a bootstrap Docker daemon just for the flannel networking.

```
sudo sh -c 'docker daemon -H unix:///var/run/docker-bootstrap.sock -p /var/run/docker-bootstrap.pid --iptables=false --ip-masq=false --bridge=none --graph=/var/lib/docker-bootstrap 2> /var/log/docker-bootstrap.log 1> /dev/null &'
```

Bootstrap Docker gets set up as shown in Figure 14-21.



```
root@ip-172-30-1-196:~# sudo sh -c 'docker daemon -H unix:///var/run/docker-bootstrap.sock -p /var/run/docker-bootstrap.pid --iptables=false --ip-masq=false --bridge=none --graph=/var/lib/docker-bootstrap 2> /var/log/docker-bootstrap.log 1> /dev/null &'
```

**Figure 14-21.** Starting Bootstrap Docker on the Worker Node

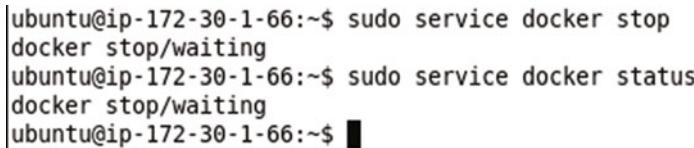
The ‘-d’ option is completely removed in Docker 1.10 and replaced with ‘daemon’. If using the Docker version prior to Docker 1.10, for example Docker 1.9.1, replace ‘daemon’ with ‘-d’ in the preceding command to run the command as follows:

```
sudo sh -c 'docker -d -H unix:///var/run/docker-bootstrap.sock -p /var/run/docker-bootstrap.pid --iptables=false --ip-masq=false --bridge=none --graph=/var/lib/docker-bootstrap 2> /var/log/docker-bootstrap.log 1> /dev/null &'
```

To install Flannel, first we need to stop the Docker engine.

```
sudo service docker stop
```

Docker engine gets stopped as shown in Figure 14-22.



```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-66:~$ sudo service docker stop
docker stop/waiting
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-66:~$ sudo service docker status
docker stop/waiting
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-66:~$
```

**Figure 14-22.** Stopping Docker Temporarily on the Worker Node

Next, install flannel on the worker node. The same etcd that is running on the master is used for the flanneld on the worker node. The etcd instance includes the Master’s Ip using the `MASTER_IP` environment variable.

```
sudo docker -H unix:///var/run/docker-bootstrap.sock run -d --net=host --privileged -v /dev/net:/dev/net quay.io/coreos/flanneld:0.5.0 /opt/bin/flanneld --etcd-endpoints=http://{$MASTER_IP}:4001
```

Flannel gets set up on the worker node as shown in Figure 14-23.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-66:~$ sudo docker -H unix:///var/run/docker-bootstrap.sock run -d --net=host --privileged -v /dev/net:/dev/net quay.io/coreos/flannel:0.5.0 /opt/bin/flanneld --etcd-endpoints=http://:${MASTER_IP}:4001
Unable to find image 'quay.io/coreos/flannel:0.5.0' locally
0.5.0: Pulling from coreos/flannel
9bed7aeb7782: Pull complete
52ad3964bb99: Pull complete
a1559bfa5ad: Pull complete
68044461bbdb: Pull complete
c447f3b3ac87: Pull complete
Digest: sha256:315ed9675123aa9368eed2fc5f48494fc1b8874e433e6de8e3ad16460a0dc0
Status: Downloaded newer image for quay.io/coreos/flannel:0.5.0
c9b08352bb983d4fd10c830db12e7267f152b9656c7bdd7922787e2500c2e678
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-66:~$ █
```

**Figure 14-23.** Installing Flannel on the Worker Node

Copy the hash generated by the preceding command as shown in Figure 14-24.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-66:~$ sudo docker -H unix:///var/run/docker-bootstrap.sock run -d --net=host --privileged -v /dev/net:/dev/net quay.io/coreos/flannel:0.5.0 /opt/bin/flanneld --etcd-endpoints=http://:${MASTER_IP}:4001
Unable to find image 'quay.io/coreos/flannel:0.5.0' locally
0.5.0: Pulling from coreos/flannel
9bed7aeb7782: Pull complete
52ad3964bb99: Pull complete
a1559bfa5ad: Pull complete
68044461bbdb: Pull complete
c447f3b3ac87: Pull complete
Digest: sha256:315ed9675123aa9368eed2fc5f48494fc1b8874e433e6de8e3ad16460a0dc0
Status: Downloaded newer image for quay.io/coreos/flannel:0.5.0
c9b08352bb983d4fd10c830db12e7267f152b9656c7bdd7922787e2500c2e678
█
```

**Figure 14-24.** Obtaining the Hash generated by Flannel

Using the hash value in the following command obtain the subnet settings from flannel.

```
sudo docker -H unix:///var/run/docker-bootstrap.sock exec <really-long-hash-from-above-here>
cat /run/flannel/subnet.env
```

The subnet settings get output as shown in Figure 14-25.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-66:~$ sudo docker -H unix:///var/run/docker-bootstrap.sock exec c9b08352bb983d4fd10c830db12e7267f152b9656c7bdd7922787e2500c2e678 cat /run/flannel/subnet.env
FLANNEL_SUBNET=10.1.34.1/24
FLANNEL_MTU=8973
FLANNEL_IPMASQ=false
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-66:~$ █
```

**Figure 14-25.** Listing the Subnet Settings on the Worker Node

Using the subnet settings we need to edit the Docker configuration file. Open the Docker configuration file in the vi editor.

```
sudo /etc/default/docker
```

Append the following parameters to the DOCKER\_OPTS setting. Substitute the values for FLANNEL\_SUBNET and FLANNEL\_MTU as obtained from Figure 14-25.

```
--bip=${FLANNEL_SUBNET} --mtu=${FLANNEL_MTU}
```

The modified Docker configuration file is shown in Figure 14-26.

**Figure 14-26.** Modified Docker Configuration File

Shut down and remove the existing Docker bridge docker0, which is used by default by Docker for networking between containers and Pods. The bridge-utils package is needed to be installed as it is not available by default on an Ubuntu instance on Amazon EC2.

```
sudo /sbin/ifconfig docker0 down  
sudo apt-get install bridge-utils  
sudo brctl delbr dockero
```

**Restart Docker.**

```
sudo service docker start
```

The Docker engine gets started as shown in Figure 14-27.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-66:~$ sudo service docker start  
docker start/running, process 3731  
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-66:~$ █
```

**Figure 14-27.** Restarting Docker

## Starting Up Kubernetes on Worker Node

Start up Kubernetes on the worker node with the same command as used in the Master node with the difference that instead of setting the --api-servers to `http://localhost:8080` set the --api-servers to the `http://${MASTER_IP}:8080`.

```
sudo docker run \
--volume=/:/rootfs:ro \
--volume=/sys:/sys:ro \
--volume=/dev:/dev \
--volume=/var/lib/docker/:/var/lib/docker:rw \
--volume=/var/lib/kubelet/:/var/lib/kubelet:rw \
--volume=/var/run:/var/run:rw \
--net=host \
--privileged=true \
--pid=host \
-d \
gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1 /hyperkube kubelet --api-
servers=http://${MASTER_IP}:8080 --v=2 --address=0.0.0.0 --enable-server --hostname-
override=$(hostname -i) --cluster-dns=10.0.0.10 --cluster-domain=cluster.local
```

The preceding command is to be run on the worker node as shown in Figure 14-28.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-66: ~
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
> --volume=/var/lib/docker/:/var/lib/docker:rw \
> --volume=/var/lib/kubelet/:/var/lib/kubelet:rw \
> --volume=/var/run:/var/run:rw \
> --net=host \
> --privileged=true \
> --pid=host \
> -d \
> gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1 /hyperkube kubelet --api-servers=
=http://${MASTER_IP}:8080 --v=2 --address=0.0.0.0 --enable-server --hostname-ove
rride=$(hostname -i) --cluster-dns=10.0.0.10 --cluster-domain=cluster.local
Unable to find image 'gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1' locally
Pulling repository gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube
1ec3ce7c7eb4: Pulling fs layer
511136ea3c5a: Download complete
541923dd11eb: Download complete
11971b6377ef: Download complete
0fb4e3175771: Download complete
6a2d29983094: Download complete
cb486f5a5698: Download complete
b40f9401b132: Download complete
2891dee46d2f: Download complete
dd4e74f5fbe5: Download complete
97210d4778a8: Download complete
```

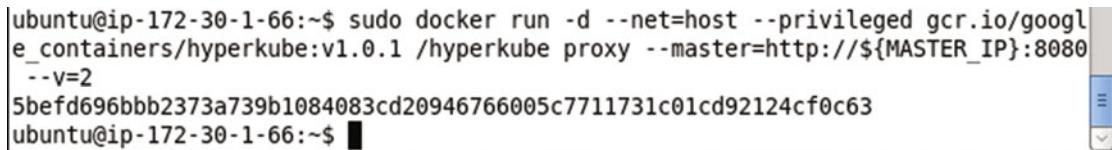
**Figure 14-28.** Starting Kubernetes on the Worker Node

## Running the Service Proxy

The service proxy on the worker node is also run with the same command as for the master node except that the Master's Ip parameter -- master=http://127.0.0.1:8080 should be replaced with --master=http://\${MASTER\_IP}:8080.

```
sudo docker run -d --net=host --privileged gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1 /hyperkube proxy --master=http://${MASTER_IP}:8080 --v=2
```

The service proxy gets started as shown in Figure 14-29.



```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-66:~$ sudo docker run -d --net=host --privileged gcr.io/google_containers/hyperkube:v1.0.1 /hyperkube proxy --master=http://${MASTER_IP}:8080 --v=2
5befdf696bbb2373a739b1084083cd20946766005c7711731c01cd92124cf0c63
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-66:~$ █
```

**Figure 14-29.** Starting Service Proxy on the Worker Node

## Testing the Kubernetes Cluster

From the Master node, not the worker node that was being configured in the preceding commands, list the nodes in the cluster.

```
kubectl get nodes
```

Two nodes get listed as shown in Figure 14-30: the master node and the worker node.



NAME	LABELS	STATUS
127.0.0.1	kubernetes.io/hostname=127.0.0.1	Ready
172.30.1.66	kubernetes.io/hostname=172.30.1.66	Ready

**Figure 14-30.** Listing a Two-Node Cluster

Add more nodes as required using the same procedure as discussed in this section Adding a Worker Node.

## Running an Application on the Cluster

To test the cluster run an application on the command line using kubectl. As an example, run the Docker image "nginx" with the following command.

```
kubectl -s http://localhost:8080 run nginx --image=nginx --port=80
```

Subsequently list the Pods.

```
kubectl get pods
```

The nginx application container is created and the nginx replication controller is created with default of 1 replicas as shown in Figure 14-31. One pod gets listed, also shown in Figure 14-31. Initially the Pod could be listed as Pending status. Run the preceding command after a few seconds to list the Pod as running and ready. To find on which instance/s (node/s) in the cluster the Pod/s is/are running on, run the command.

```
kubectl get pods -o wide.
```

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:/$ kubectl -s http://localhost:8080 run nginx --image=nginx
CONTROLLER CONTAINER(S) IMAGE(S) SELECTOR REPLICAS
nginx      nginx      nginx      run=nginx   1
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:/$ kubectl get pods
NAME        READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3     Running   0          27m
nginx-2hl9z   0/1     Pending   0          11s
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:/$ kubectl get pods
NAME        READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1 3/3     Running   0          27m
nginx-2hl9z   1/1     Running   0          22s
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:/$
```

**Figure 14-31.** Installing an Application on the Cluster

## Exposing the Application as a Service

To expose the replication controller nginx as a service run the following command.

```
kubectl expose rc nginx --port=80
```

The nginx service gets created as shown in Figure 14-32.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:/$ kubectl expose rc nginx --port=80
NAME      LABELS      SELECTOR      IP(S)      PORT(S)
nginx    run=nginx    run=nginx    80/TCP
```

**Figure 14-32.** Creating a Service

List the services with the following command.

```
kubectl get services
```

To be able to invoke the service obtain the first cluster Ip with the following command as shown in Figure 14-33.

```
kubectl get svc nginx --template={{.spec.clusterIP}}
```

Invoke the web server using the cluster IP returned, 10.0.0.99.

```
curl 10.0.0.99
```

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:/ $ kubectl get svc nginx --template={{.spec.clusterIP}}  
10.0.0.99ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:/ $ curl 10.0.0.99  
<!DOCTYPE html>  
<html>  
<head>  
<title>Welcome to nginx!</title>  
<style>  
    body {  
        width: 35em;  
        margin: 0 auto;  
        font-family: Tahoma, Verdana, Arial, sans-serif;  
    }  
</style>  
</head>  
<body>  
<h1>Welcome to nginx!</h1>  
<p>If you see this page, the nginx web server is successfully installed and
```

**Figure 14-33.** Invoking a Web Server with Curl

The HTML returned from the nginx application is output as shown in Figure 14-34.

```
10.0.0.99ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:/$ curl 10.0.0.99
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head>
<title>Welcome to nginx!</title>
<style>
body {
    width: 35em;
    margin: 0 auto;
    font-family: Tahoma, Verdana, Arial, sans-serif;
}
</style>
</head>
<body>
<h1>Welcome to nginx!</h1>
<p>If you see this page, the nginx web server is successfully installed and
working. Further configuration is required.</p>

<p>For online documentation and support please refer to
<a href="http://nginx.org/">nginx.org</a>.<br/>
Commercial support is available at
<a href="http://nginx.com/">nginx.com</a>.</p>

<p><em>Thank you for using nginx.</em></p>
</body>
</html>
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:/$
```

**Figure 14-34.** The HTML generated by the Application

## Testing the Application in a Browser

To invoke the service endpoint in a browser, set port forwarding from 10.0.0.99:80 endpoint to localhost:80.

```
ssh -i docker.pem -f -nNT -L 80:10.0.0.99:80 ubuntu@ec2-52-91-243-99.compute-1.amazonaws.com
```

Port forwarding gets set as shown in Figure 14-35.

```
[root@localhost ~]# ssh -i docker.pem -f -nNT -L 80:10.0.0.99:80 ubuntu@ec2-52-91-243-99.compute-1.amazonaws.com
The authenticity of host 'ec2-52-91-243-99.compute-1.amazonaws.com (52.91.243.99)' can't be established.
RSA key fingerprint is d4:81:3b:fe:9b:49:dd:0a:ff:df:ac:7c:93:dd:e3:ee.
Are you sure you want to continue connecting (yes/no)? yes
Warning: Permanently added 'ec2-52-91-243-99.compute-1.amazonaws.com' (RSA) to the list of known hosts.
[root@localhost ~]#
```

**Figure 14-35.** Setting Port Forwarding

Invoke the nginx application in a local browser with url `http://localhost` as shown in Figure 14-36.



**Figure 14-36.** Invoking a Service Endpoint in a Browser

## Scaling the Application

Scaling is a common usage pattern of Replication Controller. The nginx replication controller may be scaled with the `kubectl scale` command. As an example, scale to 3 replicas.

```
kubectl scale rc nginx --replicas=3
```

Subsequently list the Pods.

```
kubectl get pods
```

An output of “scaled” indicates that the replication controller has been scaled. Three Pods get listed as shown in Figure 14-37.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:/$ kubectl scale rc nginx --replicas=3
scaled
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:/$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   0          37m
nginx-2hl9z      1/1     Running   0          9m
nginx-kslkj       0/1     Pending   0          7s
nginx-qmesi       0/1     Running   0          7s
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:/$ kubectl get pods
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
k8s-master-127.0.0.1  3/3     Running   0          37m
nginx-2hl9z      1/1     Running   0          10m
nginx-kslkj       1/1     Running   0          28s
nginx-qmesi       1/1     Running   0          28s
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:/$
```

**Figure 14-37.** Listing the Pods

Describe the service with the following command.

```
kubectl describe svc nginx
```

Three service endpoints get listed as shown in Figure 14-38.

```
ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:/$ kubectl describe svc nginx
Name:           nginx
Namespace:      default
Labels:         run=nginx
Selector:       run=nginx
Type:          ClusterIP
IP:            10.0.0.99
Port:          <unnamed>    80/TCP
Endpoints:     10.1.34.2:80,10.1.35.2:80,10.1.35.3:80
Session Affinity: None
No events.

ubuntu@ip-172-30-1-189:/$
```

**Figure 14-38.** Describing the Service

To be able to invoke each of the service endpoints in a browser on a local machine, set the port forwarding.

```
ssh -i docker.pem -f -nNT -L 8081:10.1.34.2:80 ubuntu@ec2-52-91-243-99.compute-1.amazonaws.com
ssh -i docker.pem -f -nNT -L 8082:10.1.35.2:80 ubuntu@ec2-52-91-243-99.compute-1.amazonaws.com
ssh -i docker.pem -f -nNT -L 8083:10.1.35.3:80 ubuntu@ec2-52-91-243-99.compute-1.amazonaws.com
```

Port forwarding gets set as shown in Figure 14-39.

```
[root@localhost ~]# ssh -i docker.pem -f -nNT -L 8081:10.1.34.2:80 ubuntu@ec2-52-91-243-99.compute-1.amazonaws.com
[root@localhost ~]#
[root@localhost ~]# ssh -i docker.pem -f -nNT -L 8082:10.1.35.2:80 ubuntu@ec2-52-91-243-99.compute-1.amazonaws.com
[root@localhost ~]#
[root@localhost ~]# ssh -i docker.pem -f -nNT -L 8083:10.1.35.3:80 ubuntu@ec2-52-91-243-99.compute-1.amazonaws.com
[root@localhost ~]#
```

**Figure 14-39.** Setting port Forwarding for the additional Service Endpoints

The service endpoints may be invoked in a local browser. For example the url `http://localhost:8081` invokes one of the service endpoints as shown in Figure 14-40.



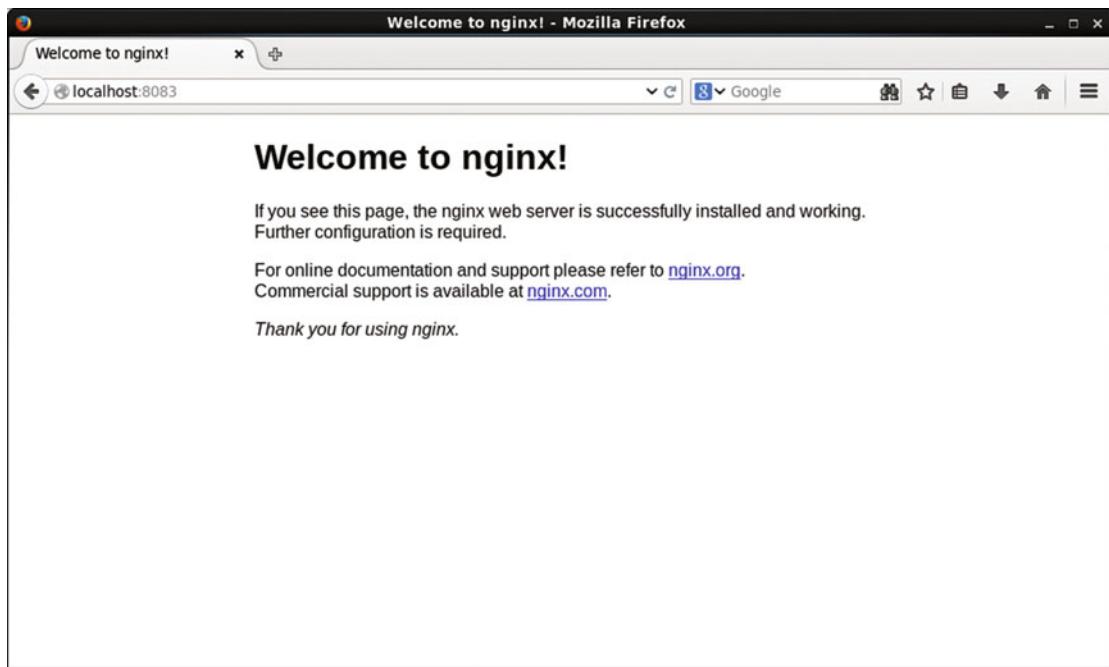
**Figure 14-40.** Invoking a Service Endpoint in a Browser

Similarly, the url `http://localhost:8082` invokes another service endpoint as shown in Figure 14-41.



**Figure 14-41.** Invoking another Service Endpoint in a Browser

Similarly, the url `http://localhost:8083` invokes the third service endpoint as shown in Figure 14-42.



**Figure 14-42.** Invoking a Third Service Endpoint in a Browser

## Summary

In this chapter we installed Kubernetes on a multi-node cluster. The multi-node configuration makes use of flannel for networking instead of the default networking provided by Docker. First, we installed Kubernetes on the master node. Using the Master's IP Address we installed Kubernetes on a worker node, as a result creating a two-node cluster. As many worker nodes as required may be added using the same procedure. We created an application using the nginx Docker image and invoked the application on the command line using curl, and in a local browser using port forwarding. We also scaled the application. In a single-node cluster an application runs on the master node itself. In a multi-node cluster an application runs on both the worker nodes and the master node. This chapter concludes the book on Kubernetes Microservices with Docker.

# Index

## A, B

- Apache Cassandra  
Amazon EC2 instance, 201  
cluster declaratively  
    CatalogKeyspace, 215, 219  
    CQL shell, 215  
    data deletion, 218  
    DROP TABLE clause, 218  
    interactive shell, 213  
    Pod, 212  
    replication controller creation, 206  
    scaling database, 211  
    service creation, 203  
    table creation, 216  
    truncate table, 218  
    volume creation, 219  
cluster imperatively  
    replication controller creation, 225  
    replication controller deletion, 229  
    scaling database, 228  
    service creation, 227  
    service deletion, 230  
Docker engine, 202  
dynamic column  
    specification, 201  
flexible schema  
    data model, 201  
kubectl, 202  
Kubernetes, 202  
Apache Hadoop, 277  
    cluster declaratively, 278  
    interactive shell, 286  
    logs list, 284  
    MapReduce application  
        (see MapReduce application)  
    Pods list, 283  
    replication controller creation, 281  
    scaling, 285  
    service creation, 279  
cluster imperatively, 307  
    interactive shell, 310  
    Pods list, 308  
    replication controller creation, 307  
    scaling, 309  
    service creation, 309  
    environment settings, 277  
Apache HBase, 302  
Apache Hive, 296  
Apache Kafka, 347  
    configuration properties, 364  
    consumer, 367  
    docker image, modification, 349  
    environment settings, 348  
    interactive shell, 363  
    messages, 367  
    pod describing, 362  
    pods list, 361  
    producer, 367  
    replication controller creation, 358  
    replication controller deletion, 370  
    scaling, 368  
    service creation, 355  
    topic creation, 366  
Apache Solr, 313  
    Admin Console, 338  
    core creation, 328  
    environment settings, 314  
    indexing documents, 329  
    interactive shell, 325  
    logs list, 323  
    pods list, 321  
    port forwarding, 337  
    replication controller creation, 318  
    replication controller describing, 322  
    scaling, 344  
    service creation, 315  
    service describing, 317  
    service endpoints, 317  
    using REST client, 332

**C, D**

Cassandra Query Language (CQL), 215, 217  
 cbtransfer tool, 265  
 Couchbase, 231  
     cluster declaratively, 234  
         catalog2 document, 262  
         Data Buckets Tab, 255  
         default fields, 260  
         endpoints, 244  
         interactive shell, 264  
         JSON document, 261  
         logs list, 243  
         Pod, 234, 243  
         port forwarding, 245  
         replication controller creation, 239  
         server configuration, 247  
         service creation, 237  
         service describing, 244  
         web console, 246  
     cluster imperatively, 266  
         Pods list, 266  
         port forwarding, 272  
         replication controller creation, 266  
         replication controller deletion, 270  
         scaling, 269  
         service creation, 268  
         web console, 272  
 environment settings, 231  
     Docker engine, 233  
     Kubernetes service, 234  
     Public IP Address, 232  
     Ubuntu instance, 233  
 Custom command  
     Args fields, 80  
     CMD instruction, 78–79  
     ENTRYPOINT entry, 78  
     environment setting, 77–78

**E, F, G, H, I, J**

Environment variables  
     Args mapping, 92  
     command mapping, 84, 89  
     definition, 80  
     Docker image, 83  
     ENTRYPOINT, 84

**K, L**

Kubernetes  
     application creation  
         cluster, 40  
         hello-world application, 48, 68  
         label, 41

namespace, 41  
 nodes, 39  
 Pod, 40, 46, 58  
 replication controller, 40, 43, 53, 64  
 scaling, 52, 70  
 selector, 41  
 service, 40, 45, 53, 61  
 volume, 41  
 benefits, 42  
 Docker  
     adding gpg key, 6  
     apt package index, 8  
     apt sources, 6  
     containers, 30–32  
     Default Package Configuration, 12  
     docker.list file, 6  
     engine installation, 14–15  
     linux-image-extra package, 10  
     lxc-docker and  
         lxc-docker-virtual-package, 8–9  
     message prompt, 11, 13  
     package manager, 10  
     repository verification, 9  
     sudo apt-get update, 13  
     Ubuntu distribution, 7  
     environment setting, 4, 42  
     etcd, 24–25  
     installation  
         /boot directory, 16–17  
         command-line parameters, 19  
         components, 15  
         CONFIG\_MEMCG\_  
             SWAP\_ENABLED setting, 19  
         directory creation, 16  
         Docker engine, 16  
         GRUB\_CMDLINE\_LINUX, 20–21  
         grub configuration file, 22  
         kernel configuration, 16–18  
         service proxy, 15  
         settings, updation, 22–23  
         testing, 38  
         Ubuntu Amazon EC2 instance, 22  
 JSON  
     curl command, 75  
     definition, 70  
     hello-rc.json file, 73  
     hello-world replication controller, 73–74  
     hello-world-service.json file, 70–72  
     HTML output, 76  
     replication controller definition file, 72  
 kubectl, 35  
 Kubernetes master, 28  
 local machine solutions, 3  
 nodes, 36  
 service proxy, 29, 35

## M, N

MapReduce application, 287  
 hdfs command, 287  
 input directory, 288  
 vi editor, 288  
 wordcount application, 292, 295  
 wq command, 290

Master node  
 bootstrap Docker, 402  
 etcd set up, 403  
 Flannel set up, 404  
 Kubernetes, 409, 411  
 testing, 412

MongoDB database, 167  
 cluster declaratively, 169  
     adding documents, 184  
     capped collection, 183  
     catalog collection, 183  
     database creation, 182  
     Docker, 168  
     drop command, 188  
     exit command, 188  
     finding documents, 186  
     host port, 190  
     interactive shell, 180  
     Kubernetes Pod, 169  
     logs list, 178  
     Mongo shell, 182  
     replication controller creation, 173  
     replication controller deletion, 189  
     scaling, 189  
     service definition file, 169  
     service deletion, 190  
     Ubuntu instance, 168  
     volume (*see Volume*)

cluster imperatively, 194  
 logs list, 196  
 Pods, 195  
 replication controller creation, 194  
 replication controller deletion, 200  
 scaling, 198  
 service creation, 197

environment settings, 167

Multi-node cluster, 399  
 components, 400  
 environment settings, 400  
 execution, 419  
 exposing, 420  
 masternode (*see Master node*)  
 scaling, 423

testing, 422  
 workernode (*see Worker node*)

MySQL database  
 database table, 110  
 environment setting, 98  
 interactive shell, 107, 111  
 logs, 104–106  
 MySQL CLI, 110–111  
 Pods, 104  
 replication controller, 103, 114  
 scaling, 113  
 service, 99, 106–107

## O

Oracle database, 141  
 environment settings, 141  
 instance declaratively, 148  
     database connection, 160  
     exit command, 163  
     interactive shell, 159  
     Pod creation, 148  
     replication controller creation, 153  
     replication level, 156  
     scaling, 158  
     service creation, 150  
     table creation, 162  
     user creation, 161

instance imperatively, 142  
 logs list, 144  
 replication controller creation, 143  
 replication controller deletion, 147  
 scaling, 147  
 service creation, 145  
 service deletion, 147

## P, Q, R

Pod  
 application types, 376  
 docker containers, 383  
 environment settings, 377  
 Hello world application  
     browser, 389  
     command line, 385  
     interactive shell, 386  
     lists, 382  
     number of containers, 376  
     overview, 375  
     port forwarding, 387  
 PostgreSQL command, 387

## ■ INDEX

Pod (*cont.*)  
replication controller creation, 380  
scaling (*see* Scaling)  
service creation, 378  
service describing, 379, 384  
PostgreSQL database, 115  
cluster declaratively, 117  
interactive shell, 123  
logs list, 128  
Pods, 123  
psql CLI Shell, 125–126  
replication controller creation, 119  
replication controller deletion, 130  
scaling, 127  
service creation, 117  
stop command, 131  
table creation, 125  
cluster imperatively, 131  
Docker containers, 134  
Pods, 132  
psql shell, 135  
replication controller creation, 132  
replication  
controller deletion, 138  
scaling, 137  
service creation, 133  
stop command, 139  
table creation, 134  
environment settings, 115  
Docker engine, 116  
Kubernetes service, 117  
Ubuntu instance, 116

## ■ S, T, U

Scaling  
Docker containers, 391  
Hello world application  
browser, 393  
command line, 394  
replication controller deletion, 396  
service describing, 392  
3 replicas, 390

## ■ V

Volume  
configuration, 177  
definition, 176  
empty directory, 178  
types, 176  
usages, 176

## ■ W, X, Y

Worker node, 412  
flannel set up, 413  
Kubernetes, 418  
MASTER\_IP, 412  
service proxy, 419  
testing, 419

## ■ Z

Zookeeper server, 349